

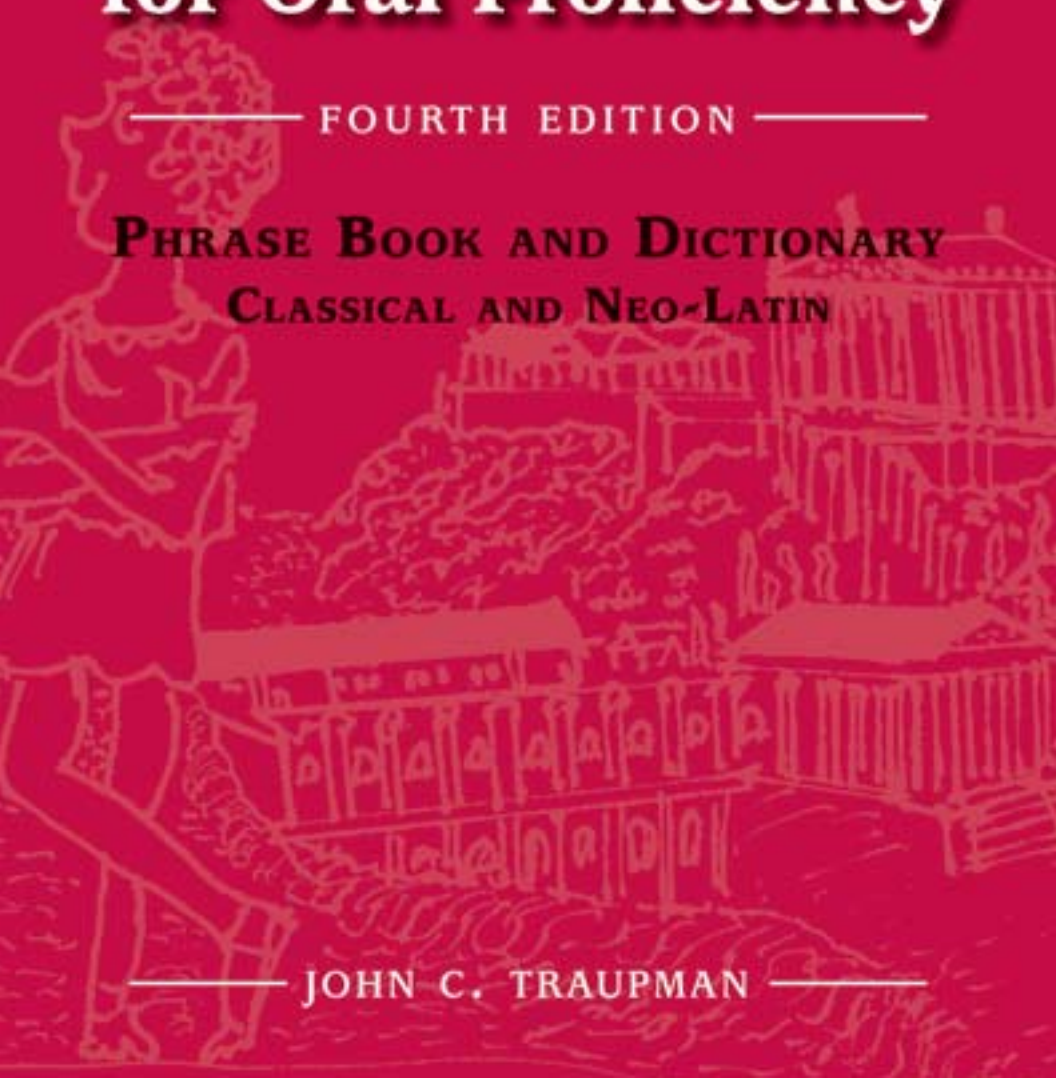
Conversational Latin

for Oral Proficiency

— FOURTH EDITION —

PHRASE BOOK AND DICTIONARY
CLASSICAL AND NEO-LATIN

— JOHN C. TRAUPMAN —



VISIT...

LANZAROTE
Caliente.COM

**Conversational Latin
for Oral Proficiency**

General editors:
Laurie Haight Keenan
Georgine Cooper

© Copyright 2007
All rights reserved

Bolchazy-Carducci Publishers, Inc.

1000 Brown Street
Wauconda, IL 60084 U.S.A.

<http://www.bolchazy.com>

Printed in Canada

2007

by Friesens

4th edition 2007 (3rd edition 2003; 2nd edition 1999; 1st edition 1997)

Paperback:
ISBN-13: 978-0-86516-622-6
ISBN-10: 0-86516-622-6

Hardbound:
ISBN-13: 978-0-86516-645-5
ISBN-10: 0-86516-645-6

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Traupman, John C.

Conversational latin for oral proficiency : phrase book and dictionary / John C. Traupman. --
4th ed.

p. cm.

Summary: "Presents ancient and neo-Latin language phrases and conversations on a variety of
topics. Includes pronunciation guide, bibliography, and English to Latin vocabulary. Expanded
and

enlarged from the 3rd edition (2003)"--Provided by publisher.

ISBN-13: 978-0-86516-645-5 (hardbound)

ISBN-10: 0-86516-645-5 (hardbound)

ISBN-13: 978-0-86516-622-6 (pbk.)

ISBN-10: 0-86516-622-6 (pbk.)

1. Latin language--Conversation and phrase books. 2. Latin language, Colloquial. I. Title.

PA2107.T74 2006

478.3'421--dc22

2006034010

Other Publications by the Author

The New College Latin & English Dictionary, Second Edition, 1994. Amsco School Publications, Inc., 315 Hudson Street, New York, NY 10013-1085. ISBN 0-87720-561-2. Second Edition, 1995.

Simultaneously published by Bantam Books, Inc., 1540 Broadway, New York, NY 10036. ISBN 0-553-57301-2.

Latin is Fun: Book I: Lively Lessons for Beginners. Amsco, 1989. ISBN 0-87720-550-7. *Teacher's Manual and Key*. Amsco, 1989. ISBN 0-87720-554-X.

Latin is Fun: Book II: Lively Lessons for Beginners. Amsco, 1995. ISBN 0-87720-565-5. *Teacher's Manual with Answers*. Amsco, 1995. ISBN 0-87720-567-1.

The New College German & English Dictionary. Amsco, 1981. ISBN 0-87720-584-1. Bantam, 1981. ISBN 0-533-14155-4.

German Fundamentals: Basic Grammar and Vocabulary. 1992. Barron's Educational Series, Inc., Hauppauge, NY 11788.

Lingua Latina: Book I Latin First Year. Amsco, 1999, ISBN 1-56765-426-6 (Hardbound); ISBN 1-56765-425-8 (Softbound).

Teacher's Manual and Key, 1999, ISBN 1-56765-428-2.

Lingua Latina: Book II: Latin Second Year. Amsco, 2001, ISBN 1-56765-429-0 (Softbound);

Teacher's Manual and Key, Amsco, 2001, ISBN 1-56765-431-2



Contents

Acknowledgements	8
How to Use This Book.....	9
Pronunciation.....	10
Abbreviations	14
 Chapter I: Greetings	 15
<i>Boy meets girl.</i>	
<i>Mario runs into his friend Julia.</i>	
<i>Tullia introduces her friend to Luke.</i>	
 Chapter II: Family	 20
<i>The censor asks the father some questions.</i>	
<i>A son learns about his family tree from his</i> <i>father.</i>	
<i>Two friends discuss their family circumstances.</i>	
 Chapter III: School.....	 25
<i>Checking on homework.</i>	
<i>Getting the lesson straight.</i>	
<i>A teacher conducts her class efficiently.</i>	
<i>The Pledge of Allegiance</i>	
 Chapter IV: Daily Activities	 35
<i>Mother calls from downstairs to wake her</i> <i>daughters.</i>	
<i>Two sisters bicker as they get ready for the day.</i>	
<i>Mother and daughters do the daily chores.</i>	

Chapter V: Sports and Other Leisure Activities40

*Her teacher asks Dorothy how she spends her
free time.*

*His teacher asks Theodore how he spends his
free time.*

Paula and Robert discuss sports.

Chapter VI: The Human Body55

*The teacher notices that Linda looks sick. She
asks Linda what is wrong with her.*

*A doctor is called in for the sick little girl,
Scintilla.*

*A doctor arrives at the scene of a fire to treat
one of the victims, a young man.*

Chapter VII: Health and Physical Fitness60

A trainer interviews a young athlete.

The trainer attends to an injured athlete.

A mother checks her daughter's health.

Chapter VIII: Food and Drink.....67

A waitress waits on a senator.

A waiter serves dinner.

Planning a shopping trip.

Chapter IX: Days, Weeks, Months, Years74

Two friends discuss their birthdays.

Two friends discuss their favorite seasons.

A father gives his son some family history.

Chapter X: Expressions of Time82

Marie asks her friend how he spends his days.

A coach interviews a new athlete.

A traveler is about to take a bus trip to Florida.

Chapter XI: Useful Colloquial Expressions90

Brian finds Jeffrey to be in a hurry.

Phyllis wants to discuss a problem with Marie.

Annette turns to her sister for advice.

Contents

5

Chapter XII: Clothing and Jewelry113

Priscilla buys clothes.

Peter buys some winter clothes.

Two daughters get dressed for a party.

Chapter XIII: House and Furniture119

*Cynthia tries to persuade her friend Gloria to
come to her house to play.*

*A potential buyer wants to purchase a home
through a real estate agent.*

*Sabina tries to impress her friend Silvia with the
big home her parents own.*

Chapter XIV: Buying and Selling127

*Lydia explains to Diane why she bought new
clothes.*

Sulpicia explains why she is going shopping.

A storekeeper makes a sale.

Chapter XV: The Weather132

*A boy and a girl in Rome contrast the weather
of Rome with that of Switzerland.*

*Martha explains to her teacher how the weather
kept her from going to school.*

*The weather of Rome and Switzerland is again
debated.*

Chapter XVI: Animals138

A visit to the zoo.

A visit to a pet shop.

Young Mark visits old Cato's farm.

Chapter XVII: Emotions and Qualities146

Diane and Debbie discuss the new teacher.

A new girlfriend is the subject of discussion.

Sizing up a political candidate.

Chapter XVIII: Trades and Professions160

Donna gets a new hairdo.
Choosing a career.
A man plans to build a home.

Chapter XIX: The City and Public Buildings171

Discussing the merits of city life.
Jennifer wants to go to town.
Asking for directions in the city.

Chapter XX: Government175

A father explains to his son his involvement in politics.
A senator explains how government works.
How the senate conducts business.

Chapter XXI: War and Peace182

Jenna finds that Dennis joined the army.
A grandson asks his grandfather about his military service.
Discussing the merits of alliances.

Chapter XXII: Law and Criminal Justice190

News of an important trial.
The arrest of two hoodlums draws a crowd.
A client gets himself a lawyer.

Chapter XXIII: Geography and Topography198

Colin wants to migrate to the U.S.
Rene wants to learn about the Tiber.
Traveling from Rome to Greece.

Chapter XXIV: Travel.....211

At the New York train station.
At the airport.
Getting ready to go by car.

Contents

7

Chapter XXV: Teaching Grammar in Latin	220
The Parts of Speech.....	220
The Noun.....	220
The Pronoun	223
The Verb.....	225
The Adverb.....	231
The Adjective	232
The Participle	233
The Gerund.....	234
The Gerundive.....	235
The Conjunction.....	235
The Preposition	236
The Interjection	237
The Accent	237
The Parsing of Words	238
 Appendix I: Yes and No in Latin.....	250
Appendix II: Colors.....	251
Appendix III: Numbers	253
Appendix IV: Proverbs and Sayings.....	254
Appendix V: Computer Terms.....	260
Appendix VI: Cantūs Latīnī (Latin Songs).....	263
General Vocabulary.....	267
Selected Bibliography	411

Acknowledgements

A debt of gratitude is due to Professor Terence O. Tunberg, of the University of Kentucky, to Professor Jeffrey Wills of the Ukrainian Catholic University, to Professor David W. Morgan of Furman University, SC, and to Professor Christopher Gerald Brown of Ohio State University, for their many suggestions for improvement in both form and substance and for sharing their resources with me. Dr. Domenic M. Roberti, chemistry professor turned desktop publisher, gave much helpful advice; he is responsible for the page design and typesetting of this book. I am also grateful to Thomas Reed, Sterling, VA, and to Mark Miner, Scottsdale, GA, for proofreading the text. The author gratefully acknowledges the kind support of Dr. Ladislaus J. Bolchazy and the staff of Bolchazy-Carducci Publishers, Inc.

How to Use This Book

Unlike your usual textbook, this book allows you to start at any chapter that interests you. Why? Because the chapters are *not* arranged in the order of difficulty. On the other hand, the model conversations in each chapter are arranged in order of difficulty. That is, the grammatical structures of the conversations at Level 1 are simpler than those at Levels 2 and 3. Therefore it is quite possible to go through the entire book using only the conversations at Level 1 and then go through the book again, using Levels 2 and 3.

In the conversations you may run across grammatical forms that you have not covered in class as yet. For instance, you may come across the subjunctive form **eāmus** (let's go). It happened to be called for in that conversation. So what if you haven't learned the entire subjunctive system as yet? You now know what it means, and so you can use it.

You may be used to working your way through a Latin sentence in order to come up with a translation. In this book you are provided with an English translation of all the Latin. (And you'll notice that the translations are not the stiff, literal versions that are sometimes found in textbooks.) So the idea is to practice the model conversations until you have pretty well mastered them. One way to do this is for you to switch roles with your partner and repeat the dialogue again. Then you can proceed to the next stage. This is most easily done by drawing on the topical vocabulary in the chapter to form new Latin conversations of your own choosing on the topic at hand. Because the book is arranged with its facing Latin and English texts, it lends itself to your covering one side, whether the Latin or the English, and then speaking the part in the language that is covered; you could then uncover the concealed text to see how you have done.

The topical vocabulary of each chapter contains not only the words that have occurred in the model conversations but also additional words on that topic that will make it possible for you to have new conversations. The general vocabulary that occurred in the conversations of each chapter is assembled at the end of the book, together with additional useful words. But that general vocabulary will not meet all your needs. You will then have to consult a Latin-English dictionary. Be sure to make full use of the topical vocabulary of the various chapters, no matter what topic you are dealing with. For instance, Chapter XI contains hundreds of everyday expressions that will come in handy in any conversation. Furthermore, whenever you need some expression of time, you will probably find the expression you want in Chapters IX and X. You should use both the topical and general vocabularies to look for the words you need.

To make it easier for you to find what you are looking for, the phrases are arranged alphabetically according to the key word in each phrase. For example, you want to say that someone is "feeding a person a line." In Chapter XI you will find it under the word "line", like this: **line: that fellow is feeding you a line** *iste tibi verba dat*. Sometimes there could be two possible key words in a phrase. If you do not find the phrase under the one key word, check under the other. For instance, in the phrase quoted above, either "feed" or "line" can be considered key words. In this case, the phrase is listed under "line;" it could have been listed under "feed" as well. Such double entries would have made the book too bulky.

In conversational Latin, meaningful and realistic communication is the aim and goal. Accuracy comes with practice.

Pronunciation

VOWELS

CLASSICAL METHOD

ă	<i>a</i> in <i>ago</i> : cómpăřrō
ā	<i>a</i> in <i>father</i> : imāgō
e	<i>e</i> in <i>pet</i> : próperō
ē	<i>a</i> in <i>late</i> : lēnis
ĭ	<i>i</i> in <i>hit</i> : quĭd
ī	<i>ee</i> in <i>keen</i> : amīcus
ō	<i>o</i> in <i>often</i> : mōdus
ō	<i>o</i> in <i>hope</i> : nōmen
ŭ	<i>u</i> in <i>put</i> : ŭt
ū	<i>u</i> in <i>rude</i> : ŭtor
ŷ	<i>ü</i> in German <i>Hütte</i> : mŷrta
ȳ	<i>ü</i> in German <i>über</i> : Tŷdeus

LATE LATIN METHOD

Generally the same as in the Classical Method. However, in practice the different values of the vowels are frequently not rigidly adhered to.

Note—The length of a long vowel is about one and one half that of a short vowel.

DIPHTHONGS

CLASSICAL METHOD

ae	<i>y</i> in <i>by</i> : caecus
au	<i>ow</i> in <i>now</i> : nauta
ēi	<i>ey</i> in <i>they</i> : hēi
ēu	<i>eu</i> in <i>hey you</i> (without the <i>h</i> and <i>y</i>): Orphēus
ōe	<i>oi</i> in <i>oil</i> : cōēpit
ūi	<i>uey</i> in <i>gluey</i> : cūi ; after q , <i>wee</i> in <i>week</i> : qui

LATE LATIN METHOD

ae	<i>a</i> in <i>late</i> : caecus
au	as in Classical Method
ei	as in Classical Method
eu	as in Classical Method
oe	<i>a</i> in <i>late</i> : coeipit
ui	same as in Classical Method

CONSONANTS

CLASSICAL METHOD

- b** English *b*
- c** always *c* in can: **cīvis, cantō**
- d** English *d*
- f** English *f*
- g** always *g* in go: **gallīna, genus**
- h** English *h*
- i** *y* in yes: **īam, īungō**
- k** English *k*, but unaspirated
- l** English *l*
- m** English *m*, but in verse final **m** before an initial vowel or **h** in the following word was presumably not pronounced
- n** English *n*
- p** English *p*, but unaspirated
- q** English *q*
- r** trilled *r* as in the Romance languages
- s** always *s* in sing: **miser, mors**
- t** English *t*, but unaspirated, as *t* in water
- u** *w* in wine, when unaccented, preceded by **q**, sometimes by **s**, and sometimes by **g**, and followed by a vowel: **qui·a, suā·vis** (but **su·ō·rum**), **dis·tīn·guō** (but **ex·ī·gū·us**)

LATE LATIN METHOD

- b** English *b*
- c** before **e, i, ae**, or **oe** = *ch* in *cherry*: **celsus, cīvis, caelum, coepit**, but before other letters, *c* in can: **cantō, actus**
- d** English *d*
- f** English *f*
- g** before **e** or **i** = *g* in *gentle*: **genus, regīna**, but before other letters except **g** and **n** (see under Consonant Groups) = *g* in *go*: **gallīna, grātus, gula, rogō**
- h** English *h*
- i** as in Classical Method, sometimes written **j**
- k** English *k*
- l** English *l*
- m** English *m*
- n** English *n*
- p** English *p*
- q** English *q*
- r** as in Classical Method
- s** *s* in *sing*: **salūs**, but when standing between two vowels or when final and preceded by a voiced consonant = *z* in *dozen*: **miser, mors**
- t** as in Classical Method
- u** as in Classical Method

CONSONANTS

v w in wine: **vīvō**

x x in six: **extrā**

z dz in adze: **zōna**

v English v

x x (as **ks**) in six: **pāx**;
but in words beginning with **ex** and
followed by a vowel, **h**, or **s**, = x (as
gz) in exhaust: **exaūdī**, **exhālō**,
exsolvō

z as in Classical Method

CONSONANT GROUPS

CLASSICAL METHOD

bs ps in apse: **obsīdō**, **urbs**

bt pt in captain: **obtinēre**

cc kk in bookkeeper: **ecce**, **occīdō**,
occāsum, **occlūdō**

ch ch in chaotic: **pulcher**

gg gg in leg guard: **agger**

gn ngn in hangnail: **dignus**

gu see consonant **u**

ph p-h in top-heavy: **phōca**

qu see consonant **u**

sc sc in scope: **sciō**, **scūtum**

su see consonant **u**

LATE LATIN METHOD

bs bs in obsession: **obsīdō**,
but in the final position = bs (as **bz**)
in observe: **urbs**

bt bt in obtain: **obtinēre**

cc before **e** or **i** = *tch* in *catch*: **ecce**,
occīdō; but before other letters = *kk*
in bookkeeper; **occāsum**, **occlūdō**

ch as in Classical Method

gg before **e** or **i** = *dj* in *adjourn*: **agger**;
but before other letters = *gg* in leg
guard: **ággregō**

gn ny in canyon: **dignus**

gu as in Classical Method

ph ph in phoenix: **phōca**

qu as in Classical Method

sc before **e** or **i** = *sh* in *shin*: **ascéndō**,
sciō; but before other letters = *sc* in
scope: **scandō**, **scūtum**

su as in Classical Method

Note—Double consonants are to be pronounced in such a way that each consonant is heard. For example, in the word **agger** (embankment), each **g** should be heard, in contrast to **ager** (field) with only one **g**.

th *t* in *take*: **theátrum**

ti *ti* in English *patio*: **nátiō**

th as in Classical Method

ti when preceded by **s**, **t**, or **x**, or when followed by a consonant = *ti* in English *patio*: **hóstīa**, **admíxtiō**, **fórīter**; but when unaccented, followed by a vowel, and preceded by any letter except **s**, **t**, or **x** = *tzy* in *ritzy*: **nátiō**, **prétiūm**

Abbreviations

<i>abbr</i>	abbreviation	<i>med</i>	medical
<i>abl</i>	ablative	<i>mf</i>	masculine or feminine noun
<i>acc</i>	accusative	<i>mil</i>	military
<i>adj</i>	adjective	<i>mpl</i>	masculine plural noun
<i>adjs</i>	adjectives	<i>mus</i>	music
<i>adv</i>	adverb	<i>n</i>	neuter noun
<i>advs</i>	adverbs	<i>neut</i>	neuter
<i>anat</i>	anatomy	<i>nom</i>	nominative
<i>biol</i>	biology	<i>npl</i>	neuter plural noun
<i>cf</i>	compare	<i>opp</i>	opposite
<i>coll</i>	colloquial	<i>part</i>	participle
<i>comp</i>	comparative	<i>pass</i>	passive
<i>comput</i>	computer	<i>pej</i>	pejorative
<i>conj</i>	conjunction	<i>perf</i>	perfect
<i>dat</i>	dative	<i>pl</i>	plural
<i>defect</i>	defective	<i>poet</i>	poetry
<i>dim</i>	diminutive	<i>pol</i>	politics
<i>eccl</i>	ecclesiastical	<i>pp</i>	past participle
<i>esp</i>	especially	<i>pref</i>	prefix
<i>f</i>	feminine noun	<i>prep</i>	preposition
<i>fem</i>	feminine	<i>pres</i>	present
<i>fig</i>	figurative	<i>print</i>	printing
<i>fin</i>	finance	<i>pron</i>	pronoun
<i>fpl</i>	feminine plural noun	<i>refl</i>	reflexive
<i>fut</i>	future	<i>rel</i>	relative
<i>gen</i>	genitive	<i>relig</i>	religion
<i>imperf</i>	imperfect	<i>rhet</i>	rhetoric
<i>impers</i>	impersonal verb	<i>s</i>	substantive
<i>indecl</i>	indeclinable	<i>singl</i>	singular
<i>indef</i>	indefinite	<i>s.o.</i>	someone
<i>indic</i>	indicative	<i>spl</i>	substantive plural
<i>inf</i>	infinitive	<i>s.th.</i>	something
<i>interj</i>	interjection	<i>subj</i>	subjunctive
<i>interrog</i>	interrogative	<i>suf</i>	suffix
<i>intr</i>	intransitive	<i>superl</i>	superlative
<i>leg</i>	legal	<i>topog</i>	topography
<i>ling</i>	linguistics	<i>tr</i>	transitive
<i>lit</i>	literal	<i>usu</i>	usually
<i>loc</i>	locative	<i>v</i>	verb
<i>m</i>	masculine noun	<i>vulg</i>	vulgar
<i>masc</i>	masculine	<i>w</i>	with
<i>math</i>	mathematics		
<i>mech</i>	mechanics		

Chapter I: Greetings

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I **Boy meets girl.**

Paulus	Salvē! Quid est nōmen tibi?	<i>Paul: Hello! What is your name?</i>
Glória	Salvē et tū! Mihi nōmen est Glória. Quid est nōmen tibi?	<i>Gloria: Hello yourself! My name is Gloria. What's your name?</i>
Paulus	Nōmen mihi est Paulus. Quid agis?	<i>My name is Paul. How are you doing?</i>
Glória	Váleō, grātiās. Quid agis tū?	<i>I'm fine, thanks. How are you doing?</i>
Paulus	Váleō. Hui, ego tē nōvī! Nōnne in prōximō vicō hábitās?	<i>I'm fine. Hey, I know you. You live in the next block, don't you?</i>
Glória	Étiam, hábitō.	<i>Yes, I do.</i>
Paulus	Quid novī ibi?	<i>What's new there?</i>
Glória	Nihil novī. Valē, Paule.	<i>Nothing new. Goodbye, Paul.</i>
Paulus	Valē, Glória.	<i>Goodbye, Gloria.</i>

LEVEL II **Mario runs into his friend Julia.**

Márius	Salvē, Iúlia! Ut valēs?	<i>Mario: Hello! How are you?</i>
Iúlia	Nōn male. Et tū, Marī?	<i>Julia: Not bad. And you, Mario?</i>
Márius	Égone? Bene mihi est. Ut frāter tuus valet? Salvus est?	<i>I? I'm doing fine. How's your brother doing? How is he?</i>
Iúlia	Sīc valet ut numquam mélius.	<i>He's doing as well as ever.</i>
Márius	Ut valet família tua?	<i>How is your family doing?</i>
Iúlia	Omnēs domī bene sē habent.	<i>All are doing fine.</i>

Márius	Et amícus tuus, quid agit?	<i>And your friend, how is he doing?</i>
Iúlia	Rēctē valet.	<i>He's doing right well.</i>
Márius	Unde venīs?	<i>Where are you coming from?</i>
Iúlia	Dē bibliothēcā.	<i>From the library.</i>
Márius	Quō tē agis?	<i>Where are you going?</i>
Iúlia	Domum.	<i>Home.</i>
Márius	Quīn nunc abeúndum mihi est. Valē.	<i>Well, I must go now. Goodbye.</i>
Iúlia	Bene valē. Cūrā ut váleās.	<i>Goodbye. Take care of yourself.</i>

LEVEL III Tullia introduces her friend to Luke.

Lúcius	Salva sīs, Túllia. Quid agis?	Luke: <i>Hello, Tullia. How are you doing?</i>
Túllia	Salvē, Lūcī. Quid agis tū?	Tullia: <i>Hello, Luke. How are you doing?</i>
Lúcius	Nōstī mē. Mē semper bellē hábeō. Quis est haec puélla quae tēcum est?	<i>You know me. I'm always fine. Who is this girl that you have with you?</i>
Túllia	Lūcī, velim trádere tibi cōnsōbrínam meam, Priscíllam.	<i>Luke, I'd like to introduce you to my cousin Priscilla.</i>
Lúcius	Priscílla, mihi pergrátum est tē conveníre. Habítasne in hāc vícíníā? Ego ipse hábitō duōs sōlum vīcōs hinc.	<i>Priscilla, I'm glad to meet you. Do you live in this neighborhood? I live only two blocks from here.</i>
Priscílla	Mínimē vērō. Hábitō in oppídulō Árdeā.	<i>No. I live in the little town of Ardea.</i>
Lúcius	Árdea? Estne in Campániā an in Látíō?	<i>Ardea? Is Ardea in Campania or in Latium?</i>
Priscílla	In Látíō, nōn procul ab urbe.	<i>In Latium, not far from the city.</i>
Lúcius	Dic mihi, quótiēs Rōmam venīs?	<i>Tell me, how often do you come to Rome?</i>
Priscílla	Quotiēscúmque cōnsōbrína mea mē invítat.	<i>As often as my cousin invites me.</i>

Túllia	Haec háctenus! Mē paénitet, Lūcī, sed nōbīs nunc eúndum est. Frāter meus nōs in gymnásiō iamdúdum exspéctat.	<i>Enough of this. I'm sorry, Luke, but we have to go now. My brother has been waiting a long time for us in the gym.</i>
Lúcius	Túllia, amábō tē, iubē frātre tuum Túllium salvēre. Prīscilla, cūrā ut váleās. Mox, ut spērō, tē íterum vidébō.	<i>Tullia, please say hello to your brother Tullius. Priscilla, take care of yourself. I hope to see you again soon.</i>
Túllia	Valē. Cūrā ut váleās.	<i>Goodbye. Take care of yourself.</i>
Prīscilla	Bene valē, Lūcī.	<i>Bye-bye, Luke.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

be fine bene sē habére; vál·eō -ére -uī	meet <i>tr & intr</i> con·véniō -venīre -vénī -véntus
to be very well rēctē valére	name nōm·en -inis <i>n</i>
goodbye valē (<i>pl:</i> valéte); bene valē (<i>pl:</i> bene valéte)	not bad nōn male
hello! salvē (<i>pl:</i> salvéte); salvus (-a) sīs	pleased to meet you! mihi pergrátum est tē convenīre
how are you? (how are you doing?) quid agis? (<i>pl:</i> quid ágitis?); ut valēs? (<i>pl:</i> ut valétis?)	say hello to s.o. iubē (<i>pl:</i> iubéte) áliquem salvére
I am fine bene mihi est	thanks! grātiās!
introduce (to) trā·dō -dere -didī -ditus (+ <i>dat</i>)	thanks a lot! grātiās máximās!
know <i>defective</i> v nōvī nōvísse (you know nōvístī or nōstī)	thanks a million! sēscéntās grātiās!

ADDITIONAL GREETINGS AND RESPONSES

Where are you from?	<i>Unde es?</i>
Where are you coming from?	<i>Unde venīs?</i>
How are you?	<i>Quī valēs?</i>
Fine.	<i>Rēctē.</i>
—	<i>Bellē.</i>
Very well.	<i>Perbéllē.</i>
—	<i>Bellíssimē.</i>

I'm fine.	<i>Mē bene hábeō.</i>
I'm doing quite well.	<i>Haud male quidem váleō.</i>
How are you?	<i>Ut tē habēs?</i>
So-so.	<i>Váriē.</i>
Fairly well.	<i>Mediócriter quidem váleō.</i>
Not bad.	<i>Haud male.</i>
Not too well.	<i>Nōn óptimē sãnē.</i>
As usual.	<i>Ut sóleō.</i>
Lousy.	<i>Plānē infēlíciter.</i>
Everything O.K.?	<i>Satīn' salvē?</i>
Everything is O.K.	<i>Ómnia sunt pulchrē.</i>
—	<i>Ómnia sunt fēlíciter.</i>
—	<i>Ómnia sunt fēstíviter.</i>
Hello. How've you been?	<i>Salvē. Valuistīne?</i>
Fine! Great!	<i>Probē! Euge!</i>
Well, I'm still alive.	<i>Em, vīvō.</i>
Hello.	<i>Salvē.</i>
Same to you.	<i>Salvē et tū.</i>
Hello. Pleasure to meet you.	<i>Salvē. Tē convēnísse volup est.</i>
Hello. The pleasure is mine.	<i>Salvē. Mihi quidem volup est.</i>
How are things with you? Everything all right?	<i>Quō pactō rēs sē tibi habent? Rēctēne sunt ómnia?</i>
In fair shape.	<i>In mediocrī statū.</i>
In great shape.	<i>In óptimō statū.</i>
Glad to hear that.	<i>Laetus (-a) istud aúdiō.</i>
Glad to hear that.	<i>Haud invítus (-a) aúdiō.</i>
I'm delighted to hear that.	<i>Est mihi istud audītū perquam iūcúndum.</i>
I'm glad for you.	<i>Gáudeō tuā causā.</i>
I'm sincerely glad to hear that.	<i>Audíre istud ex ánimō gáudeō.</i>
Thank heavens.	<i>Laus súperis.</i>

Goodbye for now.

Nunc valē.

God bless you.

Dī tē ament.

Take care (of yourself).

Tē cūrā.

Take it easy.

Ōtiósus (-a) estō.

Goodbye and good luck.

Váleās béneque tibi sit.

SUGGESTED CLASSROOM ACTIVITY

First, let pairs of students repeat the conversation of each level. After you have greeted several individual students with a question or two, pair off the students and have them ask each other similar questions. Questions and answers

can easily be gleaned from the dialogues, Topical Vocabulary, and Additional Greetings and Responses.

It is important to repeat this activity from time to time so that the questions and answers become spontaneous.

Chapter II: Family

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I The censor asks the father some questions.

Cēnsor	Quid est nōmen tibi?	<i>Censor: What is your name?</i>
Aulus	Nōmen mihi est Aulus Gabīnius Macer.	<i>Aulus: My name is Aulus Gabinius Macer.</i>
Cēnsor	Esne tū marītus an caelebs?	<i>Are you married or single?</i>
Aulus	Marītus sum. Hábeō uxórem.	<i>I am married. I have a wife.</i>
Cēnsor	Esne tū paterfamíliās?	<i>Are you the head of a family?</i>
Aulus	Ita.	<i>Yes.</i>
Cēnsor	Quid est nōmen uxóri?	<i>What's your wife's name?</i>
Aulus	Nōmen uxóri est Sulpícia.	<i>Her name is Sulpicia.</i>
Cēnsor	Habésne líberōs?	<i>Do you have (any) children?</i>
Aulus	Hábeō.	<i>I do.</i>
Cēnsor	Quot líberōs habēs?	<i>How many children do you have?</i>
Aulus	Duōs fíliōs et ūnam fíliam.	<i>I have two sons and one daughter.</i>
Cēnsor	Habésne frātrēs sorórēsve?	<i>Do you have (any) brothers or sisters?</i>
Aulus	Ūnum frātre[m] et ūnam sorórem hábeō.	<i>I have one brother and one sister.</i>
Cēnsor	Habésne áliōs cognátōs?	<i>Do you have other relatives?</i>
Aulus	Duōs pátruōs et trēs ámitās.	<i>Two uncles and three aunts.</i>
Cēnsor	Vívuntne adhūc paréntēs tuī?	<i>Are your parents still alive?</i>
Aulus	Sānē.	<i>Yes.</i>
Cēnsor	Quis domī tuae hábitat?	<i>Who lives at your home?</i>
Aulus	Uxor et líberī et eórum avus avíaque.	<i>My wife, my children, and their grandfather and grandmother.</i>

Cēnsor	Meā sententiā, habēs familiam admīrābilem.	<i>In my opinion, you have a wonderful family.</i>
Aulus	Sīc ego quoque putō.	<i>I think so too.</i>

LEVEL II **A son learns about his family tree from his father.**

Fīlius	Pater, velim cognōscere plūra dē familiā nostrā.	<i>Son: Father, I'd like to know more about our family.</i>
Pater	Bene, mī fili. Quid velīs cognōscere dē stirpe nostrā?	<i>Father: Fine, my boy. What would you like to know about our family tree?</i>
Fīlius	Quandō tū Māmmam in mātrimōnium dūxistī?	<i>When did you marry Mom?</i>
Pater	Abhinc vīgintī annōs.	<i>Twenty years ago.</i>
Fīlius	Quot annōs nātus es tū?	<i>How old are you?</i>
Pater	Quadrāgintā annōs nātus sum.	<i>I am forty years old.</i>
Fīlius	Quot annōs nāta est Mamma?	<i>How old is Mom?</i>
Pater	Duodēquadrāgintā annōs nāta est.	<i>She is thirty-eight years old.</i>
Fīlius	Quot sorōrēs habēs?	<i>How many sisters do you have?</i>
Pater	Trēs hābeō.	<i>I have three.</i>
Fīlius	Quae est mākima nātū?	<i>Which one is the oldest?</i>
Pater	Paulīna est mākima nātū.	<i>Pauline is the oldest.</i>
Fīlius	Quot frātēs habēs?	<i>How many brothers do you have?</i>
Pater	Duōs hābeō, Stēphanum et Michaēlem, pātruōs tuōs.	<i>I have two, your uncles Stephen and Michael.</i>
Fīlius	Quis est māior nātū, tū an Stēphanus pātruus?	<i>Who is older, you or uncle Stephen?</i>
Pater	Ego sum duōbus annīs māior nātū quam Stēphanus pātruus sed duōbus annīs minor quam Michaēlis pātruus.	<i>I am two years older than uncle Stephen, but two years younger than uncle Michael.</i>
Fīlius	Habitāvēruntne avus et āvia semper in hāc urbe?	<i>Did grandfather and grandmother always live in this city?</i>
Pater	Ita. Étiam eōrum ātavī.	<i>Yes, and also their forefathers.</i>

Fīlius	Dīc mihi, amābō tē, patérne tuus et avus tuus in rē públicā versātī sunt?	<i>Tell me please, were your father and grandfather involved in politics?</i>
Pater	Immō próavus tuus ōlim erat praeféctus urbī.	<i>Well, your great-grandfather was once mayor of the city.</i>
Fīlius	Quid dē avō meō?	<i>What about my grandfather?</i>
Pater	Avus tuus vērō erat multōs annōs sócīus cōnsiliī. Tūne vīs versārī aliquándō in rē públicā?	<i>In fact, your grandfather was a cabinet member for many years. Do you wish someday to be involved in politics?</i>
Fīlius	Mínimē vērō hercle! Spērō mē aliquándō futúrum esse āthlétam praeclárum!	<i>Heck no! I hope to be a famous athlete someday.</i>

LEVEL III Two friends discuss their family circumstances.

Mārcélla	Anna, fortunáta es. Habēs paréntēs bonōs, marítum amántem, socrum benígnam. Tibi quidem invídeō.	Marcella: Anna, you are fortunate. You have good parents, a loving husband, and a kind mother-in-law. I really envy you.
Anna	Ita. Ego hábeō étiam admirábilem marítum soróris et uxórem frátris. Sed cūr tū mihi ínvídeš?	Anna: Yes. I also have a wonderful brother-in-law and sister-in-law. But why do you envy me?
Mārcélla	Abhinc duōs annōs mātrem meam āmísī, et nunc novércam hábeō.	<i>I lost my mother two years ago, and now I have a stepmother.</i>
Anna	Mē paénitet haec cognóscere. Estne novérca crūdélis?	<i>I'm sorry to hear that. Is your stepmother cruel?</i>
Mārcélla	Novérca quidem neque crūdélis neque amábilis est, sed locum mātris meae numquam ūsurpáre potest.	<i>Well, my stepmother is neither cruel nor lovable. But she can never take the place of my mother.</i>
Anna	Suntne fráter et soror tua aequē ínfēlícēs?	<i>Are your brother and sister equally unhappy?</i>
Mārcélla	Vidéntur ínfélícēs, sed pauca dē hīs rēbus dicunt.	<i>They seem unhappy, but they say little about these matters.</i>
Anna	Temptásne ánimōs eórum ērígere?	<i>Do you try to cheer them up?</i>

Mārcélla	Ánimōs eōrum ērigere temptō, sed nihil prōdest.	<i>I try to cheer them up, but it does no good.</i>
Anna	Miseram Mārcéllam! Quid dicit pater tuus?	<i>Poor Marcella! What does your father say?</i>
Mārcélla	Est ádmodum sollícitus. Dicit: “Patíéntia, patíéntia. Tempus ómnia sánat.”	<i>He is quite concerned. He says: “Patience, patience. Time heals everything.”</i>

SUGGESTED CLASSROOM ACTIVITY

Ask a few students:

Quot annōs nātus (or nāta) es tū?	<i>How old are you?</i>
Quot annōs nātus est pater?	<i>How old is your father?</i>
Quot annōs nāta est māter?	<i>How old is your mother?</i>
Quot frātrēs habēs?	<i>How many brothers do you have?</i>
Quot sorōrēs habēs?	<i>How many sisters do you have?</i>
Quīs frāter est máximus nātū?	<i>Which brother is the oldest?</i>
Quīs frāter est mínimus nātū?	<i>Which brother is the youngest?</i>
Quae soror est máxima nātū?	<i>Which sister is the oldest?</i>
Quae soror est mínima nātū?	<i>Which sister is the youngest?</i>
Quid nōmen est frātrī?	<i>What is your brother's name?</i>
Quid nōmen est sorōrī?	<i>What is your sister's name?</i>

Then pair off the students and have them ask each other these questions. From the dialogues of the chapter, many other such simple questions can be generated. Or have the students bring family photographs into the classroom and explain who the members of the family (or extended family) are, e.g.:

Hic est pater meus.
Haec est māter mea.
Hic est avus meus.
Haec est avia mea.
Hic est frāter meus.
Haec est soror mea.

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

adoptive daughter fīli·a -ae *f* adoptīva**adoptive son** fīli·us -ī *m* adoptīvus**aunt** (*mother's side*) mātérter·a -ae *f***aunt** (*father's side*) ámit·a -ae *f***baby** īnf·āns -ántis *mf***brother** frā·ter -tris *m***brother-in-law** lē·vir -virī *m***children** líber·ī -órum *mpl***cousin** (*sister's daughter*) cōnsōbrín·a -ae *f***cousin** (*brother's child*) patruēl·is -is *mf***cousin** (*sister's son*) cōnsōbrín·us -ī *m***dad, daddy** tat·a -ae *m***daughter** fīli·a -ae *f***daughter-in-law** nur·us -ūs *f***family** famíli·a -ae *f***family tree** stirp·s -is *f***father** pa·ter -tris *m***father-in-law** soc·er -erī *m***father of the family** paterfamíliās (*gen: patrisfamíliās*) *m***forefathers** átav·ī -órum *mpl***granddaughter** nept·is -is *f***granddad** tat·a -ae *m***grandfather** av·us -ī *m***grandma** mamm·a -ae *f***grandmother** ávi·a -ae *f***grandson** nep·ōs -ótis *m***great-aunt** (*on father's side*) ámit·a -ae *f* magna; (*on the mother's side*) matérter·a -ae *f* magna**great-grandfather** prōav·us -ī *m***great-grandmother** prōávi·a -ae *f***great-uncle** (*on the father's side*) pátru·us -ī *m* magnus; (*on the mother's side*) avúncul·us -ī *m***husband** marít·us -ī *m***in-law** affín·is -is *mf***little brother** frātercul·us -ī *m***little sister** sorórcul·a -ae *f***Mom** Mamm·a -ae *f***mother** mā·ter -tris *f***mother-in-law** socr·us -ūs *f***nephew** fīli·us -ī *m* soróris; fīli·us -ī *m* frātris**niece** fīli·a -ae *f* soróris; fīli·a -ae *f* frātris**parent** párēns -éntis *mf***relative** cognát·us -ī *m*, cognát·a -ae *f***sister-in-law** (*sister of husband*) glōs glōris *f***sister-in-law** (*wife of brother*) ux·or -óris *f* frātris**son** fīli·us -ī *m***son-in-law** gener, génerī *m***spouse** con·iūnx -iugis *mf***stepdaughter** prīvígñ·a -ae *f***stepfather** vítric·us -ī *m***stepmother** novérc·a -ae *f***stepson** prīvígñ·us -ī *m***uncle** (*mother's brother*) avúncul·us -ī *m***uncle** (*father's brother*) pátru·us -ī *m***wife** ux·or -óris *f***young daughter** filíol·a -ae *f***young son** filíol·us -ī *m*

Chapter III: School

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

Checking on homework.

Magístra	Siléntium, quaesō! Andréa!	<i>Teacher: Silence, please! Andrea!</i>
Andréa	Adsum.	<i>Andrea: Present.</i>
Magístra	Cōnfēcistīne tuum praescriptum domesticum?	<i>Did you finish your homework?</i>
Andréa	Cōnfēcī.	<i>I have.</i>
Magístra	Quid fēcistī?	<i>What did you do?</i>
Andréa	Vocábula Latína edídici.	<i>I memorized the Latin vocabulary.</i>
Magístra	Quid ámplius?	<i>What else?</i>
Andréa	Scrīptūram compósui.	<i>I wrote a composition.</i>
Magístra	Dē quō?	<i>About what?</i>
Andréa	Dē monumētīs in forō.	<i>About the monuments in the forum.</i>
Magístra	Quae monuménta dēscrīpsistī?	<i>Which monuments did you describe?</i>
Andréa	Basílicās et cúriam et vária templa et cētera.	<i>The courthouses and the senate building and the various temples, and so forth.</i>
Magístra	Trāde mihi.	<i>Hand it in.</i>
Andréa	Ecce.	<i>Here it is.</i>
Magístra	Christína!	<i>Christine!</i>
Christína	Adsum.	<i>Present.</i>
Magístra	Dē quō in compositiōne scrīpsistī?	<i>What did you write about in your composition?</i>
Christína	Dē státū mulierum.	<i>About the status of women.</i>

Magístra	Bene. Trāde mihi.	<i>Fine. Hand it in.</i>
Christína	Ecce.	<i>Here it is.</i>

LEVEL II **Getting the lesson straight.**

Cárolus	Magíster, quid dicās ego nōn intéllegō.	<i>Carl: Teacher, I don't understand what you are saying</i>
Magíster	Cómparō rem públicam Rōmānam cum rē públicā nostrā.	<i>Teacher: I am comparing the Roman government with our government.</i>
Cárolus	At ego sciō nihil ferē dē rē públicā Rōmānā.	<i>But I know practically nothing about the Roman government.</i>
Magíster	Lēgístíne caput quārtum tuae <i>História Rōmāna?</i>	<i>Have you read the fourth chapter of your Roman History?</i>
Cárolus	Adhūc ego lēgī solum ūsque ad caput tērtium.	<i>So far I have read only up to chapter three.</i>
Magíster	At ego caput quārtum assignāvī in diem hodiérnum.	<i>But I assigned chapter four for today.</i>
Cárolus	Éxplicā, quaesō, quid in cápite quārtō sit.	<i>Please explain what is in the fourth chapter.</i>
Magíster	Em, áperī librum tuum ad páginam sexāgésimam séptimam.	<i>Well, open your book to page sixty-seven.</i>
Cárolus	Apérui eum.	<i>I've opened it.</i>
Magíster	Quid est scríptum in summā páginā?	<i>What is written at the top of the page?</i>
Cárolus	“Dē Rē Públicā Rōmānā.”	<i>“The Roman Government.”</i>
Magíster	Lege ídeō illud caput in diem crástinum. Disputābimus dē illā rē crās.	<i>Then read that chapter for tomorrow. We'll discuss that topic tomorrow.</i>
Cárolus	Certē illud legam.	<i>Sure, I'll read it.</i>
Magíster	Nisi illud légeris, cadēs prō certō in próximā probatióne.	<i>If you don't read it, you'll flunk the next test for sure.</i>

LEVEL III **A teacher conducts her class efficiently.**

Magistra	In manūs cāpīte libellōs vestrōs. Corrigēmus exercitium quod modo cōnfēcistis.	Teacher: <i>Get out your notebooks. We're going to correct the exercise that you just completed.</i>
Iāsōn	Ignōsce mihi, magistra; nōn hābeō cālamum.	Jason: <i>Excuse me, teacher; I don't have a pen.</i>
Magistra	Ubi est cālamus tuus, Iāsōn?	<i>Where is your pen, Jason?</i>
Iāsōn	Domī relīquī, ut vidētur. Quid fāciam?	<i>I left it at home, it seems. What should I do?</i>
Magistra	Fortāsse potes mūtūārī cālamum ā prōximō tuō.	<i>Perhaps you can borrow a pen from your neighbor.</i>
Iāsōn	Estne haec probātiō?	<i>Is this a test?</i>
Magistra	Nōlī sollicitārī. Ut prius dīxī, corrigēmus tantūmodo exercitia vestra.	<i>Don't worry. As I said earlier, we're only going to correct your exercises.</i>
Iāsōn	Insunt multa menda meō exercitiō.	<i>There are lots of mistakes in my exercise.</i>
Magistra	Per ignōrātiōnem an incūriam?	<i>Through lack of knowledge or through carelessness?</i>
Iāsōn	Per utrāmq̄ue, ut vidētur.	<i>Through both, it seems.</i>
Magistra	Rēcītā clārē exercitium tuum et ego menda indicābō.	<i>Read your exercise aloud and I will point out the mistakes.</i>
Iāsōn	Legāme statim cunctum exercitium an per singulās sententiās?	<i>Should I read the whole exercise at one time or sentence by sentence?</i>
Magistra	Per singulās sententiās. Eō modō ego quodque mendum indicābō corrigāmq̄ue et tū poteris annotāre figūram corrēctam.	<i>Sentence by sentence. In that way I can point out and correct each mistake, and you can jot down the correct form.</i>

THE PLEDGE OF ALLEGIANCE

Fidem meam obligō vexillō Cīvitātum Foederātārum Amēricae
et Rei Pūblicae, cūius vicem gerit, ūnī nātiōnī, sub Deō,
indīviduae, praebentī libertātem iūstitiāmq̄ue omnibus.

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

NOTA BENE! For additional words dealing with grammar, see the topical vocabulary of Chapter XXV.

abbreviate imminu-ō -ere -uī
imminūtus

abbreviation not·a -ae *f* compendiāria

ability facult·ās -ātis *f*; **ability to read and write** legēndī scribēndīque facultās; **natural ability** ingēni-um -ī *n*

absent abs·ēns -ēntis; **to be absent** absum abesse āfui āfutūrus

absentee ābsēns, absēntis *mf*

academy acadēmi·a -ae *f*

add adic·iō -ere adiēcī adiēctus

aloud clārē

answer *s* respōns·um -ī *n*; **to give an answer to s.o.** ālicui respōsum red·dō -dere -didī -ditus

answer *tr* (in both speaking and writing: with *dat* of person and *acc* of the thing) respōn·deō -dēre -dī -sum; **to answer a question** ad interrogātum respondēre; **answer in complete sentences** tōtīs sententiīs respondēre

ask rogāre; (for information) quaerō quaerere quaesīvi quaesītus; **to ask about (someone, something)** dē (āliquō) rogāre; **to ask a few questions** pauca quaerere; **to ask s.o. s.th.** āliquem āliquid rogāre; **to ask s.o. for s.th.** ab āliquō āliquid rogāre; **to ask the teacher (student) a question** docēntem (discēntem) interrogāre; **to ask this question** hoc quaerere

assign assignāre

assignment pēns·um -ī *n*; (written) praescrīpt·um -ī *n*

assistant principal *see* **principal**

audiovisual aid audivīsīficum
subsīdi·um -ā -um

ballpoint pen stil·us -ī *m* sphaerātus

basics elemēt·a -ōrum *npl*

bathroom (toilet) latrīn·a -ae *f*; **may I go to the bathroom?** licetne mihi in latrīnam īre? **yes, OK** licet

blackboard tábul·a -ae *f* ātra

book li·ber -brī *m*

book bag cápsul·a -ae *f* scholáris

bright (smart) lūculént·us -a -um

buzzer bombilátr·um -ī *n*; **when the buzzer sounds (or goes)** cum bombilátrum strepit

cafeteria refectóri·um -ī *n*

calculator mächínul·a -ae *f* calculātória

call roll nómīna citāre

capital letter lítter·a -ae *f* mǎiúscula

carbon copy exémpl·um -ī *n*
trānscūsum, antígraph·um -ī *n*

chalk crēt·a -ae *f*

chapter cap·ut -itis *n*

chemistry chémic·ē -ēs *f*

class classis -is *f*; **to be at the head of the class** classem dūc·ō -ere dūxī

classroom concláv·e -is *n* scholáre

college collēgi·um -ī *n*

composition scrīptūr·a -ae *f*,
composīti·ō -ōnis *f*

copy *s* exémpl·um -ī *n*

copy *tr* exscrīb·ō -ere exscrīpsī (from *ex* + *abl*) (by cheating clandestīnō)

correct *adj* rēct·us -a -um (*opp*: prāvus), ēmendāt·us -a -um (*free from faults*), corrēct·us -a -um (*in the sense of "corrected"*)

correct *tr* (*esp. mistakes in writing*)
ēmendāre; (*a person or mistake*)
cōrrig-ō -ere corrēxī corrēctus

correction corrēcti-ō -ōnis *f*, ēmendāti-ō
-ōnis *f*

correctly rēctē (*opp: prāvē*), ēmendatē;
to speak (spell) correctly rēctē loquī
(scrībere)

corridor ambulācr-um -ī *n*, andr-ōn
-ōnis *m*

day off (*from school*) (ab scholā)
fēriātus di-ēs -ēī *m*; **have a day off**
fēriātum diem habēre

deal with (*topic, person*) tractāre

dean decān-us -ī *m*; decān-a -ae *f*

desk mēns-a -ae *f* scrīptōria

dictionary dictiōnār-ium -ī *n*, lēxic-on
-ī *n*

discuss disputāre dē (+ *abl*)

discussion disputāti-ō -ōnis *f*

door iānu-a -ae *f*

drive, enthusiasm stūdi-um -ī *n*, vīs
(*acc: vim*) *f*

educate īnstīt-uō -ūere -uī -ūtus

education īnstītūti-ō -ōnis *f* (*Note that*
ēducātiō *refers to “raising, bringing*
up” and can apply to the raising of
children as well as livestock, the
training of the body, etc.)

elementary school litterārius lūd-us -ī
m

erase ērād-ō -ere ērāsī ērāsus

eraser (*for a blackboard*) dētērsōri-um
-ī *n*; (*on a pencil*) gumm-is -is *f*

erasure litūr-a -ae *f*

error (*in writing*) mend-um -ī *n*,
mend-a -ae *f*, vīti-um -ī *n*; **to**
commit (make) an error mendum
admīt-ō -ere admīsī admissus

essay libell-us -ī *m*

examination exāmināti-ō -ōnis *f*

examine exāmināre

exercise (*written*) exercíti-um -ī *n*;
(*practice*) exercitāti-ō -ōnis *f*

explain explānāre, explicāre

explanation explānāti-ō -ōnis *f*,
explicāti-ō -ōnis *f*

express exprim-ō -ere exprēssī
exprēssus

faculty magistēri-um -ī *n*

flunk: to flunk a test cad-ō -ere cécidī
cāsūrus in probātiōne

form (*grammatical*) figūr-a -ae *f*

freshman tīr-ō -ōnis *m* *f*

front of the room prior par-s -tis *f*
scholae

get (*to understand*) tēn-eō -ēre -uī
tentus; **I get it** tēneō; **now I get it**
iam tēneō

globe glob-us -ī *m* terrārum

grade *s* grad-us -ūs *m*; (*for*
performance) not-a -ae *f*

grade *tr* (*papers*) notāre; (*to evaluate*)
aestimāre

graduate gradūs suscíp-iō -ere suscēpī

guidance counselor cōnsiliā-tor -tōris *m*
scholāsticus; cōnsiliā-trīx -īcis *f*
scholāstica

hallway ambulācr-um -ī *n*, andr-ōn
-ōnis *m*

hand in *tr* trā-dō -dere -didī -ditus

handwriting chīrōgraph-um -ī *n*

heading cap-ut -itis *n*, ind-ex -icis *m*
cāpitis

high school schol-a -ae *f* supērior

history histōri-a -ae *f*

home room conclāve -is *n* scholāre
prōprium

homework pēns-um -ī *n* domesticum;
(*written*) praescrīpt-um -ī *n*
domesticum

hooky: to play hooky ínsciūs paréntibus
ā scholā abesse

illiterate analphabēt·us -a -um

improve (*to get better in study*)
prōfic·iō -ere prōfēcī prōfēctum

improvement prōfēct·us -ūs *m*

ink ātrāmēt·um -ī *n*

instruct s.o. in s.th. ínstru·ō -ere
ínstruxī ínstrúctus áliquem áliquō

instruction (*teaching*) ínstitúti·ō -ónis *f*;
instructions praecēpt·a -órum *npl*

instructor praecēpt·or -óris *m* (·rīx
-rícis *f*), doc·ēns -éntis *mf*

jot down annotāre

junior iūni·or -óris *mf*

key clāv·is -is *m*

know sciō scīre scīvī scītus; **know how**
to scīre (+ *inf*); **not know** nesc·iō
-īre -ívī *or* -īi

Latin (*to know, read, teach, speak, understand, write*) Latínē; **Are you learning Latin?** Discísne Latínē?; **Did you forget Latin?** Esne oblītus (-a) Lātínē?; **Do you know Latin?** Nōstíne Latínē?; **Do you know how to speak Latin?** Scísne Latínē loquī?; **Do you read Latin easily?** Legísne Latínē fácile?; **Do you speak Latin (fluently)?** Loquerísne Latínē (prōfluēnter)?; **Do you teach Latin?** Docésne Latínē?; **Do you understand Latin?** Intellegísne Latínē?; **Since when have you been learning Latin?** Ex quō témpore Latínē didicístī?; **Where did you study Latin?** Ubi Latínē studuístī?; **Who is able to write Latin?** Quis Latínē scrībere potest?

Latin teacher Latínitátis magís·ter -trī
m (·tra -trae *f*)

learn disc·ō -ere dídicī; **to learn by heart** ēdísce

learner disc·ēns -éntis *mf*

lectern lēctóri·um -ī *n*

line vers·us -ūs *m* (*of prose or poetry*)

map tábul·a -ae *f* geográphica

manuscript manuscrípt·um -ī *n*

mean signific·ō -āre

meaning significāti·ō -ónis *f*; **basic**
(figurative, literal) meaning
prīnceps (trāslātfva, própria)
significātiō

memorize ēdisc·ō -ere ēdídici

meter númer·us -ī *m*

mistake mend·um -ī *n*, víti·um -ī *n*

note not·a -ae *f*; **to take notes**
commentáriōs cōnfíc·iō -ere cōnfēcī
cōnfēctus

note pad pugillár·ēs -um *mpl*

notebook libéll·us -ī *m*

page págin·a -ae *f*; **at the bottom (top)**
of the page in ímā (summā) páginā

paper chart·a -ae *f*

paper clip fibícul·a -ae *f* chartárum

paragraph parágraph·us -ī *f*, cap·ut -itis
n

pass: to pass a test probātiónem
sustín·eō -ēre -uī

passage (*in a text*) loc·us -ī (*pl*: locī) *m*

pen penn·a -ae *f*, cálam·us -ī *m*
scríptórius

pencil gráphi·um -ī *n*

period: (class period) spáti·um -ī *n*; **in**
the third period tértiō spátio

podium pódi·um -ī *n*, púlpit·um -ī *n*

poem poém·a -atis *n*

point out indicāre

poster fóli·um -ī *n* mūrāle

practice s exercitāti·ō -ónis *f*; **extensive**
and continous practice multa et
contínua exercitātiō

practice tr exérc·eō -ēre -uī -itus

prepare parāre; (*in advance*) praeparāre

present: to be present adsum adesse
adfui adfuturus

principal (lūdī *or* scholae) rēc•tor -tōris
m, rēc•trīx -trīcis *f*); **assistant** (*or*
vice) **principal** rēctor vicārius,
rēc•trīx vicāria; **principal's office**
rēc•tōris (rēc•trīcis) officīn•a -ae *f*

progress prōfēc•us -ūs *m*; **to make**
progress prōfēc•iō -ere prōfēcī
prōfēc•tum

promote ad superiōrem classem
prōmōv•eō -ēre prōmōvī prōmōtus

pronounce prōnūntiāre

prose prōs•a -ae *f*

pupil discīpul•us -ī *m*, discīpul•a -ae *f*

question rogāt•um -ī *n*; interrogāt•um -ī
n; quaesti•ō -ōnis *f*; **to raise a**
question quaestiōnem pōn•ō -ere
pōsuī

question mark sign•um -ī *n*
interrogātiōnis

quiz quaestiūcul•a -ae *f*

read leg•ō lēgere lēgī lēctus

reading paus•a -ae *f*; lēc•ti•ō -ōnis *f*

recess paus•a -ae *f*; **during (after,**
before) **recess** inter (post, ante)
pausam

recitation recitāti•ō -ōnis *f*

recite recitāre

repeat rēpet•ō -ere -īvī -ītus

repetition repetīti•ō -ōnis *f*

research *s* investigātī•ō -ōnis *f*

research *tr* investigāre

restroom loc•us -ī *m* sēc•rētus; (**public**)
fōric•a -ae *f*; **may I go to the**
restroom licetne mihi in locum
sēc•rētum inīre? **Yes, OK** licet

review *s* retractāti•ō -ōnis *f*

review *tr* retractāre

roll call nōminum recitāti•ō -ōnis *f*; **to**
take roll call nōmina recitāre

rule *s* (*for measuring*) rēgul•a -ae *f*

scan (poetry) *tr* scand•ō -ere -ī scānsus

school building aed•ēs -is *f* scholāris

school lūd•us -ī *m*; (*advanced*) schol•a
-ae *f*; **to attend school** scholam
frequentāre; **to go to school** scholam
ōbeō obīre obiī *or* obīvī; **to skip**
school īnciūs parēntibus ā scholā
absum abesse

school supplies īnstrūmēt•um -ī *n*
scholāre

scribble exarāre, cōnscrībīllāre

seat subsēlli•um -ī *n* (scholāre)

senior sēni•or -ōris *m**f*

sheet schid•a -ae *f*

silence silēti•um -ī *n*

slide imāg•ō -inis *f* phōtographica
trānslūcida; **to show slides** imāginēs
phōtographicas exhīb•eō -ēre -uī
-itus

slow to learn sēgn•is -is -e

small letter lītter•a -ae *f* minúscula

sophomore sophomōr•us -ī *m*,
sophomōr•a -ae *f*

spell scrīb•ō -ere scrīpsī scrīptus

spelling orthographī•a -ae *f*

staple *s* uncīnul•us -ī *m* (metállicus)

staple *tr* cōnsu•ō -ere -ī -ūtus

stapler uncīnātōri•um -ī *n*, cōnsūtōri•um
-ī *n* (chartārum)

student stud•ēns -ēntis *m**f*, discīpul•us -ī
m, discīpul•a -ae *f*

studies stūdi•a -ōrum *npl*; (stūdium *in*
the singular means “drive,
enthusiasm”)

study period spāti•um -ī *n* studiōsum

stumble over new words nova verba
offēnd•ō -ere -ī

subject disciplīn·a -ae *f*; (*topic*)
argūment·um -ī *n*

subject matter mātēri·a -ae *f*

subtract dētrah·ō -ere dētrāxī dētrāctus

table of contents in·dex -dicis *m*
cāpitum

take down (*notes, lecture*) excíp·iō -ere
excēpī excēptus

talent ingēni·um -ī *n*

talented ingenīōs·us -a -um

teach (*w. double acc*) dōc·eō -ēre -uī
-tus

teacher magīs·ter -trī *m*, magīstr·a -ae *f*;
(*in elementary school*) litterāt·or
-ōris *m*, litterātr·īx -īcis *f*

teaching assistant magīstrae (*or*
magīstrī) adiūt·or -ōris *m* (adiūt·īx
-īcis *f*)

teaching method docēndī rāti·ō -ōnis *f*

test probāti·ō -ōnis *f*

textbook lib·er -rī *m* scholāris, ars, artis
f

theme (*topic*) mātēri·a -ae *f*,
argūment·um -ī *n*; (*essay*) tractāt·us
-ūs *m*

toilet lātrīn·a -ae *f*; **may I go to the
toilet** licētne mihi in lātrīnam ire?
Yes, OK licet

topic mātēri·a -ae *f*, rēs, reī *f*

translate (con)vért·ō -ere -ī
(con)vērsus; ; trāns·ferō -fēre -tulī
-lātus; **to translate from Latin to**

English ex Latīnō in Ánglicum
(con)vértere

translation trānslāt·a -ōrum *npl*; (*act of
translating*) conversi·ō -ōnis *f*,
trānslāti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*of a sentence*)
sentēntia trānslāta; (*of a book*) liber
trānslātus

transparency págin·a -ae *f* pellúcida

tutor domésticus (-a) praecēpt·or -ōris
m (·rīx -rīcis *f*)

type mächínulā scrīptōriā scrīb·ō -ere
scrīpsī scrīptus, dactylographāre

typewriter mächínul·a -ae *f* scrīptōria,
dactylógraph·um -ī *n*

typewriter key plēctr·um -ī *n*
(dactylogrāphicum) malléol·us -i *m*

typewriter ribbon taeni·a -ae *f*
dactylogrāphica

understand intēleg·ō -ere intellēxī
intellēctus

vacation: be on vacation fēriāt·us -a
-um esse

verse vers·us -ūs *m*

vice principal *see principal*

vocabulary vocābul·a -ōrum *npl*

white board tábul·a -ae *f* alba

window fenēstr·a -ae *f*

workboook libéll·us -ī *m* exercitiórum

write scrīb·ō -ere scrīpsī scrīptus

writing scrīptúr·a -ae *f*; **writings**
scrīpt·a -ōrum *npl*

COMMANDS FOR THE CLASSROOM

N.B. For all commands dealing with Latin grammar see Chapter 25.

answer me respōndē mihi; **answer my question** respōndē (respondēte) ad meum interrogātum

be on time, please venī (venīte) tēperī (or ad tempus), quaesō

be quiet (silent) tacē (tacēte); silēntium tenē (tenēte)

close the door claude (claūdite) iānuam

collect the papers collige (pl colligite) chartās

come here venī (pl: venīte) hūc

come in intrā (pl: intrāte)

come on, try to remember āgedum, temptā (temptāte) meminisse

continue (reading, writing, speaking, translating) perge (pērgite) (lēgere, scrībere, dīcere, vērtere)

cut it out dēsine (dēsīnite); dēsiste (dēsīstite)

cut out the chatter, please ōmītte (ōmīttite) garrulitātem, quaesō

cut out the noise, please omītte (omīttite) strēpitum, quaesō

cut out the nonsense omītte (omīttite) nūgās

don't cheat nōlī (nōlīte) exscrībere ex prōximō

don't forget to do your homework nōlīte oblīvīscī perficere pēnsum vestrum

don't interrupt, please nōlī (nōlīte) interpellāre, quaesō

don't laugh at him (her) nōlī (nōlīte) rīdēre eum (eam)

don't speak English nōlī (nōlīte) loquī Anglicē

don't tease him (her) nōlī (nōlīte) eum (eam) taxāre

explain this construction explicā (explicāte) hanc cōstructionem

form a single (double) line fac (facite) agmen ūnicum (duplex)

get out your book(s) librum in manum cape, librōs in manūs cāpite; librum prōme, librōs prōmīte

go on (continue) perge (pērgite)

go to the blackboard accēde (accēdite) ad tābulam ātram

hand me the book librum cedo (cette) [an old imperative]

hand in the papers chartās redde (rēddite), chartās trāde (trādite)

hand out the papers distrībue (distribūite) chartās or prōmptā (prōmptāte) chartās

hurry up mātūrā (mātūrāte)

I want a word with you after class paucīs tē volō post classem

knock it off, please parce (pārcite), quaesō

listen carefully audī (audīte) diligēnter

listen to me mē auscūltā (auscultāte)

look at me convérte (convértite) oculōs in mē

look it up in the dictionary id inquīre (inquīrite) in dictiōnāriō

lower your voice remītte (remīttite) vōcem

make it brief in pauca cōnfer (cōnférte)

never mind sine (sīnite)

open your book(s) to page ... āperī librum (āperīte librōs) ad pāginam ...

outline the story (the essay) *dēlīnēā*
(*dēlīnēāte*) *fābulam* (*tractātum*)

pass around *circūfer* (*pl* *circumfēte*)

pass out the papers *see* **hand out the papers**

pass the papers to the front *chartās*
trāde (*trādite*) *ad frontem*

pay attention *attēde* (*attēndite*); **pay attention to what I am saying**
attēde (*attēndite*) *dicta mea*

put your book(s) away *sēpōne* *librum*
(*sēpōnite* *librōs*)

raise your hand(s) *attōlle* *manum*
(*attōllite* *manūs*)

read the next sentence *lege* (*légite*)
senténtiam *próximam*; (*read aloud*)
recitā (*recitāte*) *senténtiam* *próximam*

read aloud (slower, faster, louder, with inflection of the voice) *lege*
(*légite*) *clārē* (*léntius*, *celérius*,
clārius, *flexā vōce*)

repeat after me *ēisdem verbīs* *mihi*
redde (*reddite*)

repeat the passage *répete* (*repétite*)
locum

repeat what you just said *répete*
(*repétite*) *quid modo dīxerīs*
(*dīxerītis*)

review: let's review the pronouns
prōnōmina *retractēmus*

show me your homework *ostēde*
(*ostēndite*) *mihi pēnsum* (*or*
praescriptum)

silence, please! *siléntium*, *quaesō!*

sit down, please *cōnsīde* (*cōnsīdite*),
quaesō

sit up straight *rēctē* *sedē* (*sedēte*)

speak slowly (louder), please *lōquere*
(*loquimini*) *lentē* (*clārius*), *quaesō*

speak up *ēlōquere* (*ēlōquimini*)

stop arguing *dēsine* (*dēsinite*)
argūmentārī (*squabbling*) *rīxārī*

stop talking *dēsine* (*dēsinite*) *loquī*

stand up surge (*cōnsúrgite*); (*esp. as a mark of respect*) *assúrgite* (*assúrgite*)

stop writing *dēsine* (*dēsinite*) *scrībere*

take notes *ēnotā* (*ēnotāte*)

take up (*for reading, studying*) *in*
manūs sūme (*pl: sūmite*)

take your seats *revértite* *ad subsēllia*

translate this sentence from English to Latin *convérte* *hanc senténtiam* *ex*
Ánglicō *in Latīnum*

translate this sentence from Latin to English *convérte* (*convértite*) *hanc*
senténtiam *ex Latīnō* *in Ánglicum*

turn around *tē* *verte* (*pl: vōs vértite*)

turn to page *ēvólve* *librum*
(*ēvóluite* *librōs*) *ad páginam*

use your dictionary *útere* (*útímini*)
dictiōnáriō

whoa! not so fast! *eho*, *nōn tam cito!*

write out the sentences *senténtiās*
perscrībe (*perscrībite*)

write that on the board *scrībe*
(*scrībite*) *id in tábulā ātrā* (*or albā*)

Chapter IV: Daily Activities

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

Mother calls from downstairs to wake her daughters.

[NOTE—Time of day can be computed according to the Roman system, beginning at 6:00 A.M., or according to the modern system, beginning the day at midnight. See page 80 on the Roman hours.]

Māter	Victória, surge. Tempus est súrgere.	Mother: <i>Victoria, get up. It's time to get up.</i>
Victória	O māter, ego tam fessa sum. Librum meum ad multam noctem lēgī. Quota hōra est?	Victoria: <i>Oh mother, I'm so tired. I read my book till late at night. What time is it?</i>
Māter	Iam hōra octáva est. Vigilásne?	<i>It's already eight o'clock. Are you awake?</i>
Victória	Vígilō. Ubi sunt cálcei meī?	<i>Yes, I am. Where are my shoes?</i>
Māter	Quómodo sciam? Ubi, ut opínor, tū eōs dētrāxistī herī vésperi. Victória, éxcitā ē somnō tuam sorórculam Olíviam.	<i>How should I know? I suppose, where you took them off last night. Wake up your little sister Olivia.</i>
Victória	Māter, Olívia nōn vult súrgere. Sub strágulīs adhūc iacet et sē nōn movet.	<i>Mother, Olivia doesn't want to wake up. She's still lying under the covers and doesn't move.</i>
Māter	Vigilatne nunc Olívia?	<i>Is Olivia awake now?</i>
Victória	Mínimē édepol! Ista pigra nē óculōs quidem áperit. Quid fāciam nēsciō.	<i>Heck no! That lazy thing doesn't even open her eyes. I don't know what to do.</i>
Māter	Éxcitā eam íterum.	<i>Wake her again.</i>
Victória	Excitāví. Nōn prōdest. Díctitat: "Omnínō ōdī súrgere tam bene māne."	<i>I have. It doesn't do any good. She keeps on saying: "I absolutely hate to get up so early in the morning."</i>

Māter	Éxtrahe eam ē léctulō. Alióquīn ego ipsa sūrsum véniam et eam excitábō.	<i>Drag her out of bed. Otherwise I'll come upstairs myself and wake her up.</i>
Victória	Bene est, Mamma; Olívia tandem ē léctulō rēpsit.	<i>It's O.K., Mom. Olivia has finally crawled out of bed.</i>

LEVEL II **Two sisters bicker as they get ready for the day.**

Victória	Olívia, ágedum, tē lavā et dentēs pūrgā.	Victoria: <i>Olivia, come on, wash yourself and brush your teeth. [lit: "clean" your teeth]</i>
Olívia	Cūr omnēs in hāc famíliā mē carpunt? Quómodo possum mē lavāre sī aquálem nōn hábeō?	Olivia: <i>Why does everyone in this family pick on me? How can I wash myself if I don't have a basin?</i>
Victória	Postquam tū tē lāvísti, meméntō purgāre dentēs. Et meméntō stérnere léctulum tuum.	<i>After you have washed, remember to brush your teeth. And remember to make your bed.</i>
Olívia	Quómodo dentēs purgāre possum, sī tū pastam dentáriam habēs?	<i>How can I brush my teeth if you have the toothpaste?</i>
Victória	Et meméntō péctere capíllōs, sī nōn vīs vidēri símilis Medúsaē.	<i>And remember to comb your hair if you don't want to look like Medusa.</i>
Olívia	Quómodo capíllōs péctere possum, sī quis péctinem meum sústulit?	<i>How can I comb my hair if someone swiped my comb?</i>
Victória	Et meméntō, mea cāra sorórcula, crispāre capíllōs.	<i>And remember, my dear little sister, to curl your hair.</i>
Olívia	Quómodo capíllōs crispāre possum, sī neque calamístrum neque spéculum inveníre possum?	<i>How can I curl my hair if I can't find the curler or the mirror?</i>
Victória	Mísera Olívia, tótus mundus tibi adversátur!	<i>Poor Olivia, the whole world is against you!</i>
Māter	Puél্লাe, dēsínite rīxārī. Veníte deórsum. Ientáculum est parátum.	<i>Girls, stop bickering. Come downstairs. Breakfast is ready.</i>

 LEVEL III **Mother and daughters do the daily chores.**

Māter	Victória et Olívia, dēsīderō auxílium vestrum hódīē. Ego iam lectōs omnēs strāvī et pavíméntum lāvī.	<i>Victoria and Olivia, I need your help today. I have already made all the beds and have washed the floor.</i>
Victória	Promptae sumus. Dīc quid velīs ut nōs faciāmus.	<i>We are ready. Tell us what you want us to do.</i>
Māter	Victória, prīmum ómnium, lavā pátinās et vāsa quibus in prándiō ūsī sumus.	<i>Victoria, first of all, wash the dishes and the pots and pans which we used at lunch.</i>
Victória	Vísne étiam mē mēnsam pónere ad cēnam?	<i>Do you also want me to set the table for dinner?</i>
Māter	Ita. Deínde prōme áliquid vīnī ē cellā vīnáriā.	<i>Yes. Then get out some wine from the wine cellar.</i>
Olívia	Quid ego faciā?	<i>What should I do?</i>
Māter	Fortásse tū potes hauríre aquam ē cistérnā. Ecce sítulam.	<i>Perhaps you can draw some water from the cistern. Here's the bucket.</i>
Olívia	Quid aquā faciā?	<i>What should I do with the water?</i>
Māter	Implē sólíum in balnéolō.	<i>Fill the bathtub in the bathroom.</i>
Olívia	Quicquam áliud?	<i>Anything else?</i>
Māter	Implē aquálēs in ómnibus cubículīs.	<i>Fill the wash basins in all the bedrooms.</i>
Olívia	Postquam ego ómnia fēcērō, licēbítne forās éxeam lūsum? Amícae meae mē expéctant.	<i>After I have done everything, may I go outside to play? My friends are waiting for me.</i>
Mater	Certē, exī forās et lūde cum amícīs tuīs usque ad hōram cēnándī.	<i>Certainly, go outside and play with your friends until dinner time.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

answering machine respōnsr·um -ī *n***awake: to be awake** vigilāre**basin** aquāl·is -is *m (f)***breakfast** ientācul·um -ī *n*; **to eat****breakfast** ientāre; ientāculum sūm·ō
-ere sūmpsī sūmptus**brush the teeth** dentēs purgāre [*lit: to
clean the teeth*]**cell phone** tēlēphōnūl·um -ī *n* portābile**clean** purgāre, mundāre; **to clean out
the kitchen** culīnām mundādam
cūrāre**comb** *tr* pect·ō -ere pexī pectus; **to
comb the hair** capīllum (*or* capīllōs
or crīnēs *or* comam) pēctere; **to
comb out** expēctere; **to comb back**
repēctere**comb** *s* pect·en -inis *m***curl** crīspāre**curler** calamīstr·um -ī *n***dine** cēnāre**dish** pátin·a -ae *f*; **to wash the dishes**
pátinās lavāre**draw water** aquam haúr·iō -íre hausī
haustus**dust the furniture** supelléctilem
dētér·geō -gēre -sī -sus**eat** edō ēsse ēdī ēsus; (*breakfast, lunch,
dinner*) sūm·ō -ere sūmpsī sūmptus**fill** ímpl·eō -ēre -ēvī -ētus; **to fill the
water basins** aquālēs -ium implēre**floor** pavímēt·um -ī *n***get up** surg·ō -ere surrēxī surrēctum**go to bed** dormítum (*or* cúbitum)
[*supine*] eō ire īi *or* īvī itum**go shopping** obsōnāre**iron clothes** vestīmēnta prem·ō -ere
pressī pressus**layer the hair** comam in gradūs frang·ō
-ere frēgī frāctus**make the bed** lectum (*or* lēctulum)
stern·ō -ere strāvī strātus**mirror** spēcul·um -ī *n***mow the lawn** grām·en -inis *n* résecō
-āre -uī -tus**nap** brevis somn·us ī *m*; **to take a nap**
brevem somnum cáp·iō -ere cēpī
captus**polish shoes** cálceōs pól·iō -íre -ívī -ítus**pots and pans** vās·a -ōrum *npl***put on (clothes)** índu·ō -ere -ī -útus
(*opp: exúere*)**set the table** cibária (váscula) in
mēnsam appōn·ō -ere appósuī
appósitus**snack** merénd·a -ae *f*; **to have a snack**
merēdam cáp·iō -ere cēpī captus**soap** sap·ō -ōnis *m*; **bar of soap** sapōnis
quádrul·a -ae *f***sweep the floor** pavímētum verr·ō -ere
-ī versus**take off (clothes)** dētrah·ō -ere dētráxī
dētráctus; éxu·ō -ere -ī -útus**telephone** *s* tēlēphōn·um -ī *n*; **by
telephone** tēlēphōnicē; **to call s.o.
on the telephone** aliquem
tēlēphōnicē compellāre; **to dial a
(telephone) (area code) number**
númerum (tēlēphōnicum) (númerum
praesēlēctōrium) sēlig·ō -ere sēlēgī
sēlēctus; **to speak with s.o. on the
telephone** cum áliquō tēlēphōnicē
cólloquor cólloquī collocútus sum; **to
use a pay phone** tēlēphōnō monētáli
ūtōr ūtī ūsus sum**telephone** *adj* tēlēphōnic·us -a -um;
telephone call (local, long-distance)
tēlēphōnicum collóqui·um -ī *n*
(locāle, longínquum)

telephone *tr* per tēlephōnum vocāre

telephone book catālog·us -ī *m*
tēlephōnicus

telephone booth cell·a -ae *f* tēlephōnica

telephone number númer·us -ī *m*
tēlephōnicus

television *s* tēlevīsōri·um -ī *n*; (*see*

television, Chapter IV) **to watch**

television tēlevīsōri·um spectāre

tidy up ordināre

tired fess·us -a -um

toothbrush pēnícul·us -ī *m* dentārius

toothpaste past·a -ae *f* dentāria

vacuum *tr* púlveris haurītōriō purgāre

vacuum cleaner púlveris haurītōri·um
-ī *n*

wake up *tr* (ē somnō) excitāre **||** *intr*
expergísc·or -ī experréctus sum

wash *tr* lav·ō -āre lāvī lautus **||** *intr*
lavārī, sē lavāre

water the flowers flōrēs adaquāre

Chapter V: Sports and Other Leisure Activities

CONVERSATIONS

	LEVEL I	Her teacher asks Dorothy how she spends her free time.
Magistra	Quómodo cōsúmīs ótium diēbus prōfēstīs?	Teacher: How do you spend your leisure time on weekdays?
Dorothea	Postquam stúdia cōnfēcī, cum amīcīs meīs lūdō.	Dorothy: After I have finished my studies, I play with my friends.
Magistra	Quid facis fine hebdómadis?	What do you do on the weekend?
Dorothea	Primum, dórmiō quam diū mihi libet.	First, I sleep as long as I please.
Magistra	Quid facis pósteā?	What do you do after that?
Dorothea	Deínde ego et amīcae dēambulāmus.	Then I and my friends go for a walk.
Magistra	Quid facis diē Sātúrnī vésperī?	What do you do on Saturday evening?
Dorothea	Intérdum eō in cīnēmatéum.	Sometimes I go to the movie theater.
Magistra	Quid ámplius facis?	What else do you do?
Dorothea	Intérdum amāns meus mē ad saltatiónem dūcit.	Sometimes my boyfriend takes me to a dance.
Magistra	Quid áliud facis?	What else do you do?
Dorothea	Saepe tēlevísórium spectō.	I often watch television.
Magistra	Quómodo vacatiónem aestívam cōsúmīs?	How do you spend your summer vacation?
Dorothea	Sćilicet áliquot pēnsa domī faciō; multum autem tempus líberum hábeō.	Of course I do some chores at home; still, I have a lot of free time.

Magistra	Quid ergō facis?	<i>So, what do you do?</i>
Dorothea	Multa quidem. Intērdum vísitō cognātōs meōs. Intērdum ōram marítimam petō.	<i>A lot of things, really. At times I visit my relatives. Sometimes I head for the shore.</i>
Magistra	Quibúscum?	<i>With whom?</i>
Dorothea	Aut cum famíliā aut cum amánte meō.	<i>Either with my family or with my boyfriend.</i>
Magistra	Quid áliud facis?	<i>What else do you do?</i>
Dorothea	Per occāsiōnem ad concéntum eō.	<i>Occasionally I go to a concert.</i>

LEVEL II

His teacher asks Theodore how he spends his free time.

Magister	Quómodo tempus líberum tuum cōsúmīs?	Teacher: <i>How do you spend your free time?</i>
Theodorus	Diēbus prōfēstīs plērúmque in āthléticā versor.	Theodore: <i>On weekdays I am generally involved in sports.</i>
Magister	Quid facis fine hebdómadis?	<i>What do you do on the weekend?</i>
Theodorus	Multa. Pilā lūdō. Latrúculīs lūdō. Atque músicam amō.	<i>A lot of things. I play ball. I play checkers. And I also love music.</i>
Magister	Potesne cánere ínstrúmētō músicō?	<i>Can you play a musical instrument?</i>
Theodorus	Possum pulsāre týmpanum atque cánere tubā.	<i>Yes, I can play the drum as well play the trumpet.</i>
Magister	Potésne lúdere cítharā Hispānicā?	<i>Can you play the guitar?</i>
Theodorus	Nōn.	<i>No.</i>
Magister	Quid facis fine hebdómadis?	<i>What do you do on the weekend?</i>
Theodorus	Diē Sātúrnī ego et amíci meī ad forum ímus et ínspicimus multās tabérnās.	<i>On Saturday I and my friends go to the mall and look at many shops.</i>
Magister	Vōsne umquam in bibliothécā ítis?	<i>Do you ever go to the library?</i>
Theodorus	Rārō. Sed saepe ímus ad áream lūsóriam extrā bibliothécā. Patināmus aut corbípilā ibi lúdimus.	<i>Rarely. But we often go to the playground outside the library. We skate there or play basketball.</i>

Magister	Quid facis inter fēriās aestīvās?	<i>What do you do during the summer holidays?</i>
Theodorus	Saepe piscātum eō cum patre meō.	<i>I often go fishing with my father.</i>
Magister	Habēsne instrūmentum piscātōrium?	<i>Do you have fishing tackle?</i>
Theodorus	Nūper pater instrūmentum piscātōrium mihi ēmit: cālamum, līneam, rēte.	<i>Recently my father bought me fishing tackle: a rod, line, and a net.</i>
Magister	Scīsne piscārī?	<i>Do you know how to fish?</i>
Theodorus	Ut tibi vērum dīcam, pater pōnit ēscam in hāmō prō mē.	<i>To tell you the truth, my father puts the bait on the hook for me.</i>

LEVEL III Paula and Robert discuss sports.

Paula	Quibus, Robēte, āthlētīcīs lūdis?	<i>Paula: Robert, what sports do you play?</i>
Robertus	Vernō tēmpore plērūmq̄ pilamāllo lūdō, sed intērdum etiā tenīsiā lūdō.	<i>Robert: In the springtime I usually play golf, but at times I also play tennis.</i>
Paula	Euge! Quibus āthlētīcīs aestāte lūdis?	<i>Great! What sports do you play in summer?</i>
Robertus	Ut vērum dīcam, aestāte in pilamāllei campō saepe sum; egō prōrsus amō pilamāllo lūdere. Postillāc in nostrā piscīnā novā aliquāmdīu natō. Sed etiā mē dēlectat basīpilā lūdere.	<i>To tell you the truth, in summer I am often on the golf course; I just love to play golf. After that I swim in our new pool for a while. But I also like to play baseball.</i>
Paula	Quō locō lūdis?	<i>What position do you play?</i>
Robertus	Ad prīmam basim lūdō, sed intērdum intermēdius basiārius lūdō. Nempe audīre clāmōrēs fautorum mihi placet, quāndocūmq̄ pilam extrā campum lūsōrium pulsō.	<i>Mostly I play first base, but at times I play shortstop. Naturally, I like to hear the cheers of the fans in the stands whenever I hit the ball out of the ball park.</i>

Paula	Macte virtūte estō, Robérte! Et quid dē autūmnō?	<i>Good for you! And what about the fall?</i>
Robértus	Au! Nōlī dē autūmnō mentiōnem mihi fácere, quia eō témpore in scholam íterum mihi redeúndum est.	<i>Ouch! Don't mention fall to me. That's when I have to go back to school.</i>
Paula	At nōn semper in scholā es. Ágedum, áliquid temporis subsicívi áthléticīs habēs	<i>But you are not always in school. You certainly have some spare time for sports.</i>
Robértus	Rēctē dicis. Ineúnte autūmnō adhūc basípilā lūdō. Sed deínde cum foris frīgēscit, corbifólle intus lúdere praéferō.	<i>You're right. At the beginning of fall I still play baseball. But when it gets cold, I prefer to play basketball inside.</i>
Paula	Quō locō in turmā lūdis?	<i>What position do you play on the team?</i>
Robértus	Quod ego statūrā prōcērā sum, ego centrális sum. Annō superiōre turma nostra invícta erat.	<i>Because I am tall, I am the center. Last year our team was undefeated.</i>
Paula	Quibus áthléticīs híeme lūdis?	<i>What sports do you play in winter?</i>
Robertus	Híeme amō per gláciem patináre in stagnō nōn procul ā mē. Postquam nivis cāsum, saepe nartō in cóllibus in próximō.	<i>Well, in winter I love to skate on the pond not far from my home. After a snowfall, I often ski on the hills nearby.</i>
Paula	Édepol, tū quidem magnus áthléta es. Visne nunc audíre quibus áthléticīs ego stúdeam? Ego . . .	<i>Gee, you are a great athlete. Now do you want to hear what sports I go in for? I . . .</i>
Robértus	Benígnē, Paula. Enimvērō occupátissimus sum. Gymnásium petō. Amíci meī mē iam dudum exspéctant. Nunc bene valē.	<i>No, thank you, Paula. You see, I'm really very busy. I am heading for the gym. My friends have been waiting there for me for a long time. Bye for now.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

Sports

GENERAL TERMS *The following terms can be applied to several sports:*

athlete āthlēt•a -ae *m*, āthlētri•a -ae *f*

athletic āthlētīc•us -a -um

athletics āthlētīc•a -ae *f*

ball pil•a -ae *f*; (*inflated*) fol•lis -is *m*;

catch the ball pilam *or* follem

excíp•iō -ere excēpī excēptus; **kick**

the ball follem pede pulsāre *or* īcō

īcere īcī ictus; **play ball** pilā *or* folle

lūdere; **throw the ball** pilam *or*

follem coníc•iō -ere coníecī

coníectus

ball field camp•us -ī *m* lūsórius

ball game lūs•us -ūs *m* pilae (*or* follis)

ball park camp•us -ī *m* lūsórius

bench *s* (*wooden seat*) scamn•um -ī *n*;

(*ballplayers*) cōpi•ae -ārum *fpl*

subsidiáriae

bench *tr* ad scamnum relegāre

bleachers for•ī -órum *mpl*

block ob•stō -stāre -stitī (+ *dat*),

obsíst•ō -ere óbstitī (+ *dat*), óbstru•ō

-ere obstrúxī obstrúctus

coach *s* exercitā•tor -tōris *m* (•trīx -trícis *f*)

coach *tr* & *intr* exercitāre

compete against conténd•ō -ere -ī

contrā (+ *acc*)

competition conténti•ō -ónis *f*; (*event*)

certām•en -inis *n*

competitor competī•tor -tōris *m* (•trīx

-trícis *f*)

equipment apparát•us -ūs *m*,

instrūmént•um -ī *n*

fan fau•tor -tōris *m* (•trīx -trícis *f*)

foul offēns•a -ae *f*; **commit a foul**

offēnsam committ•ō -ere commísī

commíssus, poenáliter agō ágere ēgī

āctus

game lūd•us -ī *m*, lūs•us -ūs *m*;

(*contest*) certām•en -inis *n*

half: first half prior pars *f* certāminis;

second half áltera pars certāminis

half-time dīmídium temp•us -oris *n*

lose *tr* **lose a game** lūdō superārī, lūdum

per•dō -dere -didī -ditus **||** *intr*

vinc•or -ī victus sum

losing team turm•a -ae *f* victa

match certām•en -inis *n*

net rēt•e -is *n*

offside: be offside seórsum esse *or* stāre

opponent adversári•us -ī *m* (•a -ae *f*)

overtime additícium temp•us -oris *n*

place: be in first place primári•us -a

-um esse; **be in second place**

secundári•us -a -um esse; **be in third**

place térti•us -a -um esse; **hold first**

(**second, third**) **place** statum

primárium (secundárium, tertium)

habére

play lūd•ō -ere lūsī lūsum; **play a game**

lūsum lūdere; **play ball** pilā lūdere

player lūs•or -óris *m*, lūstr•īx -ícis *f*

playing field camp•us -ī *m* lūsórius

position loc•us -ī *m*; **what position do**

you play? quō locō lūdis?

referee árbi•ter -trī *m* (•tra -trae *f*)

point pūct•um -ī *n*; **score a point**

pūctum ferō ferre tulī lātus

score summ•a -ae *f* pūctórum, status

-ūs *m*; (*in golf*) summa íctuum; **final**

score status finális; **keep score**

ratiónem pūctórum notāre; **the**

score is tied *summae pūnctorūm sunt parēs*

scoreboard *tābul·a -ae f pūnctorūm*

sport *dīspōrt·us -ūs m, āthlētīc·a -ae f;*

go in for sports *dīspōrtibus (or āthlētīcae) stūd·eō -ēre -uī; play sports in dīspōrtibus (or āthlētīcā) vers·or -ārī -ātus sum, dīspōrtibus (or āthlētīcā) lūdere*

sport shirt *camīsi·a -ae f campēstris*

sportswear *vest·is -is f campēstris*

squad *turm·a -ae f*

stadium *stādi·um -ī n*

stands (for seating) *for·ī -ōrum mpl*

sub, substitute *succēdāne·us -ī m (·a -ae f), suppositīci·us -ī m (-a -ae f)*

team *turm·a -ae f*

throw s.o. out of the game *āliquem ā campō (lūsōriō) relegāre*

umpire *ārbī·er -rī m (·tra -trae f)*

warm-up *exercitāti·ō -ōnis f*

whistle *sībil·us -ī m; blow the whistle sībilum ēmitt·ō -ere ēmīsī ēmissus; final whistle sībilus finālis; starting whistle sībilus initiālis*

win *victōri·a -ae f*

win a game *lūdō vinc·ō -ere vīcī*

winning team *turm·a -ae f victrīx*

win on points *praevalēnti·a -ae f pūnctorūm*

win on points *praeval·eō -ēre -uī per pūncta*

SPECIFIC SPORTS

archery *sagittāti·ō -ōnis f*

arrow *sagitt·a -ae f*

bow *arc·us -ūs m*

hit *fēr·iō -īre*

bull's eye *mēdi·us scop·us -ī m*

target *scop·us -ī m*

badminton *lūd·us -ī m pilae pinnātae;*

play badminton *pilā pinnātā lūdere*

net *rēt·e -is n*

net ball *pil·a -ae f rēte perstringēs*

racket *rētīcul·um -ī n (manubriātum)*

baseball (the ball itself) *basīpil·a -ae f; (the sport) lūd·us -ī m basīpilae; play baseball basīpilā lūdere*

base (first, second, third, home) *bas·is -is (acc: -im) (prīma, secūnda, tertia, summa or domestica)*

baseball game *basīpilae lūs·us -ūs m, basīpilae certāmen -inis n*

baseman (first, second, third) *(prīmus, secūndus, terti·us) basiāri·us -ī m (·a -ae f)*

bat *clāv·a -ae f (lūsōria)*

batter *clāvā·tor -tōris m (·trīx -trīcis f), pulsā·tor -tōris m (·trīx -trīcis f)*

catch *excīp·iō -ere excēpī excēptus*

catcher *excēpt·or -ōris m, excēptr·ix -īcis f*

fly *pil·a -ae f volāns*

glove *digitābul·um -ī n*

hit *s puls·us -ūs m*

hit tr pulsāre; hit the ball out of the park *pilam extrā campum lūsōrium pulsāre*

home plate *bas·is -is f summa, basis domestica*

home run *circūit·us -ūs m bāsium;*

hit a home run *circūitum bāsium facere*

inning *miss·us -ūs m*

outfielder *extērnus (-a) cust·ōs -ōdis mf*

pitcher coniect·or -ōris *m*,
coniectr·ix -īcis *f*

pitcher's mound coniectōris
(coniectricis) grūm·us -ī *m*

shortstop intermēdius (-a) basiāri·us
-ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

basketball (*ball*) corbifōll·is -is *m*;
(*game*) corbifōllis lūd·us -ī *m*; **play**
basketball corbifōlle lūdere

basket corb·is -is *m*; **make a basket**
corbifōllem per corbem iniciō incēre
iniēcī iniēctus

center centrāl·is -is *mf*

court aul·a -ae *f* lūsōria

dribble *tr* & *intr* repercutitāre

dribbling repercuti·ō -ōnis *f*

forward oppugnā·tor -tōris *m* (·trix
-trīcis *f*)

foul offēns·a -ae *f*; **commit a foul**
offēnsam committ·ō -ere commīsī
commīssus, poenāliter agō āgere ēgī

foul line líne·a -ae *f* poenālis

foul shot iact·us -ūs *m* ā líneā
poenālī

guard cust·ōs -ōdis *mf*

pass (*the act*) corbifōllis trānsiēcti·ō
-ōnis *f*; (*the passed ball*) corbifōllis
m trānsiēctus

pass the ball corbifōllem trāns·iciō
-īcere -iēcī -iēctus

slam dunk tuxtax (per corbem)
iniēct·us -ūs *m*

boxing pugilāt·us -ūs *m*, pugilāti·ō
-ōnis *f*

box *intr* pugi(l)lāre

boxer pugil -is *mf*

boxing champion pūgilum rēx, rēgis
m; **heavy-weight champion** pūgilum
rēx mǎximī pōnderis

boxing glove caest·us -ūs *m*

boxing match certām·en -inis *n*
pugilātōrium

knock down stern·ō -ere strāvī
strātus

knock out s.o. cērebrum ālicui
dīmínu·ō -ere -ī

punch *s* pugn·us -ī *m*; **land a punch**
on s.o. pugnum ālicui dūcere

punch *tr* pugnō (*or* pugnīs) caed·ō
-ere cecīdī

punching bag cōryc·us -ī *m*, foll·is
-is *m* pugilātōrius

ring suggēst·us -ūs *m* pugilātōrius

round congrēss·us -ūs *m*; **lose a**
round congrēssū vinc·ōr -ī victus
sum; **win a round** congrēssū vinc·ō
-ere vīcī

bowling cōnōrum lūd·us -ī *m*,
cōnilūdī·um -ī *n*

bowl *intr* globum volutāre, cōnīs
lūdere

bowling alley (*single lane*) cōnōrum
ārēol·a -ae *f*; (*building of bowling*
alleys) aed·ēs -is *f* ad cōnilūdium

bowling ball glob·us -ī *m* lūsōrius,
glob·us -ī *m* cōnōrum

bowling lane cōnōrum ārēol·a -ae *f*

bowling pin cōn·us -ī *m* lūsōrius

make a strike omnēs cōnōs
(lūsōrīōs) simul dēcūt·iō -ere dēcūssī
dēcūssus

discus throwing discī iact·us -ūs *m*

fishing piscāt·us -ūs *m*

bait ēsc·a -ae *f*

catch, haul piscāt·us -ūs *m*

catch fish piscēs captāre

fish *intr* (hāmō) pisc•or -ārī -ātus
sum; **go fishing** piscātum eō īre īvī
or -iī

fish *s* pisc•is -is *m*

fisherman piscāt•or -ōris *m*

fish hook hām•us -ī *m*; **put the bait
on the hook** ēscam hāmō im•pōnō
-pōnere -pōsuī -pōsitus

fishing line līne•a -ae *f* (piscātōria)

fishing net rēt•e -is *n* (piscātōrium)

fishing rod cālam•us -ī *m*
piscātōrius, harūd•ō -inis *f*

fishing tackle instrūmēt•um -ī *n*
piscātōrium

net rēt•e -is *n*

football (*game*) pedifōlli•um -ī *n*,
pedilūdi•um -ī *n* (mōre Americānō)
(*ball*) pedifōll•is -is *m*; **play football**
pedifōlle lūdere

center centrāl•is -is *m*

end (**left, right**) (sinīster, dexter)
ālārī•us -ī *m* or ext•er -erī *m*

extra point pūnt•um -ī *n*
additīcium; **kick an extra point** prō
pūntō additīciō pede pulsāre

football player pedilūs•or -ōris *m*

football shoes calceāmēt•a -ōrum
npl pedifōliī

fullback pōster•us -ī *m*

goal line calx, calcis *f*, crēt•a -ae *f*

goal post pāl•us -ī *m* portae

guard *s* custōs, custōdis *m*

halfback sēmipōster•us -ī *m*

intercept inter•cīpiō -cīpere -cēpī
-cēptus

interception intercēpti•ō -ōnis *f*

interceptor intercēpt•or -ōris *m*

kick pede pulsāre, pede īc•ō īcere īcī
ictus

kickoff pede puls•us -ūs *m* initiālis

linesman iūd•ex -icis *m* lineārius

pass pedifōllis trāiect•us -ūs *m*

pass the ball to pedifōllem trā•iciō
-icere -iēcī -iēctus ad (+ *acc*)

play in the first (second) half in
parte priōre (ālerā) certāminis lūdere

quarterback cardināl•is -is *m*

punt pedifōllem pede pulsāre

sideline līne•a -ae *f* laterālis

tackle *s* assultāt•or -ōris *m*

tackle *tr* stern•ō -ere strāvī strātus

**touchdown: make or score a
touchdown** calcem (*or* crētam)
attīngō -ere attīgī attātus

golf pilamālle•us -ī *m*; **play golf**
pilamālleō lūdere

bunker obstrācul•um -ī *n*

caddy clāvig•er -erī *m*

fairway prāt•um -ī *n* perlōngum

golf club clāv•a -ae *f*; (*driver*) clāva
agitātōria; (*iron*) clāva fērrea

golf course pilamālleī camp•us -ī *m*

golfer pilamālleī lūs•or -ōris *m*
(lūstr•īx -īcis *f*)

green āre•a -ae *f* vīridis

hit īcō īcere īcī ictus

hole fovéol•a -ae *f*

miniature golf course loc•us -ī *m*
pilamālleī minūtī

sand trap harēnāri•a -ae *f*

score summ•a -ae *f* ictuum

stroke ict•us -ūs *m*

tee grūmul•us -ī *m*

tee off primum īc•ō -ere īcī

gymnastics gymnásitic·a -ae *f*

balance beam tīgn·um -ī *n*
aequilībriū

gym, gymnasium gymnási·um -ī *n*

gym shoes cálcē·ī -ōrum *mpl*
gýmnicī

horizontal bar ferr·um -ī *n*
trānsvérsū

horse ecúle·us -ī *m*

high jump salt·us -ūs *m* in altum

hockey lūd·us -ī *m* hoccēius, alsulégi·a
-ae *f*; **play hockey** hoccēiō lūdere

blue line líne·a -e *f* caerúlea

center centrál·is -is *mf*

defenseman dēfēns·or -ōris *m*

field hockey lūdus hoccēius *m*

goal port·a -ae *f*; **score a goal**
dīsculum in portam immitt·ō -ere
immīsi

goalie portári·us -ī *m*

hockey stick ped·um -ī *n*, fērul·a -ae
f repánda

left defenseman dēfēns·or -ōris *m*
sinīster

left wing ālári·us -ī *m* sinīster

puck dīscul·us -ī *m*; **pass the puck**
to dīsculum trā·iciō -ícere -iēcī
-iēctus ad (+ *acc*)

red line líne·a -ae *f* rubra

right defenseman dēfēns·or -ōris *m*
dexter

right wing ālári·us -ī *m* dexter

rink stádi·um -ī *n* glaciále

wing āl·a -ae *f*

hunting vēnāti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*the practice*
of hunting) vēnātūr·a -ae *f*

hunt *s* vēnát·us -ūs *m*

hunt *tr* & *intr* vēn·or -āri -ātus *sum*

hunting dog can·is -is *m* vēnáticus

hunting gear instrūmént·um -ī *n*
vēnātórium

hunting gun sclopétum -ī *n*
vēnātórium

game (*prey*) vēnāti·ō -ōnis *f*

shotgun focíl·e -is *n* bifistulátum

ice-skating (per gláciem) patināti·ō
-ōnis *f*

figure skating patināti·ō -ōnis *f*
artificiōsa

ice-skate *s* pátin·us -ī *m*

ice-skate *intr* (per gláciem) patináre

speed skating patināti·ō -ōnis *f*
vélōx

judo luctāti·ō -ōnis *f* Iūdóica (*or*
Iapónica)

karate luctāti·ō -ōnis *f* carática

lacrosse lūd·us -ī *m* lacrossēnsis

crosse *or* **lacrosse stick** cróci·a -ae
f; **cradle the crosse** cróciā agítāre

long jump salt·us -ūs *m* in longum

mountain climbing ascēnsi·ō -ōnis *f*
móntium

climb ascénd·ō -ere -ī ascēnsus

mountain climber ascēns·or -ōris *m*
(ascēnstr·īx -īcis *f*) móntium

repel fūne dēscénd·ō -ere -ī

rope fūn·is -is *m* scēnsórius

pentathlon pentáthl·um -ī *n*; **win the**
pentathlon pentáthlō vinc·ō -ere vícī

Ping-Pong mēnsális pilae lūd·us -ī *m*;
play Ping-Pong mēnsálī pilā lūdere

net rēt·e -is *n*

net ball pil·a -ae *f* rēte perstríngēns

paddle pālul·a -ae *f*

pole vaulting salt·us -ūs *m* pericárius

pole-vault *intr* pérticā sāl·iō -íre -uī

bar repágul·um -ī *n*; **to clear the**

bar repágulum trāsíl·iō -íre -uī

pole pértic·a -ae *f*

polo alsülégi·a -ae *f* equéstris

rollerskating patināti·ō -ónis *f* rotális

rollerblade pedírotis lābor lābī
lāpsus sum

rollerblades pedírot·ae -ārum *fpl*

rollerskate rotéllis patináre

rollerskates pátin·ī -órum *mpl*
rotálēs

skating *s* patināti·ō -ónis *f*

skate patináre

skate board tábul·a -ae *f* subrotáta

skater patiná·tor -tóris *m* (·trīx
-trícis *f*)

rowing rēmigāti·ō -ónis *f*

crew rēmígi·um -ī *n*

oar rēm·us -ī *m*

regatta certám·en -inis *f* rēmígīi

row rēmigáre

rowboat cumb·a -ae *f* or scaph·a -ae
f rēmígera

rower rēm·ex -igis *m*

rugby harpást·um -ī *n*; **play rugby**
harpástō lúdere

sailing vēlificāti·ō -ónis *f*

mast māl·us -ī *m*

sail vēl·um -ī *n*

sail vēlificáre

sailboat scaph·a -ae *f* vēlífica

tack *intr* scapham flect·ō -ere flexī

topsail súppar·um -ī *n*

skiing *s* nartāti·ō -ónis *f*

ski *s* nart·a -ae *f*; **put on skis** nartās
pédibus aptáre, nartās adstrín·gō
-gere -xī; **take off the skis** nartās
dēstríngere; **wax the skis** nartās
incēráre

ski *intr* nartáre

ski boot cálig·a -ae *f* nartātória

skier nartát·or -óris *m*, nartátr·īx
-ícis *f*

ski instructor nartándi magís·ter -trī
m (·tra -trae *f*)

ski jump suggést·us -ūs *m*
dēsultórius

ski jump(ing) dēsultúr·a -ae *f*
nartātória

ski lift anabáthr·um -ī *n* nartātóriūm

ski lodge cas·a -ae *f* nartātórum

ski pole bācul·um -ī *n* nartātóriūm

ski run currícul·um -ī *n* nivále

ski slope clīv·us -ī *m* nartātórius

slalom (*slope*) dēcúrsi·ō -ónis *f*
flexuōsa; (*contest*) certám·en -inis *n*
dēcursiōnis flexuōsae

snow nix, nivis *f*; **powdery snow** nix
pulvérea

soccer pedifólli·um -ī *n*, pedilúdi·um -ī
n; **play soccer** pedifólle lúdere

card: show the red (yellow) card
chártulam rubram (flāvam)
mōnstráre

corner kick pede puls·us -ūs *m*
anguláris

fullback (left, right) (siníster,
dexter) dēfēns·or -óris *m*, (sinístra,
dextra) dēfēnstr·īx -ícis *f*

get possession of the ball pedifólle
pót·ior -íri -ítus sum

goal port·a -ae *f*; **score a goal** follem
per portam pede pulsáre

goal! Hei, follis per portam!

goalie portāri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

goal area āre·a -ae *f* portāria

goal line līne·a -ae *f* portāria

half-time score stat·us -us *m* dīmīdiū
tēporis

header cāpite puls·us -ūs *m*

head the ball pedifóllem cāpite
pulsāre

heel kick calce puls·us -ūs *m*

kick pede pulsāre

linesman iūd·ex -icis *m* lineārius

midfield (center, left, right)
(centrālis, sinīster, dexter) lūs·or
-ōris *m* médius, (centrālis, sinīstra,
dextra) lūst·rix -rīcis *f*

pass the ball to pedifóllem
trāspulsāre ad

pass trāspuls·us -ūs *m*

penalty area āre·a -ae *f* poenālis

penalty kick pede puls·us -ūs *m*
poenālis; (*from 11 meters*) pede
puls·us -ūs *m* ūndecim metrōrum;
(*from 7 meters*) pede puls·us -ūs *m*
septem metrōrum

**period: play in the first (second,
third) period** in parte priōre (ālerā,
tértiā) certāminis lūdere

soccer player pedilūs·or -ōris *m*
(·tr·ix -rīcis) *f*

soccer shoes calceāmēt·a -ōrum *npl*
pedifólliū

soccer stadium stádi·um -ī *n*
pedifólliū

striker oppugnā·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx
-rīcis) *f*

sweeper lūs·or -ōris *m* liber, lūst·rix
-īcis *f* líbera

wing (left, right) (sinīster, dexter)
ālāri·us -ī *m*, (sinīstra, dextra) ālāri·a
-ae *f*

surf *intr* tábulā flūctīvagā per summās
undās prōlāb·or -ī prōlāpsus sum

surfboard tábul·a -ae *f* flūctīvaga

swimming *s* natāti·ō -ōnis *f*

back stroke natātiō *f* resupīna

dive *s* praeceps salt·us -ūs *m*

dive praeceps sāl·iō -īre -iī (*or* -uī)

diving board tábul·a -ae *f* dēsultōria

free-style natātiō *f* líbera

breast stroke natātiō *f* pectorālis (*or*
prōna)

swim natāre

swimming instructor natāndī
magist·er -rī *m* (·ra -rae *f*)

swimming meet certām·en -inis *n*
natātōrium

swimming pool piscīn·a -ae *f*,
natābul·um -ī *n*

tennis tenilūdi·um -ī *n*, tenísi·a -ae *f*;

play tennis tenísiā lūdere

backhand drive puls·us -ūs *m*
invérsus

doubles tenilūdi·um -ī *n* bis bīnōrum

drive *s* pila *f* vī prōpūlsa

drive *tr* **drive the ball** pilam vī
prōpéll·ō -ere prōpúlsī prōpúlsus

fault víti·um -ī *n*

hit pulsāre; **to hit out of bounds**
ultrā líneam pulsāre

net rēt·e -is *n*

net ball pil·a -ae *f* rēte praestríngēns

racket rētícul·um -ī *n* (manubriátum)

serve *s* dēiéc·us -ūs *m*

serve *intr* dēic·iō -ere dēiēcī

set āct·us -ūs *m*

singles tenilūdi·um -ī *n* singulāre

tennis ball pil·a -ae *f* tenísiae

tennis court camp·us -ī *m* tenisīae

tennis match certām·en -inis *n*
tenisīae

tennis player tenilūs·or -ōris *m*
(·trīx -trīcis *f*), lenilūdi·us -ī *m* (·a
-ae *f*)

track (*the sport*) cursūr·a -ae *f*; (*course
laid out for running*) currícul·um -ī *n*

finish line calx, calcis *f*, crēt·a -ae *f*;

reach the finish line calcem (*or
crētam*) attīng·ō -ere attigī attāctus

hundred meter dash curs·us -ūs *m*
centum metrōrum

lap currícul·um -ī *n*, spāti·um -ī *n*

long-distance running curs·us -ūs *m*
spātiū longī

runner curs·or -ōris *m*, curstr·īx
-īcis *f*

start inīti·um -ī *n* cursūs

volleyball foll·is -is *m* volātilis; (*game*)
lūd·us -ī *m* follis volātilis

net rēt·e -is *n*

play volleyball folle volātīlī lūdere

spike the ball follem magnā vī
prōpēll·ō -ere prōpūlsī prōpūlsus

water-skiing per summās undās
nartāti·ō -ōnis *f*

water-ski *intr* per summās undās
nartāre

water-ski *s* nart·a -ae *f* aquātica

weight-lifting sublāti·ō -ōnis *f*
lībrāmentōrum

wrestling luctāti·ō -ōnis *f*

wrestle luct·or -ārī luctātus *sum*

wrestler luctāt·or -ōris *m*

wrestling match certāmen -inis *n*
luctātiōnis

OTHER LEISURE ACTIVITIES

admission ticket tēsser·a -ae *f* aditiālis

amplifier amplificātr·um -ī *n*

amusement park hort·ī -ōrum *mpl*
pūblicī oblectārī

band symphōni·a -ae *f*

camera phōtomāchin·a -ae *f*,
māchīnul·a -ae *f* phōtogrāphica;
digital camera phōtomāchin·a
digitālis

card chārtul·a -ae *f* lūsōria; (**ace** bīni·ō
-ōnis *m*; **card game** chārtulārum
(lūsōriārum) lūd·us -ī *m*; **club** crux,
crucis (*gen pl*: crucum) *f*; **diamond**
rūt·a -ae *f*; **heart** cor, cordis *n*; **jack**
pedīsequ·us -ī *m*; **joker** chārtul·a -ae
f fortūnāns; **king** rēx, rēgis *m*; **queen**
rēgīn·a -ae *f*; **spade** pāl·a -ae *f*)

play cards chārtulīs (lūsōriīs) lūdere

pass cēterīs cēd·ō -ere cessī

shuffle (cut, deal) the cards
chārtulās mīsc·eō -ēre -uī mixtus
(sēpōn·ō -ere sēpōsuī sēpōsitus,
dīstrību·ō -ere -uī)

suit col·or -ōris *m*

trick vicēs *fppl* (sīngulae, bīnae,
trīnae, quatērnae)

trump *s* col·or -ōris *m* praelātus

trump *intr* (chārtulās) fēr·iō -īre

cartoon (*on television*) spectācul·um -ī
n animātum

checker latrūncul·us -ī *m*; **checkers**
(*game*) latrūnculōrum lūd·us -ī *m*;
play checkers latrūnculīs lūdere

crown corōnāre

king rēx, rēgis *m*

chess lūd·us -ī *m* scācōrum, scācilūdium
-ī *n*; **castle** *s* turr·is -is *f*; *tr*
adroccāre; **checkmate** rēgem tēn·eō
-ēre -uī; **checkmate!** cavē rēgī!;

chessboard scācāri·um -ī *n*; **chess piece** scāc·us -ī *m*; **king** rēx, rēgis *m*; **knight** equ·es -itis *m*; **pawn** ped·es -itis *m*; **queen** rēgīn·a -ae *f*; **rook** roch·us -ī *m*; **square** (*on chessboard*) cas·a -ae *f*; **play chess** scācīs lūdere

chore pēns·um -ī *n*; **do chores** pēnsa fāc·iō -ere fēcī factus

CD compāctus disc·us -ī *m*

CD player discophōni·um -ī *n*

comedy cōmoēdi·a -ae *f*

concert concēnt·us -ūs *m*

dance *intr* saltāre

dance *s* saltāti·ō -ōnis *f*

dancer saltāt·or -ōris *m*, saltātr·īx -īcis *f*

discotheque discothēc·a -ae *f*

documentary documentāri·um -ī *n*

evening vēsper·a -ae *f*; **in the evening** vēsperī; **on Saturday evening** diē Sātūrnī vēsperī

film pellicul·a -ae *f*, taeniol·a -ae *f*; **documentary film** pellicul·a -ae *f* documentāria; **educational film** pellicula didascālica; **movie film** pellicula cīnēmatogrāfica; **photographic film** taeniola phōtogrāfica; **show a film** pelliculam (cīnēmatogrāficam) exhib·eō -ēre -uī -itus

free time tempus *n* līberum

gamble āleā lūd·ō -ere lūsī

game (*prey*) praed·a -ae *f*, vēnāti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*play*) lūd·us -ī *m*

game show spectācul·um -ī *n* lūsōrium

gun sclopēt·um -ī *n*

hide and seek: play hide and seek per lūsum latitāre et quaeritāre

holidays fēri·ae -ārum *fpl*

library bibliothēc·a -ae *f*

monopoly monopōli·um -ī *n*; **play monopoly** monopōliō lūdere

motor boat nāvīcul·a -ae *f* automatāria

movie *adj* cīnēmatogrāfic·us -a -um, cīnēmātic·us -a -um

movie pellicul·a -ae *f* cīnēmatogrāfica;

go to see (watch) a movie pelliculam cīnēmatogrāficam vīs·ō -ere -ī (spectāre); **horror movie** pellicula horrīfera; **show a movie** pelliculam cīnēmatogrāficam exhib·eō -ēre -uī -itus

movie camera māchīnul·a -ae *f* cīnēmatogrāfica

movie film pellicul·a -ae *f* (*or taeniol·a -ae f*) cīnēmatogrāfica

movies imāgin·ēs -um *fpl* movēntes

movie screen līnte·um -ī *n* lātē extētum

movie theater cīnēmatē·um -ī *n*; **go the movie theater** (*or to the movies*) in cīnēmatēum eō ire īvī

music mūsic·a -ae *f*

musical *adj* mūsic·us -a -um

musical *s* melodrāmāti·um -ī *n*

musician mūsic·us -ī *m*, mūsic·a -ae *f*

nightclub discothēc·a -ae *f*

opera melodrām·a -atis *n*; **go to see an opera** melodrāma vīs·ō -ere -ī

operetta melodramāti·um -ī *n*

organ órgan·um -ī *n*

overture exórdi·um -ī *n* (melodrāmatis)

paint *s* pigmēt·um -ī *n*, col·or -ōris *m*

paint *tr & intr* ping·ō -ere pīnxī pictus

paint brush pēnicīll·us -ī *m*

painting (*the art; picture*) pictūr·a -ae *f*

pheasant phāsián·a -ae *f*

photograph imág·ō -inis *f*
phōtográphica

photograph *tr* phōtográphicē rédd·ō
-ere réddidī rédditus

photographer phōtograph·us -ī *m* (·a
-ae *f*)

photographic film taeníol·a -ae *f*
phōtográphica

piano clāvicórdi·um -ī *n*

picnic cénul·a -ae *f* subdiális; **go on a
picnic** excursiónem ad cénulam
subdiálem sūmendam fáci·ō -ere fēcī

picnic basket pānári·um -ī *n*

Ping-Pong mēnsális pilae lūs·us -ūs *m*;
play Ping-Pong mēnsáli pilā lūd·ō
-ere lūsī

play (*in a theater*) fábul·a -ae *f*

play lūd·ō -ere lūsī lūsum; (*an
instrument*) can·ō -ere cécinī cantus
(+ *abl of the instrument*); (*records,
tape recorder, tapes*) impéll·ō -ere
ímpulī impúlsus; **play a game** lūdum
lúdere; **play ball** pilā lúdere; **play
chess** scācīs lúdere; **play the drum**
týmpanum pulsáre;

playground áre·a -ae *f* lūsória

polka saltáti·ō -ónis *f* Bohémica; **dance
the polka** Bohémicē saltáre

radio radiophón·um -ī *n*; **by** (*or on the*)
radio radiophónicē; **listen to the
radio** radiophónum audíre; **turn
down the radio** vim radiophónī
remítt·ō -ere remísī remíssus; **turn
on (off) the radio** radiophónum
excitáre *or* impéd·iō -íre -ívī -ítus
(expedíre)

radio broadcast ěmíssi·ō -ónis *f*
radiophónica

radio station státi·ō -ónis *f*
radiophónica

record orb·is -is *m* phōnográphicus;

play (*listen to*) **records** orbēs
phōnográphicōs impéll·ō -ere ímpulī
impúlsus (aúdi·ō -íre -ívī)

record player mächínul·a -ae *f*
phōnográphica

remote control moderátr·um -ī *n*
remótum

sneakers cálce·ī -órum *mpl* gýmnicī

stage play fábul·a -ae *f* theátrális (*or
scáénica*)

stereo system systéma -atis *n*
stereophónicum

summer *s* aest·ās -átis *f*

summer vacation fēriae aestívae; **spend
the summer vacation** fēriās aestívās
agō ágere ěgī áctus

swing *intr* oscilláre

swing *s* oscíll·um -ī *n*

talk show spectácul·um -ī *n*
disputátivum

tape *s* (*audiotape*) phōnotaeníol·a -ae *f*;
(*audiocassette*) phōnocasēt·a -ae *f*

tape *tr* in phōnotaeníolā ímprim·ō -ere
impréssī impréssus

tape recorder magnētophón·um -ī *n*

television tēlevísi·ō -ónis *f*; **television
set** tēlevísóri·um -ī *n*; **run on** (**turn
off**) **the television** tēlevísórium
excitáre (impéd·iō -íre -ívī -ítus)
(expedíre); **turn down** (**turn up**) **the
television** vim tēlevísórii remítt·ō
-ere remísī remíssus (aúg·eō -ěre
auxī auctus); **watch television**
tēlevisiónem spectáre, tēlespectáre

television audience tēlevísór·ēs -um
mpl

television broadcast ěmíssi·ō -ónis *f*
tēlevísifica

television channel canál·is -is *m*
tēlevísificus

television commercial praecōni·um -ī *n*
tēlevīsīficum

television news tēlediurn·a -ōrum *npl*

television program progrāmm·a -atis *n*
tēlevīsīficum, ēmissi·ō -ōnis *f*
tēlevīsīfica

television screen quadr·um -ī *n*
tēlevīsīficum

television series séri·ēs -ēī *f* tēlevīsīfica

television set tēlevīsóri·um -ī *n*

television show spectācul·um -ī *n*
tēlevīsīficum

television station stāti·ō -ōnis *f*
tēlevīsīfica

television viewer tēlevís·or -ōris (·trīx
-trícis *f*)

tragedy tragoédi·a -ae *f*

TV room conclāve -is *n* tēlevīsóriō
instrúctum

vacation vacāti·ō -ōnis *f*, fēri·ae -ārum
fpl; **at the end of vacation** fēriīs

peráctīs; **spend the vacation** fēriās
agō ágere ēgī āctus; **summer**
vacation fēriae aestívae, vacātiō
aestíva

video cassette casét·a -ae *f*
magnētoscópia; **listen to (play) a**
video cassette aúd·iō -íre -ívi *or* -īi
-ítus (ēvól·o -ere -ī) casétam
magnētoscópiam

video cassette recorder (VCR)
magnētoscópi·um -ī *n*

video game lūs·us -ūs *m*
magnētoscópicus; **play video games**
lūdōs magnētoscópicōs lúdere

walk: go for a walk dēambulāre

week hébdom·as -adis *f*, septimān·a -ae
f

weekday di·ēs -ēī *m* prōfēstus

weekend fin·is -is *m* hebdómadis; **on**
the weekend hebdómade exeúnte,
fine hebdómadis

Chapter VI: The Human Body

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

The teacher notices that Linda looks sick. She asks Linda what is wrong with her.

Magistra	Linda, esne tū aegrōta?	<i>Teacher: Linda, are you sick?</i>
Linda	Ita, magistra.	<i>Linda: Yes, teacher.</i>
Magistra	Pállida es. Quid est tibi?	<i>You are pale. What's the matter with you?</i>
Linda	Stómachus meus dolet.	<i>My stomach hurts.</i>
Magistra	Dolétne quicquam áliud?	<i>Does anything else hurt?</i>
Linda	Caput meum dolet.	<i>My head hurts.</i>
Magistra	Habésne febrem?	<i>Do you have a fever?</i>
Linda	Fortásse. Frōns et genae sunt cálidae.	<i>Maybe. My forehead and my cheeks are hot.</i>
Magistra	Vise médicum quam primum.	<i>Go see a doctor as soon as possible.</i>
Linda	Grátias tibi, magistra.	<i>Thank you, teacher.</i>

LEVEL II

A doctor is called in for the sick little girl, Scintilla.

Scintilla	Salvē, médice. Mē male hábeō hódie.	<i>Scintilla: Hello, doctor. I'm not feeling good today.</i>
Méδικus	Salvē, Scintilla. Quid est?	<i>Doctor: Hello, Scintilla. What's the trouble?</i>
Scintilla	Mē male hábeō. Aegrōta enim sum.	<i>I don't feel good. You see, I'm sick.</i>
Méδικus	Quid dolet? Habésne dolórem stómachī?	<i>What hurts? Do you have a stomach ache?</i>

Scintilla	Vae mihi, caput dolet; stómachus dolet; faucēs dolent.	<i>Oh my, my head hurts; my stomach hurts; my throat hurts.</i>
Médicus	Frōns vidétur cálida. Febrem magnam habēs. Habēsne cibī appeténtiam bonam?	<i>Your forehead seems hot. You are running a high fever. Do you have a good appetite?</i>
Scintilla	Mínimē. Ego nūllam omnínō appeténtiam hábeō.	<i>No. I have no appetite at all.</i>
Médicus	Potésne noctū dormíre?	<i>Are you able to sleep at night?</i>
Scintilla	Noctem pervigilábam.	<i>I was awake all night long.</i>
Médicus	Gravédine labóráš. Ecce, medicínam tibi hábeō. Et necesse est tibi manére in lectō duōs trēsve diēs.	<i>You're suffering from a cold. Look, I have medicine for you. And it is necessary for you to stay in bed for two or three days.</i>
Scintilla	Num in scholam íre possum?	<i>I can't go to school, can I?</i>
Médicus	Mínimē vērō!	<i>Definitely not.</i>
Scintilla	Ō, grátias, médice; multās grátias! Iam mē mélius hábeō.	<i>Oh, thanks, doctor; thanks a lot. I already feel better.</i>

LEVEL III

A doctor arrives at the scene of a fire to treat one of the victims, a young man.

Médicus	Quid nōmen est tibi? Et quid tibi cóntigit?	Doctor: <i>What is your name? And what happened to you?</i>
Adulēscēns	Nōmen mihi est Domínicus. Fuit incéndium in cēnáculō meō.	Young man: <i>My name is Dominic. There was a fire in my apartment.</i>
Médicus	Incendíumne? Quómodo effūgísti?	<i>A fire? How did you escape?</i>
Adulēscēns	Flammae capíllōs et fáciem et bráccia cremábant. Deínde dē fenéstrā in terram dēsílui.	<i>The flames burned my hair and my face and my arms. Then I jumped from the window to the ground.</i>

Médicus	Licet vídeam num ūlla ossa frēgeris. Genū dextrum et tālus dexter sunt tumidíssima; fortásse crūs frēgístī.	<i>Let me see whether you have broken any bones. Your right knee and ankle are very swollen; maybe you broke your leg.</i>
Adulēscēns	Cēnsēō mē étiam áliquās costās frēgísse. Latus dextrum valdē dolet.	<i>I think that I also broke some ribs. My right side hurts a lot.</i>
Médicus	Potésne pedem dextrum movére?	<i>Can you move your right foot?</i>
Adulēscēns	Possum. Sed dextrō pede stāre nōn possum. Ego quidem nōn omnínō cōnsúrgere possum.	<i>I can. But I can't stand on my right foot. In fact, I can't get up at all.</i>
Médicus	Nōlī temptāre cōnsúrgere! Crēdíbile est tē áliqua ossa frēgísse.	<i>Don't try to get up. It is possible that you broke some bones.</i>
Adulēscēns	Quid fáciam?	<i>What should I do?</i>
Médicus	Prīmum dābō tibi pílulam quae dolórem levábit. Deínde púerī meī tē in lectícā domum meam gerent. Possum cūrāre tē mélius ibi.	<i>First, I will give you a pill which will relieve your pain. Then my boys will carry you in a litter to my home. I can take care of you better there.</i>
Adulēscēns	Tibi hábeō magnam grátiam ob beneficium tuum.	<i>I am very grateful to you for your kindness.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

ankle tál•us -ī *m*

appendix appēnd•ix -icis *f*

arm brácc•i•um -ī *n*; (*upper*) lacért•us -ī *m*

armpit āl•a -ae *f*, axíll•a -ae *f*

artery artéri•a -ae *f*

back terg•um -ī *n*

backside postíc•um -ī *n*

beard barb•a -ae *f*

belly alv•us -ī *f*

belly button umbilíc•us -ī *m*

bile bīl•is -is *f*

bladder vēsíc•a -ae *f*

blood sangu•is -inis *m*; (*outside the body*) cru•or -óris *m*

bone os, ossis *n*

bosom sin•us -ūs *m*

bowels alv•us -ī *f*

brain cérebr•um -ī *n*

breast pect•us -oris *n*; (*female*) mamm•a -ae *f*, mammíll•a -ae *f*

buttocks nat•ēs -ium *fpl*

calf sūr•a -ae *f*

cartilage cartilág•ō -inis *f*

cheek gen·a -ae *f*

chin ment·um -ī *n*

colon cōl·on -ī *n*

curl cirr·us -ī *m*, cincínnul·us -ī *m*

curly cirrāt·us -a -um, cincínnul·us -a -um; **to have curly hair** cincínnulō capíllō esse

diaphragm praecórdi·a -ōrum *npl*

ear aur·is -is *f*; (*outer*) aurícul·a -ae *f*

elbow cúbit·um -ī *n*, uln·a -ae *f*

esophagus gul·a -ae *f*

eye ocul·us -ī *m*

eyeball orb·is -is *m* oculi

eyebrow supercīli·um -ī *n*

eyelashes cíli·um -ī *n*

eyelid pálpebr·a -ae *f*

face fáci·ēs -ēī *f*

finger dígit·us -ī *m*

finger tip dígitus *m* extrémus

index finger ind·ex -icis *m*

little finger dígitus *m* mínimus

middle finger dígitus *m* médius

ring finger dígitus *m* ānulāris

thumb poll·ex -icis *m*

finger nail ungu·is -is *m*

fist pug·us -ī *m*

flesh car·ō -nis *f*

foot pēs, pedis *m*

forehead frōns, frontis *f*

genitals genitál·ia -ium *npl*; (*female*) muliétr·ia -ium *npl*; (*male*) viríl·ia -ium *npl*

groin ingu·en -inis *n*

gum gingí·v·a -ae *f*

hair (*a single hair or hair collectively*) capíll·us -ī *m*, crīn·is -is *m*

hair of the head capíll·ī -ōrum *npl*; com·a *ae f*; caesári·ēs -ēī *f*

hamstring popl·es -itis *m*

hand man·us -ūs *f*

head cap·ut -itis *n*

back of the head occipíti·um -ī *n*

top of the head vert·ex -icis *m*

hearing (*sense*) audīt·us -ūs *m*

heart cor, cordis *n*

heel cal·x -cis *f*

hip cox·a -ae *f*, coxénd·ix -icis *f*

intestines intestín·a -ōrum *npl*

jaw maxíll·a -ae *f*

joint artícul·us -ī *m*

kidneys rēn·ēs -ium *npl*

knee gen·ū -ūs *n*

kneecap patéll·a -ae *f*

knuckle artícul·us -ī *m* dígitī

lap grémi·um -ī *n*

leg crūs, crūris *n*

ligament ligám·en -inis *n*

lip labr·um -ī *n*

lower lip labrum *n* inférius

upper lip labrum *n* supérius

liver iec·ur -oris *n*

lung pulm·ō -ōnis *m*

marrow medúll·a -ae *f*

mouth ōs, ōris *n*

muscle múscul·us -ī *m*

mustache súbi·um -ī *n*

mucus mūc·us -ī *m*

nail ungu·is -is *m*; **to cut the nails** unguēs résec·ō -āre -uī -tus

navel umbilíc·us -ī *m*

neck coll·um -ī *n*, cerv·īx -ícis *f*

nipple papíll·a -ae *f*

nose nās·us -ī *m*
nostrils nār·ēs -ium *fpl*
organ vīsc·us -eris *n*
palate palāt·um -ī *n*
pancreas pāncrē·as -atis *n*
pelvis pelv·is -is *f*
penis pēn·is -is *m*
phlegm pītūft·a -ae *f*
pill pílul·a -ae *f*
pupil pūpíl·a -ae *f*
rectum ān·us -ī *m*
rib cost·a -ae *f*
saliva salív·a -ae *f*
shinbone tǐbi·a -ae *f*
shoulder húmer·us -ī *m*
shoulder blade scápul·a -ae *f*
side lat·us -eris *n*, íli·a -órum *npl*
sight (*sense*) vīs·us -ūs *m*
skull calvāri·a -ae *f*
smell (*sense*) odōrāt·us -ūs *m*
sole sol·um -ī *n*, plant·a -ae *f*
spine spīn·a -ae *f*
spit spūt·um -ī *n*
stomach stómach·us -ī *m*, ven·ter -tris
m
sweat sūd·or -óris *m*

taste (*sense*) gustāt·us -ūs *m*
tear lácrim·a -ae *f*
temple temp·us -oris *n*
tendon tend·ó -inis *m*
testicle testícul·us -ī *m*
thigh fem·ur -oris *n*
thumb poll·ex -icis *m*
throat fauc·ēs -ium *fpl*
toe dígit·us -ī *m* (*pedis*)
big toe poll·ex -icis *m*
toenail ungu·is -is *m* *pedis*
tongue lingu·a -ae *f*
tonsils tonsíll·ae -árum *fpl*
tooth dēns, dentis *m*
incisors dentēs *mpl* *prīmórēs*
molars dentēs *mpl* *maxillárēs*
touch (*sense*) tact·us -ūs *m*
vagina vāgín·a -ae *f*
vein vēm·a -ae *f*
vertebra vértebr·a -ae *f*
windpipe artēri·a -ae *f*
womb úter·us -ī *m*
waist média pars *f* *córporis*
wrist prīmóris man·us -ūs *f*
wrist bone carp·us -ī *m*

Chapter VII: Health and Physical Fitness

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I A trainer interviews a young athlete.

Exercitátor	Claudī, vīsne esse āthlēta?	Trainer: <i>Claude, do you want to be an athlete?</i>
Claúdius	Ita. Ego cōtīdiē mē exerceō.	Claude: <i>Yes. I exercise every day.</i>
Exercitátor	Quid facis?	<i>What do you do?</i>
Claúdius	Ego cōtīdiē tolūtīm cúrsitō.	<i>I jog daily.</i>
Exercitátor	Euge! Quam longē tolūtīm cúrsitās?	<i>Terrific! How far do you jog?</i>
Claúdius	Duo mīlia pássuum tolūtīm cúrsitō.	<i>I jog two miles.</i>
Exercitátor	Quid áliud facis?	<i>What else do you do?</i>
Claúdius	Sī tempus mihi est, librāmēnta tollō.	<i>If I have time, I lift weights.</i>
Exercitátor	Euge! Quid áliud facis?	<i>Terrific! What else do you do?</i>
Claúdius	Ego natō in piscīnā nostrā.	<i>I swim in our swimming pool.</i>
Exercitátor	Sī tū haec assíduē faciēs, tū quidem eris āthlēta summus.	<i>If you do this regularly, you'll surely become a top athlete.</i>

LEVEL II The trainer attends to an injured athlete.

Exercitátor	Paule, quid tibi est?	Trainer: <i>Paul, what's wrong with you?</i>
Paulus	Ego mihi nócuī in gymnásiō.	Paul: <i>I hurt myself in the gym.</i>
Exercitátor	Quid áccidit? Vídeō contūsiónēs in crūribus.	<i>What happened? I see bruises on your legs.</i>
Paulus	Ego et amīcus currēbāmus; ego cāsū cēcidī et mē cóntudī.	<i>My friend and I were running; I accidentally fell and bruised myself.</i>

Exercitátor	Habēsne dolórem ingéntem?	<i>Do you have a lot of pain?</i>
Paulus	Sānē. Ecce genū sinístrum tumēscit.	<i>Yes. Look, my left knee is swelling up.</i>
Exercitátor	Vídeō genū esse tumidíssimum.	<i>I see that your knee is very swollen.</i>
Paulus	Quid fáciam?	<i>What should I do?</i>
Exercitátor	Primum ómnium, fovē illud genū in aquā frígida bis in diē.	<i>First of all, soak that knee in cold water twice a day.</i>
Paulus	Id hódie ter iam fōvī, sed nihil prōdest.	<i>I've already soaked it three times today, but it doesn't do any good.</i>
Exercitátor	Potēsne ambulāre?	<i>Are you able to walk?</i>
Paulus	Agrē. Cum ambulāre temptō, genū vehemēter dolet. Quid fáciam nēsciō.	<i>Hardly. When I try to walk, my knee hurts terribly. I don't know what to do.</i>
Exercitátor	Cum primum fierī potest, ī in valētudinārium. Nōn possum id cūrāre hīc. Mēdicus genū sánābit.	<i>As soon as it is possible, go to the infirmary. I can't treat it here. The doctor will heal your knee.</i>

LEVEL III A mother checks her daughter's health.

Māter	Amánda, quid est tibi? Nōn salva vidēris. Óculi rubent et vidēris febricitāre.	Mother: <i>Amanda, what's wrong with you? You don't look well. Your eyes are red and you seem to be running a fever.</i>
Amánda	Vídeor labōrāre gravēdine. Faucēs meae sunt raucae et ego contínuē álgeō et cōstānter tússiō.	Amanda: <i>I seem to be suffering from a cold. My throat is hoarse, and I am continually cold, and constantly coughing.</i>
Māter	Mírū est, nam valētúdine bonā úteris.	<i>That's strange, since you enjoy good health.</i>
Amánda	Vēra dīcis, māter. Valētúdinem semper cūrāvī. Assíduē mē exérceō.	<i>You're right, mother. I have always taken care of my health. I exercise constantly.</i>

Māter	Id sciō. Tū es cōrporis hābitūs excellētis. Fortāsse tū hanc gravēdinem contrāxistī apud scholam.	<i>I know that. You are in excellent shape. Maybe you caught this cold at school.</i>
Amānda	Id fierī potest, Mamma. Plēraēque ex amīcīs meīs gravēdine labōrant.	<i>That's possible, Mom. Most of my friends are suffering from colds.</i>
Māter	Videō. Fortāsse āliquis puer, gravēdine labōrāns, tē bāsiāvit.	<i>I see. Perhaps some boy with a cold kissed you.</i>
Amānda	Rēs omnīnō nōn ita est. Ego iam tussiebam āntequam mē bāsiāvit!	<i>That's not at all the case. I already had a cough before he kissed me.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

ache *s* dol·or -ōris *m*

ache *intr* dol·eō -ēre -uī; **my muscle aches** mūsculus mihi dolet

aching dol·ēns -ētis

acne acn·ē -ēs *f*

acupuncture acūpūctūr·a -ae *f*

acute (*illness*) acūt·us -a -um

adrenaline adrēnālīn·um -ī *n*; **the adrenaline flows** adrēnālīnum fluit

agile āgil·is -is -e

ail: what ails you? quid est tibi?

ailment mal·um -ī *n*

appetite (cibī) appetēti·a -ae *f*; **lack of appetite** inēdi·a -ae *f*; **to give s.o. a good appetite** ālicui (cibī) appetēntiam excitāre *or* fāc·iō -ere fecī factus

apply (*a remedy*) adhīb·eō -ēre -uī -itus

arthritis arthrīt·is -idis *f*

aspirin aspirīn·um -ī *n*

asthma asthm·a -atis *n*

athlete āthlēt·a -ae *mf*; **like an athlete** āthlētice

athletic āthlētīc·us -a -um; **athletic competition** āthlētārum certām·en -inis *n*

athletics āthlētīc·a -ae *f*

attack *s* (*of illness*) īmpet·us -ūs *m*, accēssi·ō -ōnis *f*

attack *tr* (*of a disease*) occupāre

bad aliēnus -a -um; **wine is bad for you** vīnum est aliēnum tibi

bad breath foet·or -ōris *m*

bald calv·us -a -um

baldness calvīti·um -ī *n*

bandage *s* fāsci·a -ae *f*

bandage *tr* ligāre

bathe (*a sore limb*) fōv·eō -ēre fōvī

bed lect·us -ī *m*; **to be confined to bed** lectō tēn·eor -ērī tentus sum; **to get out of bed** ē lectō sur·gō -gere -rēxī

bed-ridden valētūdīnāri·us -a -um

biopsy biōpsi·a -ae *f*

black and blue līvid·us -a -um; **black and blue mark** līv·or -ōris *m*

blood pressure prēssi·ō -ōnis *f* sāguinis

bloodshot: he has bloodshot eyes *oculi eius ságuine suffúsi sunt*

boil *fūrúncul·us -ī m*

bowlegged *valg·us -a -um*

breathe *spīrāre; to breathe in* *īnspīrāre; to breathe out* *expīrāre*

bruise *s contúsi·ō -ónis f*

bruise *tr contúnd·ō -ere cóntudī contúsus*

bundle up *sē bene opér·iō -īre -uī*

cancer *can·cer -crī m*

capsule *cápsul·a -ae f*

cardiac arrest *stas·is -eōs f cardíaca*

carcinoma *carcinóm·a -atis n*

care *cūr·a -ae f; take good care of your health!* *cūrā dīligēter valētúdinem tuam!*

catarracts *catarráct·ae -árum fpl oculárēs*

cause (*pain, swelling*) *móveō movére mōvī mōtus*

chicken pox *varicéll·ae -árum fpl*

chronic *long·us -a -um, diūtúrnus -a -um*

coach (*of gymnastic training*) *exercitát·or -óris m, (·rīx -rīcis f)*

cold *s gravéd·ō -inis f; to catch a cold* *gravédinem cón·trahō -tráhere -tráxī -tráctus; to have a cold* *gravédine labōráre*

cold *adj frígíd·us -a -um; to feel cold* *álg·eō -ére alsī*

complexion *col·or -óris m; having a healthy complexion* *colōrát·us -a -um*

condition *stat·us -ūs m; physical condition* *córpōris hábit·us -ūs m*

confined to bed *lectō tenērī*

contract *cóntrah·ō -ere contráxī contráctus; to contract an illness*

morbum or advérsam valētúdinem contráhere

convalesce *convalésc·ō -ere*

cool off *tr refrīgerāre || intr refrīgerārī*

cough *intr túss·iō -īre*

cough *s túss·is -is m; to have a cough* *túss·iō -īre*

cough drop *pastíll·us -ī m tussiculáris*

cramp *convúlsi·ō -ónis f*

curable *sānábil·is -is -e*

cure *sānāre*

dentist *médic·us -ī m dentárius; medic·a -ae f dentária*

dermatologist *dermatólog·us -ī m (·a -ae f)*

diabetes *diabét·ēs -is m mellítus*

diaphragm *praecórdi·a -órum npl*

diet *s victūs rát·iō -ónis f*

diet *intr victūs ratióinem observāre*

digest *cón·coquō -cóquere -cóxī -cóctus*

digestion *concócti·ō -ónis f*

disease *morb·us -ī m*

dizziness *vertíg·ō -inis f*

dizzy *vertiginós·us -a -um*

doctor *médic·us -ī m, medic·a -ae f*

doctor's office *medicín·a -ae f*

dose *pórti·ō -ónis f; small dose* *portiúncul·a -ae f*

drug (*as remedy, medicine*) *medicámént·um -ī n, medicám·en -inis n; (as hallucinogen)* *medicāment·um -ī n psychotrópicum*

enjoy (*good health*) *ūtōr ūtī ūsus sum (valētúdiēe prósperā)*

exercise *s exercitáti·ō -ónis f*

exercise *intr sē exérc·eō -ére -uī*

exhale *spíritum émítt·ō -ere émísi émíssus*

fart *s* pēdit·um -ī *n*

fart *intr* pēd·ō -ere pepēdī

fat obēs·us -a -um (*opp*: grācil·is -is -e)

fatigue fatigāti·ō -ōnis *f*

fever febr·is -is *f*; **constant fever**

contínua febris; **high fever** magna *or* ardēns febris; **slight fever** febrīcul·a -ae *f*; **to run a fever** febrīcitāre

fracture fractūr·a -ae *f*

germ germ·en -inis *n*

glaucoma glaucōm·a -atis *n*

go down (*fever*) conquiēsc·ō -ere conquiēvī; (*swelling*) sē summītt·ō -ere summīsi

gym gymnási·um -ī *n*

gym instructor exercitāt·or -ōris *m*; exercitāt·ix -ícis *f*

gymnastic gymnāstic·us -a -um

gymnastics ars, artis *f* gymnāstica

hale and hardy salv·us et vālid·us -a -um

hard on inimíc·us -a -um (+ *dat*)

have or suffer from (*an illness, a disease*) affic·ior áffici afféctus sum (+ *abl*) *or* labōrāre (+ *abl*, ab + *abl*, ex + *abl*); **that man has cancer** ille cancrō afficitur *or* cancrō labórat

heal *tr* sánāre **II** *intr* sánēsc·ō -ere

health (*good or bad*) valētúd·ō -inis *f*; **bad health** advérsa (*or* mala, gravis, infirma) valētúdō; **bad health suddenly hit me** mala valētúdō mē repētē invásit; **good health** bona, (*or* firma, cōmmoda, próspera) valētúdō; **in sound health** vālid·us -a -um

health food alimént·um -ī *n* salúbre

healthy sán·us -a -um, salv·us -a -um

heart attack ímpet·us -ūs *m* cardíacus

heart failure dēfēcti·ō -ōnis *f* cardíaca

heart transplant cordis trānsplantāti·ō -ōnis *f*

hernia hérni·a -ae *f*

heroin heroín·um -ī *n* **to use heroin** heroínō ūtor ūtī ūsus sum

high blood pressure hypertóni·a -ae *f*

hoarse rauc·us -a -um

hormone hormón·um -ī *n*

hospital valētūdinári·um -ī *n*

hygiene hygiēni·ē -ēs *f*; **practice hygiene** hygiēniēn exercēre

hygienic hygiēnic·us -a -um

illness morb·us -ī *m*, (mala) valētúd·ō -inis *f*; **serious illness** gravis valētúdō

ills mal·a -ōrum *npl*

indigestion crūdīt·ās -átis *f*

infirmary valētūdinári·um -ī *n*

inflamm inflammāre

inflammation inflammāti·ō -ōnis *f*

irritate exasperāre

kidney stones cálcul·ī -ōrum *mpl* rēnālēs

jog tolūtīm cursitāre

lack of appetite inédi·a -ae *f*

laxative medicām·en -inis *n* laxātívum

lift weights librāmént·a -ōrum *npl* toll·ō -ere sústulī sublātus

ligament ligām·en -inis *n*

lotion linimént·um -ī *n*

lump túbércul·um -ī *n*

medical practice medicín·a -ae *f*

medication medicāmént·um -ī *n*

medicine medicín·a -ae *f*; **to practice medicine** medicínā exérc·eō -ēre -uī

mouthwash collūtóri·um -ī *n*

mumps parótít·is -idis *f*

muscle mŭscul·us -ī *m*; **pull a muscle**
mŭsculum distórqu·eō -ĕre distórsi
distórtus

musclebound mŭsculis nimis
cōnstríct·us -a

muscle cramp mŭsculī convúlsi·ō
-ōnis *f*

muscle spasm mŭsculī spasm·us -ī *m*

muscular mŭsculós·us -a -um

muscular dystrophy dystróphi·a -ae *f*
mŭsculáris

nearsighted my·ops -ópis

nearsightedness myópi·a -ae *f*

nerve nerv·us -ī *m*

nourishment alimént·um -ī *n*

nurse nosócom·a -ae *f*; nosócom·us -ī *m*

nursing home gerontocómi·um -ī *n*

obese obés·us -a -um

obesity obésit·ās -átis *f*

ophthalmologist ophthalmólog·us -ī *m*
(·a -ae *f*)

pacemaker impulsóri·um -ī *n*
cardíacum

pain dol·or -óris *m*; **severe pain** ingēns
or véhemēns dolor

patient *s* ae·ger -grī *m*, ae·gra -grae *f*

physical condition córporis hábit·us
-ūs *m*

pill pílul·a -ae *f*

pimple pústul·a -ae *f*

pulse vĕnárūm puls·us -ūs *m*; (**fast**
vegétior; **weak** languídior); **to feel**
s.o.'s pulse vĕnās *or* pulsum
vĕnárūm alicúius tentāre

psychiatrist psýchíā·ter -trī *m* (·tra -trae
f)

psychologist psýchológic·us -ī *m*
(·a -ae *f*)

radiation treatment cūrátī·ō -ónis *f*
radiális

recover recíp·iō -ere recépī suam
valētúdinem bonam; **to recover**
from a serious illness ē gravī morbō
recreári

relieve levāre

remedy for remédi·um -ī *n* (+ *gen*)

run curr·ō -ere cucurrī cursum

running cursúr·a -ae *f*

runny nose distillātió·n·ēs -um *fpl*

shape: to be in bad (good) shape malī
(bonī) hábitus esse, in malō (bonō)
hábitū esse

shiver trem·or -óris *m*; (*severe*)
membrórum quassāti·ō -ónis *f*

shiver trem·ō -ere -uī

shortness of breath anhĕlāti·ō -ónis *f*

sick ae·ger -gra -grum, aegrót·us -a
-um; **to get sick** in morbum íncid·ō
-ere -ī

sickly male válid·us -a -um

sickness morb·us -ī *m*

situps: to do situps idéntidem resíd·eō
-ĕre resēdī

skin cut·is -is *f* (**pale** pállida; **dry** árida;
soft mollis; **tough** dūra; **wrinkled**
rŭgós·us -a -um)

skinny macilént·us -a -um

slim grácil·is -is -e (*opp*: obēsus)

smallpox variól·ae -árūm *fpl* **smallpox**
vaccination vaccínāti·ō -ónis *f*
variolárum

sneeze stérn·uō -úere -uī

sneezing sternūmént·um -ī *n*

sore dol·ēns -éntis; **my back is sore**
tergum mihi dolet

sound ínte·ger -gra -grum

spasm spasm·us -ī *m*

sprain *s* luxātúr·a -ae *f*

sprain *tr* luxāre

stroke apoplēxi·a -ae *f* cérebrī

strong válid·us -a -um (*opp*: imbēcíl·us -a -um)

sun tan adústus col·or -óris *m*; **to get a sun tan** coloráre

suntanned adústus

surgeon chīrúrg·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

sweat s sūd·or -óris *m*; **to break a sweat** īnsūdáre

sweat *intr* sūdáre

swell sē attóll·ō -ere (*opp*: sē summíttere)

swell up (*of limbs*) túrg·eō -ēre tursī

swollen túmid·us -a -um

symptom not·a -ae *f*, sign·um -ī *n*

tablet pastíl·us -ī *m*

tendonitis tendovāgīnít·is -idis *f*

throat fauc·ēs -ium *fpl*

toothache dol·or -óris *m* déntium

toothbrush pēnícul·us -ī *m* dentárius

toothpaste past·a -ae *f* dentária

train *tr* (*for physical proficiency*) exercitáre **II** *intr* sē exercitáre

trainer (*of athletes*) exercitát·or -óris *m*, exercitátr·īx -ícis *f*

treat cūráre

treatment (for) cūrāti·ō -ónis *f* (+ *gen of illness*)

trouble: to have stomach trouble stómachō labōráre

tuberculosis phthís·is -is *f*

turn for the worse in dētérius inclīnārī

virus vīr·us -ī *n*; **there is a virus going around** vīrus percrebrēscit

vitamin vitamín·um -ī *n*

well salv·us -a -um

wrinkle rūg·a -ae *f*

wrinkled rūgós·us -a -um

Chapter VIII: Food and Drink

CONVERSATIONS

	LEVEL I	A waitress waits on a senator.
Minístra	Salvē, senátor. Possúmne tibi ministráre?	<i>Waitress: Hello, senator. Can I help you?</i>
Senátor	Étiam.	<i>Senator: Yes.</i>
Minístra	Vísne súmere ientáculum an prándium?	<i>Do you want to eat breakfast or lunch?</i>
Senátor	Quín bene máne est. Ítaque ientáculum sūmam, quaesō.	<i>Why, it's early in the morning. And so I'll have breakfast, please.</i>
Minístra	Vísne ōva frīcta an ōva mīxta an ōva dūra an ápala?	<i>Do you want fried eggs or scrambled eggs or hard-boiled eggs or soft-boiled?</i>
Senátor	Volō habére láganum ex ōvīs.	<i>I want to have an omelet.</i>
Minístra	Vísne lardum cum láganō?	<i>Do you want bacon with your omelet?</i>
Senátor	Étiam, at tantúmmodo pauca segménta.	<i>Yes, but just a few strips.</i>
Minístra	Vísne pānem tostum an pāniculōs?	<i>Do you want toast or rolls?</i>
Senátor	Affer ad mē áliquid pānis tostī.	<i>Bring me some toast.</i>
Minístra	Et quid vīs pōtáre? Cáffeam?	<i>And what do you want to drink? Coffee?</i>
Senátor	Ita, pocíllum cáffea cum cremō. Et própera! Fame mórior.	<i>Yes, a cup of coffee with cream. And hurry! I'm dying of hunger.</i>
Minístra	Ientáculum tuum mox hīc erit.	<i>Your breakfast will soon be here.</i>

 LEVEL II **A waiter serves dinner.**

Miníster	Salvē. Possúmne tibi nunc servíre, bone vir?	Waiter: Hello. Can I serve you now, sir?
Philíppus	Sānē potes.	Philip: Yes, indeed, you can.
Miníster	Quid in cēnā sūmēs?	What will you have for supper?
Philíppus	Búbulam assam velim, quaesō.	I'd like roast beef, please.
Miníster	Utrum sēmicóctam an percóctam?	Rare or well done?
Philíppus	Percóctam, quaesō. Et pōma terréstria frīcta.	Well done, please. And fried potatoes.
Miníster	Vísne iūs an acētária?	Do you want soup or a salad?
Philíppus	Quod iūs habēs hódīe?	What kind of soup do you have today?
Miníster	Iūs collýricum suāve ex búbulā.	Delicious beef noodle soup.
Philíppus	Accípiam acētária.	I'll take the salad.
Miníster	Vísne pocíllum cáffee an pocíllum theae?	Do you want a cup of coffee or a cup of tea?
Philíppus	Neutrum vērō. Praéferō vīnum.	Actually, neither. I prefer wine.
Miníster	Utrum vīnum album an sanguíneum?	White wine or red?
Philíppus	Accípiam vīnum sanguíneum. Praéferō vīnum austérum vīnō dulcī.	I'll take the red wine. I prefer dry wine to sweet wine.
Miníster	Vísne bellária?	Do you want dessert?
Philíppus	Estne in promptū placénta ex socolátā?	Is chocolate cake available?
Miníster	Sānē quidem. Vísne áliquid ámplius?	Yes, indeed. Do you want anything else?
Philíppus	Nihil ámplius, grátias.	Nothing else, thanks.
Miníster	Appónam cibum quam primum.	I'll serve your meal as soon as I can.

LEVEL III Planning a shopping trip.

Māter	Phyllis, nōbīs obsōnāndum est hōdiē māne. Esne prompta?	Mother: <i>Phyllis, we have to go shopping this morning. Are you ready?</i>
Phyllis	Bene, Mamma. Dīc mihi quid velīs et ego ōmnia in hāc tābulā dēnotābō.	Phyllis: <i>Fine, Mom. Tell me what you want and I'll jot down everything on this tablet.</i>
Māter	Prīmum ōmnium, ad laniēnam ībimus.	<i>First of all, we will go to the butcher shop.</i>
Phyllis	Quibus cārnibus egēmus?	<i>What meats do we need?</i>
Māter	Velim ēmere offās porcīnās et būbulam assam, et fortāsse āliquot hillās calētēs.	<i>I'd like to buy pork chops and roast beef and some hot dogs.</i>
Phyllis	Āliquid āmplius?	<i>Anything else?</i>
Māter	Nihil āmplius apud laniēnam. Cārō hōdiē tam pretiōsa est! Deīnde ībimus in forum hōlitōrium.	<i>Nothing more at the butcher shop. Meat is so expensive nowadays. Next we will go to the vegetable market.</i>
Phyllis	Quae hōlera vīs ēmere ibi?	<i>What vegetables do you want to buy there?</i>
Māter	Lactūcam, cucūmerēs, carōtās, brāssicam. Adhūc hābeō satis aliōrum hōlerum.	<i>Lettuce, cucumbers, carrots, and cabbage. I still have enough of the other vegetables.</i>
Phyllis	Vīsne ire étiam in forum piscārium?	<i>Do you also want to go to the fish market?</i>
Māter	Tantūmodo sī passer recēns est vēnālis hōdiē.	<i>Only if fresh flounder is for sale today.</i>
Phyllis	Egēmūsne āliquō dē pīstrīnā?	<i>Do we need anything from the bakery?</i>
Māter	Ita, trēs pānēs et decem pāniculōs atque āliquot crūstula.	<i>Yes, three loaves of bread and ten rolls, as well as some cookies.</i>
Phyllis	Cūr tot obsōnia nōbīs emēnda sunt?	<i>Why do we have to buy so many groceries?</i>

Māter	Pater pátruum suum et ámitam et eórum líberōs ad cēnam vocávit. Spērō eōs canem suum nōn allātūrōs.	<i>Because father invited his uncle and aunt and their children to dinner. I hope they don't bring their dog along.</i>
Phyllis	Sīc ego ipsa spērō.	<i>I hope so too.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

alcohol álcohol·is <i>n</i>	butcher láni·us -ī <i>m</i>
alcoholic alcoholíc·us -a -um	butcher shop lanién·a -ae <i>f</i>
almond amýgdal·um -ī <i>n</i>	butter <i>s</i> butýr·um -ī <i>n</i>
appetizer gustáti·ō -ónis <i>f</i>	butter <i>tr</i> butýrum adhib·eō -ēre -uī -itus ad (+ <i>acc</i>)
apple māl·um -ī <i>n</i>	cabbage brássic·a -ae <i>f</i> , cramb·ē -ēs <i>f</i>
apple pie crúst·um -ī <i>n</i> ex mālīs	cake placént·a -ae <i>f</i>
apricot armeníac·um -ī <i>n</i>	candy cuppédi·ae -árum <i>fpl</i>
artichoke cínar·a -ae <i>f</i>	carrot carót·a -ae <i>f</i>
asparagus aspárag·us -ī <i>m</i>	catsup <i>see</i> ketchup
bacon lard·um -ī <i>n</i>	cauliflower brássic·a -ae <i>f</i> Pompēiána
baker pīst·or -óris <i>m</i> , pīst·rīx -rícis <i>f</i>	celery helēoselín·um -ī <i>n</i>
bakery pīstrín·a -ae <i>f</i>	cereal cereál·ia -ium <i>npl</i>
banana arién·a -ae <i>f</i> , banán·a -ae <i>f</i>	cheese cake savíll·um -ī <i>n</i>
bean fab·a -ae <i>f</i>	cheese cāse·us -ī <i>m</i>
beef búbul·a -ae <i>f</i>	cherry céras·um -ī <i>n</i>
beer cervísi·a -ae <i>f</i>	cherry pie crúst·um -ī <i>n</i> ex cérasīs
berry bacc·a -ae <i>f</i>	chestnut castáne·a -ae <i>f</i>
birthday cake lib·um -ī <i>n</i> nātále	chicken (<i>as food</i>) gallínáce·a -ae <i>f</i>
bland lēn·is -is -e	chocolate socolát·a -ae <i>f</i>
blueberry vaccíni·um -ī <i>n</i>	clam my·ax -acis <i>m</i>
boiled élíx·us -a -um	clear the table mundáre mēnsam
booze tēmēt·um -ī <i>n</i>	cocktail própom·a -atis <i>n</i> , cinn·is -is <i>m</i>
bread pān·is -is <i>m</i>	coffee cáffe·a -ae <i>f</i>
breaded salígne·us -a -um	coffee cup pocíll·um -ī <i>n</i> cafféárium
breakfast ientácul·um -ī <i>n</i>	coffee pot oll·a -ae <i>f</i> cáffae
broil tórr·eō -ēre -uī tostus	coffee set sýnthes·is -is <i>f</i> cafféaría
broth iūs, iūris <i>n</i> , iúscul·um -ī <i>n</i>	cook coqu·ō -ere coxī coctus
bun collýr·is -idis <i>f</i>	

cookie crústul·um -ī <i>n</i>	frozen congelāt·us -a -um; frozen dinner cēn·a -ae <i>f</i> congelāta; frozen food(s) cib·ī -ōrum <i>mpl</i> congelātī
corkscrew extrácul·um -ī <i>n</i>	fry fríg·ō -ere frīxī frīctus
corn maízi·um -ī <i>n</i> ; corn on the cob maízium -ī <i>n</i> in spīcā	frying pan sartág·ō -inis <i>f</i>
course fércul·um -ī <i>n</i>	garlic áli·um -ī <i>n</i>
cream crem·um -ī <i>n</i> , flōs, flōris <i>m</i> lactis	grape ūv·a -ae <i>f</i>
cucumber cúcum·is -eris <i>m</i>	green pepper piperít·is -idis <i>f</i>
cup of coffee (of tea) pocíll·um -ī <i>n</i> cáffae (theae)	grill <i>s</i> crátícul·a -ae <i>f</i>
dessert bellári·a -ōrum <i>npl</i> , mēns·a -ae <i>f</i> secúnda	grill <i>tr</i> super crátículam assáre
dine cēnāre; to dine out forīs cēnāre	ham pern·a -ae <i>f</i> ; smoked ham perna fūmósa
dinner cēn·a -ae <i>f</i> ; to eat dinner cēnāre, cēnam sūm·ō -ere -psī -ptus; to have a roast for dinner assum in cēnā háb·eō -ēre -uī -itus	hamburger búbul·a -ae <i>f</i> concísa
dressing embámm·a -atis <i>n</i> ; Caesar (Blue Cheese, French, Italian, Russian, Thousand Island) embámma Caesáriánum (cáseī caerúleī, Gállicum, Itálicum, Rússicum, mille ínsulárum)	have (<i>e.g., dinner</i>) sūm·ō -ere -psī -ptus
drink <i>s</i> pōti·ō -ōnis <i>f</i> ; drinks pōtióñ·ēs -um <i>fpl</i> , pōtulént·a -ōrum <i>npl</i>	hazelnut avellán·a -ae <i>f</i>
drink <i>tr</i> pōtāre	honey mel, mellis <i>n</i>
duck (<i>as food</i>) anafín·a -ae <i>f</i>	hot dog hill·a -ae calēns (<i>gen:</i> hillae caléntis) <i>f</i>
eat edō ēsse ēdī ēsus; (<i>a meal</i>) sūm·ō -ere -psī -ptus	horseradish amoráci·a -um <i>npl</i>
egg ōv·um -ī <i>n</i> ; fried frīctum; hard-boiled dūrum; soft-boiled ápalum; scrambled permíxtum	hunger fam·ēs -is <i>f</i>
fish (<i>as food</i>) piscát·us -ūs <i>m</i>	ice cream congélidum crem·um -ī <i>n</i>
flounder pass·er -eris <i>m</i>	jelly quil·on -ī <i>n</i>
food cib·us -ī <i>m</i>	juice succ·us -ī <i>m</i>
fork furcíll·a -ae <i>f</i> , fuscínul·a -ae <i>f</i>	ketchup kétsup·um -ī <i>n</i>
French fries pōm·a -ōrum terréstria frīcta	kidney bean phasél·us -ī <i>m</i>
fresh rec·ēns -éntis	ladle trull·a -ae <i>f</i>
fruit pōm·a -ōrum <i>npl</i>	lamb (<i>as food</i>) agnín·a -ae <i>f</i>
	lemon cítre·um -ī <i>n</i>
	lemonade límonát·a -ae <i>f</i>
	lentil lēn·s -tis <i>f</i>
	lettuce lactúc·a -ae <i>f</i>
	loaf of bread pān·is -is <i>m</i>
	lobster locúst·a -ae <i>f</i>
	macaroni past·a -ae <i>f</i> tubuláta
	margarine margarín·um -ī <i>n</i>
	market macéll·um -ī <i>n</i>

mashed potatoes pultícul·a -ae *f* ex solánīs

mayonnaise liquám·en -inis *n*
Magónicum

meal cib·us -ī *m*

meat car·ō -nis *f*

meat tray carnári·um -ī *n*

menu ind·ex -icis *m* (or tabéll·a -ae *f*)
cibōrum

milk lāc lactis *n*

mineral water aqu·a -ae *f* minerális

mixed salad commíxta acētári·a
-ōrum *npl*

muffin scriblít·a -ae *f*

mulberry mōr·um -ī *n*

mushroom fung·us -ī *m*

mustard sináp·i (or sináp·e) -is *n*

napkin mapp·a -ae *f*

noodle soup iū·s -ris *n* collýric·um

nut nux, nucis *f*

olive oil óle·um -ī *n*

olive olív·a -ae *f*

omelet lágan·um -ī *n* ex ōvīs

onion caep·a -ae *f*

orange māl·um -ī *n* aurántium

orangeade mālī aurántiī pōti·ō -ōnis *f*

orange juice aurántiī succ·us -ī *m*

oyster óstre·a -ae *f*

pancake artolágan·um -ī *n*

parsley ápi·um -ī *n*, petroselín·um -ī *n*

pasta collýr·a -ae *f*

pea pīs·um -ī *n*

peach pérsic·um -ī *n*

peanut árach·is -idis *f* (hypogéa)

peanut butter bütýr·um -ī *n* ex
arachidibus

pear pir·um -ī *n*

peel *s* cut·is -is *f*

peel *tr* reseccāre cutem (+ *gen*)

pepper pip·er -eris *n*

pepper shaker piperín·um -ī *n*

pickle sálgam·um -ī *n*

pie crúst·um -ī *n*

piece frúst·um -ī *n*

pineapple píne·a -ae *f* (Americána)

pitcher úrce·us -ī *m*

plate patéll·a -ae *f*

plum prūn·um -ī *n*

pork porcín·a -ae *f*

pork chop off·a -ae *f* porcína

potato pōm·um -ī *n* terréstre; **baked**

potato pōmum terréstre in furnō
coctum; **fried potatoes** pōma
terréstria frícta; **mashed potatoes**
pultícul·a -ae *f* ex pōmīs terréstribus

potato chips lámín·ae -ārum *fpl*
pōmōrum terréstrium

powder sugar sácchar·um -ī *n*
pulvéreum

pretzel pretíol·a -ae *f*; **soft pretzel**
mollis pretíola

prune prūn·um -ī *n* condítum

radish rādícul·a -ae *f*

raisin (ūva) pass·a -ae *f*

rare sēmicóct·us -a -um (*opp*:
percóctus)

raspberry mōr·um -ī *n* Īdaeum

restaurant caupón·a -ae *f*

rice orýz·a -ae *f*

roast *tr* assāre

roast *s* ass·um -ī *n*

roast beef búbul·a -ae *f* assa

roast pork porcín·a -ae *f* assa

roll pānícul·us -ī *m*

salad acētári·a -ōrum *npl*

salad dressing *see* dressing
salt sāl, salis *n*
salt shaker salín·um -ī *n*
sandwich pastíll·um -ī *n* fartum; **ham sandwich** pastíllum pernā fartum
sardine sard·a -ae *f*
sauce iūs, iūris *n*
sausage farcím·en -inis *n*, bótul·us -ī *m*
seasoning condīmént·um -ī *n*
serve (*a person*) sérv·iō -íre -iī; (*food*) appōn·ō -ere appósuī appósitus
shell putám·en -inis *n*
shrimp squill·a -ae *f*
silverware argénte·a -órum *npl*
sip sorbillāre
slice segmént·um -ī *n*
soup iūs, iūris *n*, iúscul·um -ī *n*; **hot soup** iūs fěrvēns
spicy ācer ācris ācre
spoon cóchle·ār -āris *n*
steak frúst·um -ī *n* búbulae
stew iūrulént·um -ī *n*
stewed iūrulént·us -a -um
stove foc·us -ī *m*
straw (*for drinking*) sīph·ō -ónis *m*
strawberry frāg·um -ī *n*
strip segmént·um -ī *n*
sugar sácchar·um -ī *n*
sugar bowl váscul·um -ī *n* sáccharī
sugar cube sácchar·um -ī *n* cúbicum

table mēns·a -ae *f*
taste sáp·iō -ere -ívi or -iī; **to taste like** sápere (+ *acc*)
tea the·a -ae *f*
tip corollári·um -ī *n*; stips, stípis *f*
toast pān·is -is *m* tostus
tomato lycopérsic·um -ī *n*
tray fércul·um -ī *n*
veal vitulín·a -ae *f*
vegetable hol·us -eris *n*
venison vēnāti·ō -ónis *f*
vinegar acēt·um -ī *n*
waiter minís·ter -trī *m*
waitress minístr·a -ae *f*
walnut iūgl·āns -ándis *f*
water aqu·a -ae *f*
watermelon mēlópep·ō -ónis *m*
white bread pān·is -is *m* cándidus
whole-wheat bread autopýr·us ī *m*
wine vīn·um -ī *n*; **dry** austérum; **sweet** dulce; **red** sanguíneum; **light** ténue; **white** album

[NOTE—The Romans did not have candy, chocolate, coffee, corn, ice cream, peanuts, potatoes, popcorn, tea, tomatoes, or turkey. They knew of butter and sugar, but used them only for medicinal purposes. Some of these items came into use in the Middle Ages, when Latin was still a widely spoken language.]

Chapter IX: Days, Weeks, Months, Years

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

Two friends discuss their birthdays.

Patrícus	Márcia, quārē tū hódīē tam exōrnāta es?	<i>Patrick: Marcia, why are you so decked out today?</i>
Márcia	Quod hódīē est meus diēs nātālis.	<i>Marcia: Because today is my birthday.</i>
Patrícus	Quot annōs nāta es?	<i>How old are you?</i>
Márcia	Duodēvīgintī annōs nāta sum. Quot annōs nātus es tū?	<i>I am eighteen years old. How old are you?</i>
Patrícus	Ūndēvīgintī annōs.	<i>I'm nineteen.</i>
Márcia	Quō mēse nātus es?	<i>In what month were you born?</i>
Patrícus	Ego mēse Augústō nātus sum. Quō diē nāta es?	<i>I was born in August. On what day were you born?</i>
Márcia	Quintō diē mēnsis Māiī scīlicet.	<i>On the fifth of May, of course.</i>
Patrícus	At enim quō diē hebdomadis nāta es?	<i>What I mean is, on what day of the week were you born?</i>
Márcia	Ut vērā dicam, certum nōn sciō. Diē Vēneris, crēdō.	<i>To tell you the truth, I don't know for sure. On Friday, I believe.</i>
Patrícus	Quómodo nātālem celebrābis?	<i>How are you going to celebrate your birthday?</i>
Márcia	Māter agitābit nātāliciam hódīē vésperī. Et tū invītāris.	<i>My mother is throwing me a birthday party this evening. And you are invited.</i>
Patrícus	Grātiās. Áfferam tibi bellum nātālicium.	<i>Thanks. I'll bring you a nice birthday present.</i>

 LEVEL II Two friends discuss their favorite seasons.

Glória	Robérte, quod tempus annī tibi máximē placet?	<i>Gloria: Robert, which season do you like best?</i>
Robértus	Aestátem praecípuē amō, quia in piscínā nostrā aut in stāgnō natāre possum. Pilā porrō lúdere possum.	<i>Robert: I especially love summer because I can swim in our swimming pool or in the pond. Besides, I can play ball.</i>
Glória	Quod tempus annī tibi mínimē placet?	<i>Which season do you like least?</i>
Robértus	Hiems, opínor. Nivem amō, sed frígoris impátiēns sum. Inter Decémbrem et Februáriū ego semper gravédinem terríbilem cóntrahō.	<i>Winter, I suppose. I love the snow, but I can't take the cold. I always catch a terrible cold between December and February.</i>
Glória	Sed híeme nartáre et patináre et pilās níveās concícere póssumus. Et tráheā vehī póssumus.	<i>But in winter we can ski and skate and throw snowballs. And we can go sleigh riding.</i>
Robértus	Probē dicis, at, illō témpore annī, viae nōnnúmquam sunt lúbricae et periculósae.	<i>You're right, but at that time of the year the roads are often slippery and dangerous.</i>
Glória	Placétne tibi vēr?	<i>Do you like spring?</i>
Robértus	Placet. Post sevérā híemem, amoénū est íterum forīs lúdere. Quid tū dē vère putās?	<i>Yes, I do. After a harsh winter, it is pleasant to play outside again. What do you think of spring?</i>
Glória	Ō, amō vidére flōrēs flōréscere. Quid autem dē autúmnō?	<i>O, I love to see the flowers begin to blossom. Now, what about the fall?</i>
Robértus	Cum dē autúmnō putō, statim dē scholā putō. Saepe mīror num magístrī sint vērō tam cúpidī ad scholam redeúndī post fériās aestívās.	<i>When I think about autumn, I immediately think about school. I often wonder whether teachers are really all that eager to return to school after summer vacation.</i>
Glória	Nésciō, sed id dúbitō.	<i>I don't know, but I doubt it.</i>

LEVEL III A father gives his son some family history.

Marcus	Pater, quandō nātus es?	<i>Mark: Father, when were you born?</i>
Cícero	Tértiō diē (mēnsis) Iānuárii.	<i>Cicero: On the third of January.</i>
Marcus	Ubi adulēscēbās?	<i>Where did you grow up?</i>
Cícero	Adulēscēntiam omnem in oppídulo Arpínō tránségī.	<i>I spent my entire youth in the small town of Arpinum.</i>
Marcus	Ubi lūdum frequentábās ut adulēscēntulus?	<i>Where did you attend school as a youngster?</i>
Cícero	Prímō lūdum Arpínī frequentábam. Ante autem décimum quártum annum meum, pater meus Rómam migráre cōnstítuit.	<i>First I attended school in Arpinum. But before my fourteenth year, my father decided to move to Rome.</i>
Marcus	Rediísti umquam Arpínum?	<i>Did you ever return to Arpinum?</i>
Cícero	Nōn per multōs annōs. Décimum quíntum agēns, ego togam virílem sūmpsī. Nōn diútius eram adulēscēntulus sed adulēscēns.	<i>Not for many years. At the age of fifteen, I received the toga of manhood. I was no longer a youngster, but a young man.</i>
Marcus	Quandō tū cōsul creátus es?	<i>When were you elected consul?</i>
Cícero	Quadrágésimum quártum annum agēns, cōsul creátus sum. Tum vix eram vir médiac aetátis.	<i>I was elected consul in my forty-fourth year. At that time I was barely a middle-aged man.</i>
Marcus	Senténtiā tuā, tē nunc senēscēnte, quae aetās erat óptima ómnium?	<i>In your opinion, now that you are growing old, what age was the best of all?</i>
Cícero	Est difícilē dictū. Quaeque enim aetās—infántia, puerítia, adulēscēntia, iuvénta, média aetās, étiam senéctūs—habet et gaúdia et incómoda.	<i>It is hard to say. For each age—infancy, boyhood, adolescence, youth, middle age, even old age—has its joys and disappointments.</i>
Marcus	Quod est gaúdium máximum senectútis?	<i>What is the greatest joy of old age?</i>
Cícero	Quamquam iam aetáte prōvéctus sum, tamen conténtus sum, quod mihi est mēns sána in córpore sanō. Sed gaúdium máximum est família amāns et amfci fidélēs.	<i>Although I am now up in years, I am content, because I have a sound mind in a sound body. But the greatest joy is a loving family and loyal friends.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

adult *adj* adúlt·us -a -um

age aet·ās -ātis *f*; **at age fifteen**
dēcimum quīntum annum ag·ēns
-éntis; **he was ten years of age** erat
decem annōs nātus

aged longaév·us -a -um

be up in years aetāte prōvēct·us -a -um
esse

birth nātfvit·ās -ātis *f*

born: to be born nāsc·or -ī nātus (-a)
sum

boyhood pueríti·a -ae *f*, aet·ās -ātis *f*
puerīlis; **from boyhood on** ā púerō

calendar fāst·ī -ōrum *mpl*, calendāri·um
-ī *n*

century saēcul·um -ī *n*

death mor·s -tis *f*

die mór·ior -ī mórtuus (-a) sum

grow old senēsc·ō -ere senuī

grow up iuvenēsc·ō -ere iúveni

growing up adulēsc·ēns -éntis

grown-up *adj* adúlt·us -a -um

infancy infānti·a -ae *f*

month mēns·is -is *m*

January Iānuári·us -ī *m*

February Febrúari·us -ī *m*

March Márti·us -ī *m*

April Apríl·is -is *m*

May Māi·us -ī *m*

June Iúni·us -ī *m*

July Iúli·us -ī *m*

August Augúst·us -ī *m*

September Septém·ber -bris *m*

October Octó·ber -bris *m*

November Novém·ber -bris *m*

December Decém·ber -bris *m*

more (less) than ... years old māior
(minor) quam ... annōs nāt·us -a -um

old vétul·us -a -um; **older** māi·or -or
-us nātū; **oldest** máxim·us -a -um
nātū; **to be ... years old ...** annōs
nāt·us -a -um esse

old age senéct·ūs -ūtis *f*, senéct·a -ae *f*

old lady an·us -ūs *f*; **little old lady**
anícul·a -ae *f*

old man sen·ex -is *m*

old woman an·us -ūs *f*

oldster sen·ex -is *m*

over sixty years old māior (quam)
annōs sexāgintā nāt·us -a -um

period of life aet·ās -ātis *f* vītae

season temp·us -oris *n* annī

spring vēr, vēris *n*

summer aest·ās -ātis *f*

fall autúmn·us -ī *m*

winter hi·ems -emis *f*

week hébdomas, hebdomadis *f*,
septimán·a -ae *f*; **every week**
síngulis septimánis (*or*
hebdomádibus); **last (previous, next,**
this) week próximā (superióre,
insequēte, hāc) hebdomade

weekday di·ēs -ēī *m* prōfēstus

Sunday di·ēs -ēī *m* Sōlis; domínic·a
-ae *f*

Monday di·ēs -ēī *m* Lūnae

Tuesday di·ēs -ēī *m* Mārtis

Wednesday di·ēs -ēī *m* Mercúrii

Thursday di·ēs -ēī *m* Iovis

Friday di·ēs -ēī *m* Véneris

Saturday di·ēs -ēī *m* Sātúrnī,
Sábbat·a -ōrum *npl*

year ann·us -ī *m*; **in my twenty-first**
year annum primum et vicésimum
ag·ēns -éntis ego ...

young parv·us -a -um, párvul·us -a -um;
younger iúni·or -or -us; min·or -or
-us (nātū); **youngest** mínim·us -a
-um (nātū)

young lady adulēsc·ēns -ēntis *f*,
muliércul·a -ae *f*

young man adulēsc·ēns -ēntis *m*,
iuven·is -is *m*

youngster adulēscēntul·us -ī *m*,
adulēscēntul·a -ae *f*

youth (*age*) adulēscēnti·a -ae *f* (*between*
puer and iúvenis, between 15 and 30
years and even beyond); (*young men*
collectively) iuvént·ūs -útis *f*; (*young*
person) iúven·is -is *m/f*

youthful iuveníl·is -is -e; iúven·is -is -e

THE JULIAN CALENDAR

- ◆ The names of the Roman months are: **Iānuārius, Febrúariis, Mártius, Aprílís, Māius, Iúníus, Iúlius, Augústus, Septémber, Octóber, Novémber, Decémber.** The name of the month functions as an adjective in agreement with **Kaléndae, Nōnae, Ídūs.** Before Augustus, the months July and August were called **Quíntílis** and **Sextílis.** (*Originally the Roman calendar began with March. This explains the names Septémber, Octóber, etc. In the year 153 B.C., in order to give the new consuls time to organize their armies and reach the latest frontier, the year was made to begin with January.*)
- ◆ The Romans counted backward from three points in the month, Calends (**Kaléndae**), Nones (**Nōnae**), and Ides (**Ídūs**), to which the names of the months are added as adjectives: **Kaléndae Iānuáriae, Nōnae Iānuáriae, Ídūs Iānuáriae.** The Calends are the first day, the Nones the fifth, and the Ides the thirteen. In March, May, July, and October the Nones and the Ides are two days later.
- ◆ In counting backward, the Romans used **prídiē** (+ acc) for “the day before”: **prídiē Kaléndās Iānuáriās** (= December 31), **prídiē Nōnās Iānuáriās** (= January 4); **prídiē Ídūs Iānuáriās** (= January 12).
- ◆ Because the Romans, in counting backward, counted both ends of the series, the second day before (by our system of reckoning) was designated as **diē tértiō ante Kaléndās, Nōnās, Ídus.** Similarly, the third day before (by our system of reckoning) was designated as **diē quārtō,** and so on.
- ◆ To complicate matters further, the Romans generally did not say, for example, “the third day before the Calends of January” but “before the third day Calends January,” **ante diem tértiam Kaléndās Iānuáriās,** often abbreviated **a. d. III Kal. Iān.** This was the most common form for indicating dates. Others were:
diē tértiō ante Kaléndās Iānuáriās
tértiō ante Kaléndās Iānuáriās
tértiō (III) Kaléndās Iānuáriās
- ◆ These phrases are treated as nouns and combined with the prepositions **ex** (from), **ad** or **in** (up to), e.g.:
ex ante diem tértium Kaléndās Iānuáriās (from December 30)
ad (or in) ante diem tértium Kaléndās Iānuáriās (up to December 30)
- ◆ In leap years, the 25th was reckoned as the extra day in February. The 24th was called **ante diem VI Kaléndās Mártiās** and the 25th as **ante diem bis VI Kaléndās Mártiās.**

day of the month March, May, July, October	January, August, December	April, June, September, November	February	February (leap year)
1 Kaléndis	Kaléndis	Kaléndis	Kaléndis	Kaléndis
2 VI Nōnās	IV Nōnās	IV Nōnās	IV Nōnās	IV Nōnās
3 V Nōnās	III Nōnās	III Nōnās	III Nōnās	III Nōnās
4 IV Nōnās	Prīdiē Nōnās	Prīdiē Nōnās	Prīdiē Nōnās	Prīdiē Nōnās
5 III Nōnās	Nōnīs	Nōnīs	Nōnīs	Nōnīs
6 Prīdiē Nōnās	VIII Īdūs	VIII Īdūs	VIII Īdūs	VIII Īdūs
7 Nōnīs	VII Īdūs	VII Īdūs	VII Īdūs	VII Īdūs
8 VIII Īdūs	VI Īdūs	VI Īdūs	VI Īdūs	VI Īdūs
9 VII Īdūs	V Īdūs	V Īdūs	V Īdūs	V Īdūs
10 VI Īdūs	IV Īdūs	IV Īdūs	IV Īdūs	IV Īdūs
11 V Īdūs	III Īdūs	III Īdūs	III Īdūs	III Īdūs
12 IV Īdūs	Prīdiē Īdūs	Prīdiē Īdūs	Prīdiē Īdūs	Prīdiē Īdūs
13 III Īdūs	Īdibus	Īdibus	Īdibus	Īdibus
14 Prīdiē Īdūs	XIX Kal.	XVIII Kal.	XVI Kal.	XVI Kal.
15 Īdibus	XVIII Kal.	XVII Kal.	XV Kal.	XV Kal.
16 XVII Kal.	XVII Kal.	XVI Kal.	XIV Kal.	XIV Kal.
17 XVI Kal.	XVI Kal.	XV Kal.	XIII Kal.	XIII Kal.
18 XV Kal.	XV Kal.	XIV Kal.	XII Kal.	XII Kal.
19 XIV Kal.	XIV Kal.	XIII Kal.	XI Kal.	XI Kal.
20 XIII Kal.	XIII Kal.	XII Kal.	X Kal.	X Kal.
21 XII Kal.	XII Kal.	XI Kal.	IX Kal.	IX Kal.
22 XI Kal.	XI Kal.	X Kal.	VIII Kal.	VIII Kal.
23 X Kal.	X Kal.	IX Kal.	VII Kal.	VII Kal.
24 IX Kal.	IX Kal.	VIII Kal.	VI Kal.	VI Kal.
25 VIII Kal.	VIII Kal.	VII Kal.	V Kal.	bis VI Kal.
26 VII Kal.	VII Kal.	VI Kal.	IV Kal.	V Kal.
27 VI Kal.	VI Kal.	V Kal.	III Kal.	IV Kal.
28 V Kal.	V Kal.	IV Kal.	Prīdiē Kal.	III Kal.
29 IV Kal.	IV Kal.	III Kal.		Prīdiē Kal.
30 III Kal.	III Kal.	Prīdiē Kal.		
31 Prīdiē Kal.	Prīdiē Kal.			

HOURS OF THE DAY AND WATCHES OF THE NIGHT _____

Table of Hours of the Day and Watches of the Night Among the Romans

Tabula Hōrārum Diēi Vigiliārumque Noctis Apud Rōmānōs

DAY		DIES	
Morning	7 o'clock	Mātūtīnum	hōra prīma
	8 o'clock	tempus	hōra secūnda
	9 o'clock		hōra tertia
	10 o'clock		hōra quārta
	11 o'clock		hōra quīnta
Midday	12 o'clock	Merīdiēs	hōra sexta
	1 o'clock		hōra séptima
	2 o'clock		hōra octāva
	3 o'clock		hōra nōna
	4 o'clock		hōra décima
	5 o'clock		hōra ūndécima
NIGHT		NOX	
Evening	6 o'clock	Vespertīnum	hōra duodécima
	7 o'clock	tempus	hōra prīma
	8 o'clock		hōra secūnda
	9 o'clock		hōra tertia
	10 o'clock		hōra quārta (vigília secūnda)
	11 o'clock		hōra quīnta
Midnight	12 o'clock	Média nox	hōra sexta (vigília tertia)
	1 o'clock		hōra séptima
	2 o'clock		hōra octāva
	3 o'clock		hōra nōna
	4 o'clock		hōra décima (vigília quārta)
	5 o'clock		hōra ūndécima
	6 o'clock		hōra duodécima

Note—The Romans considered a day as extending from midnight to the next midnight, just as we do. However, they counted the hours from 6:00 a.m. When the Romans wished to distinguish day-time hours from night hours, they said, for example **prīma diēi hōra** and **prīma noctis hōra**.

TELLING TIME IN LATIN ACCORDING TO THE MODERN METHOD

Hōrās ab aliquō quaerere.	<i>to ask s.o. the time</i>
Quota hōra est?	<i>What time is it?</i>
Est p̄ma hōra ante merīdiem. / Est p̄ma hōra mātutīna.	<i>It is one o'clock A.M.</i>
Est p̄ma hōra postmerīdiāna. / Est p̄ma hōra post merīdiem.	<i>It is one o'clock P.M.</i>
Est p̄ma ferē hōra.	<i>It is about one o'clock.</i>
Est p̄ma hōra minūta quīnta dēcima.	<i>It is 1:15.</i>
Est p̄ma hōra et quadrāns.	<i>It is 1:15. / It is quarter after one.</i>
Est p̄ma hōra et sēmihōra.	<i>It is 1:30.</i>
Est p̄ma hōra minūta trīcēsima.	<i>It is 1:30.</i>
Est p̄ma hōra minūta quadrāgēsima quīnta.	<i>It is 1:45.</i>
Est p̄ma hōra et dōdrāns.	<i>It is 1:45</i>
Est secūnda hōra. / Sunt duae hōrae.	<i>It is two o'clock.</i>
Est tērtia hōra. / Sunt trēs hōrae.	<i>It is three o'clock.</i>
Est quarta hōra. / Sunt quattuor hōrae.	<i>It is four o'clock.</i>
Est quīnta hōra. / Sunt quīque hōrae.	<i>It is five o'clock.</i>
Est sexta hōra. / Sunt sex hōrae.	<i>It is six o'clock.'</i>
Est sēptima hōra. / Sunt septem hōrae.	<i>It is seven o'clock.</i>
Est octāva hōra. / Sunt octō hōrae.	<i>It is eight o'clock.</i>
Est nōna hōra. / Sunt novem hōrae.	<i>It is nine o'clock.</i>
Est dēcima hōra. / Sunt decim hōrae.	<i>It is ten o'clock.</i>
Est ūndēcima hōra. / Sunt ūndecim hōrae.	<i>It is eleven o'clock.</i>
Est duodēcima hōra. / Sunt duódecim hōrae.	<i>It is twelve o'clock.</i>
Quotā hōrā māne surgis?	<i>At what hour do you get up in the morning?</i>
Hōrā sēptimā mātutīnā.	<i>At seven o'clock in the morning.</i>
Hōrā sēptimā et quadrānte.	<i>At 7:15.</i>
Hōrā sēptimā et sēmihōrā.	<i>At 7:30.</i>
Hōrā sēptimā et dōdrānte.	<i>At 7:45.</i>

Chapter X: Expressions of Time

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

Marie asks her friend how he spends his days.

María	Ioséphe, quómodo diem ágitās?	<i>Marie: Joseph, how do you spend your day?</i>
Ioséphus	Bene māne surgō et mē lavō.	<i>Joseph: I get up early in the morning and wash (myself).</i>
María	Quotā hōrā ientāculum sūmis?	<i>At what time do you eat breakfast?</i>
Ioséphus	Octāva hōrā mātūtīnā aut mox deinde ientāculum sūmō.	<i>I eat breakfast at 8:00 A.M. or soon thereafter.</i>
María	Lūdísne deinde in aédibus an forīs?	<i>Do you then play in your house or outdoors?</i>
Ioséphus	Intérdum in aédibus lūdō, aliās lūdō forīs.	<i>Sometimes I play in my house, at other times I play outdoors.</i>
María	Lūdísne semper domī?	<i>Do you always play at home?</i>
Ioséphus	Nōnnúmquam tempus mātūtīnum apud amīcum ágitō. Nōn idem cōfīdiē faciō.	<i>Sometimes I spend the morning at my friend's house. I don't do the same thing every day.</i>
María	Quotā hōrā prándium sūmis?	<i>At what time do you eat lunch?</i>
Ioséphus	Plērúmque merídie aut prímā hōrā post merídiem. Váriat in diēs.	<i>Generally at noon or 1:00 P.M.. It varies from day to day.</i>
María	Quid facis postmerídiē? Pater tē adhūc in forum dūcit?	<i>What do you do in the afternoon? Does your father still take you to the forum?</i>
Ioséphus	Utcúmque tempus patrī est, mē in forum dūcit.	<i>Whenever my father has time, he takes me to the forum.</i>
María	Quidnam in forō fácitis?	<i>Just what do you do in the forum?</i>
Ioséphus	Cum primum in forum pervenīmus, tabernās novās ibi vīsītāmus.	<i>As soon as we get to the forum, we visit the new shops there.</i>

María	Quid in tabérnīs fáctis?	<i>What do you do in the shops?</i>
Ioséphus	Obsōnámus. Pater mihi mūnūsculum saepe emit.	<i>We shop. My father often buys me a little gift.</i>
María	Pater tē in forum cōtídiē dūcit?	<i>Does your father take you to the forum every day?</i>
Ioséphus	Nōn cōtídiē. Praetereā, hīs tempóribus pater est occupatíssimus.	<i>Not every day. Besides, these days my father is very busy.</i>
María	Eō cāsū, quómodo tempus postmeridiánū ágitās	<i>In that case, how do you spend the afternoon?</i>
Ioséphus	Ego plērúmque tempus postmeridiánū cum amícis ágitō.	<i>I generally spend the afternoon with my friends.</i>
María	Quid vésperī post cēnam facis?	<i>What do you do in the evening after dinner?</i>
Ioséphus	Áliqua pēnsa fáciō. Deínde, sī tempus mihi est, librum legō, dōnec dormítum eō.	<i>I do some chores. Then, if I have time, I read a book till I go to sleep.</i>

LEVEL II A coach interviews a new athlete.

Exercitátor	Salvē. Tūne āthléta novus es?	Coach: <i>Hello. Are you the new athlete?</i>
Āthléta	Sum.	Athlete: <i>Yes, I am.</i>
Exercitátor	Quandō ad gymnásium pervēnistī?	<i>When did you arrive at the gym? A little while ago. Am I late? [lit: have I come late?]</i>
Āthléta	Paulō ante. Sērōne vēnī?	
Exercitátor	Nōn. Vēnistī quidem témpērī. Sed álii āthlétæ omnēs iam adsunt. Quótiēns tē exércēs?	<i>No. Indeed, you're on time. But all the other athletes are already here. How often do you exercise?</i>
Āthléta	Ut vēra dicam, cōtídiē: māne, merídiē, noctū.	<i>To tell you the truth, daily: morning, noon, and night.</i>
Exercitátor	Quótiēns ad fūnem salis?	<i>How often do you jump rope?</i>
Āthléta	Saltem bis in diē.	<i>At least twice a day.</i>

Exercitátor	Ante merídiem an post merídiem?	<i>Before noon or in the afternoon?</i>
Āthléta	Modo ante merídiem, modo post merídiem. Váriat.	<i>Sometimes before noon, sometimes in the afternoon. It varies.</i>
Exercitátor	Quam diū ad fūnem salīs?	<i>How long do you jump rope?</i>
Āthléta	Saltem sēmihóram.	<i>At least for half an hour.</i>
Exercitátor	Quandō novíssimē tolútim cursitāvístī?	<i>When did you last jog?</i>
Āthléta	Núdius tértius et herī.	<i>The day before yesterday and yesterday.</i>
Exercitátor	Hodiēne tolútim cursitábis?	<i>Are you going to jog today?</i>
Āthléta	Ita. Mihi in ánimō est tolútim cursitáre pósteā aliquántō.	<i>Yes. I intend to jog a little later.</i>
Exercitátor	Senténtiā meā, tū eris āthléta praestāns.	<i>In my opinion, you will be an outstanding athlete.</i>

LEVEL III **A traveler is about to take a bus trip to Florida.**

Viátor	Velim iter fácere ā Septentriónālī Cārolínā in Flóridam.	Traveler: <i>I'd like to travel from North Carolina to Florida.</i>
Amícus	Quī est tibi locus dēstinátus?	Friend: <i>What is your destination?</i>
Viátor	Locus dēstinátus mihi est Miámī.	<i>My destination is Miami.</i>
Amícus	Habésne vectúram in promptū?	<i>Do you have your fare ready?</i>
Viátor	Ecce vectúram. Quandō raeda longa discēdet?	<i>Here's the fare. When does the bus depart?</i>
Amícus	Mox. Proféctō secúndā hōrā.	<i>Soon. In fact, at eight o'clock.</i>
Viátor	Bene! Intérdiū magis quam noctū iter fácere praéferō.	<i>Fine. I prefer to travel by day rather than at night.</i>
Amícus	Quóúsque vīs ire prīmō diē?	<i>How far do you want to go on the first day?</i>
Viátor	Velim perveníre in Merīdiōnálem Cārolínā crās sub noctem, sī fferī potest.	<i>I'd like to arrive in South Carolina tomorrow by nightfall, if possible.</i>

Amícus	Ubi pernoctábis?	<i>Where will you spend the night?</i>
Viátor	Probábiliter in nesciō quō dēversóriō vehiculáriō.	<i>Probably in some motel or other.</i>
Amícus	Quam diū ibi manēbis?	<i>How long will you stay there?</i>
Viátor	Nōlō équidem multum témporis ibi pérdere.	<i>I don't want to waste a lot of time there.</i>
Amícus	Quómodo vésperam agēs?	<i>How will you spend the evening?</i>
Viátor	Statim post cēnam, bálneō plúviō ūtā et deínde rēctē ibō dormítum.	<i>Immediately after dinner, I'll take a shower and then I will go right to sleep.</i>
Amícus	Quotā hōrā illinc discēdere cupis?	<i>At what time do you want to leave from there?</i>
Viátor	Statim post ientáculum. Ad próximam noctem spērō nōs in merīdiōnālī Geórgiā futūrōs esse.	<i>Immediately after breakfast. By the following night, I hope that we will be in southern Georgia.</i>
Amícus	Istud mehércle est spátium longíssimum!	<i>Gee, that's a very long stretch!</i>
Viátor	Sī illūc ante tempus pervēnérimus, póterō mē remíttere paulísper.	<i>If we arrive there before time, I'll be able to relax a bit.</i>
Amícus	Quam diū vīs ibi manére?	<i>How long do you want to stay there?</i>
Viátor	Mihi in ánimō est bene māne postrídiē discēdere. Sī merídiē in septentríonālī Flóridā prándērō, locum dēstinátum sub noctem pervéniam.	<i>I intend to leave early in the morning on the next day. If I eat lunch in northern Florida, I will arrive at our destination by nightfall.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

ago (*prepositive*) abhinc, *e.g.*, **ten years ago** abhinc decem annōs; **a short while ago** paulō ante; **how long ago?** quam prīdem?; **long ago** iamdūdum, iamprīdem; **not so long ago** haud ita prīdem; **sometime ago** prīdem dūdum

after *conj* postquam (+ *indic*); *prep* post (+ *acc*); **after this** post hāc

afternoon temp·us -oris *n*
postmerīdiānum; **in the afternoon** postmerīdiē, post merīdiem

afterwards posthāc

again and again étiam atque étiam, idéntidem

always semper

around circā, círciter (+ *acc*), dē (+ *abl*); **around midnight** dē médiā nocte; **around noon** círciter merīdiem

as long as quámndiū (+ *indic*); **as soon as possible** quam prīmum; **as yet** adhūc

at: at least útique; **at most** summum; **at once** contínuō, mōmémentō

before *conj* ántequam, priúsqvam (+ *indic*); *adv* ántea; *prep* ante (+ *acc*); **before daylight** ante lūcem; **before long** propédiem; **before now** ántehāc

beginning prīncipi·um -ī *n*; **at the beginning of the year** prīncipiō annī

briefly summátim

by (*not later than*) ad (+ *acc*); **by January** ad mēsem Iānuārium; **by now**: iam; **by the sixth hour** ad sextam hōram

calendar fāst·ī -órum *mpl*;
calendāri·um -ī *n*

century saécul·um -ī *n*

clock hōrológi·um -ī *n* (*see also* **clock**, Chapter XIII)

dark: after dark dē nocte; **in the dark** dē nocte

darkness ténebr·ae -árum *fpl*

date: di·ēs -éī *f*; **by what date?** quam ad diem?

day: di·ēs -éī *mf*; **a day**, *e.g.*, **twice a day** bis (in) diē; **any day now** propédiem; **by day** intérdiū; **day and night** et diēs et noctēs; **every day** cōtídiē, in singulōs diēs; **from day to day** in diēs; **from that day on** ex eō diē; **just the other day** nūper quidem; **one day** (*on a certain day in the past*) quōdam diē; **on the day before he departed** prīdiē quam abíret; **on the day before the Ides** prīdiē Ídūs; **(on) the following day** pósterō diē; **on the third day before the Calends of March** ante diem quārtum Kaléndas Mártiās; **the day after** postrīdiē; **the day after that** postrīdiē ēius diēī; **the day after tomorrow** peréndiē; **the day before** prīdiē; **till late in the day** ad multum diem; **two days after that** post diem tértium ēius diēī; **these days** hīs tempóribus

dawn: at dawn prīmā lūce; **before dawn** antelúculō

daybreak: at daybreak prīmā lūce, dīlúculō; **till daybreak** in prīmam lūcem, ūsque dīlúculum

during inter (+ *acc*)

end: in the end ab extrémō; **toward the end of his life** témpore extrémō

evening vesp·er -erī *m*, vésper·a -ae *f*;
in the early evening prīmā vésperā;
in the evening vésperī; **last evening** herī vésperī; **this evening** hodiē vésperī; **very late in the evening** pervésperī

ever umquam

every day cōtídiē

finally ad extrémum, tandem

first (*at first*) prīmō; (*in a series, followed by* deinde, postrēmō) primum; **at first** inītiō; **first of all** primum omnium; **for the first time** prīmō

for (*during a certain period, expressed by acc*), e.g., **for ten days** decem diēs; (*to denote the appointment of definite time*) in (+ *acc*), e.g., **he invited her to dinner for the following day** eam ad cēnam vocāvit in pōsterum diem

from *prep* ab or dē or ex (+ *abl*); **from day to day** diem dē diē; diem ex diē; in sīngulōs diēs; **from sunrise till late in the day** ab sōle ortō in multum diēi; **from that day to this** ex eā diē ad hanc diem; **from the time when** ex quō; **from the very beginning** iam inde ā prīncipiō; **from this (that) time forward** ex hōc (illō) tēmpore

future futūr·a -ōrum *npl*; **in the future** in pōsterum

half hour sēmihōr·a -ae *f*; dīmīdi·um -ī *n* hōrae

hereafter posthāc

here and now dēpraesentiārum (*adv*)

hour hōr·a -ae *f*; **a half hour** sēmihōr·a -ae *f*; **an hour and a half** sēsquihōr·a -ae *f*; **a quarter of an hour** quadr·āns -āntis *m* hōrae; **every hour** sīngulīs hōrīs; **from hour to hour** in hōrās; **three quarters of an hour** dōdr·āns -āntis *m* hōrae; **to last a few hours** in paucās hōrās dūrāre

hourly in hōrās

how long? quam diū?

how long ago? quam prīdem?; quam dūdum?

how often? quōtiēns?

how soon? quam mox?

immediately statim, continuō

just *adv* modo; **just as** cum máximē; **just as I was writing** cum haec máximē scrīberem; **just before** (*an event*) sub (+ *acc*); **just in time** tēporī; **just then** tunc máximē; **just the other day** modo; **just when** cum máximē

last (*adj used where English uses an adv*) novīssim·us -a -um, e.g., **Cicero spoke last** Cicerō novīssimus locūtus est; **last night** prōximā nocte

late *adj* sēr·us -a -um

late *adv* sērō; **all too late** immō iam sērō; **too late** sērius; **very late** sērīssimē

lately nūper

later pōsteā; **a little later** pōsteā aliquāntō; **to postpone till later** dīf·ferō -fēre dīstulī dīlātus in āliud tēmpus

latest: perhaps tomorrow, at latest the day after that fortāsse crās, summum perēndiē

least: at least saltem

long diū; **how long** quam diū; **how much longer** quāmdiū étiam; **long ago** prīdem; **long after (before)** multō post (*ante*); **longer** diūtius; **too long** diūtius, nīmium diū

meanwhile ínterim

midnight média no·x, -ctis *f*; **around midnight** médiā círciter nocte; **at midnight** médiā nocte

minute minūt·a -ae *f*; **in a minute** mōmētō tēmporis; **the minute I saw you** extēmplō ubi ego tē vīdī; **this minute (right now)** iam; **wait a minute** exspēctā paulum, manē dum, manē paulīspēr

morning temp·us -oris *n* mātūtīnum; **early in the morning** bene māne, multō māne; **from morning till evening** ā māne ūsque ad vēsperam;

in the morning māne; **the next morning** māne postrīdiē; **this morning** hōdiē māne

nick: in the nick of time in ipsō articulō témporis

night nox, noctis *f*; **at night** noctū; **at this time of night** hōc noctis; **by night** noctū; **every night** per singulās noctēs; **last night** proximā nocte, hāc nocte; **night after night** per singulās noctēs; **on the following night** proximā nocte; **on the night before last** superiōre nocte; **till late at night** ad multam noctem

nightfall: just before nightfall sub noctem; **till nightfall** ūsque ad noctem

never numquam; **never yet** nōndum

no longer nōn diūtius

noon merīdi·ēs -ēī *m*; **at noon** merīdiē

not yet nōndum

now nunc; (*denoting emphasis and urgency*) iam; **even now** iam nunc; **just now** (*a moment ago*) modo; **now and then** subīnde, nōnnūquam, aliquándō; **now at last** nunc tandem; **now ... now** modo ... modo; **now that** posteāquam (+ *indic*); **right now** (*immediately*) iam; **ten years from now** ad decem annōs

nowadays hōdiē, nunc

occasion: for the occasion in tempus

occasionally subīnde

o'clock: at two o'clock hōrā secūndā (*see p. 81*)

once (*on a certain occasion*) quōdam diē; (*one time*) semel; **at once** ílicō, statim; (*simultaneously*) simul; **once or twice** semel atque íterum; **once upon a time** ōlim

past: in the past ántehāc

period spāti·um -ī *n*

point: at this point (in time) hōc locō

previously ántehāc, prius

rarely rārō

right from the start in pīncipiō ílicō; **right now** nunc iam

second secūnd·a -ae *f*

since (*temporal*) ut (+ *indic*)

someday (*in indef. fut.*) aliquándō, áliquā diē

sometime aliquándō

sometimes nōnnūquam; intērdum; **sometimes ... sometimes** áliās ... áliās, modo ... modo, intērdum ... intērdum

soon mox; (*in a minute*) iam; **as soon as** cum pīmum; **as soon as possible** quam pīmum; **soon thereafter** mox deīnde; **too soon** nīmum cito

sooner or later sērius ócius, sērius aut cítius

then (*at that time*) tum; (*next*) deīnde; **just then** tunc máximē; **then and there** ílicō

till ūsque ad (+ *acc*), in (+ *acc*); **till the month of July** in mēsem Iúlium

time temp·us -oris *n*; **ahead of time** ante tempus; **a long time already** (+ *present tense*) iam dūdum, e.g., **I've been here a long time already** iam dūdum adsum; **around the time of** sub tempus (+ *gen*); **at about the same time** sub idem tempus; **at another time** áliās; **at one time ... at another** áliās ... áliās; **at that time** ad id témporis; **at the right time** tempestívē; **at the time when** quā tempestáte; **at the wrong time** intempestívē; **at times** intērdum; **a very short time ago** modo; **before time** (*prematurely*) ante tempus; **for a long time** iam diū; **for a short time** brevī témpore; **for the first time** pīmum; **for the last time** extrēmum; **for the time being** in

tempus; **from time to time** subínde; **I have no time** tempus nōn est mihi; **in a short time** in brevī spātiō; **in good time, in plenty of time** mātúrē; **in (the course of) time** témpore; **it is high time for you to** tempus máximē est ut tū (+ *subj*); **long ago** iam dūdum; **make up for lost time** cessáta témpora córrig-ō -ere corrēxī; **not to have the time to** ótium nōn habēre (*w. dat ger*); **once upon a time** ōlim; **on time** témporī; **some time ago** dūdum, prīdem; **there was a time when** (tempus) fuit cum; **to ask what time it is** hōrās inquírere; **to postpone to another time** différre in áliud tempus; **to ask the time** quaérere hōrās; **to see what time it is** hōrās ínspicere; **to spend time** tempus súmere (*ágere, agitáre*); **to waste time** tempus pérdere; **what time is it?** quota hōra est?; **quot hōrae sunt?**; **to while away the time** tempus fall-ō -ere fefélli

times (*use numeral adverbs*) e.g., **ten times** déciēs; **no more than three times** ter nec ámplius

today hódīē; **before today** ante hunc diem; **starting today** ex hōc diē

tomorrow crās; **day after tomorrow** peréndiē; **tomorrow morning** crās māne; **until tomorrow** in crástinum

tonight hāc nocte

twilight crepúscul-um -ī *n*; **at twilight** crepúsculō

until *conj* dōnec; *prep* ūsque ad (+ *acc*)

up till now ántehāc

when cum, ubi, ut; (*interrog*) quandō

whenever quandōcúmque, utcúmque, quótiēns

while *s* a little while before paulō ante; **after a little while** paulō post; **a short while ago** paulō ante

while *conj* dum

while *tr* to while away the time tempus fall-ō -ere fefélli

year: annus -ī *m*; **every year** quotánnīs; **the following year** próxímus annus; **the previous year** supéríor annus; **at the beginning of the year** ineúnte annō, prínicipiō annī; **at the end of the year** exeúnte annō; **a hundred years from now** ad centum annōs

yesterday herī; **the day before yesterday** núdius tértius (*adv, also written as one word*); **yesterday morning** herī māne

Chapter XI: Useful Colloquial Expressions

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I **Brian finds Jeffrey to be in a hurry.**

Bríanus	Astā, Gálfride; manē dum, quaesō.	<i>Brian: Hold it, Jeffrey. Wait a minute, please.</i>
Gálfridus	Quid rei est, Bríane? Mē paénitet, vērūm enim próperō.	<i>Jeffrey: What's up, Brian? I'm sorry but I'm really in a hurry.</i>
Bríanus	Quid festínās? Quō tē agis?	<i>What's your hurry. Where are you going?</i>
Gálfridus	Ego bibliothécā petō.	<i>I'm heading for the library.</i>
Bríanus	Quam ob rem?	<i>Why?</i>
Gálfridus	Certē nōn ánimī causā.	<i>Certainly not for my amusement.</i>
Bríanus	Cūr ígitur?	<i>Why then?</i>
Gálfridus	Rogās? Sc̄lícet óperis árdui amóre.	<i>What a question! Of course, out of love for hard work.</i>
Bríanus	Quid tibi in ánimō est ibi fácere?	<i>What do you intend to do there?</i>
Gálfridus	Ut sóleō, indāgatióne m̄ actúrus sum.	<i>As usual, I am going to do research.</i>
Bríanus	Em, eō cāsū tē nōn dētínébō.	<i>Well, in that case I'll not hold you up.</i>
Gálfridus	Nunc valē. Ōtiósus estō.	<i>So long for now. Take it easy.</i>

LEVEL II **Phyllis wants to discuss a problem with Marie.**

Phyllis	Heus Maríā. Velísne mēcum forīs cēnāre?	<i>Phyllis: Hey Marie, would you like to go out to dinner with me?</i>
María	Quíppinī? Sed quid tibi in ánimō est?	<i>Marie: Why not? But what's on your mind?</i>

Phyllis	Ut vēra dīcam, ego in angústīs versor.	<i>To tell you the truth, I'm in a tight spot.</i>
María	Nōn téneō. Quid est negótīi?	<i>I don't get it. What's the problem?</i>
Phyllis	Ego équidem ádmodum sollícitor.	<i>I'm really quite worried.</i>
María	Quid id est? Quā causā ádeō perturbáris?	<i>What is it? Why are you so upset?</i>
Phyllis	Ūnō verbō, sollícitor dē rē pecūniári.	<i>In a word, I'm worried about my personal finances.</i>
María	Perge porrō. Quid dē rē pecūniári?	<i>Go on. What about your personal finances?</i>
Phyllis	Mālim tēcum dē eā in prīvátō loquī. Rem enim tōtam per cēnam per sīngula iníbō.	<i>I'd rather talk to you about that in private. You see, I'll go into the whole matter in detail over dinner.</i>
María	Eámus ígitur. Nempe tibi succúrram quoad possim. Nōlī sollicitári.	<i>Let's go then. Naturally, I'll help you as far as I can. [lit: as far as I may be able] Don't worry.</i>

LEVEL III Annette turns to her sister for advice.

Annétta	Christína, cāra soror, rēcta cōsília semper dās. Nunc velim ā tē cōsílīum pétere.	Annette: <i>Christine, my dear sister, you always give good advice. Now I'd like to ask you for advice.</i>
Christína	Cedo, Annétta. Cōsílīum dē quō?	Christine: <i>Out with it, Annette. Advice about what?</i>
Annétta	Ut bréviter dīcam, iam dūdum géstiō iter in Itáliam fácere.	<i>To make a long story short, I have been itching for a long time to take a trip to Italy.</i>
Christína	Euge! Rōma vērō hōc annī témpore est bellíssima. At quid est negótīi?	<i>Splendid! Rome, in fact, is very pretty at this time of the year. But what's the trouble?</i>
Annétta	Em, argéntum mihi, ut ita dīcam, paúlulum déficit.	<i>Well, I am, so to speak, a little short of money. [lit: money is running a little low for me]</i>
Christína	Quam mox profíciscī tibi in ánimō est?	<i>How soon do you intend to leave?</i>

Annétta	Cum primum argéntum conrâdere pôterô.	<i>As soon as I can scrape the money together.</i>
Christína	Nönnne ades fréquëns ünâ cum âliquot amîcis divítibus? Quidnî eâs argéntô mútuô ferîs?	<i>You hang out with rich friends, don't you? Why don't you hit them for a loan?</i>
Annétta	In grâtîa quidem cum eîs sum, sed eâs numquam possim argéntum rogâre.	<i>I'm on good terms with them all right, but I could never ask them up for money.</i>
Christína	Iam téneô. Ex verbîs tuîs cölligô tē pecūniam magis quam cōnsílium ā mē pētere. Nönnne ita est?	<i>Now I get it. I infer from what you say that you are asking me for money rather than advice. Right? [lit: isn't it so?]</i>
Annétta	Bene putâs, Christína! Quid fâciam sine tē? Et benévola et benéfica es. Ut aiunt, ea amîca est quae in rē dúbiâ rē iuvat.	<i>Good thinking, Christine! What would I do without you? You're both kind and generous. As they say, a friend in need is a friend indeed.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

Additional colloquial expressions will be found in the General Vocabulary.

ability: to the best of my ability prô meâ parte	afraid: what are you afraid of? quid est quod métuis?
above: to be above (e.g., bribery) indígn•or -âri -âtus sum (+ acc)	after all rē vērâ
absence: in my absence mē absénte	aha! attat!
absolutely nothing nihil prôrsus	ahead: go ahead, tell me! ágedum, dîc mihi!
active: to be active in vers•or -âri -âtus sum in (+ abl)	ail: what ails you? quid tibi est?
addition: in addition accêdit quod (+ indic)	all along: I knew all along ūsque ab inítiô scîvî
advantage: to be of advantage prôsum prôdêsse prôfuî	all but propémódum; I have all but given up hope propémódum spem dēmîsî
advantage: to take advantage of the opportunity occâsiônem nancîsc•or -î nâctus sum	all over: it's all over! Âctum est!
advice: I will take your advice on the matter cōnsílium tuum illîus reî cápiam	all the same (anyhow) níhilô sētius
advice: on your advice tē auctóre	all there: are you quite all there? satísne sânus (-a) es?
	all's well salva rês est
	amount: it amounts to the same thing tantúndem est

amusement: for one's amusement
ánimī causā

and so forth et perinde

angry: he did nothing for you to be angry at nihil fēcit quod suscēnsēs

answer: I'll answer you point by point
tibi respondēbō (*in writing:*
rescrībam) ad singula

answer: now I'll answer your questions nunc respondēbō ad ea quae rogāvistī

answer: that's not an answer to my question aliud tē rogō

answer: to give s.o. an answer álicui respōnsum rédd•ō -ere -idī -itus

anyhow (*just the same*) nec eō sētius;
(*in any event*) útique

anything else I can do for you? num quid aliud mē vīs?

apologize: I apologize to you mē tibi excūsō

apology: please accept my apologies
quaesō, áccipe excūsatiōnēs

apparently ut vidētur

applecart: to upset the applecart
plaustrum percēll•ō -ere pēculī

appointment: to have an appointment with cōstitútum háb•eō -ēre -uī cum (+ abl)

appointment: to keep an appointment
ad cōstitútum vén•iō -īre vēnī

appreciate: I appreciate your kindness benefícium tuum túeor

argue: stop arguing! désine (*pl:*
dēsínite) argūmentārī!

argument: to get into an argument in
lītem ambíguam dēscénd•ō -ere -ī

argument: to put up an argument
recūsāre

ashamed: I'm ashamed of it mē pudet ēius

ashamed: I'm ashamed to say mē pudet dīcere

ask further questions quaer•ō -ere quaesívī ultrā

ask: he asked me whether quaesívīt ā mē (*or* dē mē *or* ex mē) num

ask: he asked you a question ille tē interrogávit

ask: I want to ask you this hoc tē rogāre volō

ask: to ask s.o. for s.th. álicuem áliquíd rogāre

ask: why do you ask me that? quid mē istud rogās?

at all prōrsum, omnínō; **you have no common sense at all** nōn cor omnínō habēs

attend: I'll certainly attend to it dabō équidem óperam

available: to be available praestō esse

average: on the average médiā hábitā ratiōne

aw, keep quiet! au, tacē!

aye yai yai! heu heu!

back: to back s.o. álicui fáveō -ēre fāvī fautúrus

bad: wine is bad for you aliénūm tibi vīnum est

baloney! fábulae!

bamboozle: you bamboozled me mihi dedísti verba

beat around the bush circumitiōne út•or -ī ūsus sum

begin: to begin with prīmum enim

best: to do one's best prō virílī parte

best: to make the best of it aequō ánimō ferō ferre tulī lātus

bet: I bet he has taken off pōnō eum abivísse

bet: I bet you he doesn't win tē
spōnsiōne prōvocō illum nōn esse
victūrum

better half: where is your better half?
Úbinam est tua áltera?

better: it's better to commódus est (+
inf)

better: it's for the better in mélius est

better late than never pótius sērō quam
numquam

better: there, that's better! em istuc
rēctius!

big-mouth! ōs dūrum!

big-mouth: he was always a big-
mouth semper dūrae buccae fuit

blame: I don't blame you tibi nōn
impróperō

blame: to push the blame on culpam in
(+ *acc*) cōnferō conférre cōntulī
collátus

blame: you are to blame tū peccās *or*
tū in culpā es

bless you dī tē ament; (*after a sneeze*)
salvē *or* salútem!

bore: don't be a bore nē sīs odiósus
(-a)

bother: don't bother me nē mihi
moléstus (-a) sīs

bother: don't bother nōlī tē (*pl*: nōlíte
vós) movére

brag: he brags too much about his
money pecúniā nimis iactat

brains: she's got brains corcillum
habet

brief: make it brief! in pauca cōnfer!

briefly: to put it briefly ut bréviter
dicam

brilliant! sophos!

bring oneself to (*do s.th.*) ánimum
indúc-ō -ere indúxī ut (+ *subj*)

broke: to be broke solvéndō nōn esse

bump into s.o. álicui occurrere (*or*
álicui óbviā fferī)

burst out laughing rīsum effúnd-ō -ere
effúdi

bury the hatchet similtátem dēpón-ō
-ere dēpósui

bush: don't beat around the bush nōlī
(*pl*: nōlíte) schēmās loquī

bush: he didn't beat around the bush
nīl circumitiōne ūsus est

business: I always mind my own
business negótium agō semper
meum

business: it's my (your, etc.) business
to see what's going on meum (tuum,
etc.) est vidére quid agátur

business: that's none of my business
nihil ad mē áttinet

business: to put s.o. out of business
áliquem dē negótio dēic-iō -ere
dēiēcī dēiēctus

business: what business is it of yours?
quid id ad tē áttinet?

busy: I'm busy labōriósus (-a) *or*
occupát-us -a sum

busybody: ardéli-ō -ónis *mf*

buttonhole s.o. áliquem prehēnsāre

cahoots: to be in cahoots with s.o. cum
áliquō collú-dō -dere -sī

care: for all I care meā causā

care: I don't care about such things
Ista nōn cūrō

care: I don't care for (*don't like*) nīl
mor-or -árī -átus sum (+ *acc*)

care: I don't care to say more nōn
libet plūra dícere

care: I don't really care as long as ...
meā nīl rēfert dum (+ *indic*)

care: take care of yourself cūrā ut
válēās (*pl*: cūrāte ut valéátis)

care: what do I care! quid meā!

carry away: don't get carried away with enthusiasm nōlī (*pl: nōlīte*)
stúdiō efferrī

case: get off my case! nē mihi molēstus (-a) sīs!

case: if that's the case, sī rēs sic habet,

case: in any case utcúmque

case: in case you have not ... sī minus ...

case: in no case haudquáquam

case: in that case ígitur; eō cāsū

case: since that's the case, quae cum ita sint,

case: that's not the case nōn ita rēs est

case: that's the case sunt ista *or* sic rēs habet

catch breath: let me catch my breath, please sine respírem, quaesō

catch red-handed flagrántī dēlícitō dēprehén·dō -dere -dī -sus

catch sight of cōnspíc·iō -ere cōnspéxī

catch: I didn't catch what you're saying nōn satis exaudiēbam quae lóqueris

catch: there's a catch to it enim istaec cáptiō est

certain: I don't know for certain nōn certō (*or* certum) sciō **I take it as certain** prō certō hábeō

chance: he didn't give me a chance to answer mihi nōn potestátem dedit respondéndī

change: for a change varietátis causā

chat: to have a chat with cōnfābulārī cum (+ *abl*)

chew out: why did the instructor chew you out? quā dē causā docēns tē pilávit?

clear out of here! hinc ápage!

clear: to clear \$1000 in the first year
prīmō annō mille dóllarōs dētér·g·eō -ére dētérsī dētérsus

clever: very clever! (*well said!*) facētē dictum!

come here this minute! concēde hūc āctútum!

come about ēvén·iō -íre ēvénī ēvéntum

come: come back soon redī (*pl: redíte*) cito

come down with an illness morbō corríp·ior -ī corréptus sum

come: come what may, we'll take it philosophically quod fors feret, ferémus aequō ánimō

comfortable: make yourselves comfortable rogō ut vóbīs suávitē sit

coming: he's got what's coming to him habet quod sibi dēbēbátur

common sense: to have common sense cor háb·eō -ére -uī

company: to keep each other company inter sē cólere

concern: as far as I'm concerned per mē

concern: how does that concern you? quid id ad tē áttinet?

concerned: I'm not terribly concerned about ... labórō nōn valdē dē (+ *abl*)

condition: in excellent condition habitíssim·us -a -um

condition: in good (bad) condition bene (male) hábít·us -a -um

condition: on condition that eā lēge ut (+ *subj*)

congratulations! macte virtúte estō!

consent: without my consent mē invítō

contradict oneself pugnántia loqu·or -ī locútus sum

control yourself tē cōtinē

convenience: do it at your

convenience id fac cōmodō tuō

convenience: write me at your earliest

convenience scribe ad mē cum
commodissimē pōteris

**convenient: when it will be convenient
for you** cum erit tuum cōmodum

conversation: to engage in

conversation with sermōnēs cum (+
abl) cōnferō cōnfērre cōntulī

cook up (*fig*) excōgitāre

count: you can count on it that ... erit
tibi perspēctum (+ *acc & inf*)

count: you can count on me potes nītī
mē [*abl*]

count: you don't count extrā nūmerum
es mihi

crazy: he's crazy about her dēperit
eam

crazy: he's crazy about sports
morbōsus est in lūdōs

creep: it makes my skin creep facit ut
hórream

cut it out dēsinās! (*pl*: dēsinátis!);
dēsístē! (*pl*: dēsístíte!)

cut that out right now supērsedē istīs
rēbus iam

cut the talk! it's boring sēgregā
sermōnem! taedet

damned: I'll be damned if I know dī
mē perdant, sī sciō

**darn: I don't give a darn about that
(him, them)** id (eum, eos) nōn faciō
floccī

darned: I'll be darned if ... male mī
sit, sī ...

darned: Well, I'll be darned if I ever
male mī sit, sī umquam (+ *fut indic*)

dead: I'm dead! intérii! *or* pērii!

deaf: you're preaching to deaf ears ad
surdās aurēs cantās

deal: a good deal of aliquántum (+ *gen*)

deal: it's a deal pactam rem habētō (*pl*:
habētôte)

**decked out: why are you all decked
out?** quámobrem sic subōrnátus (-a)
es?

**deliver: the mailman delivered the
letter yesterday** tabellárius lítterās
herī réddidit

deny: I do not deny that ... nōn
ínfítī·or -árī (+ *acc & inf*)

**depend: it depends a lot on whether
... plúrimum** rēfert num ...

depend: it (all) depends on you tōtum
in tē pōsitum est

detail: to go into a matter in detail
rem per síngula ín·eō -íre -iī *or* -ívi

difference of opinion dissénti·ō -ónis *f*

difference: it makes no difference nīl
ínterest

**difference: it makes no difference to
me (you, etc.) whether ... or** nīl
meā (tuā, etc) ínterest (*or* rēfert)
utrum ... an (+ *subj*)

**difference: what's the difference
anyhow!** quid útique ínterest! *or*
quid útique rēfert?

dig up s.th. about quicquam ērúere dē
(+ *abl*)

dirt cheap prō lutō

dirty look: to give s.o. a dirty look
respíc·iō -ere respéxi áliquem minus
familiári vultū

disagree: I strongly disagree with you
veheménter ā tē disséntiō

disappear: to disappear from sight ē
cōspéctū aúferor auférri ablátus
sum

disappoint: I'll not disappoint you nōn
fallam opiniónem tuam

do good: it will do you (a lot of, no)
good *próderit* (multum, nihil) tibi

do in: he has done me in *pérdidit mē*

do one's best *óperam dō dare dedi*

do: I don't know what to do *quid*
fāciam nēsciō

do: it won't do to (+ *inf*) *nōn satis est*
(+ *inf*)

do: what else can I do? *quid áliud*
fāciam?

do: what more can I do? *quid fāciam*
ámplius?

do: will this do? *sátin(e) est?*

dogs: they're going to the dogs *pessum*
eunt

doing: what's doing? *quid ágitur?*

done for: I'm done for! *nūllus sum or*
Périi

doubt: I have no doubt that ... *nōn*
mihi dúbium est quān (+ subj)

down pat: you have the whole thing
down pat *órdine omnem rem tenēs*

downhill: it was all downhill after that
proclívia ómnia erant postílla

downhill: things are going downhill
inclináta rēs est

drive s.o. mad: *áliquem dēméntem*
fác·iō -ere fēcī factus

drop it! (no more of that!) *missa istaec*
fac!

drop it, please! *mitte, amábō!*

drop in on (to visit) *invís·ō -ere -ī*

drop: let's drop the subject *missa haec*
faciámus

duck the issue *rem ēvítáre*

duped: you've been duped good and
proper tibi *ós est súblitum plānē et*
probē

dying to know: I am dying to know
how you are doing *valdē áveō scīre,*
quid agās

eat out *forīs cēnāre*

effort: make an effort to be on time *dā*
óperam ut tempestívē adsīs

effort: you've wasted all your effort
omnem óperam perdidísti

else: who else is more deserving? *quis*
alter est dígnior homō?

embarrassed: I am embarrassed by
sum perturbátus cum (+ abl)

end: put an end to *finem impón·ō -ere*
impósui (+ dat)

end: that's the end of me *Áctum est dē*
mē

enough of this! *haec quidem háctenus!*

evidently *vidélicet*

excuse: excuse me *ignósce mihi*

excuse: please excuse me *óbsecrō, mihi*
ignóscās

expect: what do you expect? *quid vīs*
fíerī?

expression: to change one's expression
vultum flect·ō -ere flexī flexus

eye: keep an eye on that guy *adservā*
(pl: adserváte) istum

eye: look me in the eye *aspícédum*
contrā mē

eyes: keep your eyes open *cavē*
circumspiciās

face to face: to be face to face with
you *praesēns praesénti tibi esse*

face to face: we can discuss that face
to face *cōram id ágere possumus*

face: make a face *ós dūc·ō -ere dūxī*

fact: as a matter of fact *enimvērō*

fact: in fact *vērō; quidem*

fact: the facts speak for themselves *rēs*
ipsa índicat or rēs prō sē lóquitur

fact: the fact that ... *quod (+ indic)*

fail: words fail me *quid dīcam nōn*
invénio

fair: fair and square sine fūcō ac fallāciīs

fair: I think that's fair id aequī fāc·iō -ere -fēcī

fair: that's not fair of you nōn aequum facis

fall flat (*of a speech, etc.*) frīgeō frīgēre

fall for (*a trick*) fall·or -ī (+ *abl*)

fall sick in morbum íncid·ō -ere -ī

far from it! mínimē!

far-fetched idea conquísitum cōnsíli·um -ī *n*

far: as far as I'm concerned per mē

fault: to be at fault in culpā esse

favor: ask s.o. for a favor grātiam ab aliquō pet·ō -ere petīvī

favor: do s.o. a favor grātum álicui fāc·iō -ere fēcī factus

favor: please do me this favor amábō tē, fac (*or for a previous favor, refer*) hanc grātiam mihi

fear of God: he put the fear of God into them cūrāvit ut illīs Iúppiter irātus esset

feel bad (good) sē male (bene) habére; **to feel really bad about** valdē dól·eō -ēre -uī dē (+ *abl*)

feel better (*physically*) mélius vál·eō -ēre -uī

feel well: not feel quite well minus vál·eō -ēre -uī

feel: because I felt like it quia mihi líbitum est

feel: I felt like it líbuit

feel: you'll feel bad tibi cordólium erit

feelers: put out feelers to tentāre

feeling: I wasn't feeling well ego mē nōn bellē habēbam

figure on (*rely on*) nīt·or -ī nīxus sum *or* nīsus sum

figure out excōgitāre

fine! probē!

fine: you did fine fēcistī probē

fine: everything's fine rēctē est

fine: that's fine bene hoc habet

finger: not lift a finger pressīs mánibus sēd·eō -ēre sēdī

finger: to point the finger at s.o. dígitum ad áliquem inténd·ō -ere -ī

fingers: to snap the fingers dígitīs cóncrep·ō -āre -uī

fix: to be in a fix in angústíis vers·or -ārī -átus sum

flabbergast conturbāre

flabbergasted: we were absolutely flabbergasted nōs omnínō conturbābāmur

fly: to fly off the handle cito fērv·eō -ēre -ī

fond: to be fond of dílig·ō -ere dílēxī dílēctus

for all that nec eō sētius *or* níhilō sētius

for that matter ádeō

forget about it! éice id ex ánimō!

free: if you are free sī vacábis

friend: she's my best friend amíca summa mea est

from a to z: he explained everything to me from a to z ab áciā et acū mihi ómnia expósuit

fun: he always makes fun of me (*or pokes fun at me*) iste mē semper élúdit (*or* inrídēt)

fun: it was pure fun hilária mera erat

fun: it's no fun if you ... nōn iúcúndum est sī tū ...

geez eu édepol *or* eu hercle

general: in general ferē, vulgō

get out of my way! dē viā meā dēcēde (*pl: dēcēdite*)!

get (the business) over and done with
(negótiūm) absolv·ō -ere -ī absolūtus

get along: they get along well with each other (or one another)
concorditer inter sē congruunt

get carried away by or with effēror
effērrī ēlātus sum (+ *abl*)

get: do you get it now? iam tenēs? **I get it** tēneō

get: don't you get it? nōn tū tenēs?
now I get it! iam tēneō!

get even with s.o. for ulcisc·or -ī ultus
sum aliquem quod (+ *indic*)

get even: if only I could get even with him for what he did Ūtinam istum
ulcisci possem prō factis eius

get: I can't get him to talk nōn queō
orāre ut loquātur

get: I get it all right satis ea tēneō

get: now get this nunc cognōsce rem

get rid of: I want to get rid of that pest istum molēstum amolīrī volō

gist: the gist of what he said was this:
hanc in sentēntiam dixit:

give it here cedo (*pl:* cette) (*an old imperative; can take a direct object*)

give it to 'em! ádhibē! (*pl:* adhíbite!)

glued: I'm glued to my books in librīs
haér·eō -ēre haesī

glum: why so glum? quid tū es tam
tristis?

go and see whether he has come home or not abī, vīse redierítne an nōndum
domum

go on! perge (*pl:* pérgite) porrō

go on: what's going on here? quid reī
hīc est?

go well: things are going fairly well
ágitur satis

go: I don't go for (don't like) nīl
mor·or -āri -átus sum (+ *acc*)

go: I don't go in for sports lūdīs [*dat*]
nōn stúdeō

go: please let me go mitte mē sīs

go: what's going on? quid negótī est?
or quid ágitur?

go: where are you going? quō tē agis?

god bless you! tibi dī bene fáciant;
(*after a sneeze*) salvē or salūtem

going: good going! bene factum!

goner: geez, I'm a goner pērii hercle

good for you! macte virtūte estō! (*said in praise*)

good job! bene factum!

good lord! o dī bonī!

good thinking! bene putās!

good for: how long is that good for?
quam diū valēbit?

good, good! euge, euge!

good-for-nothing *adj* nēquam (*indecl*)

good-for-nothing s: to be a good-for-nothing nihil hōminis esse

good: to do a lot of good multum
prōsum prōdesse prōfuī

good: you're a good fellow frūgī es

grateful: I am deeply grateful to you
tibi grātiam hábeō máximam (*or*
grātiās máximās)

great! eu!

great: that's great! bene hercle factum!

ha, ha, ha! hahahaé!

hand over: hand it over! cedo (*pl:*
cette)! (*an old imperative; can take a direct object*)

hand: hand me that food pórrige mihi
illum cibum

hands: to have one's hands full
sátag·ō -ere satégī

hands: to sit on one's hands (doing nothing) comprēssīs mánibus séd·eō
-ēre sēdī

hang around with frequēns adēsse ūnā cum (+ *abl*)

hang: you can just go and hang yourself! ī dīrēctē in mǎximam malam crucem!

happen: what happened? quid factum est?

hard: he was hard on me in mē dūrus erat

hard: it's hard to do, but I'll try just the same diffīcile factū est, sed cōnābor nīhilō sētius

hard: to take this hard hoc dūrum accíp·iō -ere accēpī

harp on the same theme cantilēnam eāndem can·ō -ere cēcinī

have it your way! estō ut lubet!

have a tough time of it valdē labōrāre

have it in for s.o. ālicui perīculum dēnūtiāre

have to do: what do you have to do with him? quid reī tibi est cum illō?

have to say: this I have to say haec hābeō dīcere

head: come into one's head in buccam vēn·iō -īre vēnī [*lit: come into one's cheek*]

head: from head to foot ā cāpite ūsque ad calcem

head: to put heads together cāpita cōnferō cōnfērre cōntulī

headway: we are making some headway, I hope ut spērō, prōficimus aliquāntum

health: for reasons of (bad) health valētūdinis causā

heart: from the heart ex ānimō; **heart and soul** tōtō pēctore

heart: my heart was in my throat ānima mihi in nāsō erat [*lit: my breath was in my nose*]

heart: to take to heart familiāriter ferō ferre tulī lātus

heaven: for heaven's sake óbsecrō [*lit: I pray*]

heaven: I'm in seventh heaven dígitō caelum attingō

heavens above! o dī immortalēs!

heck: who the heck are they? quī, malum, istī sunt?

heels: to take to his heels sē cōnícere in pedēs

hell: I'm going to catch hell habébō convícium

hello: Terentia says hello to you Teréntia tibi salútem dicit

here I am Ecce mē

here with it! cedo! (*pl: cette!*) (*can take an accusative object, e.g.: here with that book!* cedo istum librum!)

hey you, I'm talking to you! heus tū, tibi ego dīcō!

hide: to be after s.o.'s hide córium alicíus pet·ō -ere petívī

hide: to risk his own hide córiō suō lūdere

hide: to save his own hide córium servāre

hit it off: did you hit it off with them? concordābāsne cum illīs?

hit: hit s.o. for a loan ferīre áliquem mūtuō argéntō

hmmmm hem

hogwash: that's hogwash! quisquíliae!

hold it! I won't let you leave astā! abíre hinc nōn sinam

honest to god médius fídus

honestly: tell me honestly dīc bonā fide

hoot: I don't give a hoot about him eum floccī nōn faciō

how come? quī istuc?

how so? quīdum? *or* quid ita?

how's that? (*what did you say?*)
quīdum? *or* quid iam?

humor: to humor s.o. álicui mōrem
gerō gēre gessi

hurray! euax!

hurry! mātūrā! (*pl:* mātūrāte!)

hurry: but I'm in a hurry at próperō

hurry: what's your hurry? quid
festínās?

I'll be right there iam áderō

idea: you're full of ideas plēnus (-a)
cōnsílii es

importance: it is of the greatest
importance to me that ... permágni
meā ínterest (+ *acc & inf*)

important: it is (very) important to
me (you) that magnī (máximē) meā
(tuā) ínterest (+ *acc & inf*)

important: it's not all that important
tantī nōn est

impression: to make a deep
impression on máximē commóv·eō
-ére commóvi (+ *acc*)

in: is your father in? estne pater intus?

infer: I infer from what you say that
... ex verbīs tuīs cólligō (+ *acc &*
inf)

influence: to have a lot of influence
with multum posse in (+ *abl*)

inform: to inform s.o. about áliquem
certiōrem facere dē (+ *abl*)

initiative: on my own initiative meā
sponte

inside: go inside! ī (*pl:* íte) intus!

intend: I intended to set out straight
for home erat mihi in ánimō rēctā
proficiēscī domum

intentions: with the best intentions
óptimō ánimō ütens

interested: I am interested in music
músicae [*dat*] stúdeō

interested: I am interested in that id
mihi cūrae est

interesting: that book is interesting
ille liber mē tenet

interrupt: don't interrupt me! nōlī (*pl:*
nōlíte) mihi óbloquī!

is that so? ítane?

itch: I'm just itching to gést·iō -íre
quidem (+ *inf*)

jam: to be in a jam in angústíis vers·or
-áři -átus sum

job: good job! rēctē factum!

job: it's a big job but ... magnum opus
est sed tamen ...

joke: all joking aside iocō remótō

joke: as a joke per iocum

joke: now you're joking iocáris nunc tū

jokingly per iocum *or* inter iocum

judgment: against my better
judgment advérsum ingénium meum

just about (*pretty well, virtually*)
propémodum

just the same (*anyhow*) tamen *or* níhilō
sētius

keep this to yourself haec tū tēcum
habétō

keep your cool! compésce mentem!

keep a stiff upper lip! fac ut ánimō
fortī sīs!

keep: am I keeping you? num dētíneō
tē?

kept: what kept you? quid ténuit quō
minus venírēs?

kick the bucket ánimam bullíre

kid: don't kid me nē mē lūdās

kidding: you're kidding lūdis mē

kill time tempus fall·ō -ere fefélli

knock it off! parce! (*pl:* párcite!)

**know better: he thinks he knows
better than I do** cēnsēt sē plūs
sápere quam mē

know for sure certum (*or* certō) sciō
scīre scīvī

know: get to know nōsc•ō -ere nōvī
nōtus

**know: let me know what you are
doing** tū mē velim certiōrem fáciās,
quid agās

know: let me know where you are
fácitō ut sciam ubi sīs

latest: today, at latest tomorrow hódie,
summum crās

laugh: I laughed till I cried rīsī ūsque
ad lácrimās

lay a finger on s.o. áliquem ūnō dígitō
attíng•ō -ere áttigī

lay it on the line dířectum loquor loquī
locútus sum

lay off! désine (*pl:* dēsínite) tandem!

leave me alone! omítte (*pl:* omíttite) mē

leave it up to s.o. to ... álicui mandáre
(+ *subj*)

leave no stone unturned nūllō locō
dēsum dēesse défui

let down: to let s.o. down álicui dēsum
dēesse défui

let fall: dēmítt•ō -ere dēmísi dēmíssus

let me go! mítte (*pl:* míttite) mē!

let me know fácitō (*pl:* facitóte) ut
sciam

**life and death: it's not a question of
life or death** nōn cápitis rēs ágitur

life: but such is life sed vīta fert; **to
lead the life of riley** vītam chiam
ger•ō -ere gessi

life: on my life! ita vīvam!

light: to make light of in levī háb•eō
-ēre -uī

like: he said something like this haec
ferē dīxit

like: I like this hoc mihi placet

like: I like to do this mē iuvat hoc
fácere

like: I'd like you to come velim (ut)
véniās

like: that's more like it propémódum
est

likely: it is more likely that facílius est
ut (+ *subj*)

likely: most likely he will come
próximū est ut véniat

**line: drop me a line when you have
time** scribe áliquíd litterárum quandō
vacās

line: he's feeding you a line verba tibi
iste dat

line: to form a long line longum agmen
fác•iō -ere fēcī factus

line: to lay it on the line dířectum
loquor loquī locútus sum

lip: keep a stiff upper lip fac, ut ánimō
fortī sīs

live it up pergraéc•or -ári

living: to make a living quaestum
fácere *or* víctum quaerítare

living: you're living on borrowed time
dē lucrō vīvis (*pl:* vívitis)

loaded with money cōpiós•us -a -um

loaf cessáre

loan: may I hit you for a loan? licet tē
mútuō feríre?

long: it would take too long to ...
longum erat (+ *inf*)

**look like: I don't know what he (or
she) looks like** quā sit fáciē, nesciō

**look: aha, the very person I was
looking for** Attát, quem quaerébam!

look: it looks that way to me ita mihi
vidétur

low: I am low on (*e.g., paper*) (charta)
mihi dēest

luck: good luck! fēlīciter!

lump s.o. together with āliquem
accūd·ō -ere (+ *dat*)

mad: I'm mad at you tibi suscēnseō *or*
ego tibi īrātus sum

mad: to be mad about (*be madly in love with*) dēpēr·iō -īre -īi (+ *acc*)

mad: to go mad mente aliēnārī

mail: I mailed the letter yesterday
litterās herī dedī

matter: for that matter ádeō

matter: it doesn't matter to me nihil
ad mē pērtinet

matter: no matter how... quamvīs (+ *subj*)

matter: what does that matter to me (you, us)? quid id meā (tuā, nōbīs)
rēfert?

matter: what on earth's the matter?
quidnam est?

matter: what's the matter? quid est?
or quid istuc est reī?

mean: do you know whom I mean?
scīsne quem dīcam?

mean: do you mean me? mēne vīs?
yes, you tē

mean: do you really mean it? ain
vērō? **yes, I do** aiō

mean: how do you mean that? quī
istuc vīs?

mean: now you know what I mean
scīs iam quid loquar

mean: what do you mean? quid tibi
vīs?

mean: what do you mean by that?
quid istuc est verbī?

mean: what does this mean? quid hoc
sibi vult?

mean: what I mean is (*in correcting a misunderstanding*) at enim

means: by all means! máximē!

memory: if my memory serves me right, sī ego satis commémīnī,

memory: in memory of in memóriam
(+ *gen*)

memory: to commit to memory
memóriae committ·o -ere commísī

mention: I don't want to mention him by name eum nōlō nōmīnāre

mention: not to mention ut nōn (*or*
nihil) dīcam dē (+ *abl*)

mention: not to mention the fact that
... ut mittam quod (+ *indic*)

mention: since mention has been made of money, quóniam
nummōrum mēntiō facta est,

mess: geez, what a mess! eu édepol rēs
turbuléntās!

mince: without mincing words sine
fūcō ac falláciis

mind: he's out of his mind aliēnátus
est ā sē

mind: I don't mind if you stay, provided you're quiet nōn labórō sī
manēs, modo táceās

mind: I don't mind that ... nōn cūrō
quod (+ *indic*)

mind: I made up my mind not to hurry erat in ánimō nihil festīnāre

mind: I made up my mind to leave
cōnstítui hinc abīre *or* certum est
mihi hinc abīre

mind: I really don't mind that istuc
quidem nōn moléstē ferō ferre tulī

mind: I was out of my mind when ...
dēsipiēbam mentis cum ...

mind: I've made up my mind mihi
certum est

mind: if you don't mind sī tibi
moléstum nōn est *or* sī tibi vidétur

mind: it had not entered my mind
mihi in mentem nōn vēnerat

mind: it slipped my mind to write to you fūgit mē ad tē scrībere

mind: never mind! (*let it pass*) sine!
(*pl: sinite*)

mind: never mind what he says mitte
id quod dīcit

mind: set your mind at ease habē
ānimum lēnem et tranqūillum

mind: to change one's mind mentem
mūtāre

mind: to have in mind to in ānimō
habēre (+ *inf*)

mind: to mind s.o. else's (one's own)
business aliēna (sua) negōtia cūrāre

mind: what's on your mind? quid tibi
in ānimō est?

misquote: you are misquoting me mē
āliis verbīs pōnis

mistake: by mistake imprūdēns,
pérperam

mistake: you're making a big mistake
errās pervérsē *or* veheménter errās

mood: to be in a good mood bonum
ānimum háb-eō -ēre -uī

more of this another time sed dē hōc
āliās plūribus

mouth: I had better keep my mouth shut táceam óptimum est

mouth: shut your mouth óbserá ōs
tuum!

my oh my! vae míserō (-ae) mihi!

naturally (*of course*) nempe

necessary: if it is necessary for you to stay on sī opus est tē commorārī

necessary: if it is necessary for your health sī opus est ad valētūdinem

need: I (you, we) need money opus est
mihi (tibi, nobīs) argéntō [*abl*]

needless to say quid quaeris?

neither: that's neither here nor there
(*a matter of indifference*) *susque*
dēque est

nerve: what nerve! Ō audāciam!

news: if you happen to have any news about ... sī quid forte novī habēs dē
(+ *abl*); **if you have no news about ...** sī nihil novī habēs dē (+ *abl*); **I'll tell you when I have any news** narrábō, cum āliquid habébō novī **is there any news?** num quid novī? **no other news** nihil praetereā novī

nice: it was nice of you to invite me, but no, thank you bene vocās, sed tam grátia est

nice: it wasn't nice of you to say that nōn bellē fēcistī quī id dīxerīs

nick: you've come in the nick of time in ipsō artículō témporis ádvenīs

no way! mínimē! *or* nūllō modō!

no, thanks tam grátia est *or* benígnē

nonsense! nūgās!

nonsense: cut out the nonsense omítte
nūgās

nonsense: that's a lot of nonsense nūgae sunt istae magnae

nonsense: you are talking nonsense nūgās garrīs

nose: to have a good nose for these things haec festívē odórārī

nose: under one's very nose ante
óculōs

nosey: I don't want to be nose-y but ... nōn libet cūríōsus (-a) esse sed ...

now here's the point nunc cognósce
rem

now what? quid nunc?

nuts: he's nuts aliēnátus est ā sē

nuts: you're nuts dēlírās

O.K. fiat *or* licet

O.K.: if it's O.K. with you, *sī tibi vidētur*

O.K.: we're O.K. *bene habēmus*

objection: I have no objection *per mē licet*

obliged: I'm much obliged to you for sending me your book *fēcistī mihi pergrātum quod librum ad mē misistī*

occasion: if occasion should arise, *sī fūerit occāsio,*

occur: that had never occurred to me *mihi istuc numquam in mentem vēnerat*

of course *sc̄licet, profectō*

off: I'm off to the forum *ego hinc mē ad forum (agō)*

off: where are you off to? *quō tē agis?*

oh boy! *eu!*

once I get started, I can't stop *quandō incīpiō, dēsīnere nōn queō*

one on one: we can discuss that one on one *id cōram āgere pōssumus*

ouch! *oiē!*

out with it! (tell me!) *cedo! (pl: cettē!) (an old imperative)*

out of place: if it is not out of place, *nisi aliēnum est,*

over: it's all over! *Āctum est! or f̄licet!*

overwhelmed: to be overwhelmed with work *ōbruī, tamquam flūctū, sīc ōpere*

pain : stop being a pain in the neck *molēstus (-a) nē sis*

pain: feel pain *dolōre affic̄ior -ī affēctus sum*

pardon: pardon me for what I said *ignōsce mihi, quod dīxerō*

particular: in particular *potīssimum*

pass for (appear to be) *probāre prō (+ abl)*

pave: to pave the way to *viam fāc-iō -ere fēcī factus ad (+ acc)*

pay: it pays to listen *prētium ōperae est auscultāre*

pay s.o. a visit *āliquem invīs-ō -ere -ī*

period: I'll not give in *period nōn concēdam dīxī*

pickle: to be in a pickle *in angūstiīs vers-or -ārī -ātus sum*

pinch: in a pinch *in rē dūbiā*

pity: I pity you *miséreor tuī (pl: vestrī)*

place: this is not the place to ... *nōn est hic locus ut (+ subj)*

plans: to make plans for the trip *cōnsīlium cāp-iō -ere cēpī dē itīnere*

play up to s.o. *āliquem col-ō -ere cōluī*

play: stop playing games *dēsīste lūdōs fācere*

please *sōdēs (= sī audēs); quaesō; (very informal) amābō tē*

pleasure: with pleasure *libēnter*

plus: consider it a plus *id dēputā esse in lucrō*

point: at this point *hīc*

point: beside the point *nihil ad rem; get the point? tenēsne (pl: tenētīsne)*

rem? get to the point! *venī ad rem! it got to the point where eō*

dēcūrsus est ut (+ subj); that's the main point *id caput est up to this*

point hāctenus; what was the point of your writing to me? *quid rētulit*

tē mīttere ad mē lītterās? what's the point of that? *quam ad rem istud*

rēfert? what's your point? (what are you driving at?) *quō ēvādis? you*

miss the point *nihil ad rem pērtinet*

point: but to return to the point ... *sed ad prōpōsitum ...*

point: on that point *hāc dē rē*

point: the point is that I no longer care about such things quod caput est, iam ista nōn cūrō

possible: is it really possible that ... numquid; **is it really possible that you are telling the truth?** numquid vēra dīcis?

pretend: I'll pretend I don't know him dissimulābō mē eum nōvīsse

pretend: I'll pretend I'm leaving assimulābō quasi ābeam

pretext: he left under the pretext that ... hinc ābiit quasi (+ *subj*)

pretty well (*just about*) propémōdum

privately: I want to speak with you privately velim tēcum loquī in prīvāto *or* in sēcrētō

problem: what's the problem? quid est negōtī?

promise: I am not making any definite promise nihil certī pollicēor

promises: to break promises prōmissa frang·ō -ere frēgī frāctus

promises: to keep promises prōmissa servāre

promises: to make many promises multa pollic·eor -ērī pollicitus sum

prove: this proves that ... documētō est (+ *acc & inf*)

public: in public forīs

pull a fast one on verba dare (+ *dat*)

pull oneself together sē collig·ō -ere collēgī

put off: let's put this off to another time hanc rem in āliud tempus differāmus

put up with with s.o. āliquem perpēt·ior -ī perpessus sum

put yourself in my place fac quī ego sum, esse tē

put: you're putting it on a little thick es pūtidiūsculus

question: many questions are raised multa quaerūntur

question: no question, he's at fault nempe in culpā est

question: that's a loaded question captiōsum interrogātum est

question: to answer the question ad rogātum (*or* interrogātum) respōnd·eō -ēre -ī

question: to ask a loaded question captiōsē interrogāre

question: why do you ask such questions? cūr ista quaeris?

quiet: why don't you keep quiet? quīn tū tacēs?

racket: to raise a racket clāmōrem toll·ō -ere sūstulī sublātus

raise a rumpus turbās dare

rat: I smell a rat āliquid mihi sūbolet

rate: at any rate útique

rather: do you know this fellow? hunc nōvístī? **rather!** fácite!

reason: for various reasons multīs dē causīs

reason: what's the reason why ... quid est enim, cūr ...

recall: as I recall ut mea memōria est

red cent: I don't owe anyone a red cent assem aerārium nēminī dēbeō

red cent: I haven't a red cent assem aerārium hábeō nūllum

regards: give him (her) my best regards dīcītō eī multam meis verbīs salūtem

remember: if I remember right, sī bene mēminī,

reminder: as a reminder memōriae causā

retire in ōtium vén·iō -īre vēnī ventūrus

right away contínuō

right from the start in princípiō ílicō

right now nunciam

right: that's right sīc est

right: you have every right to ...
omne fās tibi est (+ *inf*)

right: you're right bene dīxistī *or* vēra dīcis

risk: at your own risk tuō periculō

rough guess ĩnfōrmāta cōgītātiō

round up cōg·ō -ere cōēgī cōāctus

rubbish! quisquīliae!

ruckus: why are you raising such a ruckus? quid istum clāmōrem tollis (*pl*: tōllitis)?

run into s.o. on the street āliquem offēnd·ō -ere -ī in platēā

sake: for the sake of causā (+ *gen*); **for heaven's sake** óbsecrō (*lit*: *i pray*); **for your sake** tuā (*pl*: *vestrā*) causā

same: it's all the same to me meā nihil ĩnterest

satisfaction: to your satisfaction ex tuā sentēntiā

satisfy: you can't satisfy everyone nōn potes ómnibus satis fácere

say: so they say ita aiunt

scared: I am scared to death exanimātus (-a) metū sum

score: he doesn't know what the score is nescit quid agātur

scram! ápage

scrape: I'll try to scrape together the money cōnābor argéntum conrādere

see that you do it fácitō ut faciās

see: now I see (*I understand*) iam téneō

see: I'll see to it that ... cūrābō ut (+ *subj*) ...

self: he was not his usual self nōn fuit cūius modī solet

serious: are you serious? sērióne dīcis tū?

service: to be at s.o.'s service praestō (+ *dat*) esse

seventh heaven: to be in seventh heaven in caelō esse

shake hands dextrae iúngere dextram *or* dextram iúngere cum āliquō

shame on you! prō pudor!

shame: that's a darn shame édepol fácinus ímprobum

shame: what a shame! fácinus indígnum! *or* Ō rem indígnam!

shoes: please put yourself in my shoes fac, quaesō, quī ego sum, tē esse

shook: all shook up vehemēter perturbātus

short: in short in summā, ad summam

show: this shows that ... indíciō est (+ *acc & inf*)

shut up! óbserā ōs tuum!

shut: why don't you just shut up? quīn tū tacē modo?

sick and tired: I am sick and tired of hearing the same thing over and over (mē) pertaédet iam audíre éadem idéntidem

sick and tired: I am sick and tired of the business mē negótī pertaédet

silly: don't be silly nōlī ineptíre

simply: I simply don't know what he is thinking of iam plānē quid cōgítet nésclō

situation: that's the situation here in Rome hīc Rōmae rēs sē sīc habent

situation: you see what the situation is vidēs quō in locō haec rēs sit

skull: I'll break your skull dīmínuam ego tibi caput

slip: a slip of the tongue laps·us -ūs *m* linguae

slip: it has slipped my mind memóriā éxcidit

slip: it slipped my mind to ... fūgit mē
(+ *inf*)

smart: don't talk smart to me nōlī
male dīcere mihi

smart: she is smart ingeniōsa est

snowed: to be snowed under with
óbruī, tamquam fluctū, sīc (+ *abl*)

so far so good bellē adhūc

so to speak ut ita dicam

so help me god! médius fídus!

so: that's not so! haud ita est

sooner: no sooner said than done dictō
cítius *or* dictum factum

speak of the devil lupus in fábulā

speak I'm listening lóquere aúdiō

speak: well, speak up! quīn tū ēlóquere

spirit: that's the right spirit now nunc
tū frūgī bonae es

splendid! euge!

splendid: absolutely splendid! nimis
factum bene!

split one's sides laughing ília sua rīsū
dissól·ō -ere -ī

square: this simply doesn't square nōn
sānē quadrat

stand: I can't stand him istum ferre
nequeō

stand: I'd like to know how matters
stand velim scīre quō modō rēs sē
hábeat

standing ovation: to give s.o. a
standing ovation álicui stantēs
plau·dō -dere -sī

start: you've made a good start bene
habent tibi prīncípia

starters: for starters prīncipiō

step on it! mātúra! (*pl:* mātūrâte!)

stick to one's guns in senténtiā stō stāre
stetī

stick to the truth in vērítāte mán·eō
-ére mānsī

stone: I will leave no stone unturned
nihil praetermíttam

stop right there! stā ílicō!

stop off at dēversári apud (+ *acc*)

stop off at s.o.'s house dēvért·ō -ere -ī
ad áliquem

stop! astā!

stop: he finally stopped talking finem
loquéndi dēmum fēcīt

story: to make a long story short nē
longus sim *or* nē longam fáciam

straighten out a matter rem explicáre

strictly speaking própriē

stroll: would you like to take a stroll?
velísne spatiári?

stuck: he is stuck on some girl or
other in amórem haeret apud nesciō
quam vírginem

stuck: I'm stuck (*out of ideas*) haéreō

suggestion: at your suggestion tē
auctóre

sum: to sum up ad summam *or* in
summam *or* in summā

suppose: I suppose (*parenthetical*) ut
opínor

sure: be sure to come fácitō (*or* fac)
modo ut vénias

sure: I am sure that certus (-a) sum (+
acc & inf)

sure: to know for sure certum (*or*
certō) scīre

suspense: not to keep you any longer
in suspense nē diútius pēndeās

suspense: to be in suspense ánimī
pēdeō pēdere pepéndī

sweat: no sweat nōn labóro

take it easy! parce! (*pl:* párcite!)

take into consideration respíc·iō -ere
respéxī

take it hard that grávitē ferō ferre tulī
(+ *acc & inf*)

take pains to in magnō negōtiō háb·eō
-ére -uī (+ *inf*)

take place fiō fierī factus sum

take upon oneself (to) in sē cōnférre (+
inf)

take: here, take it áccipe, em

take: I can't take it anymore patī
néqueō ámplius

take: I take it (*parenthetical*) ut opínor

taken in: they know that they were
taken in sciunt sibi data esse verba

talk: that's mere talk verba istaec sunt

tear: I can't tear myself away from
writing (from my books) in
scribéndō (in librīs) haér·eō -ére
haesī

tenterhooks: to be on tenterhooks
ánimī pénd·eō -ére pepéndī

terms: I'm on good terms with in
grátia sum cum (+ *abl*); mihi cum (+
abl) magna necessitúdō est

thank you (*for a future favor*) amábō tē;
(*for a favor done*) amō tē

thank you for (+ *gerund*) tibi grátias
agō ágere ēgī quod (+ *indic*)

thank: I thank you for helping me
grátias tibi agō quod mē iūvístī

thankful: I am thankful to you grátiam
tibi hábeō

thankful: you ought to be thankful to
me grátiam hábeās mihi

thanks a lot multum tē amō

thanks for your gifts grátias tibi dē
dōnīs tuīs

thanks to me (you, etc.) meā (tuā, etc)
óperā

that'll do sat est

that's it! (*enough!*) tantum est!

that's right (*in response to a question*)
sīc est

that's so ita est

then and there ibi contínuō; ílicō

think over reputāre

think s.th. over áliquid sēcum reputāre

think: I don't think so ego nōn putō

think: I think so sīc opínor

think: that is exactly what I think ita
prōrsus exístimō

think: what do you think? quid
cēnsēs?

tie up impéd·iō -íre -ívi -ítus

tie: to be tied up (*e.g., with business*)
impéd·ior -írī -ítus sum

time: for the time being prō témpore

time: he's having a good time by
himself eī bene est sōlī

time: I haven't the time haud mihi
ótiū est

time: I'm having a good (lousy) time
mihi bene (male) est

time: in my spare time cum tempus
subscícvum mihi est

time: there is no time to study nōn
vacat studére

tip: it was on the tip of the tongue erat
in labrīs primóribus

to each his own cuique suum

too bad about male (mehércule) dē (+
abl)

too bad about Marcus! male dē Mārcō!

tooth and nail tōtō córpore et ómnibus
úngulīs

top (*surpass*) superáre

top banana: he wants to be top

banana vult sē esse primum ómnium
rērum

top: at the top of one's voice summā
vōce

topsy-turvy: everything was topsy-turvy ōmnia erant sūrsūm deōrsūm

track down s.th. āliquīd indagāre

trick: is this a trick? num hoc est
cāptiō?

tricks: to be up to some tricks
lascīv-us -a -um esse

trouble: I'm expecting some big trouble nēsciō quod magnum malum
expēctō

trouble: if it is no trouble sī grave nōn
erit

trouble: more trouble āmplius negōtī

trouble: to be in trouble labōrāre

trouble: to make big trouble for s.o.
dare magnum malum ālicui

trouble: what's the trouble? quid illuc
malī est? *or* quid est negōtī?

true: that's true rēs ita est *or* ita
profēctō est

truth: to tell you the truth ut vērūm
loquar *or* nē quid mēntiar

try one's best to (not to) ōperam dō
dare dedī ut (nē) (+ *subj*)

turkey: to talk turkey with latīnē
loqu-or -ī locūtus sum cum (+ *abl*)

turn out fine bellē cādō -ere cēcidī
cāsūrus

turn up: something will turn up, I hope fiet āliquīd, spērō

uh-uh (*seeing s.o. unexpectedly*) attāt

understand: do you understand now?
iam tenēs?

understand: I don't quite understand
nōn satis intēllēgō

up in the air (*in uncertainty*) in médiō
relīct-us -a -um; **to be up in the air**
(*to be undecided*) pēndeō pendēre
pepēndī

ups and downs: there are ups and downs modo sīc, modo sīc

upset: don't be upset nōlī (*pl*: nōlīte)
perturbārī

upset: that upset me istuc mē ipsum
commovēbat

upsetting: that was more upsetting to me than to you illud mihi māiōrī
stōmachō erat quam tibi

upside down: everything was upside down ōmnia erant sūrsūm deōrsūm

use: it's no use fīlicet

use: what's the use! quid opus est?

utter: she never uttered a word
nūllum verbum ēmīsit

vein: in a similar vein ad sīmilem
sentēntiam

very well (*in agreement*) fīat

virtually propémōdum

visit: to go to visit, pay a visit to vīs-ō
-ere -ī -ūrus

wait a minute if you don't mind manē
dum nisi piget

wait a minute, please manē dum,
quaesō

want: now what do you want? quid
nunc tibi vīs?

waste one's breath ōperam per-dō
-dere -didī

waste: I'm wasting my time frūstrā
tempus cōnterō

watch out: hey you, watch out! heus
tū, cavē!

way: by the way óbiter

way: he must always have his own
way semper faciendum est quod vult

way: I'm in a bad way mihi male est

way: if it's not too much out of the way for you sī tibi nōn sãnē dēvium erit

way: is that the way you help me?
istócine pactō mē ádiuvās?

way: on one's way inter viās

way: to be on the way to iter habēre ad
(+ *acc*)

well done! factum óptimē!

well said! facētē dictum!

well immō *or* em *or* quīn

well, well enim vērō

what (is the trouble) now? quid iam?

what about me? quid ego?

what about the dough (money)? quid
dē argéntō?

what do you take me for? for a fool?
prō quō mē habēs? prō stultō?

what else can I do for you? quid est
quod tibi effícere possum ámplius?

what for? quam ob rem?; quā causā?

what is it? (*what's the probem?*) quid
est negótī?

what is it? out with it! quid est? cedo!

what next? quid deínde?

what's it to me how you ... quid istuc
ad mē áttinet, quómodo tū (+ *subj*)

what's that? (*what did you say?*) quid
est?

what's that to you? quid ad tē áttinet?

what's the reason why ... quid est
quod (+ *indic*)

what's up? quid reī est?

while away the time fall-ō -ere fefélli
tempus

who are you? quis tū homō es?

who is he (she)? quis homō est?

who is it? it's me quis homō est? ego
sum

who says so? quis hoc dicit factum?

whole: taken as a whole in summam

why is it that ... quid est quod (+ *indic*)

why not? (*challenging what has been said*) quid ita nōn?; (*as an expression of assent: of course*)
quíppinī? *or* quidnī?

why say more? quid plūra?

why so? quid ita? *or* quāprópter?

why so? because ... quid ita? quia ...

why, this very day quīn hódie

willy-nilly nōlens volēns

wise guy! ímpudēns!

wise guy: don't be a wise guy nē sīs
ímpudēns

wonder: and no wonder nec mīrum

wonder: I wonder what's up mīror,
quid hoc sit negótī

wonder: I wonder where he is ubi sit
cógitō

word: I want a word with you paucīs
tē volō *or* volō tē verbīs pauculīs

word: to give (break, keep) one's
word fidem dare (frángere, serváre)

word: why should I take your word
for it? cūr tibi crēdam?

words fail me mihi verba dēsunt

worry: don't you worry! tū nōlī
sollicitári!

worse: to get worse *ingravēsc·ō -ere; to turn out for the worse* *in pēiōrem partem* *vertor* *vertī* *versus sum*

worth: he's worth a lot of money
divítiās máximās habet

worth: he's worth nothing *nihil est*

worth: it isn't worth it *nōn est óperae prētium* **it's not worth all that** *tantī nōn est*

worthwhile: it is worthwhile *óperae prētium est*

wow! (*in shocked surprise*) *papaé!*

wrong: if I have done anything wrong, I'm sorry *sī quid pérperam fēcī, mē paénitet*

wrong: what's wrong with you? *quid est tibi? or quid est tēcum?*

yes: I say yes you say no *ego aiō tū negās*

Chapter XII: Clothing and Jewelry

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I Priscilla buys clothes.

Vestiária	Salvē. Quómodo tibi ministrāre possum?	<i>Saleslady: Hello. How can I help you?</i>
Priscilla	Salvē. Ego stolam émere volō.	<i>Priscilla: Hello. I want to buy a dress.</i>
Vestiária	Quem colórem cupis?	<i>What color do you want?</i>
Priscilla	Stolam caerúleam cúpiō.	<i>I want a blue dress.</i>
Vestiária	Cupísne quicquam áliud?	<i>Do you want anything else?</i>
Priscilla	Ita, pār soccōrum cúpiō.	<i>Yes, I want a pair of shoes.</i>
Vestiária	Cupísne émere sandália?	<i>Do you want to buy sandals?</i>
Priscilla	Mínimē. Soccōs albōs cúpiō.	<i>No. I want white shoes.</i>
Vestiária	Habémus hódie vestēs séricās bellās.	<i>We have nice silk dresses today.</i>
Priscilla	Benígnē. Quantī haec cōstant?	<i>No, thank you. How much do these (items) cost?</i>
Vestiária	Decem dóllarīs ex tōtō.	<i>Ten dollars in all.</i>
Priscilla	Ecce tibi decem dóllarōs.	<i>Here are your ten dollars.</i>

LEVEL II Peter buys some winter clothes.

Vestiarius	Salvē. Quómodo tibi ministrāre possum?	<i>Salesman: Hello. How can I help you?</i>
Petrus	Salvē. Velim émere mihi áliquot vestiménta hībérna.	<i>Peter: Hello. I'd like to buy myself some winter clothes.</i>
Vestiarius	Em, habémus paénulās scórteās ex Hispániā.	<i>Well, we have leather raincoats from Spain.</i>
Petrus	Bene. Cúpiō paénulam. Vēnditāsne digitália?	<i>Fine. I want a raincoat. Do you sell gloves?</i>

Vestiārius	Hábeō digitália scórtea et lānáta.	<i>I have leather and woolen gloves.</i>
Petrus	Dā mihi duo pária digitálium lānátōrum. Égeō étiam pílleō lānátō.	<i>Give me two pairs of woolen gloves. I also need a woolen cap.</i>
Vestiārius	Vísne émere tibiália lānáta?	<i>Do you want to buy (some) woolen stockings?</i>
Petrus	Sānē, égeō duóbus páribus.	<i>Yes, I need two pairs.</i>
Vestiārius	Vísne quicquam áliud?	<i>Do you want anything else?</i>
Petrus	Cíngulum scórteum, sī praestō est.	<i>A leather belt if it's available.</i>
Vestiārius	Cíngula semper in hāc tabérnā vestiáriā praestō sunt. Quot cíngula cupis?	<i>Belts are always available in this clothing store. How many belts do you want?</i>
Petrus	Ūnum, opínor, satis est.	<i>I suppose one is enough.</i>
Vestiārius	Quámobrem egēs hīs vestiméntis hibérnis?	<i>Why do you need these winter clothes?</i>
Petrus	Quia ego iter factúrus sum trāns Alpēs in Germániam.	<i>Because I'm going to take a trip across the Alps to Germany.</i>

LEVEL III Two daughters get dressed for a party.

Māter	Lēda et Vanéssa, vósne parátae estis ad convívium quod Maríā ágitat?	Mother: <i>Leda and Vanessa, are you ready for the party that Maria is throwing?</i>
Lēda	Māter, ego hábeō nihil prōrsus quod geram.	Leda: <i>Mother, I have absolutely nothing to wear.</i>
Māter	Nūgās! Habēs vērō cēnátória bellíssima. Habēs enim tálárem vestem róseam et tálárem vestem violáceam et tálárem vestem caerúleam.	Nonsense! <i>In fact, you have very pretty party clothes. You have, you know, a pink dress, a violet dress, and a blue dress.</i>
Lēda	Ita rēs est. At ego eās omnēs abhinc trēs diēs ad fullónicam áttulī.	<i>That's true. But I took all of them to the laundry three days ago.</i>

Māter	Vanéssa, tū útique sat supérque vestēs habēs. Quoad ego sciō, tū habēs pulchrās tunicās manicātās et tunicās sine mánicīs. Dā Lēdae ūnam ex tuīs tunicīs.	<i>Vanessa, you at least have more than enough clothes. As far as I know, you have beautiful long-sleeved and sleeveless dresses. Give Leda one of your dresses</i>
Vanéssa	Māter, Lēda semper vestēs meās mūtuátur. Praetéreā, mea túnica coccínea et túnica víridis sunt vétērēs et trítæ.	<i>Mother, Leda is always borrowing my clothes. Besides, my deep red dress and my green dress are old and worn out.</i>
Māter	Lēda!	<i>Leda!</i>
Lēda	Quid est?	<i>What is it?</i>
Māter	Cūrā ut ábeās currículō ad fullónicam et petās vestēs tuās.	<i>See to it that you take off on the double for the laundry and fetch your clothes.</i>
Lēda	Eī óperam dabō extéplō, māter.	<i>I'll attend to that immediately, mother.</i>
Māter	Et tū, Vanéssa ...	<i>And you, Vanessa ...</i>
Vanéssa	Quid?	<i>What?</i>
Māter	Sī vīs ire exōrnāta ad convívium, tibi licet gerās meās inaúrēs et moníle gemmátum.	<i>If you want to go to the party all decked out, you may wear my earrings and my necklace of precious stones.</i>
Vanéssa	Grátias, māter.	<i>Thank you, mother.</i>
Māter	Lēda, tibi licet gérās meam armíllam et moníle baccátum.	<i>Leda, you may wear my bracelet and my pearl necklace.</i>
Lēda	Papaé! Quāle convívium id erit!	<i>Great! What a party that will be!</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

ankle-length *tālār·is -is -e***apron** *súblig·ar -áris n***belt** *cíngul·um -ī n; zōn·a -ae f (wide belt, usu. of cloth, used by men and women with a tunic; often used as money belt)***blouse** *pēlúsi·a -ae f***boot** *pēr·ō -ónis m (of rawhide, reaching up to the calf, worn by peasants, shepherds, soldiers); cálig·a -ae f (worn by soldiers of lower rank)***bra** *stróphi·um -ī n, mamillár·e -is n***bracelet** *armíll·a -ae f (worn on the upper arm)***brocade** *séric·um -ī n aurō (or argéntō) intéxtum (or intertéxtum)***bundle up** *(against the cold) sē bene opér·iō -íre -uī***button** *s glóbul·us -ī m***button** *tr glóbulis string·ō -ere strínxī strictus***cap** *pílle·us -ī m***cape** *lacérn·a -ae f***chain** *catéll·a -ae f***change** *mūtáre***charm** *amulét·um -ī n***clasp** *fíbul·a -ae f***cloak** *pállí·um -ī n (Greek item)***clogs** *sóle·ae -árum fpl lígneae***cloth** *(as a fabric) text·um -ī n; (a piece of cloth) pann·us -ī m***clothe** *vést·iō -íre -ívī or -īi ítus***clothes** *vestimént·a -órum npl; hábit·us -ūs m (outfit of a particular class or occasion)***clothier** *(sales person in a clothing store) vestiári·us -ī m, vestiári·a -ae f***clothing store** *tabérn·a -ae f vestiária***clothing** *vest·is -is f, vestít·us -ūs m, vestimént·um -ī n***coat** *paénul·a -ae f, amícul·um -ī n***collar** *collár·e -is n***deep red** *coccíne·us -a -um***dinner clothes** *cēnātōri·a -órum npl, sýnthes·is -is f***dress** *s vest·is -is f muliebris; (ankle-length) vestis táláris; (Roman) stol·a -ae f***dress** *tr índuō índuere índuī indútus, vést·iō -íre -ívī or -īi ítus; amíc·iō -íre amícuī or amíxī amíctus; to dress oneself, get dressed sē índuere, sē vestíre, sē amícíre; to dress up sē exórnáre***dress shoes** *socc·ī -órum mpl, sóccul·ī -órum mpl (for women, of different colors and often decorated with gems)***earrings** *inaúr·ēs -ium fpl***embroidered** *(with colors) pict·us -a -um***emerald** *smarágd·us -ī m***evening wear** *cēnātōri·a -órum npl***fabric** *(pattern of weaving) text·us -ūs m (coarse crassus; sheer, thin ténuis; thick pinguis)***fashion** *cultūs mod·us -ī m***fringe** *fímbrí·a -ae f***fur coat** *amícul·um -ī n pellícium***fur jacket** *iacc·a -ae f pellícia***garter** *períscelis, periscélidis f***girdle** *stropp·ī -órum mpl***gloves** *digitál·ia -ium npl***gown** *táláris vest·is -is f; (Roman) stol·a -ae f*

green vírid·is -is -e

handbag (*of leather*) pérul·a -ae f
coriácea

hat pétas·us -ī m (*with broad brim*)

hem limb·us -ī m

housecoat vest·is -is f mātūtína

jacket iacc·a -ae f; (*of leather*) iacc·a
-ae f scórtea; **fur jacket** iacca
pellícea

jeans brāc·ae -ārum fpl Genuénsēs

jewel gemm·a -ae f

laundry fullónic·a -ae f; (*dirty clothes*)
lavandári·a -ōrum npl

leather adj ex córiō; (*for
weatherproofing*) scórte·us -a -um

leather s córi·um -ī n

leather raincoat scórte·a paénul·a -ae f
(*waterproof*)

linen adj líne·us -a -um

linen s línteum -ī n, līn·um -ī n

linen cloth sában·um -ī n

locket (*worn by boys, of leather, silver
or gold*) bull·a -ae f; **wearing a
locket** bullát·us -a -um

long-sleeved manicát·us -a -um

miniskirt cástul·a -ae f brevíssima

money belt ventrál·e -is n, (*of cloth*)
zōn·a -ae f

necklace torqu·ēs -is m, moníl·e -is n;
(*of precious stones*) moníle
gemmátum

necktie focál·e -is n

nightgown camísi·a -ae f noctúrna

outfit hábit·us -ūs m, síntes·is -is f

overcoat superindūment·um -ī n

pajamas síntes·is -is f dormitória

palla (*female “toga,” worn over the
stola*) pall·a -ae f

pallium (*Greek “toga,” made of wool*)
pállī·um -ī n; **wearing a pallium**
palliát·us -a -um

pants brāc·ae -ārum fpl

pattern (*of weaving*) text·us -ūs m

pearl earrings margarítæ -ārum fpl
dēpendéntēs

pearl necklace moníl·e -is n baccátum

pink róse·us -a -um

pleated undulát·us -a -um

pocket lócul·us -ī m

print vest·is -is f imāgínibus impréssa

purse pérul·a -ae f

put on índuō índuere índuī indútus

raincoat scórte·a -ae f; (*hooded*)
paénul·a -ae f; (*open mantle,
fastened at shoulder*) lacérn·a -ae f

ribbon taéni·a -ae f

ring ánul·us -ī m

robe vest·is -is f

safety pin fíbul·a -ae f

saleslady (*in a clothing store*) vestiári·a
-ae f

sandal (*w. covered toes*) sandáli·um -ī
n; (*simplest form of sandal, with the
sole fastened to feet with thongs*)
sóle·a -ae f; (*with thick leather sole,
tied with straps, characteristically
worn by Greeks*) crépid·a -ae f

sash zōn·a -ae f

scarf amictóri·um -ī n

sheer (*fabrics*) rall·us -a -um

shirt indúsi·um -ī n

shoe (*worn with toga*) cálce·us -ī m;
(*oxfords*) cálceī subtālārēs; (*fancy
low shoe, of different colors, gold,
yellow, decorated with pearls, etc.*)
socc·us -ī m, sóccul·us -ī m; (*red
shoes of senator*) cálceus múlleus m

shoelace corrígi·a -ae f

shorts subligācul·um -ī *n*; (*street wear*)
breviōrēs brāc·ae -ārum *fpl*

ski boot cālig·a -ae *f* nartātōria

ski jacket iacc·a -ae *f* nartātōria

silk *adj* sēric·us -a -um; **silk clothes**
sēric·a -ōrum *npl*

silk *s* sēric·um -ī *n*

skirt cāstul·a -ae *f*

skirt indūcul·a -ae *f*; gunn·a -ae *f*

sleeve mānic·a -ae *f*

sleeveless sine mānicīs

slip hypozōni·um -ī *n*

slipper sōle·a -ae *f*, socc·us -ī *m*; (*of felt*)
ūd·ō -ōnis *m*

sneakers cālce·ī -ōrum *mpl* gýmnicī

sole (*of shoe or foot*) sol·um -ī *n*

stocking tūbiāl·e -is *n*; (*of felt and covering part of the legs*) impīli·um
-ī *n*

strap (*for shoe or sandal, sometimes decorated with gems*) obstrāgul·um
-ī *n*

street clothes forēns·ia -ium *npl*

style modus -ī *m*; **to go out of style**
ex(s)olēsc·ō -ere ex(s)óluī
ex(s)olētus

suit sýnthes·is -is *f*

sweater thōr·āx -ācis *m* lānius

swimsuit vest·is -is *f* balneāris

swim trunks súblig·ar -āris *n* balneāre

take off (*clothes*) éxuō exúere éxuī
exútus; (*clothes, shoes, ring*) dētrahō
dētrāhere dētrāxī dētrāctus

toga tog·a -ae *f*; (*bright-white toga, worn by candidates*) toga cándida;
(*worn by men and boys after the age of about fifteen*) toga virīlis or pūra;
(*toga with purple border, worn by curule magistrates, by boys up to the age of manhood, and by girls until marriage*) toga praetēxta; (*toga embroidered with silver stars*) toga picta; (*toga of smooth cloth*) toga rāsa

topcoat superindūmént·um -ī *n*

trousers brāc·ae -ārum *fpl*

try on (*clothes*) induéndō probāre

undershirt (*worn by both sexes*)
subūcul·a -ae *f*

undress éxuō exúere éxuī exútus; **to get undressed** sē exúere

uniform hábit·us -ūs *m*; **in uniform**
subōrnāt·us -a -um

veil vėl·um -ī *n*

wear ger·ō -ere gessī gestus, gest·ō -āre
-āvī -ātus; **wearing a belt** zōnā
incīnctus

women's winter shoes calceátus -ūs *m*
fēminārum hībérnus

wool lān·a -ae *f*

woolen lānāt·us -a -um, lāni·us -a -um

wrap amíct·us -ūs *m*

wrist watch hōrológi·um -ī braccchiále

zipper clausúr·a -ae *f* tráctilis

Chapter XIII: House and Furniture

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

Cynthia tries to persuade her friend Gloria to come to her house to play.

Cynthia	Glória, potésne veníre domum meam?	<i>Cynthia: Gloria, can you come to my house?</i>
Glória	Quid potérimus fácere ibi?	<i>Gloria: What can we do there?</i>
Cynthia	Potérimus librōs légere in cubículō meō.	<i>We can read books in my bedroom.</i>
Glória	Benígnē. Ego multōs librōs domī hábeō.	<i>No, thank you. I have many books at home.</i>
Cynthia	Fortásse potérimus cóquere crústula in culínā nostrā.	<i>Maybe we can bake cookies in our kitchen.</i>
Glória	Benígnē. Ego saepe coquō crústula in culínā meā.	<i>No, thank you. I often bake cookies in my kitchen.</i>
Cynthia	Recēns ego comparāvī novum cātulum. Visne lúdere cum meō novō cātulō in peristýliō nostrō?	<i>Recently I got a new puppy. Do you want to play with my new puppy in our courtyard?</i>
Glória	O, ego prōrsus adórō cātulōs! Eāmus illūc currículō!	<i>Oh, I absolutely adore puppies! Let's go there on the double!</i>

LEVEL II

A potential buyer wants to purchase a home through a real estate agent.

Ēmptor	Mónstrā mihi, quaesō, partem interiōrem huius domūs.	<i>Buyer: Please, show me the interior of this home.</i>
Praediátor	Libénter. Est vērō domus élegāns. Sunt pictúrae in quōque pariete.	<i>Real Estate Dealer: Gladly. It is really an elegant home. There are pictures on every wall.</i>
Ēmptor	Quot cubícula sunt in hāc domō?	<i>How many bedrooms are there in this house?</i>
Praediátor	Omnínō quáttuor cubícula.	<i>Four bedrooms in all.</i>

Ēmptor	Quid est in quōque cubículō?	<i>What is in each bedroom?</i>
Praediátor	Bīnī lēctī et bīnae cáthedrae et vestiáriūm.	<i>Each bedroom has two beds and two chairs and a clothes closet.</i>
Ēmptor	Estne tablínum huic dómuī?	<i>Does this house have a study?</i>
Praediátor	Étiam. Est proféctō magna mēnsa scrīptória rōbōrea ibi; atque sunt plūteī circā parietēs omnēs.	<i>Yes. There is, in fact, a large oak desk there; and there are bookshelves around all the walls.</i>
Ēmptor	Habétne domus amplam culīnam?	<i>Does the house have a spacious kitchen?</i>
Praediátor	Ita; est magnus camínus in culīnā atque fūsóriūm.	<i>Yes; there is a big stove in the kitchen as well as a sink.</i>
Ēmptor	Ubi est trīclīnium?	<i>Where is the dining room?</i>
Praediátor	Trīclīnium situm est inter culīnam et bálneum. Prope bálneum est lātrína. In bálneō est sólūm magnum.	<i>The dining room is located between the kitchen and the bathroom. Near the bathroom is a toilet. There is a large bathtub in the bathroom.</i>
Ēmptor	Quantī cōnstat haec domus?	<i>How much does this house cost?</i>
Praediátor	Cōnstat centum mīlibus dollarōrum.	<i>It costs \$100,000.</i>
Ēmptor	Fortásse potes mihi mōnstrāre domum minōrem?	<i>Perhaps you can show me some smaller home?</i>
Praediátor	Possum, sed nōn in hāc regiōne urbis.	<i>I can, but not in this section of the city.</i>

LEVEL III

Sabina tries to impress her friend Silvia with the big home her parents own.

Sílvia	Sabína, habitásne in aédibus an in ínsulā?	Silvia: <i>Sabina, do you live in a house or in an apartment building?</i>
Sabína	In aédibus hábitō. Magnam vērō domum hábeō.	Sabina: <i>I live in a house. In fact, I have a large home.</i>

Sílvia	Ítane? Quot conclávia domus habet?	<i>Is that so? How many rooms does your home have?</i>
Sabína	Átrium, tablínum, trīclínium, culínam, bálneum, sex cubícula, peristýlium cum bellō hortō.	<i>An atrium, study, dining room, kitchen, bathroom, six bedrooms, and a courtyard with a nice garden.</i>
Sílvia	Suntne cubícula ómnia in pedeplánis?	<i>Are all the bedrooms on the ground floor?</i>
Sabína	Quáttuor cubícula in pedeplánis sunt; cétera in tabulátō secúndō sunt. Servī et ancillae in tabulátō secúndō dórmiunt.	<i>There are four bedrooms on the ground floor; the rest are on the second floor. The servants and maids sleep on the second floor.</i>
Sílvia	Síquidem marítus tuus cōsul est, conveniúntne multī cliéntēs domī tuae ad offícium?	<i>Since your husband is a consul, do many clients gather at your home for the courtesy call?</i>
Sabína	Ita, nam sic est mōs. Bene māne cliéntēs frequéntant nōn solum vēstíbulum sed étiam átrium. Deínde cliéntēs marítum meum in forum dēdúcunt.	<i>Yes, for that is the custom. Early in the morning the clients pack not only the vestibule but also the atrium. Then they accompany my husband to the forum.</i>
Sílvia	Manésne in átriō inter offícium?	<i>Do you stay in the atrium during the courtesy call?</i>
Sabína	Mínimē vērō, eō témpore ego sátagō in culínā aut in peristýliō.	<i>Not at all. At that time I am busy in the kitchen or in the courtyard.</i>
Sílvia	Quid facis in peristýliō?	<i>What do you do in the courtyard?</i>
Sabína	Ego cūrō rosās et áliās plantās in hortō.	<i>I look after the roses and the other plants in the garden.</i>
Sílvia	Quid facis in culínā?	<i>What do you do in the kitchen?</i>
Sabína	Cēnam coquō, quia marítus meus saepe vocat cliéntēs ad cēnam. Ego ipsa cibum adpōnō in trīclíniō.	<i>I cook dinner, since my husband often invites clients to dinner. I myself serve the food in the dining room.</i>
Sílvia	Sit dīs grátia, ego in víllulā rūrī hábitō! Víta est tam simplex ibi!	<i>Thank heaven I live in a little farmhouse in the country! Life is so simple there!</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

See also the General Vocabulary for additional items.

air conditioner īnstrūment·um -ī *n* āērī
temperāndō

alarm suscitābul·um -ī *n*; **the alarm**
went off suscitābulum sōnuit; **to set**
the alarm for (seven o'clock)
ōbicem īnfīg·ō -ere īnfīxī īnfīxus ad
(séptimam hōram)

alarm clock hōrolōgi·um -ī *n*
suscitātōrium

apartment diaēt·a -ae *f*; **furnished**
apartment diaēta omnī supellēctile
īnstrūcta

apartment building īnsul·a -ae *f*

armchair sell·a -ae *f* bracchiāta

atrium ātri·um -ī *n*

attic subtēgulāne·um -ī *n*

back door postíc·um -ī *n*

balcony maeniān·um -ī *n*

banister adminícul·um -ī *n*

barrel dóli·um -ī *n*, cup·a -ae *f*;
(wooden barrel) lígneum vās, vāsis *n*

basement hypogē·um -ī *n*, cellāri·um -ī
n subterrāneum

bathroom bálne·um -ī *n*

bath towel gausápin·a -ae *f*

bathtub sóli·um -ī *n*, lābr·um -ī *n*

bay window prōiectúr·a -ae *f*

bed lect·us -ī *m*; (small) léctul·us -ī *m*;
to go to bed cúbitum īre; **to make**
the bed lectum stern·ō -ere strāvī
strātus

bed covers strágul·a -órum *npl*

bedding strágul·a -órum *npl*

bed frame spond·a -ae *f*

bedroom dormitōrium cubícul·um -ī *n*

bedspread opertōri·um -ī *n*, peristróm·a
-atis *n*

bench scabéll·um -ī *n*

blanket lōd·īx -ícis *f*

blinds see Venetian blinds

bolt (on door) péssul·us -ī *m*; **to bolt**
the door óstium obserāre

bookcase bibliothéc·a -ae *f* parietī
īnsérta

bookshelf plúte·us -ī *m*

bowl catín·us -ī *m*

broom scōp·ae -árum *fpl*

bucket sítul·a -ae *f*

carpet tapét·um -ī *n*

casette casét·a -ae *f*; (for video) caséta
magnētoscópica

casette recorder casētophōn·um -ī *n*

ceiling tēct·um -ī *n*; (arched or vaulted)
cámer·a -ae *f*; (paneled) lacún·ar
-áris *n*

cellar cellāri·um -ī *n* (subterrāneum)

central heating calefácti·ō -ónis *f*
centrális

chair (normally without back or arm-
rests) sell·a -ae *f*; (w. rounded back)
arcisélli·um -ī *n*; **back of the chair**
arc·us -ūs *m* sellae

chandelier lámpadum corýmb·us -ī *m*

chimney fūmāri·um -ī *n*

China fictília Sinénsium vās·a -órum
npl

clock hōrolōgi·um -ī *n*; **the clock keeps**
good time hōrológium rēctē métitur;
to look at the clock hōrológium
īnspíc·iō -ere īnspéxī; **to set the**
clock hōrológium temperāre; **to**
wind the clock hōrológium intén·dō
-dere -dī inténsus

closet armāri·um -ī *n* parietī insértum

clothes closet vestiári·um -ī *n* parietī
insértum

clothes hook unc·us -ī *m* vestiárius

clothes rack, coat rack sustentácul·lum
-ī *n* vēstium

couch tor·us -ī *m* tōméntō fartus

courtyard peristýli·um -ī *n*

cup pōcul·um -ī *n*, pōcíl·um -ī *n*

curtains aulaē·a -ōrum *npl*, cortín·ae
-ārum *fpl*

desk mēns·a -ae *f* scriptória

dining couch lect·us -ī *m*

dining room trīclīni·um -ī *n*; (*informal*)
cēnāti·ō -ōnis *f*

dish catíll·us -ī *m*; (*open and flat*)
pátin·a -ae *f*; (*large*) lān·x -cis *f*;
dishes (*including pots and pans*)
vās·a -ōrum *npl*

dishwasher máchin·a -ae *f* ēlūtória

door iánu·a -ae *f*, ósti·um -ī *n*; **folding**
doors valv·ae -ārum *fpl*

doorknob iánuae manúbri·um -ī *n*

doorstep lim·en -inis *n*

doorway ósti·um -ī *n*

double home dom·us -ūs *f* duárum
familiárum

downstairs: he is downstairs in imō
tabulátō est; **to go downstairs** scālās
dēscēnd·ō -ere -ī

drawer lócul·us -ī *m*

dressing table mēns·a -ae *f* cōmātória

dryer (*for hair; for clothes*)
instrūmént·um -ī *n* siccātórium
(capillórum; vēstium)

easy chair arcisélli·um -ī *n* tōméntō
fartum

electrical appliance eléctricum
instrūmént·um -ī *n* [instrūméntum
can be used for a single appliance or
collectively for all the appliances]

electrical outlet cápsul·a -ae *f* contáctūs
eléctricī

electric fan máchin·a -ae *f* ventígēna

electric shaver rāsóri·um -ī *n*
eléctricum

faucet epitóni·um -ī *n*; **to turn on (off)**
the faucet epitónium versáre
(reversáre)

fireplace foc·us -ī *m*

floor (*paved*) pavímént·um -ī *n*, sol·um
-ī *n*; **ground floor** pedeplān·a -ōrum
npl; **marble floor** pavíméntum (*or*
solum) marmóreum; **mosaic floor**
pavíméntum (*or* solum) tesselátum;
wooden floor tabulát·um -ī *n*

fluorescent light túbul·us -ī *m* lūcífliuus

food processor máchin·a -ae *f*
coquinária

freezer caps·a -ae *f* frīgórifica

front door antíc·um -ī *n*

front hall vēstíbul·um -ī *n*, fauc·ēs -ium
fpl

furnish a home domum supelléctile
ínstru·ō -ere ínstrúxī ínstrúctus

furnish an apartment diaétam
supelléctile ínstruere

furniture suppéll·ex -éctilis *f*; **piece of**
furniture supelléctilis par·s -tis *f*

garden hort·us -ī *m*; **vegetable garden**
hortus (h)olitórius

ground floor pedeplān·a -ōrum *npl*

guest room hospíti·um -ī *n*

hall (*large room*) oec·us -ī *m*

hallway andr·ōn -ōnis *m*

home dom·us -ūs *f*

home appliance instrūmént·um -ī *n*
domésticum eléctricum; **home**
appliances eléctrica domūs
ūtēnsíl·ia -ium *npl*

hopper lābéll·um -ī *n* íntimum, sell·a
-ae *f* familiária

house dom·us -ūs *f*, aed·ēs -ium *fpl*

kitchen culīn·a -ae *f*

kitchen knife cult·er -rī *m* coquīnāris

kitchen utensils instrūmēt·a -ōrum *npl*
coquinātōria

ladle trūll·a -ae *f*

lamp lucērn·a -ae *f*

landing (*on stairs*) scālāri·um -ī *n*

laundry lāvātōri·um -ī *n*

light lūm·en -inis (ēlēctricum) *n*; **to turn on (off) the light** lūmen
accēnd·ō -ere -ī accēnsus
(expéd·iō -īre -īvi *or* -īi -ītus)

light bulb glóbul·us -ī *m* ēlēctricus

linen closet armāri·um -ī *n* linteārium
(parietī īnsértum)

living room sessōri·um -ī *n*, synoēci·um
-ī *n*

mattress cúlci·a -ae *f*; **air mattress**
cúlcita īnflātīlis

microwave oven furn·us -ī *m* undārum
brévium

night table mēnsul·a -ae *f* cubiculāris

oven furn·us -ī *m*

pantry cell·a -ae *f* pēnāria

peristyle peristýli·um -ī *n*

pillow cervíc·al -ālis *n*

pillow case cervicālis tégim·en -inis *n*

pipe fistul·a -ae *f* aquária

pitcher úrce·us -ī *m*

plate pátin·a -ae *f*

plug spin·a -ae *f* contactūs ēlēctricī

plug in adnēct·ō -ere adnēxuī adnēxus

porch pērgul·a -ae *f*

portico pórtic·us -ūs *f*

pot (*ceramic*) oll·a -ae *f*; (*of metal*)
a(h)ēn·um -ī *n*; **pots and pans** vās·a
-ōrum *npl* coquīnāria

radiator calóris radiā·trum -trī *n*

radio radiophón·um -ī *n*; **to turn on**
(**turn off**) **the radio** radiophōnum
excitāre *or* accēnd·ō -ere -ī (expéd·iō
-īre -īi -ītus); **to turn down (turn up)** **the radio** vim radiophōnī
remitt·ō -ere remisī (amplificāre)

radio broadcast ēmissi·ō -ōnis *f*
radiophónica

rain basin (*in the atrium*) impluvi·um
-ī *n*

reading lamp lampas, lámpadis *f*
lēctōria

receiver (*of telephone*) auscultābul·um
-ī *n*

record player discophón·um -ī *n*

refrigerator frigidār·ium -ī *n*

roof tile tégul·a -ae *f*

roof tēct·um -ī *n*

room cubicul·um -ī *n*, conclāv·e -is *n*;
(*small room*) cell·a -ae *f*

room with bath (shower) cubicul·um -ī
n bálneō (bálneō pluviō) īnstrúctum

row home aed·ēs -ium *fpl* seriālēs

rug tapēt·e -is *n*

salt shaker salín·um -ī *n*

saucer páter·a -ae *f*

section (*of a city*) régi·ō -ōnis *f*

sew su·ō -ere -ī sūtus

sewing machine máchin·a -ae *f* sūtōria

sheet strágul·um -ī *n* línteum

shower balnéol·um -ī *n* plúvium; **to**
take a shower balnéolō plúviō ūtor
ūtī ūsus sum

shower curtain aulaé·um -ī *n* balnéolī
plúvii

shower door for·ēs -um *fpl* balnéolī
plúvii

shrine sacrāri·um -ī *n*

shutter forícul·a -ae *f*

silverware argēte·a -ōrum *npl* escāria

sink (*in a bathroom*) lābēll·um -ī *n*; (*in a kitchen*) fusōri·um -ī *n*

sitting room exēdr·a -ae *f*, sessōri·um -ī *n*

skylight complūvi·um -ī *n*

sofa tor·us -ī *m* tōmētō fartus

stairs scāl·ae -ārum *fpl*

steps grad·ūs -uum *mpl*

stereo stereophōn·um -ī *n*

stool scabēll·um -ī *n*; (*for sitting or mounting*) scamn·um -ī *n*

storeroom cell·a -ae *f*

story tabulāt·um -ī *n*

stove fōcul·us -ī *m*; **electric (gas) stove** fōculus ēlēctricus (gāseus)

study (room) studīol·um -ī *n*; (*in a Roman home*) tablīn·um -ī *n*

sugar bowl vāscul·um -ī *n* sáccharī

suite (*of rooms*) diaēt·a -ae *f*

table mēns·a -ae *f*; **to set the table** mēnsam pōn·ō -ere pōsuī pōsitus

tablecloth mantēl·e -is *n*

tableware īnstrūmént·a -ōrum *npl* escāria

tape recorder magnētophōn·um -ī *n*, casētophōn·um -ī *n*

telephone tēlephōn·um -ī *n* (*see Chapter IV on Daily Activities*)

television (set) tēlevīsōri·um -ī *n* (*see Chapter V on Sports and Other Leisure Activities*)

television screen quadr·um -ī *n* tēlevīsíficum

toaster tostr·um -ī *n*

toilet lātrín·a -ae *f*; (*public*) fōric·a -ae *f*

toilet bowl lābēll·um -ī *n* íntimum, lāsān·um -ī *n*

towel gausápin·a -ae *f*; **bath towel** gausápina balneária; **hand towel** manutērgi·um -ī *n*

tray fércul·um -ī *n*

TV room concláv·e -is *n* tēlevīsōriō īnstrúctum

upstairs: the upstairs dom·us -ūs *f* supērior; **to go upstairs** scālās ascēnd·ō -ere -ī

upstairs bedroom cubícul·um -ī *n* supērius

vacuum cleaner púlveris haurītōri·um -ī *n*

VCR videoexceptōri·um -ī *n*

vegetable garden hort·us -ī *m* holitōrius

Venetian blinds trānsēnn·a -ae *f* volúbilis; **to close (open, let down, raise) the blinds** trānsēnnam clau·d·ō -dere -sī -sus (apér·iō -íre -uī, dēmítt·ō -ere dēmísī dēmíssus, subvól·v·ō -ere -ī)

[NOTE 1. The most common Latin word for “room” is **cubículum**, or, for a smaller room, **cella**. **Cubículum** very frequently means “bedroom.” To avoid ambiguity where the context did not make it clear, the Romans used **dormitōrium** **cubículum** or simply **dormitōrium** to designate a “bedroom.”

NOTE 2. **Iánua** and **óstium** both mean “door” and are often used interchangeably, but **óstium** also means “doorway.” A **iánua** often had two panels, called **forēs** or **valvae**.

NOTE 3. The common Latin word for “house” is **aed·ēs -ium fpl**; **domus** is normally used to designate an upscale home. The declension of

domus is partly of the fourth and partly of the second declension. In the following paradigm, the more common form is given first:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM	domus	domūs
GEN	domūs	domórum (dómuum)
DAT	domō (dómuī)	dómibus
ACC	domum	domōs (domūs)
ABL	domō	dómibus
LOC	domī	

Prepositions are used with **domum** when modified by an adjective, e.g., **domum meam** or **in domum meam**. The preposition **apud** (*w. acc of the pronoun*) is often used in place of the locative, e.g., **apud mē** at my home, **apud eum** at his house; **ad mē** “to my house” is used at times in place of **domum** as the accusative. The locative **domī** “at home” takes the possessive pronominal adjective in the genitive, e.g., **domī suae** “at his own home,” **meae domī** “at my home.”]

Chapter XIV: Buying and Selling

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

Lydia explains to Diane why she bought new clothes.

Diána	Lýdia, ubi terrarum illam stolam bellam emisti?	<i>Diane: Lydia, where on earth did you buy that pretty dress?</i>
Lýdia	In tabernā vestiariā in Viā Lātā.	<i>Lydia: In the clothing store on Broad Street.</i>
Diána	Quantū constabat?	<i>How much did it cost?</i>
Lýdia	Percāra erat. Trigintā dollaris constabat.	<i>It was very expensive. It cost thirty dollars.</i>
Diána	Et habēs novos soccos.	<i>And you have new dress shoes.</i>
Lýdia	Ita. Etiam inaurēs et monile aureum.	<i>Yes. Also earrings and a gold necklace.</i>
Diána	Dic mihi, cūr haec vestimenta nova emisti?	<i>Tell me, why did you buy these new clothes?</i>
Lýdia	Quia meus amāns novus mē ad saltationem scholārem invitāvit.	<i>Because my new boyfriend invited me to the school dance.</i>
Diána	Ego quoque saltationi intērerō. Itaque dēsiderābō novam stolam.	<i>I, too, will attend the dance. And so I'll need a new dress.</i>
Lýdia	Vidēbō tē apud saltationem, ut spērō. Bene valē!	<i>I'll see you at the dance, I hope. Bye!</i>
Diána	Bene valē! Abeō curriculō ad Viam Lātam.	<i>Bye! I'm taking off on the double for Broad Street.</i>

 LEVEL II **Sulpicia explains why she is going shopping.**

Aulus	Quō hinc abīs, Sulpícia?	<i>Aulus: Where are you off to, Sulpicia?</i>
Sulpícia	Ad macéllum in Subúram.	<i>Sulpicia: To the market in the Subura.</i>
Aulus	Obsōnātúra es íterum?	<i>You're going shopping again?</i>
Sulpícia	Quidnī? Placet mihi obsōnāre.	<i>Why not? I like to shop.</i>
Aulus	Quid cupis émere?	<i>What do you want to buy?</i>
Sulpícia	Multa, sī annóna in macéllō nōn nímia est.	<i>Many things, if the price of food at the market is not too high.</i>
Aulus	Et sī annóna nōn cāra est?	<i>And if the price of food is not high?</i>
Sulpícia	Obsōnábō pōma, hólera, cáseum, búbulam, cuppédia.	<i>I'll shop for fruit, vegetables, cheese, beef, and pastries.</i>
Aulus	Cūr, malum, tot mercēs obsōnābis?	<i>Why the devil are you going to buy so many items?</i>
Sulpícia	Quia crās est nātális diēs amántis meī. Agitábō convívium prō eō.	<i>Because tomorrow is my boyfriend's birthday. I'm going to throw him a party.</i>
Aulus	Emésne étiam novam stolam ad convívium?	<i>Will you also buy a new gown for the party?</i>
Sulpícia	Certē. Sed nōn in macéllō. Tabérna vestiária autem nōn procul illinc est.	<i>Certainly. But not in the market. The clothing store, however, is not far from there.</i>
Aulus	Quīn, ego quoque novam togam emam, sī tū mē invitābis.	<i>Well, I, too, am going to buy a new toga, if you invite me.</i>
Sulpícia	Invitábō, profectō, tē. Valē in crástinum.	<i>Of course I'll invite you. So long till tomorrow.</i>

 LEVEL III **A storekeeper makes a sale.**

Tabernárius	Quómodo possum tē iuvāre?	<i>Storekeeper: How can I help you?</i>
Ēmptor	Numquam ánteā fuī in Subúra. Subúra vidétur esse plēna praestántium tabernárum.	<i>Customer: I've never been in the Subura before. The Subura seems to be full of fine shops.</i>

Tabernārius	Ut vidēs, sunt quidem multae tabērnae in hōc locō: tabērna vestiāria, tabērna chartāria, tabērna librāria, medicāmentāria. Quid vīs īnspicere?	<i>As you see, there indeed are many stores around here: a clothing store, a stationery store, a bookstore, a drugstore. What do you wish to look at?</i>
Ēmptor	Estne quoque tabērna ferrāria? Et tabērna vīnāria?	<i>Is there also a hardware store? And a wine shop?</i>
Tabernārius	Sānē; étiam laniéna et cuppédō et pīstrīna. Quidquid cupis, id in hōc locō émere potes.	<i>Yes. Also a butcher shop and a pastry shop and a bakery. You can buy whatever you wish around here.</i>
Ēmptor	Suntne mercēs in hīs tabérnīs cārae?	<i>Is the merchandise expensive in these shops?</i>
Tabernārius	Ut álibī, áliae mercēs sunt cārae, áliae sunt vīlēs. In hāc tabérnā ego vénditō státuās extrínsecās.	<i>As elsewhere, some items are expensive, others are cheap. In this shop I sell statues from abroad.</i>
Ēmptor	Quantī cōnstat haec imágō Vēneris?	<i>How much does this bust of Venus cost?</i>
Tabernārius	Est cārīssima. Ut vidére potes, ūsque ē Graeciā vēnit. Quadrāgīntā dēnāriīs cōnstat.	<i>It's very expensive. As you can see, it came all the way from Greece. It costs forty denarii.</i>
Ēmptor	Nōn possum dēnumerāre tibi argéntum praesentārium.	<i>I cannot pay you the money in cash.</i>
Tabernārius	Nōlī sollicitārī. Bonā fidē es. Potes dare mihi hódīe vīgīntī dēnāriōs arrabónī.	<i>Don't worry. Your credit is good. You can give me twenty denarii today as a down payment.</i>
Ēmptor	Bene. Céterōs nummōs ad diem dictam solvam.	<i>Fine. I'll pay you the rest of the money on time.</i>
Tabernārius	Quot dēnāriōs potes mihi sōlvēre hódīe?	<i>How many denarii can you pay me today?</i>
Ēmptor	Ego vīgīntī solum dēnāriōs mēcum hábeō.	<i>I have only twenty denarii with me.</i>
Tabernārius	Id mihi placet. Quómodo solvēs quod réliquum est?	<i>That's fine with me. How will you pay the rest?</i>
Ēmptor	Sī licébit, duābus pēnsiōnibus persólvam.	<i>If I may, I'll pay it off in two installments.</i>

Tabernārius	Probē! Mihi crēde, bene emis hanc imāginem. Ecquid placet?	<i>Fine! Believe me, you are buying this statue at a bargain. Do you like it?</i>
Ēmptor	Immō édepol vērō pérplacet.	<i>Heavens, yes. I really like it a lot.</i>
Tabernārius	Grātias! Et nunc, sis, potes vísere álterās tabérnās in Subúrā.	<i>Thanks. And now, if you wish, you can go to see the other shops in the Subura.</i>
Ēmptor	Vísam proféctō. Valē!	<i>I will indeed. Goodbye!</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

advertise prōscrīb·ō -ere prōscrípī prōscrīptus	(parvī, grātīs, plūris, minōris) cōnstāre
ask the price of an item mercis prētium inquīr·ō -ere inquīśvī inquīśītus	cost s impēns·a -ae f
bargain prēti·um -ī n speciāle	credit (com) fid·ēs -eī f; to buy on credit fidē suā émere; pecūniā haud praesentāriā emere; to have good credit bonā fidē esse
be sold, be up for sale vēr·eō -íre -īī	customer ēmpt·or -ōris m, ēmpt·īx -īcis f
bookstore librāri·a -ae f	deal mercimōni·um -ī n
business district empōri·um -ī n	dealer merc·āns -āntis mf, mercāt·or -ōris m, mercāt·īx -īcis f
butcher lāni·us -ī m	debt aes, aeris n aliēnum; this has put me in debt hoc mihi aes aliēnum áttulit
butcher shop laniēna -ae f	denarius dēnāri·us -ī m (worth about one dollar)
buy parāre; em·ō -ere emī ēmptus (from s.o. dē áliquō); to buy at a bargain bene émere	discount remissi·ō -ōnis f; five- (ten- twenty-) percent discount quīnárūm (dēnárūm, vicēsīmárūm) centēsīmárūm remissiō
buyer ēmpt·or -ōris m, ēmpt·īx -īcis f	dollar dōllar·us -ī m
cash argént·um -ī n presentārium; to pay \$10 in cash for dēnumerāre decem dōllarōs praesentāriōs prō (+ abl)	down payment árrab·ō -ōnis f; to make a down payment of \$20 (or to pay \$20 down) vīgīntī dōllarōs árrabōnī dare
cent centēsīm·a -ae f	drugstore medicāmentári·a -ae f
cheap vīl·is -is -e	expensive cār·us -a -um; very expensive percārus
cheaply parvō or vīlī prētiō; more cheaply minōris prētiī	flea market for·um -ī n rērum vēnālīum
check sýngraph·a -ae f; to write a check for sýngrapham (+ gen) perscrīb·ō -ere perscrípī perscrīptus	
clerk tabernári·us -ī m, tabernári·a -ae f	
clothing store tabérn·a -ae f vestiária	
cost intr cōnst·ō -āre -itī; to cost a lot (little, nothing, more, less) multī	

go for; at what price do these items go for? quibus prétiis hae mercēs vēneunt?

groceries obsóni·a -órum *npl*

grocery store macéll·um -ī *n*

hardware store tabérn·a -ae *f* ferrária

how much did you sell it for? quantī hoc vēnit?; **how much is this?** quantī hoc cōstat?

installment pénsi·ō -ónis *f*; **to pay in five installments** quīnque pénsiōnibus solv·ō -ere -ī solūtus

item of merchandise merx, mercis *f*

mall for·um -ī *n* subtēgulāneum

market mercāt·us -ūs *m*, macéll·um -ī *n*

marketable vēndíbil·is -is -e

marketplace mercāt·us -ūs *m*, for·um -ī *n*

merchandise vēnālíci·a -órum *npl*, merc·ēs -ium *fpl*

money pecūni·a -ae *f*, argént·um -ī *n*, numm·ī -órum *mpl*

pastries cuppédi·a -órum *npl*

pastry baker cuppēdinári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

pastry shop cuppēd·ō -inis *f*

pay solv·ō -ere -ī solūtus; **to pay s.o.**

\$20 for dēnumerāre álicui vīgínti dóllarōs prō (+ *abl*); **to pay off a debt** débitum persólvere; **to pay on time** ad tempus *or* ad diem dictam sólvere; **to pay out (money) to** dēnumerāre (nummōs) (+ *dat*)

percent centésim·a -ae *f*

pound libr·a -ae *f*; **per pound** in librās

price préti·um -ī *n*; **at a high (low, very low, exorbitant) price** magnō (parvō, mínimō, nímiō); **higher price** prétiūm ámplius; **to set a price** prétiūm fácere; **the price for it is 10 denarii per pound** prétiūm eī in librās est decem dēnáriis; **the price of food** annón·a -ae *f*

purchase s empt·um -ī *n*

purchase tr merc·or -ārī -átus *sum*

purchasing éempti·ō -ónis *f*

receipt ápoch·a -ae *f*

run a business negótium exérc·eō -ēre -uī -itus; **to run a shop** tabérnam exercēre

sale vēndítí·ō -ónis *f*; **for sale, on sale** vēnālíci·us -a -um, vēnāl·is -is -e; **to put up for sale** vēnum dō dare dēdī datus

sell vēnd·ō -ere vēndidī vēnditus; (*of a merchant*) vēnditāre

seller vēndit·or -óris *m*, vēnditr·īx -ícis *f*

set a price prétiūm fác·iō -ere fecī factus *or* státu·ō -ere -ī statútus

shoe store tabérn·a -ae *f* sūtrína

shop, store tabérn·a -ae *f*

shop intr (*at a grocery store*) obsónāre; **to shop for** emō emere ēmī éemptus; obsónāre (*groceries*)

shopkeeper tabernári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

shopping éempti·ō -ónis *f*; (*for groceries*) obsónāt·us -ūs *m*; **to go shopping** éemptum íre; (*for groceries*) obsónátum íre

shopper éempt·or -óris *m*; (*for groceries*) obsónāt·or -óris *m*, obsónātr·īx -ícis *f*

small change númmul·ī -órum *mpl*

stationery rēs, rērū *fpl* chartárie

stationery store tabérn·a -ae *f* chartária

store tabérn·a -ae *f*

supermarket superínstitóri·um -ī *n*

trade mercātúr·a -ae *f*

valuable; to be valuable prétiūm háb·eō -ēre -uī -itus

wares merc·ēs -ium *fpl*

wholesale magnári·us -a -um

wholesaler negōtiát·or -óris *m* magnárius

Chapter XV: The Weather

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

A boy and a girl in Rome contrast the weather of Rome with that of Switzerland.

Puer Rōmānus Est frīgidum hódīē.

***Roman Boy:** It's cold today.*

Puella Helvétia Frīgidúmne? Quómodo id dīcere potes?

***Swiss Girl:** Cold? How can you say that?*

Puer Quia ego álgeō.

Because I feel cold.

Puella At sōl lūcet et véntulus mītis flat. Prōrsus, est diēs bellus et tépidus.

But the sun is shining and a gentle breeze is blowing. All in all, it is a nice warm day.

Puer Haec dīcis, quia tempéstās in Helvétīā semper frīgida est. Nihil habēs in Álpibus praeter nivem et gláciem.

You say that because the weather is always cold in Switzerland. You have nothing in the Alps but snow and ice.

Puella Parum vērum est! Estō; híemēs in Álpibus sunt longae. Sed tempéstās ibi aestáte est bellíssima.

That's not quite true. Granted, the winters are long in the Alps. But the weather there in summer is very nice.

Puer Hīc hiems est plúvia, et diēs aestáte sunt calidíssimī.

Here the winter is rainy and the days in summer are very hot.

Puella Sed hīc Rōmae neque grándinat neque ningit. Ágedum, eámus forās lūsum. Mox tū nōn iam algébis.

But here in Rome it neither hails nor snows. Come on, then, let's go play outside. Soon you will no longer be cold.

Puer Vēra dīcis. Iam disserénat.

You're right. The weather is already clearing up.

LEVEL II

Martha explains to her teacher how the weather kept her from going to school.

Magistra	Cūr nōn in scholam herī vēnístī?	<i>Teacher: Why didn't you come to school yesterday?</i>
Martha	Propter procéllam.	<i>Martha: Because of the storm.</i>
Magistra	Quid áccidit?	<i>What happened?</i>
Martha	Mātūtínū quidem erat serénū, sed súbitō Áquilō perfláre incépit. Imber cádere incépit.	<i>The early morning was fair all right, but suddenly the north wind began to blow hard. Rain began to fall.</i>
Magistra	Erásne adhūc domī eō témpore?	<i>Were you still at home at that time?</i>
Martha	Modo discēdébam domō. Mox vehementíssimē pluit. Imber vērō urceátim cadébat.	<i>I was just leaving home. Soon it rained very hard. In fact, the rain came down in buckets.</i>
Magistra	Erásne formídolósa?	<i>Were you afraid?</i>
Martha	Ita. Ictūs fúlminis et tónitrus mē terrébant. Ventī árborēs dēiēcérunt trāns viās. Vix póteram vidére quō írem.	<i>Yes. The bolts of lightning and thunder frightened me. The winds knocked down trees across the streets. I could scarcely see where I was going.</i>
Magistra	Quid deinceps fēcístī?	<i>What did you do then?</i>
Martha	Cōnstítuī ílicō domum redíre, ubi māter mē ánxia exspectábat.	<i>I decided on the spot to return home where my mother was waiting anxiously for me.</i>
Magistra	Sapiénter dēcrēvistī.	<i>You made a wise decision.</i>

LEVEL III

The weather of Rome and Switzerland is again debated.

Caecilius	Quālis tempéstās tibi potíssimum placet?	<i>Cecil: What kind of weather do you like best?</i>
Sonja	Caelum tépidum mihi potíssimum placet. In Álpibus nix per māiōrem partem annī perdúrat.	<i>Sonja: I like warm weather best. In the Alps the snow lasts through most of the year.</i>

Caecilius	Quid ibi facis cum ningit?	<i>What do you do there when it snows?</i>
Sonja	Postquam nīnixit, in nive lūdīmus. Intērdum pilās nīvis inter nōs conīcīmus. Intērdum virum nīvis fācīmus. Intērdum dē colle trāheā lābīmur.	<i>After it has snowed, we play in the snow. Sometimes we throw snowballs at one another. Sometimes we build a snowman. Sometimes we slide down the hill on a sled.</i>
Caecilius	Quam tibi invīdeō! Ego numquam nivem vīdī. Māter tamen mihi dē nive et grāndine et glāciē nārābat.	<i>How I envy you! I have never seen snow. However, my Mother told me about snow and hail and ice.</i>
Sonja	Numquam vīdīstī sfīriās dē tēctīs dēpendētēs?	<i>You never saw icicles hanging from a roof?</i>
Caecilius	Ego tantūmodo imāginārī possum sfīriās dē tēctīs dēpendētēs et tēcta dōmuum nive mollī obdūcta.	<i>I can only imagine icicles hanging from the roofs and the roofs of houses covered with soft snow.</i>
Sonja	At cum Áquilō perflat et ningit et grāndinat in Álpibus, vīta potest esse dūra in Helvétīā. Ítaque praēferō tempestātem tépidam Rōmae. Ibi saltem numquam álgeam.	<i>But in the Alps, when the north wind blows and it snows and hails, life can be tough in Switzerland. And so I prefer the warm climate of Rome. At least there I would never feel cold.</i>
Caecilius	Mihi crēde, vívere sub aestuósō caelō nullō modō rosārium est! Habēmus aestātēs aestuósās.	<i>Believe me, living in a sultry climate is by no means a bed of roses! We have sweltering summers.</i>
Sonja	Tū saltem nōn gelāris. Potes lūdere forīs sīngulīs diēbus.	<i>You at least do not freeze. You can play outdoors every day.</i>
Caecilius	At quis, malum, potest lūdere in tam aestuósā tempestāte? Sūdāmus et sūdāmus. Et muscae culicēsque sunt molestīssimī.	<i>But who the devil can play in such sweltering weather? We sweat and sweat. And the flies and mosquitoes are a big pain in the neck.</i>
Sonja	Pactiōnem faciāmus. Tū in Helvétiam migrā et ego Rōmam migrābō. Ítaque utérque nostrum conténtus erit.	<i>Let's make a deal. You move to Switzerland, and I'll move to Rome. Then both of us will be satisfied.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

Note: Expressions such as **it is hot**, etc., can be expressed as **cálidum est** (used impersonally, or with *caelum* = **weather** understood) or **cálida est** (with *tempéstās* understood).

bad (*weather*) *advér̄s·us -a -um, grav·is -is -e*

barometer *barómetr·um -ī n*

blast *flāt·us -ūs m*

blow *flāre*; **to blow hard** *perflāre*

bolt of lightning *ict·us -ūs m fúlminis*

breeze *véntul·us -ī m, aur·a -ae f*

bright *serén·us -a -um*

bucket: to come down in buckets *ūrceátim cad·ō -ere cécidī cāsūrus*;
to rain buckets *ūrceátim plúere*

changing (*weather*) *vári·us -a -um*

chilly *frīgídul·us -a -um*

clear *serén·us -a -um, sūd·us -a -um*

clear up *disserenāre*

climate *cael·um -ī n*

cloud *nūb·ēs -is f*

cloudless *sūd·us -a -um*

cloudy *nūbilós·us -a -um*; **to become cloudy** *nūbilāre*

cold *s frīg·us -oris n, gel·ū -ūs n*; **to catch a cold** *gravédinem cón·trahō* -tráhere tráxi tráctus; **to have a cold** *gravédine laborāre*

cold *adj* (*the most general word, applied to all degrees from pleasant coolness to severe cold*) *frīgíd·us -a -um; gelid·us -a -um*; **liable to get cold** *alsiós·us -a -um*; **to feel cold** *álgeō algére alsī*; **to get cold** *algésc·ō -ere*; **to turn cold** *frīgésc·ō -ere frīxī*

cold spell *frígor·a -um npl*

cold weather *gel·u -ūs n*

cover up (*against the cold*) *opér·iō -íre -uī -tus*

dark *adj* *obscur·us -a -um*; **as soon as it got dark** *prīmīs ténebrīs*

dark *s*: **after dark** *dē nocte*; **in the dark** *per obscurum; sine lúmine*

darkness *ténebr·ae -árum fpl*; **darkness had suddenly come** *ténebrae factae sunt repéntē*

degree *grad·us -ūs m*

dew *rōs, rōris m*

drizzle *s plúvi·a -ae f rāra et minúta*

drizzle *intr* *léniter pluit plúere pluit*

drop (*e.g., of rain*) *gutt·a -ae f*

east wind *Eur·us -ī m*

fair *serén·us -a -um*

fall *s autúmn·us -ī m*

favorable (*wind*) *secúnd·us -a -um*

fine (*weather*) *serén·us -a -um*; **fine weather** *serénit·ās -átis f*

flash of lightning *fulg·ur -uris n*

fog *nébul·a -ae f*

foggy *nebulós·us -a -um*

freeze *tr* *gelāre* || *intr* *gelārī*

freezing *gélid·us -a -um*

frost *pruín·a -ae f*

frosty *pruínós·us -a -um*

frozen *rig·ēns -entis*

gale *procéll·a -ae f*

glisten *nít·eō -ére -uī*

good (*weather*) *serén·us -a -um*

hail *s grand·ō -inis f*

hail *impers v* *grándin·at -āre*

hailstorms *grándin·ēs -um fpl*

hot (*of a person, sun, water, bath, day*)
cálid·us -a -um (*opp*: frígid·us -a
-um); **it is hot** cálidum est; **to**
become hot calésc·ō -ere; **to be hot**
cál·eō -ēre -uī; **to be uncomfortably**
hot aestuāre

hot weather aest·us -ūs *m*

hurricane tŷph·ōn -ōnis *m*

ice gláci·ēs -ēī *f*; **to turn to ice** glaciārī

icicle stíri·a -ae *f*

icy glaciál·is -is -e

lightning *s* fulm·en -inis *n*

lightning: it is lightning fulget fulgére
fulsit, fúlgur·at -āre -āvit

lousy (*weather*) spurc·us -a -um

melt *tr* dissól·vō -vere -vī -útus **II** *intr*
liquésc·ō -ere

mild mīt·is -is -e

mist nébul·a -ae *f*

misty nebulós·us -a -um

muggy aestuós·us -a -um

nice bell·us -a -um

north wind Áquil·ō -ōnis *m*

open: in the open (air) sub dīvō

overcast nūbilós·us -a -um, nūbil·us -a
-um; **to become overcast** nūbilāre

partly partim; **it is partly cloudy**
(**sunny**) **today** (caelum) hódīē est
partim nūbilōsum (aprícum)

rain *impers v* pluit pluere pluit; **to rain**
hard veheménter (*or* multum) plúere

rain *s* plúvi·a -ae *f*, im·ber -bris *m*;
heavy, steady rain magnī et adsíduī
imbrēs; **the rain is letting up** imber
dētūméscit; **it looks like rain** vidétur
quasi pluat

rainbow arc·us -ūs *m* caeléstis, plúvius
arcus

rain cloud nimb·us -ī *m*

rainy plúvi·us -a -um

scorching (heat, sun) flagrantíssimus
(sōl, sōlis *m*, aest·us -ūs *m*)

shifting (*wind, weather*) vári·us -a -um

shine lúcc·eō -ēre lūxī; **to shine on**
illúcc·eō -ēre illúxī (+ *dat*)

shower im·ber -bris *m*

sky cael·um -ī *n*

sleet im·ber -bris *m* grándine mīxtus

slippery lúbric·us -a -um

sloppy (*weather*) spurc·us -a -um

snow nix, nivis *f* **covered with snow**
níve·us -a -um

snow *impers v* ningit níngere nīnxit

snowball pil·a -ae *f* nivis

snowdrift ningu·is -is *f*

snowfall nivis cās·us -ūs *m*

snowstorm ning·or -óris *m*

snowy nivós·us -a -um, nivál·is -is -e

south wind Aus·ter -trī *m*

spring vēr, vēris *n*

storm tempést·ās -átis *f*; procéll·a -ae *f*;
a storm arose tempéstās cóorta est

stormy procellós·us -a -um,
turbulént·us -a -um

summer aest·ās -átis *f*

sun sōl, sōlis *m*; **full sun** plúrimus sōl

sunny apríc·us -a -um

sunshine sōl, sōlis *m*

sultry aestuós·us -a -um

sweltering aestuós·us -a -um

temperature temperátúr·a -ae *f*; **the**
temperature fell below thirty-two
degrees temperátúra lápsa est subter
duós et trīgintā gradūs; **what is the**
temperature? quō gradū stat
temperátúra?

thermometer thermómetr·um -ī *n*

thunder *s* tónitr·us -ūs *m*

thunder *impers* *v* tonat tonáre tónuit

thunderbolt fulm·en -inis *n*

tide aest·us -ūs *m*; **high tide** aestūs
accéss·us -ūs *m*; **low tide** aestūs
recéss·us -ūs *m*

tornado turb·ō -inis *m*

warm tépid·us -a -um; **it is getting**
warm tepéscit

weather (*good or bad*) tempést·ās -ātis
f, cael·um -ī *n*; **depending on the**
weather ut diēs suādet; **kinds of**
weather tempestátēs; **owing to**
changes in the weather propter
caeli varietátēs

weather conditions tempestát·ēs
-um *fpl*

west wind Zéphyr·us -ī *m*

wind vent·us -ī *m*; **head wind** ventus
advérsus; **tail wind** ventus secúndus;
the wind is dying down ventus
dētuméscit; **the wind is picking up**
ventus increbréscit

wind storm procéll·a -ae *f*

windy ventós·us -a -um

winter hiem·s -is *f*; **at the end of**
winter híeme exeúnte; **because of**
the severity of the winter propter
híemis magnitúdinem

zero zer·um -ī *n*

Chapter XVI: Animals

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I A visit to the zoo.

Bárbara	Salvē, David. Unde venīs?	<i>Barbara: Hello, David. Where are you coming from?</i>
David	Modo vīvārium vīsēbam.	<i>David: I was just visiting the zoo.</i>
Bárbara	Quās ferās ibi vīdīstī?	<i>What wild animals did you see there?</i>
David	Panthérās et leónēs et elephántōs et tigrēs et zebrās.	<i>Panthers, lions, elephants, tigers, and zebras.</i>
Bárbara	Nōne frémītūs ferārum tē terruērunt?	<i>The roars of the wild animals scared you, didn't they?</i>
David	Mínimē, hercle. Omnēs enim ferae in claustrīs cohibéntur.	<i>Heavens, no! You see, all the wild animals are kept in cages.</i>
Bárbara	Quod ánimal tē potíssimum dēlectávit?	<i>What animal did you like best?</i>
David	Símiī.	<i>The monkeys.</i>
Bárbara	Quam ob rem?	<i>Why?</i>
David	Tam iocōsī sunt, quod sē gerunt paene quasi hómīnēs.	<i>They are so funny because they behave almost like human beings.</i>
Bárbara	Vīdistīne étiam crocodílōs et strúthiocamélōs et rhīnocerótēs?	<i>Did you also see the crocodiles and ostriches and rhinoceroses?</i>
David	Eī quidem in vīvāriō sunt, sed eōs nōn vīdī.	<i>They're in the zoo all right, but I didn't see them.</i>
Bárbara	Ítaque cūr eōs nōn vīsístī?	<i>Then why didn't you go see them?</i>
David	Ótium mihi nōn erat ad omnēs ferās vīséndās.	<i>I didn't have the time to visit all the wild animals.</i>
Bárbara	Vīdistīne dinosaúrōs?	<i>Did you see (any) dinosaurs?</i>
David	Tū sánē iocáris!	<i>You must be kidding!</i>

 LEVEL II **A visit to a pet shop.**

Grátia	Salvē. Velim dēliciās émere.	<i>Grace: Hello. I'd like to buy a pet.</i>
Cóciō	Euge! Hábeō omnis géneris dēliciās vēnālēs.	<i>Dealer: Great! I have every kind of pet for sale.</i>
Grátia	Ita vídeō.	<i>So I see.</i>
Cóciō	Vīsne émere catéllum vel fēlem vel cunículum?	<i>Do you want to buy a puppy or a cat or a rabbit?</i>
Grátia	Mínimē, iam mihi est catéllus et fēlis et cunículus. Quantū cōnstat ille psíttacus?	<i>No, I already have a puppy, cat, and rabbit. How much does that parrot cost?</i>
Cóciō	Cōnstat trecéntōs dóllarīs. Ūsque enim ex Áfricā dēvéctus est.	<i>It costs 300 dollars. You see, it was shipped all the way from Africa.</i>
Grátia	Et quantū cōnstat fringíllae Canáriae?	<i>And how much do canaries cost?</i>
Cóciō	Tantúmmodo decem dóllarīs.	<i>Only ten dollars.</i>
Grátia	Vāh, nimis cārae mihi sunt. Habésne híppurōs vēnālēs?	<i>Wow, they are too expensive for me. Do you have goldfish for sale?</i>
Cóciō	Sćilicet hábeō. Meī híppurī sunt vīlēs. Quisque cōnstat ūnō dóllarō. Et dōnábō tibi áliquíd ēscae piscáriae grātīs.	<i>Of course I have. My goldfish are inexpensive. They are one dollar apiece. And I'll give you some fish food gratis.</i>
Grátia	Nunc Latínē lóqueris! Duōs emam. Ecce duōs dóllarōs.	<i>Now you're talking turkey! I'll buy two. Here are the two dollars.</i>
Cóciō	Grátias tibi. Bene valē.	<i>Thank you. Goodbye.</i>

 LEVEL III **Young Mark visits old Cato's farm.**

Marcus	Catō, quam ob rem māvīs rūrī habitāre quam in urbe?	<i>Marcus: Cato, why do you prefer to live in the country rather than in the city?</i>
Catō	Quia vīta in fundō ācta longē iūcúndior est quam in urbe.	<i>Cato: Because life spent on the farm is far more pleasant than in the city.</i>

Marcus	Quid ita?	<i>How so?</i>
Catō	Quī victum in fundō quaeritat, quamvis dives numquam fiat, liber tamen est.	<i>One who makes his living on a farm, although he may never get rich, is nevertheless free.</i>
Marcus	Ostēde mihi pecus, quaesō, sī otium tibi est.	<i>Please show me your livestock, if you have the time.</i>
Catō	Libēter. Ecce vaccās ovēsque in pratō ac equōs in pascuō.	<i>Gladly. See the cows and sheep in the meadow and the horses in the pasture.</i>
Marcus	Ēducāsne pullōs gallināceōs et ānserēs?	<i>Do you raise chickens and geese?</i>
Catō	Ita. Ēducō etiā porcōs et caprōs. Eī sunt ultrā hōrreum.	<i>Yes. I also raise pigs and goats. They are on the other side of the barn.</i>
Marcus	Exstāntne piscēs in illō rīvulō quī per pratū fluit?	<i>Are there fish in that brook that flows through the meadow?</i>
Catō	Ut vēra dicam, piscōsus est ille rīvulus. Tructōs captāre queō, quotiēscūmq̄ libet.	<i>To tell you the truth, that brook is teeming with fish. I can catch trout whenever I please.</i>
Marcus	Obiter, forte notāvī fundum silvam continēre. Illīcne umquam vēnāris?	<i>By the way, I happened to notice that your farm includes a forest. Do you ever go hunting there?</i>
Catō	Ētiā. Vēnor cunīculōs, phāsiānās, cervōs.	<i>Yes. I hunt rabbits, pheasants, and deer.</i>
Marcus	Habēsne canem vēnāticum?	<i>Do you have a hunting hound?</i>
Catō	Hābeō quidem sagācīssimum canem; sine eō numquam vēnor.	<i>I do have a very keen-scented hound; I never go hunting without him.</i>
Marcus	Valdē fortunātus es, Catō. Aliquāndō ego fundum mihi parābō.	<i>You are very fortunate, Cato. Someday I will get myself a farm.</i>
Catō	Probum cōsīlium, adulescēns!	<i>Good idea, young man!</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

animal ánim·al -ális *n*; **wild animal**
fer·a -ae *f*

ant formíc·a -ae *f*

ape sími·us -ī *m*, sími·a -ae *f*

chatter stríð·eō -éire -uī

bat vespertíli·ō -ónis *m*

bear urs·us -ī *m*, urs·a -ae *f*

cub ursae cátul·us -ī *m*

grunt *intr* grunn·iō -íre -ívi *or* -iī -ítum

grunt *s* grunnít·us -ūs *m*

beaver fi·ber -brī *m*

bedbug sciníph·is -is *m*

bee ap·is -is *f*

beehive álve·us -ī *m*

buzz bombiláre

hum murmuráre

sting *tr* íc·ō -ere ícī ictus

sting *s* (*on the bee*) acúle·us -ī *m*;
(*bite*) ict·us -ūs *m*

swarm of bees ápium exám·en
-ínis *n*

bird av·is -is *f*

beak rōstr·um -ī *n*

cage cáve·a -ae *f*

chirp pīpáre, pīpiláre

egg ōv·um -ī *n*

feather penn·a -ae *f*

flap the wings ālis plaud·ō -ere
plausī plausum

flight volát·us -ūs *m*

fly voláre; **to fly away** āvoláre

land (on) ínsíd·ō -ere ínsédī (+ *dat*)

nest nīd·us -ī *m*; **to build a nest**
nīdificáre

sing can·ō -ere cécinī cantum

song cant·us -ūs *m*

tail caud·a -ae *f*

wing āl·a -ae *f*

blackbird mérul·a -ae *f* (*see bird*)

boar ap·er -rī *m*

grunt grunn·iō -íre -ívi *or* -iī -ítum

buffalo ūr·us -ī *m*

bug cīm·ex -icis *m*

bull taur·us -ī *m* (*see cattle*)

butterfly pāpíli·ō -ónis *m*

cage claustr·a -órum *npl*, cáve·a -ae *f*

calf vítul·us -ī *m*, vítul·a -ae *f* (*see cattle*)

camel camél·us -ī *m*

hump gibb·er -eris *m*

canary fringíll·a -ae *f* Canária (*see bird*)

cat fēl·is *or* fēl·ēs -is *f*; catt·a -ae *f*,
catt·us -ī *m*

meow fēl·iō -íre

purr *intr* murmuráre

purr *s* murm·ur -uris *n*

caterpillar ērúc·a -ae *f*

catfish silúr·us -ī *m*

cattle bov·ēs -um *mpl* (*dat & abl pl*:
bōbus *or* būbus)

bellow (or low) mŭg·iō -íre -ívi *or*
-iī -ítum

graze pāsc·or -ī pāstus *sum*

head of cattle pec·us -oris *n*

chick pull·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)

peep pīpiláre

chicken (gallināceus) pull·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)

chicken coop gallinári·um -ī *n*

cluck glóc·iō -íre

egg ōv•um -ī *n*
eggshell (ōvī) putām•en -inis *n*
egg white (ōvī) alb•um -ī *n*
lay (*eggs*) pār•iō -ere péperī partus
yolk vitéll•us -ī *m*
cockroach blatt•a -ae *f*
colt équol•us -ī *m* (*see horse*)
cow vacc•a -ae *f*
milk *s* lac lactis *n*
milk *tr* múl•geō -gēre -sī -ctum
moo mûg•iō -īre -īvī *or* -iī -ītum
udder ūb•er -eris *n*
crane grūs, gruis *mf* (*see bird*)
crinkle gru•ō -ere
cricket gryll•us -ī *m*
chirp fritín•iō -īre
crocodile crocodíl•us -ī *m*
crow corn•īx -īcis *f* (*see bird*)
caw crōcitāre
deer cerv•us -ī *m*, cerv•a -ae *f*
bray rud•ō -ere -īvī -ītum
dinosaur dinosaúr•us -ī *m*
dog can•is -is *mf*
bark *intr* latráre; **bark at** allatrāre
bark *s* latrát•us -ūs *m*
collar collár•e -is *n*
growl ring•or -ī rictus sum
leash cíngul•um -ī *n*
leash a dog canem cíngulō alligāre
pet (*stroke*) permúl•eō -ēre -sī
snarl gánn•iō -īre
tail caud•a -ae *f*; **wag the tail**
 caudam movére
take for a walk dūc•ō -ere dūxī
 ductus
dolphin delphín•us -ī *m*

donkey ásin•us -ī *m*
heehaw *intr* rud•ō -ere -īvī -ītum
heehaw *s* rudít•us -ūs *m*
dove palumb•ēs -is *f* (*see bird*)
coo gem•ō -ere -uī
duck an•as -atis *f* (*see bird*)
quack tetrín•iō -īre
eagle áquil•a -ae *f* (*see bird*)
screech stríd•eō -ēre -uī
eel anguíl•a -ae *f*
elephant elephánt•us -ī *m*
trumpet bárr•iō -īre
trunk man•us -ūs *f*
falcon falc•ō -ónis *m* (*see bird*)
screech stríd•eō -ēre -uī
farm animals pec•us -oris *n or* pécor•a
 -um *npl*
fish *s* pisc•is -is *m*
fin pinn•a -ae *f*
fish food ēsc•a -ae *f* piscária
fish pond piscín•a -ae *f*
gills bránci•ae -árum *fpl*
scale *s* squām•a -ae *f*
scale *tr* dēsquāmāre
scaly squāmós•us -a -um
swim natāre
fish *intr* piscor piscārī piscátus sum
flea pūl•ex -icis *m*
flounder pass•er -eris *m* (*see fish*)
fly musc•a -ae *f*
buzz bombilāre
flock (*of birds, sheep, goats*) grex,
 gregis *m*
fox vulp•ēs -is *f*
yelp gánn•iō -īre
frog rān•a -ae *f*

croak coaxáre
game preserve thērotrophí·um -ī *n*
giraffe camēlopárdal·is -is *f*
gnat cul·ex -icis *m*
goat cap·er -rī *m*, capr·a -ae *f*
bleat bālāre
goldfish híppur·us -ī *m* (*see fish*)
goose ans·er -eris *m* (*see bird*)
cackle gíng·r·iō -íre
grasshopper grill·us -ī *m*
chirp fritúnn·iō -íre
haddock gad·us -ī *m* (*see fish*)
hawk accípi·ter -tris *m* (*see bird*)
caw plípiāre
shriek clāmāre
heifer iuvenc·a -ae *f* (*see cattle*)
hen gallín·a -ae *f*
cluck glóc·iō -íre
herd armént·um -ī *n*
hippopotamus hippopótam·us -ī *m*
hog sū·s -is *mf*
oink grúnn·iō -íre
hornet crābr·ō -ónis *m* (*see bee*)
horse equ·us -ī *m*
hoof úngul·a -ae *f*
mane iūb·a -ae *f*
neigh intr hínn·iō -íre -iī; **neigh at** adhinníre
neigh(ing) hinnít·us -ūs *m*
tail caud·a -ae *f*
horsefly tabán·us -ī *m*
buzz bombilāre
insect inséct·um -ī *n*
jellyfish pulm·ō -ónis *m*
lamb agn·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
bleat bālāre

lark alaúd·a -ae *f* (*see bird*)
leopard pard·us -ī *m*
mew rictāre
lion le·ō -ónis *m*, leaén·a -ae *f*
mane iūb·a -ae *f*
roar rúg·iō -íre
livestock pec·us -oris *n*
lizard lacért·us -ī *m*, lacért·a -ae *f*
lobster ástac·us -ī *m*
locust locúst·a -ae *f*
chirp stríd·eō -éire -uī
louse pēdícul·us -ī *m*
mackerel scomb·er -rī *m* (*see fish*)
mole talp·a -ae *f*
monkey śmí·us -ī *m*, śmí·a -ae *f*
chatter stríd·eō -éire -uī
moth blatt·a -ae *f*
mouse mū·s -ris *m*
squeak míntr·iō -íre
mule mūl·us -ī *m*, mūl·a -ae *f*
bray rud·ō -ere -íví -ítum
ostrich strúthiocamél·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)
owl búb·ō -ónis *m* (*see bird*)
hoot búbilāre
ox bōs, bovis *m* (*dat & abl pl: bōbus or būbus*)
bellow boāre
oyster óstre·a -ae *f*
oyster bed ostreári·um -ī *n*
shell conch·a -ae *f*
panther panthér·a -ae *f*
parakeet melopsítac·us -ī *m*
parrot psítac·us -ī *m*
partridge perd·ix -ícis *mf* (*see bird*)
peacock pāv·ō -ónis *m*, pāv·a -ae *f* (*see bird*)

pelican onocrótal·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)

perch (*fish*) perc·a -ae *f* (*see fish*)

pet dēlici·ae -ārum *fpl*

pheasant phāsiān·a -ae *f* (*see bird*)

pig porc·us -ī *m*

oink grúnn·iō -īre

pigsty suíl·e -is *n*

pigeon colúmb·a -ae *f*, colúmb·us -ī *m*
(*see bird*)

coo gem·ō -ere -uī -itum

pigeon coop columbári·um -ī *n*

pony mann·us -ī *m* (*see horse*)

porcupine hystr·ix -icis *f*

poultry av·ēs -ium *fpl* cohortālēs

pup cátul·us -ī *m*

whimper gánn·iō -īre

puppy catéll·us -ī *m*

quail cotúrn·ix -ícis *f* (*see bird*)

rabbit cunícul·us -ī *m*

squeal vág·iō -īre

ram ári·ēs -etis *m*

bleat bālāre

rat mū·s -ris *m*

squeak mínt·iō -īre

raven corv·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)

croak crōcitāre

reindeer taráendr·us -ī *m*

rhinoceros rhīnócer·ōs -ōtis *m*

robin rubécul·a -ae *f* (*see bird*)

chirp pīpāre

rooster gall·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)

crow cūcúr·iō -īre; can·ō -ere cécinī
cantum

salmon salm·ō -ōnis *m* (*see fish*)

sardine sardín·a -ae *f* (*see fish*)

scorpion scórpi·ō -ōnis *m*

sting tr īc·ō -ere īcī ictus

sting s ict·us -ūs *m*

seahorse hippocámp·us -ī *m*

seal vítul·us -ī *m* marínus

serpent serp·ēns -éntis *m*

bite tr īc·ō -ere īcī ictus

bite s ict·us -ūs *m*

crawl serp·ō -ere -sī

hiss sībilāre

shark pistr·is -is *m*

dorsal fin pinn·a -ae *f* dorsális

sheep ov·is -is *f*

bleat bālāre

shepherd pāst·or -ōris *m*

pen (*for sheep*) ovíl·e -is *n*

wool lān·a -ae *f*

snake angu·is -is *mf* (*see serpent*)

snail cóchle·a -ae *f*

sow sū·s -is *f*

oink grúnn·iō -īre

sparrow pass·er -eris *m* (*see bird*)

chirp pīpāre

spider arāne·us -ī *m*

cobweb arāne·a -ae *f*

squirrel sciúr·us -ī *m*

stag cerv·us -ī *m*

bray rud·ō -ere -íivī -ítum

starling sturn·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)

chirp fritínn·iō -īre

steer iuvénc·us -ī *m*

stork cicóni·a -ae *f* (*see bird*)

swallow hirúnd·ō -inis *f* (*see bird*)

swan cync·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)

swordfish xíphi·ās -ae *m*

thrush turd·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)

tiger tigr·is -is *or* -idis *m*

growl frem·ō -ere -uī

toad būf·ō -ōnis *m*

trout truct·us -ī *m*, truct·a -ae *f* (*see fish*)

tuna thunn·us -ī *m* (*see fish*)

turkey gallopāv·ō -ōnis *m*

turtle testūd·ō -inis *f*

shell testūd·ō -inis *f*

vulture vult·ur -uris *m*

wasp vesp·a -ae *f* (*see bee*)

weasel mustēl·a -ae *f*

whale balaén·a -ae *f*

wolf lup·us -ī *m*, lup·a -ae *f*

cub lupae cátul·us -ī *m*

howl *intr* ululáre

howl *s* ululát·us -ūs *m*

whelp gánn·iō -íre

woodpecker pīc·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)

worm verm·is -is *m*

earth worm lumbríc·us -ī *m*

zoo vīvāri·um -ī *n*

Chapter XVII: Emotions and Qualities

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I Diane and Debbie discuss the new teacher.

Diána:	Salvē, Debra. Quō pactō tēcum ágitur? Aúdiō tē novam magístram hōc annō habére.	<i>Diane: Hello, Debbie. How is it going with you? I hear that you have a new teacher this year.</i>
Debra:	Salvē, Diána. Bene váleō. Rēctē audīvísti.	<i>Debbie: Hello, Diane. I'm fine. You heard right.</i>
Diána:	Estne bona magístra?	<i>Is she a good teacher?</i>
Debra:	Sevéra est sed aequa; nam tractat nōs omnēs eōdem modō.	<i>She is strict but fair. She treats all alike.</i>
Diána:	Quámdiū iam docet?	<i>How long has she been teaching?</i>
Debra:	Nésciō. Sed est peritíssima magístra. Nēmō obdormíscit in eius classe.	<i>I don't know. But she's a very experienced teacher. No one falls asleep in her class.</i>
Diána:	Quómodo condiscípulī tuī cum eā cōgruunt?	<i>How do your classmates get along with her?</i>
Debra:	Amant eam quóniam pátiēns hiláraque est.	<i>They love her because she is patient and cheerful.</i>
Diána:	Maniféstō, magístra ipsa bonum exémplum praebet.	<i>Obviously, the teacher herself sets a good example.</i>
Debra:	Ita, exémplum admírābile.	<i>Yes, a wonderful example.</i>

LEVEL II A new girlfriend is the subject of discussion.

Valéria:	Salvē, Ricárde. Ut valēs? Rūmor per tōtam vicíniam pervagátur tē novam amículam repperísse.	<i>Valerie: Hello, Richard. How are you? There's a rumor going around the whole neighborhood that you have found a new girlfriend.</i>
Ricárdus:	Salvē. Bene váleō. Fāma est vēra; eam nōn infítior.	<i>Richard: Hello. I'm fine. The story is true; I'll not deny it.</i>

Valéria:	Quid nōmen eī est? Égone eam nōvī?	<i>What is her name? Do I know her?</i>
Ricárdus:	Nōmen eī est Donna. Eam nōn nōvístī.	<i>Her name is Donna. You do not know her.</i>
Valéria:	Quālis homō est illa?	<i>What sort of person is she?</i>
Ricárdus:	In prīmīs est bella et venústa. Bréviter, mīrífica est.	<i>First of all, she is pretty and attractive. In a word, she is fantastic.</i>
Valéria:	Nōn, nōn. Dīcēbam dē eius índole.	<i>No, no. I was talking about her personality.</i>
Ricárdus:	Iam téneō. Donna est intéllegēns et hílara et hūmána et ténera.	<i>Now I get it. Donna is intelligent, cheerful, kind, and gentle.</i>
Valéria:	Estne géneris tacitúrnī?	<i>Is she the silent type?</i>
Ricárdus:	Est magis loquāx et sociábilis quam tacitúrna; hāc dē causā, apud familiárēs grātiōsíssima est. Étiam corcílum habet, sed numquam id iactat.	<i>She is talkative and sociable rather than quiet; for that reason she is very popular with her close acquaintances. She also has brains, but she doesn't brag about that.</i>
Valéria:	Donna mihi vidétur speciōsa puella. Spērō tē eam mihi aliquándō trāditúrum esse.	<i>Donna seems to be a very interesting girl. I hope that you will introduce her to me sometime.</i>
Ricárdus:	Quidnī?	<i>Why not?</i>

LEVEL III **Sizing up a political candidate.**

Titus:	Márcia, quid opínáris dē Bíbulō candidátō quī cōsulátum petit?	<i>Titus: Marcia, what is your opinion of the candidate Bibulus, who is running for the consulship?</i>
Márcia:	Vísne illum Bíbulum quī Caésaris competítor est? Praédicat sē reī públicae prōfutúrum esse.	<i>Marcia: Do you mean the Bibulus who is Caesar's opponent? He claims that he will be good for the country.</i>
Titus:	Crēdisne eum esse vērácem sincérúmque?	<i>Do you believe that he is honest and sincere?</i>
Márcia:	Multa quidem prōmittit, sed mīror num fidem servātúrus sit.	<i>He certainly makes a lot of promises, but I wonder whether he will keep his word.</i>

Titus:	Mihi vidētur astūtus, audāx, ambitiosus.	<i>He seems to me to be shrewd, bold, and ambitious.</i>
Márcia:	Dē eā rē tēcum fúnditus cōsentiō. Porro audivistīne eius recētēs orātiōnēs?	<i>I fully agree with you on that point. Besides, have you heard his recent speeches?</i>
Titus:	Audīvī. Ut candidātī solent, iste competītōrēs suōs inpúgnat et idéntidem praedicat eōs omnēs esse arrogāntēs et dolósos.	<i>I have. As candidates usually do, he attacks his opponents and again and again claims that they are all arrogant and tricky.</i>
Márcia:	Rūrsus tēcum omnīnō cōsentiō. Cēnsétne sē solum esse locuplētē et cándidum et amántem pátriae?	<i>Again I fully agree with you. Does he think that he alone is trustworthy, candid, and patriotic?</i>
Titus:	Immō fácte est áliōs candidátos reprehéndere; sed quid iste habet quod dē suā ratiōne dicat?	<i>Well, it's easy to criticize other candidates; but what does he have to say about his own policy?</i>
Márcia:	Dē suā ratiōne interrogátus, ambíguus fit. Dicit quidquid in buccam vēnerit. Quandocúmque urgētur, fit indignábundus ac dicāx.	<i>When asked about his own policy, he becomes evasive. He says whatever comes into his head [lit: has come into his mouth]. Whenever he is hard pressed, he becomes indignant and sarcastic.</i>
Titus:	Ut vēra dicam, nesciō cui candidátō suffragātūrus sim.	<i>To tell you the truth, I don't know for which candidate I am going to vote.</i>
Márcia:	Ego ipsa exspectábō diē comitiálem ántequam ego cōnstítuam.	<i>I myself am going to wait till election day before I make up my mind.</i>
Titus:	Tē nōn culpō. Ego idem fáciam.	<i>I don't blame you. I'll do the same.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

ability facúlt·ās -átis <i>f</i>	arrogance arrogánti·a -ae <i>f</i>
absurd absúrd·us -a -um	arrogant árrog·āns -ántis
abusive malédic·us -a -um	articulate disért·us -a -um
accomplished ērudítus -a -um	astute astút·us -a -um
active ála·cer -cris -cre	athletic āthlétic·us -a -um
admirable admírābil·is -is -e	atrocious atr·ōx -ócis
admiration admírāti·ō -ónis <i>f</i>	attentive attént·us -a -um, ērēct·us -a -um
adult (<i>mature</i>) adúlt·us -a -um	attitude gest·us -ūs <i>m</i>
affable affābil·is -is -e	attractive amābil·is -is -e; (<i>in looks</i>) speciós·us -a -um
affected affectát·us -a -um	austere asp·er -era -erum, austér·us -a -um
affection am·or -óris <i>m</i>	awful dīr·us -a -um
affectionate am·āns -ántis	awkward inconcín·us -a -um
afraid formīdulós·us -a -um; I am afraid that vér·eor -ērī véritus sum nē; to be afraid métu·ō -ere -ī	backward (<i>mentally</i>) lent·us -a -um
aged annós·us -a -um	bad mal·us -a -um, ímprob·us -a -um
agreeable cómmod·us -a -um, grāt·us -a -um	banish (<i>worries, cares</i>) éxim·ō -ere exēmī exēptus
alert ā·cer -cris -cre	beautiful pulch·er -ra -rum, formós·us -a -um
alluring illecebrós·us -a -um	beauty pulchritúd·ō -inis <i>f</i>
alone sōl·us -a -um	becoming dec·ēns -éntis
ambition ambíti·ō -ónis <i>f</i>	big-hearted magnánim·us -a -um
ambitious ambitió·us -a -um	bitter acérb·us -a -um
anger īr·a -ae <i>f</i>	bitterly: to complain bitterly gráviter queror querī questus sum
angry (at) īrát·us -a -um (+ <i>dat</i>); to get angry with īrásc·or -árī (+ <i>dat</i>)	bitterness acérbit·ās -átis <i>f</i>
anguish ang·or -óris <i>m</i>	blind caec·us -a -um
annoyance molésti·a -ae <i>f</i>	blindness caécit·ās -átis <i>f</i>
annoyed: to be annoyed at moléstē ferō ferre tulī	blush ērubesc·ō -ere ērúbui
antagonistic īnfést·us -a -um	boastful iact·āns -ántis
anxiety (about) cūr·a -ae <i>f</i> (+ <i>gen</i>)	bold aud·āx -ácis
apathetic dēs·es -idis	boldness audāci·a -ae <i>f</i>
appetite cibī appeténti·a -ae <i>f</i> , cibī appetíti·ō -ónis <i>f</i>	bombastic bullát·us -a -um
arouse (<i>feelings</i>) exagitāre, suscitāre	boorish agrést·is -is -e

bother (*annoy*) exérc·eō -ēre -uī -itus

bothered exercitāt·us -a -um

brag about iactāre

brains: have brains corcill·um -ī *n*

háb·eō -ēre -uī

bright (*person*) argút·us -a -um

callous dūr·us -a -um

callousness dūrítī·a -ae *f*

calm plácid·us -a -um

calmly aequō ánimō

candid cándid·us -a -um, apért·us -a -um

care cūr·a -ae *f*

care diligéntī·a -ae *f*

careful dflig·ēns -éntis

careless incūríos·us -a -um

carelessness incúrí·a -ae *f*

cause (*stir up*) excitāre

caution caúti·ō -ónis *f*; **to exercise**

caution cáv·eō -ēre cāvī

cautious caut·us -a -um

character mōr·ēs -um *mpl*, índol·ēs -is *f*

charm amóenit·ās -átis *f*, dec·or -óris *m*,
gráti·a -ae *f*

charming amóen·us -a -um, lepid·us
-a -um

chaste cast·us -a -um

cheer up *tr* hilarāre, laetificāre; **cheer up!** habē ánimum bonum!

cheerful ála·cer -cris -cre, hílar·us -a -um

cheerfulness alácrit·ās -átis *f*,
hilaritúd·ō -inis *f*

choice exquisít·us -a -um

civilized hūmán·us -a -um

clever cállid·us -a -um

cleverness callídít·ās -átis *f*

clumsy incompósit·us -a -um,
inconcín·us -a -um

cold (*dispassionate*) frígíd·us -a -um

comfort *s* levāti·ō -ónis *f*

comfort *tr* allevāre

common sense: to have common sense
cor háb·eō -ēre -uī -itus

compassion clēméntī·a -ae *f*, hūmánit·ās
-átis *f*

compassionate clēm·ēns -éntis,
hūmán·us -a -um

concern cūr·a -ae *f*

concise brev·is -is -e

confide in cōnfíd·ō -ere (+ *dat*)

confidence fidúci·a -ae *f*, cōnfidéntī·a
-ae *f*

confident cōnfíd·ēns -éntis; **to be**
confident cōnfíd·ō -ere cōnfísus sum

consternation cōsternāti·ō -ónis *f*

contempt contépt·us -ūs *m*,
dēspicāti·ō -ónis *f*; **to feel contempt**
for contémn·ō -ere -psi; **to hold s.o.**
in contempt áliquem dēspicátum
háb·eō -ēre -uī -itus

contemptuous (of) dēspíci·ēns -éntis (+
gen)

content contént·us -a -um; **to your**
heart's content arbitrātū tuō

control coérc·eō -ēre -uī -itus, contín·eō
-ēre -uī

control (*restraint*) continéntī·a -ae *f*;
(*power*) potést·ās -átis *f*; **out of**
control effrēnāt·us -a -um

convenience: at your convenience tuō
cómmodō

cool (toward) frígíd·us -a -um (in +
acc); (*great*) (*coll*) mīránd·us -a
-um; **that's cool!** mīrándum est!

coolness (*indifference*) frīg·us -oris *n*

cope with pār esse (+ *dat*); **unable to**
cope with impār esse (+ *dat*)

courage fortitúd·ō -inis *f*

courageous animós·us -a -um, fort·is
-is -e

courteous côm·is -is -e

courtesy cômīt·ās -âtis *f*

crabbiness morôsīt·ās -âtis *f*

crabby morós·us -a -um

craving for appetíti·ō -ōnis *f* (+ *gen*)

crazy dēlír·us -a -um

credible crēdībil·is -is -e; **to be**
credible fidem háb·eō -ēre -uī -itus

criminal facinorós·us -a -um

cruel crūdél·is -is -e

cruelty crūdélit·ās -âtis *f*

cry fl·eō -ēre -évī; **to cry over** flére

culture hūmānit·ās -âtis *f*

cunning collubrín·us -a -um

curiosity cūríosit·ās -âtis *f*

cute bell·us -a -um, béllul·us -a -um

dainty dēlicát·us -a -um

daring aud·ēns -éntis, aud·āx -ācis

darling ánīmūl·us -ī *m*, ánīmūl·a -ae *f*

dear cār·us -a -um

deceitful fall·āx -ācis

decency decēnti·a -ae *f*

decent dec·ēns -éntis; **to do the decent**
thing frūgem fác·iō -ere fēcī

deep-seated ínsit·us -a -um

dejected dēmíss·us -a -um

delicate dēlicát·us -a -um

demented dēm·ēns -éntis

depressed abiéct·us -a -um; **to be**
depressed abiéctō ánimō sum esse
fuī

depression contrácti·ō -ōnis *f* ánimī

deranged (*mind*) commót·us -a -um

deserving (*of*) dign·us -a -um (+ *abl*)

desire cupídīt·ās -âtis *f*

despair dēspērāti·ō -ōnis *f*

despair dēspērāre

desperate dēspērát·us -a -um

desperation dēspērāti·ō -ōnis *f*

despicable dēspicát·us -a -um

despise dēspíc·iō -ere dēspéxī dēspéctus

destructive exitiós·us -a -um

develop (*character, mind*) cōnfirmāre

dignified grav·is -is -e

dignity grávit·ās -âtis *f*, dígnit·ās -âtis *f*

diligence díligēnti·a -ae *f*

diligent dílig·ēns -éntis

disappoint frustr·or -árī -átus sum

disappointment dēstitúti·ō -ōnis *f*

disgrace dēdec·us -oris *n*, ignōmíni·a
-ae *f*; **to be a disgrace to** dēdecorī
esse (+ *dat*)

disgraceful dēdecór·us -a -um,
ignōminiós·us -a -um

dishonorable dēdecór·us -a -um

dismay cōnsternāti·ō -ōnis *f*

disposition afféct·us -ūs *m* (ánimī)

distinguished illústr·is -is -e

distress dol·or -óris *m*

distrust (*of*) diffídēnti·a -ae *f* (+ *gen*)

distrust diffíd·ō -ere diffísus sum (*semi-*
deponent) (+ *gen*)

downcast: to be downcast iác·eō -ēre
-uī

downhearted dēmíss·us -a -um; **to be**
downhearted ánimō percúlsō esse

dread formídāre

dreadful dīr·us -a -um

drunk ébri·us -a -um

drunkenness ēbríet·ās -âtis *f*; **habitual**
drunkenness ēbríosīt·ās -âtis *f*

dull héb·es -etis

eager (for) cupid·us -a -um (+ *gen*)

eagerly cupiēter

eagerness cupidit·ās -ātis *f*

easy-going fácil·is -is -e *f*

educated ērudīt·us -a -um

effeminate effēmināt·us -a -um

efficiency efficiēti·a -ae *f*

efficient effici·ēns -ētis

efficiently efficiēter

elegance elegāti·a -ae *f*

elegant eleg·āns -āntis

eloquence eloquēti·a -ae *f*

eloquent eloqu·ēns -ētis

emotion animī mōt·us -ūs *m*; **to express**

emotions animī mōtūs exprīm·ō -ere
exprēssī exprēssus

encourage hort·or -ārī -ātus sum

encouragement hortāt·us -ūs *m*

energetic nāv·us -a -um, ímpig·er -ra
-rum

envious ínvīd·us -a -um; **to be envious**
of invíd·eō -ēre invídī (+ *acc or dat*)

envy invídi·a -ae *f*

esteem dīlig·ō -ere dīlēcī dīlēcus

estranged: to become estranged from
s.o. áliquē a sē aliēnāre

evasive ambígu·us -a -um

exact accūrāt·us -a -um, exáct·us -a -um

excessive (in) immódic·us -a -um (+
gen or abl)

excite excitāre

excited commót·us -a -um

excitement animī commóti·ō -ónis *f*; **to**
feel excitement excit·or -ārī
excitātus sum

experience experiēti·a -ae *f*,
experímēt·um -ī *n*, ūs·us -ūs *m*

experienced (in) perít·us -a -um (+ *gen*
or abl)

expert in gnār·us -a -um (+ *gen*)

expressive (*eyes*) argút·us -a -um

fair, fair-minded aequ·us -a -um

fairness aéquit·ās -ātis *f*

faith fid·ēs -eī *f*; **in bad faith** dē fidē
malā; **in good faith** (ex) bonā fidē

faithful fidél·is -is -e

fall (desperately) in love with (pérditē)
amāre coep·ī -ísse

false fals·us -a -um

fantastic mīrífic·us -a -um

faultless ēmendāt·us -a -um

favor benefíci·um -ī *n*; **to accept and**
return a favor beneficium accípere
et réddere

fear métu·ō -ere -ī

fear met·us -ūs *m*

fearless impávid·us -a -um

feeble imbēcíll·us -a -um

feebleness imbēcíllit·ās -ātis *f*

feel (*hunger, pain, cold, etc.*) sént·iō
-tíre -sī -sus; **I don't feel well** mīhi
nōn bene hábeō; **to feel annoyed**
grav·or -ārī -ātus sum; **to feel down**
and out ínfráctum ánimum ger·ō
-ere gessī; **to feel good** sē bene
háb·eō -ēre -uī; **to feel happy**
gaúd·eō -ēre gāvísus sum; **to feel**
pain dolóre affícior áffici afféctus
sum; **to feel sad** maest·us -a -um
esse

feeling sēns·us -ūs *m*, afféct·us -ūs *m*

fidelity fidélit·ās -ātis *f*

fierce fer·ōx -ócis

firm firm·us -a -um

flame (*sweetheart*) flamm·a -ae *f*

flattering bland·us -a -um

flattery blandíti·a -ae *f*

fluent prǫflu·ēns -éntis

fond of cúpid·us -a -um (+ *gen*); **to be fond of** amāre

fondness am·or -ōris *m*

foolhardy temerári·us -a -um

foolish dēsípi·ēns -éntis

foolishly: to act foolishly inépt·iō -íre

foolishness dēsipiénti·a -ae *f*

fortunate fortunát·us -a -um

frame: of mind ánim·us -ī *m*; **to be in a good frame of mind** bonō ánimō esse

frank apért·us -a -um

friendly amíc·us -a -um; **in a friendly way** amícē

friendship amíciti·a -ae *f*

frighten térr·eō -ére -uī -itus

frivolous frívol·us -a -um

frustrate frūstr·or -árī -átus sum

frustration frūstráti·ō -ónis *f*

funny iocós·us -a -um

generosity liberálit·ās -átis *f*

generous liberál·is -is -e

gentle clēm·ēns -éntis, mīt·is -is -e

get along with concórditer cóngru·ō -ere -uī cum (+ *abl*)

get over (*grief, anger, etc.*) superáre

glad laet·us -a -um; **to be glad** laet·or -árī -átus sum

gloat over exsultáre (+ *abl*)

gloom maestíti·a -ae *f*

gloomy, glum maest·us -a -um

glutton héllu·ō -ónis *m*; **to be a glutton** héllu·or -árī

gluttonous ed·āx -ácis

gluttony edácit·ās -átis *f*

good (*also morally*) bon·us -a -um

good-natured fácil·is -is -e

goodness (*integrity, good behavior*)
bónit·ās -átis *f*

goodwill benevolénti·a -ae *f*

gossip (*person*) fāmigerát·or -ōris *m*,
fāmigerátr·īx -ícis *f*

grave grav·is -is -e

greed avāríti·a -ae *f*

greedy avárus -a -um; **greedy for**
avárus (+ *gen*)

gregarious (*sociable*) congregábil·is -is -e

grief maer·or -ōris *m*; **to feel grief**
condolésc·ō -ere condólui

groan gem·ō -ere -uī -itus

groan gémit·us -ūs *m*

gullible crédul·us -a -um

habit cōnsuetúd·ō -inis *f*

handsome formós·us -a -um

happiness beātítúd·ō -inis *f*

happy beát·us -a -um, laet·us -a -um

hard to please difficil·is -is -e

hard-working labōriós·us -a -um

harsh (*toward*) dūr·us -a -um (*in + acc*)

harshness dūríti·a -ae *f*

hate *tr* ōdī ōdísse (*defective verb*)

hate *s* ōdi·um -ī *n*

hatred (*of, toward*) ōdi·um -ī *n* (*in + acc*)

haughty ēlát·us -a -um

heart: from the heart ex ánimō; **heart and soul** tōtō pēctore

heartache cūr·a -ae *f*, cordóli·um -ī *n*

helpless in·ops -opis

helplessness inópi·a -ae *f*

holiness sáncit·ās -átis *f*

holy sáncit·us -a -um

homely ínspeciós·us -a -um

homesick: to be homesick ex dēsīdēriō
labōrāre; **I am homesick for** mē
dēsīdērium tenet (+ *gen*)

honest prob·us -a -um; (*speaking the truth*) vēr·āx -ācis

honor hon·or -ōris *m*

honor honōrāre

honorable honōrābil·is -is -e, honést·us
-a -um

honorably honéstē

hope spēs, spēi *f*

hope spērāre; **lose hope** dēspērāre

hopeless dēspērāt·us -a -um

horrible horrībil·is -is -e

hot-tempered irācūnd·us -a -um

humane hūmān·us -a -um

humor fēstīvit·ās -ātis *f*

humorous fēstīv·us -a -um

humorously fēstīvē

hunger fam·ēs -is *f*

hypocrite simulāt·or -ōris *m*,
simulātr·ix -īcis *f*

hypocritical coāct·us -a -um

idea cognīti·ō -ōnis *f*

ideal exémpl·ar -āris *n*

ignorance īnsciēti·a -ae *f*

ignorant īnscīt·us -a -um

ill-mannered male mōrāt·us -a -um

illogical absūrd·us -a -um

immature immātūr·us -a -um

immaturity immātūrīt·ās -ātis *f*

immoderate immōdic·us -a -um

immodest impudīc·us -a -um

impartial aequ·us -a -um

impatient: to be impatient with inīquō
ānimō ferō ferre tulī

impatiently inīquō ānimō

impetuous fērvīd·us -a -um

impolite inurbān·us -a -um

important magn·us -a -um

impress commōv·eō -ēre commōvī
commōtus

improper indec·ēns -éntis

improve ēmendāre **|| intr** mēl·ior -ior
-ius fiō fierī factus sum; (*in studies*)
prōfic·iō -ere prōfēcī

imprudent imprūd·ēns -éntis

impulse ānimī impet·us -ūs *m*

inappropriate inépt·us -a -um

indecent indec·ēns -éntis

indecisive ambígu·us -a -um

indifference frīg·us -oris *n*; **indifferent**
(*towards*) nēgleg·ēns -éntis (*in* +
acc)

indignant indignābūd·us -a -um

inept inépt·us -a -um

inexperienced (in) inexpért·us -a -um
(*ab* + *abl* or *in* + *acc* or *adversus* +
acc)

infamous infām·is -is -e

infatuated: to be infatuated with s.o.
āliquem efflīctim amāre

influence grāti·a -ae *f*

influential grātiōs·us -a -um

ingenious artificīōs·us -a -um

injustice iniūstīti·a -ae *f*

innocence innocēti·a -ae *f*

innocent (of) īnnoc·ēns -éntis (+ *gen*)

inquisitive cūrīōs·us -a -um

insane īnsān·us -a -um

insanity īnsānit·ās -ātis *f*

insensitive dūr·us -a -um

insensitivity dūrīti·a -ae *f*

insincere īnsincēr·us -a -um

integrity honést·ās -ātis *f*

intellect intellēct·us -ūs <i>m</i>	loneliness sōlitūd·ō -inis <i>f</i>
intelligence intellegēnti·a -ae <i>f</i>	lonely sōlitāri·us -a -um; to be lonely for dēsīderāre
intelligent intēlleg·ēns -éntis	long for dēsīderāre
intense (<i>emotions</i>) grand·is -is -e	longing for dēsīdēri·um -ī <i>n</i> (+ <i>gen</i>)
interesting speciōs·us -a -um	look down on (<i>despise</i>) despectāre
irresponsible inofficiōs·us -a -um	loudmouth clāmāt·or -ōris <i>m</i> , clāmātr·īx -īcis <i>f</i>
irritable irācūnd·us -a -um	lovable amābil·is -is -e
itching, to be itching to gést·iō -īre (+ <i>inf</i>)	love amāre
jealous ínvid·us -a -um; to be jealous of invíd·eō -ēre invídī (+ <i>acc</i> or <i>dat</i>)	love am·or -ōris <i>m</i>
jealousy invídi·a -ae <i>f</i>	loving am·āns -ántis
jerk (<i>coll</i>) bucc·ō -ōnis <i>m</i>	low-born ignóbil·is -is -e
joy gaúdi·um -ī <i>n</i> ; to feel joy gaúd·eō -ēre gāvísus sum	loyal fidél·is -is -e, fīd·us -a -um; to remain loyal in fidē mán·eō -ēre mānsī
jump for joy exsultāre	loyalty fidēlit·ās átis <i>f</i>
just iūst·us -a -um	luck fortún·a -ae <i>f</i>
justice iūstítī·a -ae <i>f</i>	lucky fortunāt·us -a -um
kind benévól·us -a -um; to be kind toward benévolus esse ergā (+ <i>acc</i>)	lust cupídít·ās -átis <i>f</i> , libíd·ō -inis <i>f</i>
kind: what kind of person is ... ? quī homō est ... ?	lying falsíloqu·us -a -um
kind-hearted benévól·us -a -um, benígn·us -a -um	meticulous accūrāt·us -a -um
kindness benevoléntia -ae <i>f</i> ; to show kindness to s.o. benevoléntiam álicui praest·ō -āre praéstítī	mild clēm·ēns -éntis
knowledge cognítī·ō -ōnis <i>f</i> , sciénti·a -ae <i>f</i>	mind ánim·us -ī <i>m</i> ; I have made up my mind dēstinátum mihi est; of sound mind comp·os -otis mentis; to be in one's right mind apud sē esse
laziness ignávi·a -ae <i>f</i>	misery miséri·a -ae <i>f</i>
lazy ignáv·us -a -um	miserable mis·er -era -erum
learned doct·us -a -um, ērudít·us -a -um	miss dēsīderāre
lecherous sal·āx -ācis, libīdinós·us -a -um	mistake err·or -ōris <i>m</i> ; to make a mistake errāre
lie fals·um -ī <i>n</i>	mistaken fals·us -a -um
listless dēs·es -idis	model exémpl·ar -áris <i>n</i>
liveliness alácrit·ās -átis <i>f</i>	modest modést·us -a -um
lively ála·cer -cris -cre	modesty modésti·a -ae <i>f</i>

mood afféct·us -ūs *m* ánimī, ánim·us -ī
m; **to get over one's mood** ánimum
 vinc·ō -ere -vīcī, superáre

motivation for ráti·ō -ónis *f* (+ *gen*)

motive caus·a -ae *f*

mourn *tr* & *intr* lúg·eō -ére lūxī

mourning maer·or -óris *m*

narrow-minded angúst·us -a -um

narrow-mindedness angústī·ae -árum
fpl

natural (*unaffected*) incompósit·us -a
 -um

nature nātúr·a -ae *f*

needy in·ops -opis

negligence negligéntī·a -ae *f*, incúri·a
 -ae *f*

negligent néglig·ēns -éntis

nervous intént·us -a -um, trépid·us -a
 -um

nervousness trepidáti·ō -ónis *f*, ánim·us
 -ī *m* trépidus

nice (*courteous*) concínn·us -a -um;
 (*pleasant*) lépid·us -a -um; (*cute*)
 bell·us -a -um

noble (*sentiments*) grand·is -is -e

object lesson documént·um -ī *n*

obliging cómod·us -a -um

obscurity ignóbílīt·ās -átis *f*

over-confident cōnfíd·ēns -éntis

outspoken libéri·or -óris

painstaking operós·us -a -um

passion cupídīt·ās -átis *f*; (*lust*) libíd·ō
 -inis *f*

passionate ārd·ēns -éntis

passionately efflíctim

pathetic elāmentābil·is -is -e

patient páti·ēns -éntis

patiently aequō ánimō

patriotic am·āns -ántis pátriae

persistence assidúit·ās -átis *f*

persistent assídu·us -a -um

personality índol·ēs -is *f*

pessimistic infél·īx -ícis

phoney affectát·us -a -um

pitiful flébil·is -is -e

pity misericórdi·a -ae *f*; **to feel pity for**
 commiserēsc·ō -ere (+ *gen*)

pity misér·eō -ére -uī (+ *gen*)

pleasant iúcúnd·us -a -um

pleasantness iúcúndit·ās -átis *f*

pleasing grāt·us -a -um

polite to cōm·is -is -e (+ *dat* or *ergā* or
in + *acc*)

politeness cōmit·ās -átis *f*

pompous glōriós·us -a -um

poor (*pitiful*) mis·er -era -erum

popular grātiós·us -a -um; **to be**
popular with s.o. grātiósus esse
 apud áliquem

popularity grāti·a -ae *f*; **to enjoy**
popularity among grátiam háb·eō
 -ére -uī -itus apud (+ *acc*)

practice (*patience, etc.*) exérc·eō -ére
 -uī

precise exáct·us -a -um

prestige auctórit·ās -átis *f*

presumptuous cōnfíd·ēns -éntis

pretty bell·us -a -um, béllul·us -a -um

pride glóri·a -ae *f*; **source of pride**
 glóri·a -ae *f*; **to take pride in**
 glóri·or -ári dē or in (+ *abl*)

proper dec·ēns -éntis, decór·us -a -um

proud glōriós·us -a -um; **to be proud of**
 glóri·or -ári (+ *acc* or *dē* or *in* + *abl*)

quiet taciturn·us -a -um

rage fur·or -óris *m*; **to fly into a rage**
 írāsc·or -ári

refined hūmān·us -a -um

reform ēmendāre

regret paenitēti·a -ae *f*

regret: I regret mē paénitet (+ *gen*)

relentless dīr·us -a -um

relief: to be a relief levāméntō esse

rely on cōnfīd·ō -ere cōnfīsus sum (+ *dat*); **relying on** frēt·us -a -um (+ *dat* or *abl*)

remember commemorāre

renown fām·a -ae *f*

repress (*emotions*) cohīb·eō -ēre -uī -itus

repression continēti·a -ae *f*

reputation fām·a -ae *f*; **bad reputation** infāmi·a -ae *f*; **good reputation** honést·ās -ātis *f*

resentful irācúnd·us -a -um

resentment irācúndi·a -ae *f*

resolute cōfirmāt·us -a -um

respect honōrāre, observāre

respectability honést·ās -ātis *f*

respectable honést·us -a -um

respected honōrāt·us -a -um

respectful obsérv·āns -āntis

respectfully honōríficē

responsibility for cūr·a -ae *f* (+ *gen*); **it is my responsibility to** ... est mihi cūrae (+ *inf*)

restless inquiēt·us -a -um

rich dīv·es -itis

riches dīvíti·ae -ārum *fpl*

rid: get rid of (*worries*) dīlu·ō -ere -ī; (*persons*) āmól·ior -īrī āmólītus sum

ridiculous rīdícul·us -a -um

role model exémpl·ar -āris *n*

rough asp·er -era -erum

rude (*character*) asp·er -era -erum

sad trist·is -is -e, maest·us -a -um

sadness tristíti·a -ae *f*

sarcasm dicācit·ās -ātis *f*

sarcastic dicācul·us -a -um, dic·āx -ācis

scandalous flāgitiōs·us -a -um

scholarly ērudīt·us -a -um

scorn contēpti·ō -ōnis *f*

seductive illecebrōs·us -a -um

self-confidence fidūci·a -ae *f*

self-confident cōnfīd·ēns -éntis; **to be self-confident** sibi cōnfīd·ō -ere cōnfīsus sum

self-control abstinēti·a -ae *f*

self-controlled comp·os -otis suī

self-respect dīgnit·ās -ātis *f*

sense of duty, of responsibility pīet·ās -ātis *f*

sensible: to be sensible sáp·iō -ere

serious grav·is -is -e

seriousness grávit·ās -ātis *f*

shake up commóv·eō -ēre commóvī commótus

shabby sórdid·us -a -um

shame ignōmíni·a -ae *f*

shameful ignōminiōs·us -a -um

shameless ímprob·us -a -um

shifty móbil·is -is -e; **shifty like the wind** ventós·us -a -um

show off sē iactāre

shrewd astút·us -a -um

shy tímīd·us -a -um

sigh gémit·us -ūs *m*

sigh *intr* gem·ō -ere -uī -itum; **to sigh over** gémere

silliness dēlīrātī·ō -ōnis *f*, inépti·a -ae *f*

silly dēsípi·ēns -éntis, inépt·us -a -um; **to be silly** dēsíp·iō -ere

sincere sincēr·us -a -um

skill artifici·um -ī <i>n</i>	talent artifici·um -ī <i>n</i> , ingéni·um -ī <i>n</i>
skilled cállid·us -a -um	talented ingeniós·us -a -um
skillful artificiós·us -a -um	talkative loqu·āx -ācis
skillfulness callídít·ās -átis <i>f</i>	tall alt·us -a -um, prócér·us -a -um
slow (<i>physically, mentally</i>) lent·us -a -um	task op·us -eris <i>n</i> , cūr·a -ae <i>f</i>
sluggish heb·es -etis; to be sluggish héb·eō -ére	taste: lack of good taste dēfórmit·ās -átis <i>f</i>
sly astút·us -a -um	tense intént·us -a -um
small-mindedness humflit·ās -átis <i>f</i>	tension conténti·ō -ónis <i>f</i>
smart cállid·us -a -um; (<i>impertinent</i>) ínsol·ēns -éntis	terrify terrificáre
smile subríd·eō -ére subrísi	terror terr·or -óris <i>m</i>
smooth-talking blandíloqu·us -a -um	thrifty frūgál·is -is -e, frūgī (<i>indecl</i>)
smug cōnfíd·ēns -éntis	tireless assídu·us -a -um
smugness cōnfidénti·a -ae <i>f</i>	touchy (<i>irritable</i>) stomachós·us -a -um
snobbish fastídíós·us -a -um	tough dūr·us -a -um
sober sóbri·us -a -um	tremble trem·ō -ere -uī; to tremble all over cóntrem·ō -ere -uī
sociable sociábil·is -is -e	tricky dolós·us -a -um
sorry: I feel sorry for the others mē míseret aliórum	trouble exérc·eō -ére -uī -itus
stability firmit·ās -átis <i>f</i>	troubled exercitát·us -a -um
stable firm·us -a -um	trust fid·ō -ere físus sum (+ <i>dat or abl</i>)
state of mind affectáti·ō -ónis <i>f</i> ánimí	trust fid·ēs -eī <i>f</i>
stern asp·er -era -erum	trusting cōnfíd·ēns -éntis
stingy sórdid·us -a -um	trustworthiness fidúci·a -ae <i>f</i>
strict sevér·us -a -um; (<i>person in authority</i>) acérb·us -a -um	trustworthy lócupl·ēs -étis
stubborn obstinát·us -a -um	trusty firm·us -a -um
surly diffícil·is -is -e	truthful vērídíc·us -a -um
suspicion suspíci·ō -ónis <i>f</i> ; to come under suspicion in suspiciónem vén·iō -íre vēnī	trying (<i>tough</i>) exercitát·us -a -um
suspicious súspic·āx -ācis; (<i>suspected</i>) suspéct·us -a -um	two-faced dup·lex -icis, bílínqu·is -is -e
sweet dulc·is -is -e	ugliness dēfórmit·ās -átis <i>f</i>
sympathy: to show sympathy for commiser·or -ári -átus sum	ugly dēfórm·is -is -e; turp·is -is -e
	unattractive invenúst·us -a -um
	uncontrolled effrēnát·us -a -um
	uncouth hórrid·us -a -um
	uneducated inērudít·us -a -um
	unfair iníqu·us -a -um

unfairly íníquē

unfaithful infidél·is -is -e

unfriendly inimíc·us -a -um

unhappiness infélicít·ās -átis *f*

unhappy infél·ix -ícis

unpleasant iniücúnd·us -a -um

unrestrained effrēnát·us -a -um,
effús·us -a -um

unstable instábil·is -is -e

unsteady (*tottering*) cādúc·us -a -um

untrustworthy infíd·us -a -um

upset *adj* commót·us -a -um

upset *tr* commóv·eō -ére commóvī
commótus

urge ánimī ímpet·us -ūs *m*

vigorous álac·er -ris -re

violence violénti·a -ae *f*

violent violént·us -a -um

weak inválid·us -a -um

welcome grāt·us -a -um

well-born honést·us -a -um

well-mannered bene mōrát·us -a -um

well-off bene aerátus -a -um

wicked ímprob·us -a -um

wickedness impróbit·ās -átis *f*

wild efferát·us -a -um

wily dolós·us -a -um, súbdol·us -a -um

wonderful admīrábil·is -is -e

word: to break one's word fidem

fall·ō -ere feféllī; **to give one's word**

fidem dō dare dedī datus; **to keep**

one's word fidem servāre

word of honor fid·ēs -eī *f*

worry cūr·a -ae *f*, sollicitúd·ō -inis *f*

worry *tr* sollicitāre || *intr* sollícit·or -árī
-átus sum

worthless inán·is -is -e

worthlessness inánit·ās -átis *f*

worthy (of) dign·us -a -um (+ *abl*)

yearn for dēsīderāre

yearning (for) dēsīderāti·ō -ónis *f* (+
gen)

Chapter XVIII: Trades and Professions

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I Donna gets a new hairdo.

Tōnstrīx	Salvē, Donna. Quid agis?	<i>Hairdresser: Hello, Donna. How are you?</i>
Donna	Váleō. Velim tōnsúrā, quaesō.	<i>Donna: I'm fine. I'd like a haircut, please.</i>
Tōnstrīx	Cōnsíde, amábō tē, in hāc sellā tōnsóriā.	<i>Sit down in this chair, please.</i>
Donna	Grātiās! Nōlī nimis dētondére comam.	<i>Thank you. Don't cut my hair too short.</i>
Tōnstrīx	At hódīē puéllae gerunt comam curtam.	<i>But nowadays girls are wearing their hair short.</i>
Donna	Id sciō, sed comam curtam nōn cūrō.	<i>I know, but I don't care for short hair.</i>
Tōnstrīx	Quómodo ergō cupis mē tondére comam?	<i>How then do you want me to cut your hair?</i>
Donna	Frange comam in gradūs.	<i>Cut my hair in layers.</i>
Tōnstrīx	Vísne ántiās?	<i>Do you want bangs?</i>
Donna	Nōlō. Repécte comam.	<i>No. Comb my hair back.</i>
Tōnstrīx	Vísne étiam cómere comam novíssimō modō?	<i>Do you want me to set your hair in the latest style?</i>
Donna	Ita. Utrum prius lautúra es comam?	<i>Yes. Are you going to wash my hair first?</i>
Tōnstrīx	Scílicet ego semper comam lavō ántequam eam cōmō.	<i>Of course, I always wash the hair before I set it.</i>
Donna	Sī tū vacās, nōn modo crīspā sed étiam tinge comam.	<i>If you have time, don't only curl my hair but also color it.</i>

Tōnstrīx	Vacō. Mihi crēde, amābis hunc novum cōmptum.	<i>I have time. Believe me, you will love this new hairdo.</i>
-----------------	--	--

LEVEL II Choosing a career.

Pater	Vīsne, mī fili, esse aliquándō ratiōcinātor?	<i>Father: Son, would you like to be an accountant someday?</i>
Fīlius	Nullō modō! Meā sententiā, mathēmática est doctrīna difficīllima. Porro, taedet mē tabulārum accēpti et expēnsi.	<i>Son: No way! Math, I think, is a very difficult subject. Besides, accounting books bore me.</i>
Pater	Fortāsse velis medicīnam exercēre. Medicī, ut scīs, magnā auctōritāte ūtūntur.	<i>Maybe you'd want to practice medicine. Doctors, as you know, enjoy a lot of prestige.</i>
Fīlius	At medicī arcessūntur omnibus hōris diēi et noctis. Numquam tempus subsicīvum habent.	<i>But doctors are on call at all hours of the day and night. They never have time off.</i>
Pater	Velīsne fierī causídicus? Rē vērā, causídici ingēntem pecūniam faciunt.	<i>Would you like to become a lawyer? After all, lawyers make big money.</i>
Fīlius	Mihi nōn est ista calliditās quae est causidicōrum, sī scīs quid mihi velim.	<i>I don't have that shrewdness that is typical of lawyers, if you know what I mean.</i>
Pater	Velīsne rempūblicam inīre et aliquándō senātor fierī?	<i>Would you like to enter politics and eventually become a senator?</i>
Fīlius	Senātōrēs quidem multum valent, sed saepe sibi magis quam pópulō cōnsulunt.	<i>Senators do have a lot of clout, but often they look after themselves rather than the people.</i>
Pater	Fortāsse mālīs exercēre ūnum ex artificiīs.	<i>Perhaps you would prefer to practice one of the trades.</i>
Fīlius	Nōlō fierī neque tōnsor neque pistor neque lānius neque sūtor neque argentārius neque. . . .	<i>I don't want to become a barber or a baker or a butcher or a shoe-maker or a banker or a</i>

Pater	At ūnusquísque nostrum debet vīctum quaerītāre quōmodocúmque! Quid dē ártibus ēlegantióribus?	<i>But each and every one of us must earn a living some way or other. What about the fine arts?</i>
Fīlius	Pictōrēs et sculptōrēs et scrīptōrēs habent prōpriū ingénium quod mihi omnīnō dēest.	<i>Painters and sculptors and writers have a special talent which I lack completely.</i>
Pater	Quod tibi plānē dēest, mī fili, nōn est ingénium sed ambítiō!	<i>Son, what you obviously lack is not ability but ambition!</i>

LEVEL III **A man plans to build a home.**

Dóminus	In ánimō hábeō domum novam aedificāre.	Owner: <i>I plan to build a new home.</i>
Condúctor	Quō in locō?	Contractor: <i>Where?</i>
Dóminus	In Viā Novā in Monte Aventínō.	<i>On New Street on the Aventine Hill.</i>
Condúctor	Quandō opus mihi incipiéndum est?	<i>When do I have to begin the work?</i>
Dóminus	Scīlicet quam primum. Quem architēctum commēdās?	<i>Of course, as soon as possible. Whom do you recommend as architect?</i>
Condúctor	Vitrúvius potest architēctāre tibi domum pulchram.	<i>Vitruvius can design you a beautiful home.</i>
Dóminus	Ego eum prōtinus arcéssam.	<i>I'll call him right away.</i>
Condúctor	Et ego prōtinus condúcam caementáriōs, láterum strūctōrēs, tēctōrēs, fabrōs tignáriōs atque magnum gregem operāriōrum.	<i>And I will immediately hire (some) workers in concrete, bricklayers, plasterers, carpenters and a large crew of laborers.</i>
Dóminus	Quandō póterunt caementárii fundāmētum iácere?	<i>When can the concrete workers pour the foundation?</i>
Condúctor	Tríduō aut quadríduō summum.	<i>Within three days or four at most.</i>
Dóminus	Quid deínde?	<i>What then?</i>
Condúctor	Post iactum fundāmētum, strūctōrēs láterēs strúere póterunt.	<i>After the foundation has been laid, the bricklayers will be able to lay the bricks.</i>

Dóminus	Quid fit deinde?	<i>And what happens then?</i>
Condúctor	Tēctōrēs tēctōrium parietibus indūcent.	<i>The plasterers will plaster the walls.</i>
Dóminus	Nōlī oblīvīscī, iubē pictōrēs parietēs átrii tabliníque píngere.	<i>Don't forget, have the painters paint the walls of the atrium and the study.</i>
Condúctor	Vísne étiam pictúrās ūdō tēctóriō?	<i>Do you also want frescoes?</i>
Dóminus	Ita. Volō pictúrās Mūsárum et nymphárum.	<i>Yes. I want pictures of the Muses and nymphs.</i>
Condúctor	Ubi vīs opus tessellátum in pavíméntis?	<i>Where do you want mosaics on the floor?</i>
Dóminus	In átrio et triclíniō et tablinō et ómnibus cubículis.	<i>In the atrium, the dining room, the study, and all the bedrooms.</i>
Condúctor	Cōnficiam tōtam domum intrā sex mēnsēs.	<i>I shall finish the entire home within six months.</i>
Dóminus	Bene sánē. Cūrábō ut contráctus cōnscrībátur.	<i>Very good. I shall see to it that the contract is drawn up.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

accountant ratiōcinát·or -óris *m* (·ríx
-rícis *f*), ratiōnári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

account ráti·ō -ónis *f*; **the account
balances** rátiō cōnstat

account books tábul·ae -árum *fpl*
(accépti et expénsi)

accounting cōnfécti·ō -ónis *f*
tabulárum

audit accounts ratiōnēs dispún·gō
-gere -xī -ctus

balance accounts ratiōnēs cónferō
cōnférre cōntulī collátus

keep books tábulās cōnfíc·iō -ere
cōnfécī cōnféctus

acrobat fūnámbul·us -ī *m*

actor hístri·ō -ónis *m*, áct·or -óris *m*

act *tr* & *intr* ag·ō -ere ēgī áctus

actress scēnic·a -ae *f*, áct·rix -ícis *f*

go on the stage in scaenam prōdeō
prōdīre prōdiī

movie fábul·a -ae *f* cīnēmatogrāfica

play fábul·a -ae *f*

play the lead role primās partēs
ag·ō -ere ēgī áctus

play the role of a general
imperátōrem agere

scenery scēn·a -ae *f*

stage scēn·a -ae *f*, proscēni·um -ī *n*

ambassador legát·us -ī *m*

announcer annūntiát·or -óris *m*,
annūntiát·rix -ícis *f*

architect architēct·us -ī *m*

architecture architēctúr·a -ae *f*

design (*buildings*) architectāre

artist ártif·ex -icis *mf*

athlete áthlēt·a -ae *mf*

athletics áthlētīc·a -ae *f*

baker pīst·or -ōris *m*, pīstr·īx -ícis *f* (*see also Chapter VIII*)

bake cóqu·ō -ere coxī coctus

bakery pīstrīn·a -ae *f*

banker argentāri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

account ráti·ō -ōnis *f*

bank argentāri·a -ae *f*, tabérn·a -ae *f*
argentária

bank book libéll·us -ī *m*
comparsórium, argentariae libéllus

banking business argentāri·a -ae *f*;
to run a (big) banking business
argentāriam (máximam) fác·iō -ere
fēcī factus

bill (*paper money*) numm·us -ī *m*
chartáreus; **ten-dollar bill** nummus
chartáreus decem dollarórum

borrow money at interest pecúniam
faénorī accíp·iō -ere accēpī accēptus

check sýngraph·a -ae *f*, mandát·um
-ī *n* nummárium; **to cash a check**
arcáriō sýngrapham praéb·eō -ēre -uī
solvéndam; **to write a check**
sýngrapham perscrīb·ō -ere
perscrīpsī

compound interest anatócism·us
-ī *m*

deposit money in the bank
pecúniam in argentáriā depón·ō -ere
depósuī depósitus

interest faen·us -oris *n*; **at interest**
faénorī *or* faénore

lend money at interest pecúniam
faénorī dō dare dedī datus

manage a bank argentāriam
móder·or -āri moderátus sum

passbook argentariae libéll·us -ī *m*

principal cap·ut -itis *n*

simple interest perpétuum faen·us
-oris *n*

barber tōns·or -ōris *m*

barber chair sell·a -ae *f* tōnsória

barber shop tōnstrīn·a -ae *f*

clippers mächínul·a -ae *f* capíllis
resecándīs

comb s pect·en -inis *m*

comb tr pect·ō -ere pexī pexus

cut (*hair*) tóndeō tondére totóndī
tónsus

hair (*of the head*) capíll·us -ī *m*, (*or with no distinction*) capíll·ī -órum
mpl, com·a -ae *f*; (*in locks or dressed*) crīn·is -is *m*

hairdo cōmpt·us -ūs *m*

haircut tōnsúr·a -ae *f*

hair style tōns·us -ūs *m*

razor novácul·a -ae *f*

scissors forficul·ae -árum *fpl*

shave tr rād·ō -ere rāsī rāsus;
(*regularly*) rāsítāre; **to shave every day**
fáciem cōtīdiē rāsítāre

shave s rāsúr·a -ae *f*

bartender ministrát·or -ōris *m*,
ministrát·r·īx -ícis *f*

serve (*drinks, food*) to ministrāre
(+ *dat*)

beautician ōrnátr·īx -ícis *f* (*see*
hairdresser)

bookkeeper actuári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
(*see accountant*)

bookseller bibliopól·a -ae *m*

bookcase bibliothéc·a -ae *f*

book li·ber -brī *m*

bookshelf plúte·us -ī *m*

bookstore librári·a -ae *f*

boxer pugil, púgil·is *m* (*see Chapter V*)

bricklayer látērum struct·or -ōris *m* (*see mason*)

brick *s* lat·er -eris *m* (coctūlis = baked)

brick *adj* laterīci·us -a -um

lay bricks látērēs stru·ō -ere struxī structus

builder strūct·or -ōris *m*, aedificāt·or -ōris *m*

build éxstru·ō -ere exstrúxī exstrūctus, aedificāre

building aedifici·um -ī *n*

erect, put up exstruere

businessman negōtiāt·or -ōris *m*

a business negōti·um -ī *n*

be engaged in business in negōtiō vers·or -ārī -ātus sum

business *adj* negōtiāl·is -is -e

business establishment (*with its premises*) negōtiāti·ō -ōnis *f*

business letter epístul·a -ae *f* negōtiālis

businesswoman negōtiātr·īx -īcis *f*

close a business deal negōtium (*or rem*) cōnfic·iō -ere cōnfēcī cōnfēctus

do (carry on) business negōti·or -ārī -ātus sum

run a business negōtium exérc·eō -ēre -uī -itus

transact business with s.o. negōtium cum áliquo tránsig·ō -ere -égī -āctus

butcher lání·us -ī *m* (*see Chapter VIII*)

butcher shop lanién·a -ae *f*

carpenter fá·ber -brī *m* tignārius

chisel *s* scalpr·um -ī *n*

chisel *tr* scalprō caed·ō -ere cecídī caesus

drill *s* térebr·a -ae *f*

drill *tr* terebrāre

hammer málle·us -ī *m*

nail *s* clāv·us -ī *m*

nail *tr* (**to**) clāvis cōnfīg·ō -ere cōnfīxī cōnfīxus (+ *dat*); **to nail (boards) together** (tábulās) inter sē clāvis cōnfīgere

plane *s* runcín·a -ae *f*

plane *tr* runcināre

pliers for·ceps -cipis *mf*

ruler régul·a -ae *f*

saw *s* serr·a -ae *f*

saw *tr* serrā sec·ō -āre -uī -tus **||** *intr* serram dūc·ō -ere dūxī ductus

square nōrm·a -ae *f*

cashier arcári·us -ī *m*, arcári·a -ae *f*

chauffeur autoraedári·us -ī *m*

chef archimagír·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

chemist chēmiae perfīt·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

chemical *adj* chēmic·us -a -um

chemical *s* chēmic·um -ī *n*

chemistry chēmi·a -ae *f*

cook *s* coqu·us -ī *m*, coqu·a -ae *f*

bake tórr·eō -ēre -uī tostus; in furnō cóquere

boil *tr* fervefác·iō -ere fervefēcī fervefáctus **||** *intr* férv·eō -ēre férbuī

boiled ēlīx·us -a -um

cook *tr* cóqu·ō -ere coxī coctus **||** *intr* (*of s.th. cooked in liquid*) īnervěsc·ō -ere

fry frīg·ō -ere frīxī frīctus

kitchen culín·a -ae *f*

oven furn·us -ī *m*

stove foc·us -ī *m*

craftsman fa·ber -brī *m*

craft artifíci·um -ī *n*

craftsmanship artifíci·um -ī *n*

doctor medic·us -ī *m*, medic·a -ae *f*

cure *tr* sanāre

cure *s* remēdi·um -ī *n*

doctor's office medicīn·a -ae *f*

heal sanāre

medicine medicīn·a -ae *f*

pill pīlul·a -ae *f*

treat cūrāre

treatment cūr·a -ae *f*

druggist medicāmentāri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

drug medicām·en -inis *n*

drugstore medicāmentāri·a -ae *f*

dry cleaner full·ō -ōnis *m*

dry cleaner's (*establishment*)

fullōnic·a -ae *f*

electrician ēléctridis ártif·ex -icis *m*

electricity ēléctr·is -idis *f*

electric(al) ēléctric·us -a -um

wire fīl·um -ī *n*

engineer machināt·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rīcis *f*)

engineering machinālis sciēnti·a -ae *f*

farmer agrīcol·a -ae *mf*

barley hórde·um -ī *n*

barn hórre·um -ī *n*

barnyard cóh·ors -órtis *f*

cattle pec·us -oris *n*

chicken pull·us -ī *m* gallináceus, gallín·a -ae *f*

corn maízī·um -ī *n*

corn cob maízīi spīc·a -ae *f*

cow vacc·a -ae *f*

crops (*standing grain*) seg·es -etis *f*;
(*field produce*) frūg·ēs -um *fpl*

farm fund·us -ī *m*

farm house vill·a -ae *f* rústica

feed pāsc·ō -ere pāvī pāstus

field a·ger -grī *m*; (*untilled*) camp·us -ī *m*

garden hort·us -ī *m* rústicus

grain frūmént·um -ī *n*

harvest *s* mess·is -is *f* (*m*)

harvest *tr* dēmetō -ere dēméssuī dēméssus

hay fēn·um -ī *n*; **to make hay** fēnum sec·ō -āre -uī -tus

hayloft fēnīl·ia -ium *npl*

herd grex, gregis *m*

horse equ·us -ī *m*

meadow prāt·um -ī *n*

milk lac, lactis *n*

milk *tr* múl·geō -gēre -sī -sus *or* -ctus

oats avēn·a -ae *f*

orchard pōmári·um -ī *n*

pasture páscu·um -ī *n*

pig porc·us -ī *m*, porc·a -ae *f*

plant ser·ō -ere sēvī sātus; **to plant a field** agrum cōnsérere

plow *s* arátr·um -ī *n*

plow *tr* arāre

raise (*crops, animals*) ēducāre

reap met·ō -ere méssuī messus

reaper mess·or -ōris *m*; (*machine*) mestr·um -ī *n* ligātóriūm

sheep ov·is -is *f*

stable stábul·um -ī *n*; (*for horses*) equíl·e -is *n*; (*for cows*) bovíl·e -is *n*;
(*for sheep*) ovíl·e -is *n*; (*for pigs*) suíl·e -is *n*

straw strámént·um -ī *n*

till col·ō -ere -uī cultus

wheat trític·um -ī *n*

fireman vig·il·ilis *m*, sīphōnāri·us -ī *m*

fire incēndi·um -ī *n*; **to put out a**

fire incēndium exstingu·ō -ere
exstīnxī exstīnctus

fire engine sīph·ō -ōnis *m*

fisherman piscāt·or -ōris *m* (*see*
Chapter V)

fortuneteller haríol·us -ī *m*, haríol·a
-ae *f*

tell fortunes haríol·or -árī -átus *sum*

grocer macellāri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

grocery store macéll·um -ī *n*

groceries obsóni·um -ī *n*

guard cust·ōs -ōdis *m*

hairdresser ōrnātr·īx -ícis *f*, tōnstr·īx
-ícis *f* (*see barber*)

bangs ánti·ae -árum *fpl*

blond adj flāv·us -a -um

brunette fusc·us -a -um

color colōrāre, ting·ō -ere tīnxī
tīnctus

comb *s* pect·en -inis *m*

comb *tr* pec·tō -tere -xī -xus; **to**
comb back repéctere; **to comb**
forward prōpéctere; **to comb out**
expéctere

curl *s* (*natural*) cirr·us -ī *m*;
cincínn·us -ī *m*

curl *tr* crīspāre

curler calamístr·um -ī *n*

curly crīsp·us -a -um

cut tónd·eō -ére totóndī tōnsus

do (*the hair*) cōm·ō -ere cōmpsī
cōmptus

dye *tr* ting·ō -ere tīnxī tīnctus

hair com·a -ae *f*, capíll·us -ī *m*, or
capíll·ī -órum *mpl*

hairdo cōmpt·us -ūs *m*

hair style tōns·us -ūs *m*

layer the hair comam in gradūs
frang·ō -ere frēgī frāctus

mirror spēcul·um -ī *n*

part *s* discrīm·en -inis *n*

part *tr* (*the hair*) discrīmīnāre

redhead rútil·a -ae *f*

style mod·us -ī *m*

wavy crīsp·us -a -um

innkeeper caup·ō -ōnis *m*

inn caupón·a -ae *f*

journalist diurnāri·us -ī *m*, (·a -ae *f*)

journalism diurnária ar·s -tis *f*

judge iūd·ex -icis *mf*

laborer operári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

lawyer causídīc·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); (*for*
the defense) advocāt·us -ī *m* (·a -ae
f)

librarian bibliothēcāri·us *m*, (·a -ae *f*)

library bibliothēc·a -ae *f*

machinist māchināt·or -ōris *m*

magician mag·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

do tricks praestīgi·or -árī

magic mágica ar·s -tis *f*; **practice**

magic mágicās artēs exérc·eō -ére
-uī -itus

maid ancíll·a -ae *f*, fámul·a -ae *f*

mailman tabellāri·us -ī *m*

deliver red·dō -dere -didī -ditus

forward déferō dēfērre dētulī dēlátus

mail epístul·ae -árum *fpl*, rēs *fpl*
cursuālēs

mail *tr* dō dare dedī datus

mailbox caps·a -ae *f* tabellária

packet, package fascícul·us -ī *m*

postage vectúr·a -ae *f* litterárum

stack of mail multiúgae lītterrae

stamp pittáci·um -ī *n* cursuále

mason fa·ber -brī *m* lapidārius (*see*
bricklayer)

concrete concrēt·um -ī *n*

cement cal·x -cis *f*

level libr·a -ae *f*

mortar harēnāt·um -ī *n*

plummet perpendicul·um -ī *n*

square norm·a -ae *f*

trowel trull·a -ae *f*

mechanic mechānicus ópif·ex -ícis *m*

repair refic·iō -ere refēcī refēctus

merchant mercāt·or -ōris *m*; (*in a*
market) macellāri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

merchandise merc·ēs -ium *fpl*

metal worker metallōrum fab·er -rī *m*

midwife obstétr·ix -ícis *f*

miner metallāri·us -ī *m*

mine *s* fodín·a -ae *f*, metáll·um -ī *n*;

coal mine fodín·a -ae *f* carbônāria;

gold mine aurifodín·a -ae *f*; **silver**

mine argentifodín·a -ae *f*; **iron mine**

ferrifodín·a -ae *f*; **salt mine** fodín·a

-ae *f* salināria; **to operate a mine**
metállum exérc·eō -ēre -uī -itus

mine *tr* effód·iō -ere effōdī effōssus

mine shaft fodínae púte·us -ī *n*

minister minís·ter -trī *m* (·tra -trae *f*),
pāst·or -ōris *mf*

musician músic·us -ī *m*, músic·a -ae *f*

band symphóni·a -ae *f*

concert concént·us -ūs *m*

drum týmpan·um -ī *n*; **to play the**
drum týmpanum pulsāre

flute tíbi·a -ae *f*

guitar cíthar·a -ae *f* Hispánica

lyre lyr·a -ae *f*

musical instrument órgan·um -ī *n*

orchestra symphóni·a -ae *f*

organ órgan·um -ī *n*

piano clāvicórdi·um -ī *n*

play (*an instrument*) cantāre (+ *abl*),
can·ō -ere cécinī cantus (+ *abl*)

trumpet tub·a -ae *f*

violin fidicul·a -ae *f*

nurse aegrōrum mínistr·a -ae *f*,
nosócom·a -ae *f*; (*male*) aegrōrum
mínist·er -rī *m*, nosócom·us -ī *m*

painter pīct·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*)

brush pēnicīll·us -ī *m*

canvas téxtil·e -is *n*

paint *s* pigmént·um -ī *n*

paint *tr & intr* ping·ō -ere pīnxī
pīctus

painting (*the art; picture*) pīctūr·a
-ae *f*; (*painting on a board*) tábul·a
-ae *f* (pīcta)

pharmacist (*see* **druggist**)

photographer phōtograph·us -ī *m*,
phōtograph·a -ae *f*

photo shop officín·a -ae *f*
phōtographica

pilot gubernāt·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*)
(*see* **pilot**, Chapter XXIV)

plasterer tēct·or -ōris *m*

plaster *s* tēctōri·um -ī *n*

plaster *tr* (*a wall*) tēctōrium (parietī)
indúc·ō -ere indūxī indūctus

playwright fābulārum scrīpt·or -ōris *m*
(·rīx -rícis *f*)

plumber ártif·ex -icis *m* plumbārius

pipe fīstul·a -ae *f*

poet poēt·a -ae *m*

poem poēm·a -atis *n*; **to write a**
poem poéma fác·iō -ere fēcī factus

poetess poētri·a -ae *f*

poetry poés·is -is *f*

police officer vigil, vígilis *mf*

porter báiuł·us -ī *m*

potter fíguł·us -ī *m*

potter's clay crēt·a -ae *f* figlína

potter's wheel rot·a -ae *f* figuláris

pottery fictíl·ia -ium *npl*

priest sacérd·ōs -ōtis *mf*

priesthood sacerdoti·um -ī *n*

producer chorág·us -ī *m*

prostitute méretr·īx -ícis *f*, prōstitút·a -ae *f*; **to be a prostitute** prōst·ō -āre prōstitī

psychiatrist psýchiát·er -rī *m* (·ria -rae *f*)

psychologist psýcholog·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

publisher édit·or -ōris *m*, éditr·īx -ícis *f*

retailer propól·a -ae *m*

sailor naut·a -ae *m*, naútri·a -ae *f*

saleslady (*in a shop*) tabernári·a -ae *f*

salesman (*in a shop*) tabernári·us -ī *m*

traveling salesman ínstít·or -ōris *m*

sculptor sculpt·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*)

bust imág·ō -inis *f*

carve sculp·ō -ere -sī -tus

chisel scalpr·um -ī *n*

sculpture sculptúr·a -ae *f*

statue stātu·a -ae *f*, sign·um -ī *n*

seamstress (*making clothes*) vestífic·a -ae *f*; (*altering clothes*) sarcinátr·īx -ícis *f*

embroider acū ping·ō -ere pīnxī pīctus

mend sárc·iō -íre sarsī sartus

needle ac·ū -ūs *f*

sew su·ō -ere -ī sūtus

secretary āmanuéns·is -is *mf*; ā manū *mf*

sheriff geraéf·a -ae *m*

shipbuilder naupég·us -ī *m*

shipyard nāvál·ia -ium *npl*

shoemaker sūt·or -ōris *m*

shoe cálce·us -ī *m*

shoemaker's shop sūtrín·a -ae *f*

singer cantát·or -ōris *m*, cantátr·īx -ícis *f*

sing canō canere cécinī cantus, cantāre

song cant·us -ūs *m*, cántic·um -ī *n*

soldier mīl·es -itis *mf* (*see chapter on War and Peace*)

surgeon chīrúrg·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

operate on sec·ō -āre -uī -tus

operation sécti·ō -ónis *f*

surgery chīrúrgi·a -ae *f*

tailor (*making clothes*) vestífic·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); (*altering clothes*) sarcinát·or -ōris *m* (*see seamstress*)

tailor shop officín·a -ae *f* vestium

tax collector exáct·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*), públicán·us -ī *m*

collect taxes vectīgália éxig·ō -ere exégī exáctus

tax vectíg·al -ális *n*

teacher magís·ter -trī *m*, magístr·a -ae *f* (*see the chapter on school*)

travel agent itínerum prōcūrát·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*)

typist dactylógraph·us -ī *m*, (·a -ae *f*)

type dactylográphiō scrīb·ō -ere scrīpsī scrīptus

typewriter dactylográphi·um -ī *n*, machínul·a -ae *f* scrīptória

typing dactylográphica ar·s -tis *f*

undertaker pollínct·or -ōris *m*

coffin cápul·us -ī *m*

corpse cadáv·er -eris *n*

funeral fūn·us -eris *n*; **to attend a funeral** in fūnus vén·iō (*of several* convén·iō) -íre vĕnī

waiter miníst·er -rī *m*

serve (*food*) appŏn·ō -ere appósui appósitus

wait on ministrāre (+ *dat*)

waitress minístr·a -ae *f*

wholesaler magnári·us -ī *m*

wholesale *adj* magnári·us -a -um

wine merchant vīnári·us -ī *m*,
oenopól·ēs -ae *m*

barrel cūp·a -ae *f*

wine vīn·um -ī *n*

wine shop oenopóli·um -ī *n*

wrestler luctāt·or -ōris *m*

wrestle luct·or -ārī -ātus *sum*

wrestling, wrestling match luctāti·ō
-ōnis *f*

writer scrīpt·or -ōris *m*, scrīptr·īx
-ícis *f*)

Chapter XIX: The City and Public Buildings

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I Discussing the merits of city life.

Anna	Dīc mihi, Guáltere, cūr praefers in urbe habitāre quam rūrī.	Anna: Tell me, Walter, why do you prefer living in the city rather than in the country?
Guálterus	Quia commódus est in urbe habitāre.	Walter: Because it is more convenient to live in the city.
Anna	Quid ita?	How so?
Guálterus	Pédibus īre possum ad scholam et ad váriās tabérnās.	I can go on foot to school and to the different shops.
Anna	Vísitāsne umquam bibliothécam públicam an pinacothécam an mūséum?	Do you ever visit the public library or art gallery or museum?
Guálterus	Rārō. Sed saepe eō ad stádium aut amphitheátrum aut thermās aut gymnásium.	Rarely. But I often go to the stadium or the amphitheater or the baths or the gymnasium.
Anna	Nōne commeátus vehiculórum et strépitus viárum turbaeque tibi moléstiae sunt?	Aren't the traffic and the noise of the streets and the crowds bothersome to you?
Guálterus	Estō! Intérdum istae rēs quidem moléstae sunt, sed ubi est vīta perfécta?	Granted! At times those things are bothersome all right, but where is life perfect?

LEVEL II **Jennifer wants to go to town.**

Iénnifer	Mārtíne, potésne mē addūcere in oppidum?	Jennifer: Martin, can you take me into town?
Mārtínus	Certē. Quid vīs facere in oppidō?	Martin: Sure. What do you want to do in town?
Iénnifer	Multa. Primum volō ire in tabérnam chartárium.	<i>Lots. First, I want to go to the stationery store.</i>
Mārtínus	Quid ibi émere vīs?	<i>What do you want to buy there?</i>
Iénnifer	Chartam scriptóriam et librum coquinātórium.	<i>Writing paper and a cookbook.</i>
Mārtínus	At nōn vënditant librōs coquinātóriōs in tabérnā chartáriā sed in libráriā, ut putā, apud Sóssiōs Frātrēs.	<i>But they don't sell cookbooks in the stationery store but in a bookstore, for example at the Sossii Brothers.</i>
Iénnifer	Ubi terrárum est illa librária?	<i>Where in the world is that bookstore?</i>
Mārtínus	Est in locō quod Argilétum appellátur.	<i>It's in a place called the Argiletum.</i>
Iénnifer	Ubi itaque est Argilétum?	<i>Where then is the Argiletum?</i>
Mārtínus	Em, Argilétum est in empóriō inclutō Rōmae. Est exadvérsus macéllum.	<i>Well, the Argiletum is in Rome's famous business district. It's across the street from [lit: opposite] the market.</i>
Iénnifer	Eu! Sī tibi ótium sit, velim étiam in macéllum ire, nam obsónia mihi comparánda sunt.	<i>Great! If you have the time, I would also like to go to the market, since I have to get some groceries.</i>
Mārtínus	Ágedum, cito eámus. Mihi nōn est multum tempus subsicívum.	<i>Come on, let's go quickly. I don't have a lot of spare time.</i>

LEVEL III **Asking for directions in the city.**

Peregrínus	Ignósce mihi, bone vir. Mihi vídeor deérrāvísse. Quō mē vertam nésciō.	Foreigner: Pardon me, sir. I seem to have lost my way. I don't know which way to turn.
Vigil	Quō vīs ire? Viam tibi libénter osténdam.	Policeman: Where do you want to go? I'll gladly show you the way.

Peregrínus	Ubi est stádium, quaesō?	<i>Where is the stadium, please?</i>
Vigil	Rēctā perge per trēs vīcōs ūsque ad theātrum; dein tē verte dextrōrsum et prōcēde ūsque ad secūndum cōmpitum. Stádium erit ab laevā.	<i>Go straight ahead for three blocks as far as the theater; then turn right and go on to the second intersection. The stadium will be on your left.</i>
Peregrínus	Et ubi est gymnásium?	<i>And where is the gymnasium?</i>
Vigil	Haud procul est ā stádiō. Ubi stádium praeterieris, rēctā perge per duōs vīcōs; ibi stat templum in álterō ángulō et thermae in álterō ángulō. Tē verte sinistrōrsum et ámbulā per trēs vīcōs. Cōspiciēs dein gymnásium prope moénia urbis.	<i>It isn't far from the stadium. When you have passed the stadium, go straight ahead for two blocks; there a temple stands on the one corner and the baths on the other corner. Turn left and go three blocks. You will then see the gymnasium near the city walls.</i>
Peregrínus	Estne popína in eā vicinīā?	<i>Is there a restaurant in the vicinity?</i>
Vigil	Est popína in omnī ferē ángulō.	<i>There is a restaurant on practically every corner.</i>
Peregrínus	Grátias multās!	<i>Thanks a lot.</i>
Vigil	Bene ámbulā!	<i>Have a good trip!</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

alley angipórt•um -ī *n*

Argiletum Argilét•um -ī *n* (*a district of Rome extending from the base of the Quirinal to the Capitoline and chiefly inhabited by booksellers and mechanics*)

amphitheater amphitheátr•um -ī *n*

apartment building ínsul•a -ae *f*

aqueduct aquaedúct•us -ūs *m*

art gallery pinacothéc•a -ae *f*

bakery pīstrín•a -ae *f*

bank argentári•a -ae *f*

barbershop tōnstrín•a -ae *f*

bath bálne•um -ī *n*; (*large bathing establishment*) therm•ae -árum *fpl*

blind alley fúndul•a -ae *f*

block vīc•us -ī *m*

bookstore librári•a -ae *f*

business district empóri•um -ī *n*

butcher shop lanién•a -ae *f*

church ecclési•a -ae *f*

citadel ar•x -cis *f*

city urb•s -is *f*

city hall cúri•a -ae *f*

clothing store tabérn•a -ae *f* vestiária

courthouse basílic·a -ae *f*
dead-end street fúndul·a -ae *f*
department store pantopóli·um -ī *n*
doctor's office medicín·a -ae *f*
drugstore medicāmentári·a -ae *f*
dry cleaner's fullónic·a -ae *f*
fire station státi·ō -ónis *f* vígilum
fish market for·um -ī *n* piscárium
flower shop tabérn·a -ae *f* flōrális
gas station státi·ō -ónis *f* benzīnária
grocery store macéll·um -ī *n*
gymnasium gymnási·um -ī *n*
hardware store tabérn·a -ae *f* ferrária
high school schol·a -ae *f* supérior
hospital valētūdínári·um -ī *n*
hotel hospíti·um -ī *n*, dēversóri·um -ī *n*
intersection cómpit·um -ī *n*,
quadrívi·um -ī *n*
jewelry store gemmári·a -ae *f*
laundry fullónic·a -ae *f*
library bibliothéc·a -ae *f*
bookshelf plúte·us -ī *m*
mall for·um -ī *n* subtēguláneum
museum mūsé·um -ī *n*
park hort·ī -órum *mpl*
pastry shop cuppedínári·a -ae *f*
perfume store tabérn·a -ae *f*
unguentária
police station státi·ō -ónis *f* vígilum
portico pórtic·us -ūs *f*
post office diribítóri·um -ī *n* cursuále

prison carc·er -eris *m*
race track hippódrom·us -ī *m*
restaurant caupón·a -ae *f*
saloon tabérn·a -ae *f* pōtória
school lūd·us -ī *m*, schol·a -ae *f*
savings bank argentári·a -ae *f* pecúliis
asservándis
senate building cúri·a -ae *f*
shoemaker sūt·or -óris *m*
shoe store tabérn·a -ae *f* calceāmentária
shoemaker's sūtrín·a -ae *f*
shop tabérn·a -ae *f*; (*workshop*)
officín·a -ae *f*
side street dēvertícul·um -ī *n*
sidewalk crepíd·ō -inis *f*
square áre·a -ae *f*
stadium stádi·um -ī *n*
stationery store tabérn·a -ae *f* chartária
street vi·a -ae *f*, platé·a -ae *f*; **across the**
street from exadvérsum (+ *acc*)
suburbs continént·ia -ium *npl*
synagogue synagóg·a -ae *f*
temple templ·um -ī *n*, aed·ēs -is *f*
theater theátr·um -ī *n*
tower turr·is -is *f*
town óppid·um -ī *n*
traffic commeát·us -ūs *m* vehiculórum
wall mūr·us -ī *m*; **walls** moén·ia -ium
npl
warehouse apothéc·a -ae *f*
zoo vívári·um -ī *n*

Chapter XX: Government

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

A father explains to his son his involvement in politics.

Fílius	Pater, cūr vīs cōsul fierī?	<i>Son: Father, why do you want to become a consul?</i>
Pater	Quia ego iam omnēs áliōs honōrēs gessi.	<i>Father: Because I have already held all the other offices.</i>
Fílius	Quōs honōrēs gessistī?	<i>What offices have you held?</i>
Pater	Prīmō quaestor eram, deinde aedílis, deinde praetor. Nunc cōsulátum petō.	<i>First I was quaestor, then aedile, then praetor. Now I'm running for the consulship.</i>
Fílius	Suntne multī competítōrēs?	<i>Are there many opponents?</i>
Pater	Sunt vērō.	<i>There are indeed.</i>
Fílius	Suntne eī omnēs patrícii dívitēs?	<i>Are they all rich patricians?</i>
Pater	Omnēs sunt virī magnae grátiae et dívitiárum.	<i>All are men of great influence and wealth.</i>
Fílius	Potestne pauper creáři cōsul?	<i>Can a poor man be elected consul?</i>
Pater	Fieri potest sed difficíllimum est.	<i>It is possible, but it is very difficult.</i>
Fílius	Ubi comítia habēbúntur?	<i>Where will the elections be held?</i>
Pater	In Campō Mártiō, ut solent.	<i>In the Campus Martius as usual.</i>
Fílius	Quandō comítia habēbúntur?	<i>When will the elections be held?</i>
Pater	Hódiē post merídiem.	<i>This afternoon.</i>
Fílius	Tibi fēlíciter, pater!	<i>Good luck to you, Father.</i>
Pater	Grátias, mī filī.	<i>Thank you, son.</i>

 LEVEL II **A senator explains how government works.**

Senátor	Dā mihi togam praetēxtam et mülleōs.	<i>Senator: Give me my purple-bordered toga and senatorial shoes.</i>
Uxor	Quō abīs iterum?	<i>Wife: Where are you off to again?</i>
Senátor	Num ignórās mē hódīē prō rōstrīs orātiōnem habitūrum esse?	<i>Don't you know that I am going to give a speech today from the rostrum?</i>
Uxor	Nōne senátus hódīē convéniet?	<i>Isn't the senate meeting today?</i>
Senátor	Étiam. Legátī ē Graeciā dē vectīgálibus senátum adloquēntur.	<i>Yes. Ambassadors from Greece will address the senate about the taxes.</i>
Uxor	Querentúrne dē vectīgálibus an dē exāctóribus?	<i>Are they going to complain about the taxes or the tax collectors?</i>
Senátor	Dē utrísque. Ut scīs, Rōma novum vectígal istīs Graéculīs impósuit.	<i>About both. As you know, Rome imposed a new tax on those poor Greeks.</i>
Uxor	Quid praeses provínciae Achaéae dē novō vectīgáli dicit?	<i>What does the governor of the province of Achaea say about the new tax?</i>
Senátor	Praeses dicit nōn solum vectígal sed étiam exāctórēs esse ádmodum iníquoūs.	<i>The governor says that not only the tax but also the tax collectors are very unfair.</i>
Uxor	Cūr rēs pública vectīgália ex provínciis nostrīs cōstánter éxigit?	<i>Why does the government constantly collect taxes from our provinces?</i>
Senátor	Est simplex. Rōma mercēdem tríbuit exāctóribus et conductóribus et ratiōcinātóribus et innúmeris contubernálibus scríbísque.	<i>It is simple. Rome pays a salary to tax collectors, their employers, accountants, and innumerable staff members and clerks.</i>
Uxor	At sī vectīgália nōn impōneréntur et exigeréntur, nōn omnínō opus esset hīsce ómnibus mercēdem tríbuere.	<i>But if taxes were not imposed and collected, there would be no need at all to pay salaries to all these people.</i>
Senátor	Maniféstō tū rem públicam nōn intéllegis!	<i>Obviously you do not understand politics!</i>

 LEVEL III **How the senate conducts business.**

Novus Homō	Nōne senātus hodiē hābitus est?	<i>Freshman Senator: A senate session was held today, wasn't it?</i>
Cōsul	Hābitus est, sed nihil in senātū cōnfēctum est.	<i>Consul: It was, but nothing was accomplished in the senate.</i>
N. Homō	Quidnī? Dē quō disceptātum est?	<i>Why not? What was the debate about?</i>
Cōsul	Crassus réttulit dē impériō Iúlii Caésaris, quī bellum Gallīs inférre vult.	<i>Crassus made a motion about the military command of Julius Caesar, who wants to go to war with the Gauls.</i>
N. Homō	Quíspiam in Crassī senténtiam dicēbat?	<i>Did anyone second Crassus' motion?</i>
Cōsul	Pompéius vidēbātur assentīri Crassō, sed omnēs ferē optimātes senténtiae Crassī obsistēbant.	<i>Pompey seemed to go along with Crassus, but almost all the conservatives objected to Crassus' motion.</i>
N. Homō	Quid dixérunt Caesariānī?	<i>What did the members of Caesar's party say?</i>
Cōsul	Cúriō, tribūnus plēbis, Caésaris causam magnō cum stúdiō ēgit.	<i>Curio, the tribune of the people, pleaded Caesar's cause with great enthusiasm.</i>
N. Homō	Et quid dē tē?	<i>And what about you?</i>
Cōsul	Ego breviter senténtiam dixī, sed nōluī prōpalam assentīri Crassō.	<i>I expressed my opinion briefly, but I did not want to agree with Crassus openly.</i>
N. Homō	Num discéssiō facta est in Crassī senténtiam?	<i>Was a vote taken on Crassus' motion?</i>
Cōsul	Nōn. Catō, homō équidem honéstus sed furiōsus, senténtiae intercédere cōnātus est.	<i>No. Cato, a really respectable but mad man, tried to veto the motion.</i>
N. Homō	Praevalēbātne Catō? Senātūs cōnsúltum factum est?	<i>Did Cato win out? Was the senate decree passed?</i>
Cōsul	Nōn factum est; senténtia tamen est perscrípta. Subínde, mē referēnte, senātus dīmíssus est.	<i>It did not pass; however, the motion was put on record. After that, on my motion, the senate was dismissed.</i>

N. Homō	Quis in Crassī sententiā īvit?	<i>Who supported Crassus' proposal?</i>
Cōsul	Cūriō, tribūnus plēbis, et paucī amīcī Crassī.	<i>Curio, the tribune of the people, and only a few friends of Crassus.</i>
N. Homō	Aestimāsne Caesarem āliquīd cōnsectūrum esse?	<i>Do you think that Caesar will get anywhere?</i>
Cōsul	Nullō modō. Hōminēs mox eius oblīvīscēntur. Numquam exercītū in Gālliā imperābit.	<i>No way. People will soon forget about him. He will never command the army in Gaul.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

according to the law, as the law prescribes secūndum lēgem

administration administrātiō -ōnis *f*

aedile aedīl-is -is *m*

aedileship aedīlīt-ās -ātis *f*

aristocracy nōbīlīt-ās -ātis *f*, optimāt-ēs -ium *mpl*

assembly concīli-um -ī *n*

ballot tabell-a -ae *f*

ballot box suffragiōrum cist-a -ae *f*

bill rogātiō -ōnis *f*

bribery (*in politics*) āmbīt-us -ūs *m*

bring to order in ōrdinem cōg-ō -ere coēgī coāctus

bureau ministēri-um -ī *n*

bureaucracy graphēocrāti-a -ae *f*

bureaucrat graphēocrat-es -ae *mf*

campaign petītiō -ōnis *f*; **illegal**

campaign practices āmbīt-us -ūs *m*

campaign intr āmb-iō -īre -īvī or -īī -itum

candidate candidāt-us -ī *m* (•a -ae *f*)

cast a vote suffrāgium ferō ferre tulī lātus

censor cēns-or -ōris *m*

city urb-s -is *f*, cīvit-ās -ātis *f*

citizen cīv-is -is *mf*; **private citizen** (*who holds no political office*) privāt-us -ī *m* (•a -ae *f*)

city council decuriōn-ēs -um *mpl*

council member decūri-ō -ōnis *mf*

citizenship cīvit-ās -ātis *f*

civil cīvīl-is -is -e; **civil rights** iū-s -ris *n* cīvīle; **loss (taking away) of civil rights** dēminūti-ō -ōnis *f* cāpitis; **to deprive s.o. of civil rights** cāpīte alicūius dēmīnu-ō -ere -ī

civilian *adj* togātus -a -um, privāt-us -a -um

civilian *s* togāt-us -ī *m*; (*opposite of soldier*) privāt-us -ī *m*

command (*a legion, army*) praesīd-eō -ēre praesēdī (+ *dat*), imperāre (+ *dat*)

committee concīli-um -ī *n*

community cīvit-ās -ātis *f*

congress congrēss-us -ūs *m*

conservative *adj* cōnservātv-us -a -um

conservative *s* cōnservātv-us -ī *m* (•a -ae *f*); **conservatives** (*in ancient Rome*) optimāt-ēs -ium *mpl*

constitution cōnstitūt·a -ōrum *npl*

consul cōnsul -is *m*

consulship cōnsulāt·us -ūs *m*

debate *s* disceptāti·ō -ōnis *f*

debate *tr* disceptāre (dē + *abl*)

decide (to, not to) (*of the senate, also of supreme magistrates*) cēns·eō -ēre -uī (*ut or ne + subj*)

decree of the senate senātūs cōnsúlt·um -ī *n*; **to pass a decree of the senate** senātūs cōnsúltum fác·iō -ere fēcī factus

defeat repúl·s·a -ae *f*; **defeat at the polls** comítiūs repúl·sa; **defeat in running for the consulship** repúl·sa cōnsulātūs; **to suffer a defeat** repúl·sam ferō ferre tulī lātus

democracy dēmocrāti·a -ae *f*

democrat dēmocrátic·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

democratic dēmocrátic·us -a -um

dictator dictāt·or -ōris *m*

dismiss (*the senate*) dīmítt·ō -ere dīmísī dīmíssus

edict ēdíct·um -ī *n*

elect creāre; (*Roman senators*) coöptāre

elections comíti·a -ōrum *npl*; **to hold elections** comítia háb·eō -ēre -uī -itus

emperor imperát·or -ōris *m*; (*title chosen by Augustus*) prīnc·eps -ipis *m*

faction fácti·ō -ōnis *f*

fellow citizen cīv·is -is *mf* suus (*a*)

get somewhere áliquid cōnsequ·or -ī cōnsecútus sum

govern (*a province*) praesíd·eō -ēre praesēdī (+ *acc or dat*); **to govern the country** rem públicam gubernāre

government rēs *f* pública (*gen: reī públicae*) (*also written as one word*)

governor praes·es -idis *mf*, gubernāt·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*); (*of a minor province*) prōcūrāt·or -ōris *m*

graft ámbit·us -ūs *m*

head of state rēct·or -ōris *m* cīvitatīs

hold (*an office*) ger·ō -ere gessī gestus

imperial imperiál·is -is -e

law lēx, lēgis *f*; (*divine law*) fas *n* (*indecl*); **in accordance with the law** lēge

leave (*office*) áb·eō -íre -iī (+ *abl*)

legally lēgítimē

legislator lēgislát·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*) (*in Roman government, a proposer of a bill*)

lower class ōrd·ō -inis *m* infērior

magistracy magistrát·us -ūs *m*

magistrate magistrát·us -ūs *m*

mayor praeféct·us -ī *m* urbī; māi·or -ōris *mf*

motion senténti·a -ae *f*; **on my motion** mē referénte; **to approve a motion** senténtiam comprobāre; **to make a motion regarding** réferō reférre réttulī relátus dē (+ *abl*); **to oppose a motion** senténtiae (*dat*) obsíst·ō -ere óbstitī

middle class ōrd·ō -inis *m* médius; (*in Rome*) équit·ēs -um *mpl*

municipality mūnicípi·um -ī *n*

neutral nullíus partis (*esse*)

office hon·or -ōris *m*, magistrát·us -ūs *m*; **to gain an office** magistrátum (*or* honórem) ádsequ·or -ī adsecútus sum

opponent adversári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); (*for office*) competít·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*)

party par·s -tis *f*; **to join a party** partī sē adiúng·ō -gere -xī

pass (a law) (rogátíōnem *or* lēgem) pérferō perférre pértulī perlátus

patrician patrīci·us -a -um

plebeian plēbēi·us -a -um

plebs plēbs, plēbis *f*

political cīvīl·is -is -e; **for political reasons** reī pūblicaē causā; **political affairs (or matters)** rēs, rērum *fpl* cīvīlēs

political career curs·us -ūs *m* honōrum

politician vir, virī *m* cīvīlis, fēmina -ae *f* cīvīlis

politics rēs, reī *f* pūblica; rēs, reī *f* cīvīlis (*also plural*); **to enter politics** rem pūblicam īnēō īnīre īnīvī *or* īnīi; **to take part in politics** īn rē pūblicā vers·or -āri -ātus *sum*

polling booth saept·um -ī *n*

polls saept·a -ōrum *npl*

praetor praet·or -ōris *m*

praetorship praetūr·a -ae *f*

preside (over) praesīd·eō -ēre praesēdī (+ *dat*)

president praesīd·ēns -ēntis *m*

propose (a law) (lēgem) ferō ferre tulī lātus

province prōvīnci·a -ae *f*

quaestor quaest·or -ōris *m*

quaestorship quaestūr·a -ae *f*

ratify a bill lēgem iūb·eō -ēre iussī iussus

recording secretary (in the Roman senate) librāri·us -ī *m*

reject a bill lēgem (*or* rogātiōnem) antīquāre

representative vīcāri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

republicans repūblicān·ī -ōrum *mpl* (·ae -ārum *fpl*); (*in ancient Rome*) optīmāt·ēs -ium *mpl*

retire īn ōtium sē réfērō réfērre réttulī

rule *tr* reg·ō -ere rēxī rēctus

run for (an office) pet·ō -ere petīvī petītus; **to run for office** péttere

senate building cúri·a -ae *f*

senate senāt·us -ūs *m*

senate session senāt·us -ūs *m*; **to call (hold) a senate session** senátum vocāre (háb·eō -ēre -uī -itus)

senator senāt·or -ōris *mf*

senatorial senātōri·us -a -um

shake hands (when campaigning) manūs prēnsāre

shun publicity forum ac lūcem fūg·iō -ere fūgī fūgīturus

spirit of the law volúnt·ās -ātis *f* lēgis

squeeze the flesh (when campaigning) prēnsāre

state (the state as a community) cívit·ās -ātis *f*; (*of the U.S.*) cívitās foederāta

statesman vir, virī *m* cīvīlis

statute lēx, lēgis *f*

tariff portōri·um -ī *n*

tax vectīg·al -ālis *n*; **to impose a tax on** vectīgal impōn·ō -ere impósuī impósitus (+ *dat*)

tax collector exáct·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*)

term of office spāti·um -ī *n* (tēmporis) potestātis

town oppid·um -ī *n*

tribune of the people tribún·us -ī *m* plēbis

tribunian power tribūnícia potést·ās -ātis *f*

unanimously ūnā vōce

United States (of America) Ūnítī Statūs (Américaē) (*gen*: Ūnītōrum Státuum) *mpl*; Cīvītāt·ēs -um *fpl* Foederātae Américaē

upper class ōrd·ō -inis *m* supérior

upset (*at the polls*) offēnsi·ō -ōnis *f*; **to suffer an upset** offēnsiōnem ferō
ferre tulī lātus

veto *s* intercēssi·ō -ōnis *f*; **to interpose a veto** intercēd·ō -ere intercēssī

veto *tr* intercēd·ō -ere intercēssī (+ *dat*)

vice president vice praesid·ēns -éntis
mf

vote *s* suffrāgi·um -ī *n*; **a vote was taken on his motion** (*in the senate by moving to one side of the chamber*) discēssiō facta est in eius sententiam; **to call for a vote** (*in the senate*) discessiōnem fāc·iō -ere fēcī factus

vote *intr* suffrāgium ferō ferre tulī lātus; (*of a senator*) cēns·eō -ēre -uī; **to vote for** suffrāgārī (+ *dat*)

Chapter XXI: War and Peace

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

Jenna finds that Dennis joined the army.

Ienna	Salvē, Dennis. Ex quō témpore fuísti ōrnátū militári?	Jenna: Hello, Dennis. Since when have you been in military uniform?
Dennis	Abhinc quīnque ferē mēnsēs in milítiam inívi.	Dennis: I went into the service about five months ago.
Ienna	Quandō rudiménta militária cōnfēcísti?	When did you complete basic training?
Dennis	Abhinc duōs mēnsēs. Nōn iam tūrō rudis sum!	Two months ago. I am no longer a raw recruit!
Ienna	Quámdiū rudiménta militária dūrāvérunt?	How long did basic training last?
Dennis	Dūrāvérunt quáttuor mēnsēs. Nunc domī sum in commeátū.	It lasted four months. Now I am home on furlough.
Ienna	Quámdiū iam domī es?	How long have you been home?
Dennis	Commeátum trīgintā diérum impetrávi.	I got a thirty-day furlough.
Ienna	Quandō est commeátūs diēs?	When is your furlough up?
Dennis	Crās profectō erit commeátūs diēs.	It'll be up tomorrow in fact.
Ienna	Redibísne crās in castra?	Will you return to camp tomorrow?
Dennis	Rēctē dicis. Bene valē, Ienna.	That's right. [lit: you speak correctly.] Good bye, Jenna.

LEVEL II

A grandson asks his grandfather about his military service.

Cólinus	Erásne, tata, in milítiā inter Bellum Secúndum Mundánum?	<i>Colin: Granddad, were you in the service during the Second World War?</i>
Avus	Ita, mī nepōs. Ego et amīcī omnēs in milítiam ívimus postquam bellum in Európā exársit.	<i>Granddad: Yes, grandson. All my friends and I went into the service after war broke out in Europe.</i>
Cólinus	Erásne voluntárius an ēvocátus es?	<i>Were you a volunteer or were you called up?</i>
Avus	Ēvocátus sum. Dīlēcťus habēbátur, et ego dīlēcťum nōn subťfűgī.	<i>I was called up. They held a draft, and I did not dodge the draft.</i>
Cólinus	Meruístīne nauta an mīles?	<i>Did you serve as a sailor or a soldier?</i>
Avus	In exércitū méruī. Post rudīménta militária, in Euróпам ēvéctus sum. Advérsus Germániam pugnávī.	<i>I served in the army. After basic training, I was shipped out to Europe. I fought against Germany.</i>
Cólinus	Cūr advérsus Germánōs pugnávístī?	<i>Why did you fight against the Germans?</i>
Avus	Quod Germánia foedus violáverat et cum finítimīs bellum iníverat.	<i>Because Germany had violated the treaty and had started a war with her neighbors.</i>
Cólinus	Cūr Germánia finítimīs bellum ínťulit?	<i>Why did Germany go to war with her neighbors?</i>
Avus	Príncipēs enim Germániae tōtam Euróпам superáre voluérunt.	<i>You see, the leaders of Germany wanted to conquer the whole of Europe.</i>
Cólinus	Quam diū in Európā militávístī?	<i>How long did you serve as a soldier in Europe?</i>
Avus	Triénnum milítiam expléví ántequam nostrī sociťque coēgérunt Germánōs in dēditióne veníre.	<i>I completed a three-year tour of duty before our men and our allies forced the Germans to surrender.</i>

Cólinus	Gaúdeō, mī tata, tē saluum et sānum domum rediisse.	<i>I am glad, granddad, that you returned home safe and sound.</i>
Avus	Ego felicissimus eram. Nōn omnēs cēterī tam fēlicēs erant.	<i>I was very lucky. Not all the others were so lucky.</i>

LEVEL III Discussing the merits of alliances.

Studēns	Mihi vidētur pátria nostra semper in bellis extérnis implicārī.	Student: <i>It seems to me that our country is always involved in foreign wars.</i>
Docēns	Ex foédere, pátria nostra amícis sociisq̄ue in discrímīne succūrrit.	Instructor: <i>According to the terms of the treaty, our country goes to the aid of its friends and allies in a crisis.</i>
Studēns	At América sē tam saepe bellis extérnis interpónit. Quī fit?	<i>But America so often interferes in foreign wars. How come?</i>
Docēns	América enim ubiq̄ue terrárum societátēs ad bellum dēfendéndum fēcit.	<i>You see, America formed defensive alliances all over the world.</i>
Studēns	Faciúntne adversárii nostri societátēs ad bellum īnferéndum?	<i>Do our opponents form offensive alliances?</i>
Docēns	Utráque pars, ut opínor, facit societátēs ad bellum dēfendéndum. Sed áltera pars álteri partī nōn fīdit. Inde armórum certámen fit.	<i>Each side, I suppose, forms defensive alliances. But one side does not trust the other, and that's why there's an arms race. [lit: hence an arms race comes about.]</i>
Studēns	Hīs condició nibus, quemádmōdum pāx inter gentēs cōservári potest?	<i>Under these conditions, how can peace be maintained between nations?</i>
Docēns	Simplex est. Utráque pars tantum apparátum bellī cómparat ut áltera pars álteram partem oppugnáre nōn aúdeat.	<i>It is simple. Each side acquires such armaments of war that one side does not dare to attack the other.</i>

Studēns	At quid sī ūna cīvitās ab utrā parte bellum ultrō īferat?	<i>But what if one country on either side should become an aggressor in war? [lit: should bring on war unprovoked]</i>
Docēns	Tum sociī omnēs ab ālterā parte dēbent bellum indīcere illī cīvitātī.	<i>Then all the allies on the other side have to declare war on that country.</i>
Studēns	At quidnī bellum compōnunt?	<i>But why not terminate war by diplomacy?</i>
Docēns	Quod neutra pars vult imbecīlla vidērī.	<i>Because neither side wants to seem weak.</i>
Studēns	Quae īgitur est solūtīo?	<i>What then is the solution?</i>
Docēns	Suspiciō bonā fidē et mūtūā observāntiā substituēnda est.	<i>Suspicion must be replaced by mutual trust and respect.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

absent without leave: to be absent without leave ad commeātūs diem nōn ad·sum -esse -fuī

active service: to be on active service stipēndia fāc·iō -ere fēcī factus

agreement foed·us -eris *n*; **according to the terms of the agreement** ex foedere

alliance foed·us -eris *n*, sociēt·ās -ātis *f*;
to conclude an alliance with foedus īc·ō -ere -ī -tus cum (+ *abl*); **to form an alliance with** societātem fāciō -ere fēcī factus cum (+ *abl*)

airforce cōpi·ae -ārum *fpl* aēriae

arm *tr* armāre

armaments apparāt·us -ūs *m* bellī
(rarely *pl* of apparātus)

armed armāt·us -a -um; **to be armed in** armīs esse

arms: arm·a -ōrum *npl*; **arms race** armōrum certām·en -inis *n*; **by force of arms** vī et armīs; **to be under arms** in armīs esse; **to lay down**

arms ab armīs discēd·ō -ere discēssī;
to take up arms arma cāp·iō -ere cēpī captus

army exercit·us -ūs *m*; **to raise an army** exercitum comparāre

army buddy contubernāl·is -is *mf*

artillery tormēt·a -ōrum *npl*

barracks mīlitum contubérni·um -ī *n*

basic training rudimēta *npl* mīlitāria
(*gen* rudimētōrum *npl* mīlitārium)

battle pug·a -ae *f*, proéli·um -ī *n* (in a country: in (+ *abl*); at or near a town apud (+ *acc*), circā + *acc*); **in battle** proéliō; **naval battle off**

Tenedos pugna nāvālis ante Tenedum; **successful battle** proélium secūndum; **to fight a battle** proélium fāc·iō -ere fēcī factus

battalion coh·ors -órtis *f*

battalion commander praefēctus -ī *m*
cohórtis

battlefield aci·ēs -ēī *f*

besiege (blockade) a town oppidum
obsíd·ō -ere obsēdī obsessus

bomb *s* bomb·a -ae *f*; **atomic bomb**
bomba atómica; **nuclear bomb**
bomba nucleáris

bomb *tr* bombīs oppugnāre

bomber aeróplan·um -ī *n* bombíferum

call up the troops ēvocāre cōpiās

camp castr·a -ōrum *npl*

campaign expediti·ō -ōnis *f*;
stīpēdi·um -ī *n*

cavalry equitāt·us -ūs *m*

cease-fire indūti·ae -ārum *fpl*; **the**
cease-fire is holding indūtiāe dūrant;
to call for a cease-fire indūtiās
posc·ō -ere popōscī

cohort coh·ors -ortis *f*

colonel tribún·us -ī *m* mīlitum

combat proēli·um -ī *n*, pugn·a -ae *f*; **in**
hand-to-hand combat cōminus
(*adv*)

combatant proeliāt·or -ōris *m* (·rīx
-rīcis *f*)

command imperi·um -ī *n*; **to be in**
command (of) prae·sum -esse
-fuī (+ *dat*)

commander in chief imperāt·or -ōris
m; **to be the commander in chief**
impérii summam tēn·eō -ēre tēnuī;
impérii summae prae·sum -esse -fuī

commence hostilities bellī inītiū
fác·iō -ere fēcī factus

company centúri·a -ae *f*

company commander centúri·ō -ōnis *m*

concentrate all the troops in one place
cōg·ō -ere cōgī coactus omnēs
cōpiās in ūnum locum

conquer vinc·ō -ere vīcī victus; **to**
conquer a country terrā pót·ior -īrī
potītus sum

corporal decúri·ō -ōnis *m*

crack troops róbor·a -um *npl* peditum

critical: the situation is critical rēs est
in summō discrīmine

defeat *s* clād·ēs -is *f*; **to suffer a defeat**
clādem accíp·iō -ere accēpī accēptus

defeat *tr* superāre, vinc·ō -ere vīcī
victus

defensive and offensive alliance
societ·ās -ātis *f* ad bellum
dēfendēdum atque infērēdum facta

defensive and offensive weapons tēl·a
-ōrum *npl* ad tegēdum et ad
nocēdum

disarm s.o. áliquem armīs éxu·ō -ere -ī
-ūtus

discharge míssi·ō -ōnis *f*; **get an**
honorable discharge missiōnem
honéstam impetrāre; **get a**
dishonorable discharge missiōnem
ignōminiōsam accipere

dodge the draft mīltiam subter·fúgiō
-fúgere -fúgī

draft dīlēt·us -ūs *m*; **to hold a draft**
dīlētum háb·eō -ēre -uī -itus

draft-dodger quī mīltiam subtérugit

drag out a war bellum trah·ō -ere traxī
tractus

end fin·is -is m; **to put an end to a war**
bellī finem fác·iō -ere fēcī factus

enemy host·ēs -ium *mpl*

enlist nōmen (*of several*: nōmina) dō
dare dedī

exchange prisoners captívōs permūtāre
or commūtāre

exempt: to be exempt from military
service mīltiae vacātiōnem háb·eō
-ēre -uī

exemption from military service
mīltiae vacāti·ō -ōnis *f*

force: large force magnae cōpiae *fpl*;
small force exíguae cōpiae

fort castéll·um -ī *n*

furlough commeát·us -ūs *m*; **end of the furlough** commeátūs di·ēs -ēī *m*; **to get a furlough** commeátum impetrāre

garrison praesídi·um -ī *n*

general dux, ducis *mf*

gun tormént·um -ī *n*

headquarters praetóri·um -ī *n*

helmet cass·is -idis *f*

hold out: the town held out for four months oppidum obsidiónem quáttuor mēnsēs sustínuit

home front: on the home front and on the front lines domī et milítiae (*or in milítia*)

hostage obs·es -idis *mf*

infantry peditát·us -ūs *m*

infantryman ped·es -itis *m*

international law iūs, iūris *n* géntium

invade bellum ínferō ínferre íntulī illátus (+ *dat*), cum exércitū ingréd·ior -ī ingréssus sum

leave of absence commeát·us -ūs *m*

legion légi·ō -ónis *f*

lieutenant locumtén·ēns -éntis *mf*

march iter fác·iō -ere fēcī factus

marines classiári·ī -órum *mpl*

military milítar·is -is -e; **military age** aet·ās -átis *f* milítaris; **military service** milíti·a -ae *f*; **the military** milíti·a -ae *f*; **to enter military service** milítiam in·eō -íre -ívī *or* -iī; **to perform military service** milítāre

naval nāvál·is -is -e

navy cópi·ae -árum *fpl* nāválēs; **to have a powerful navy** nāvibus plúrimum posse

officer praeféct·us -ī *m*; **cavalry officer** praeféctus équitum

operations: to conduct military operations in the Gallic War rēs ger·ō -ere gessī Gállicō bellō

peace pāx, pācis *f*; **in peace and in war** domī et milítiae (*or in milítia*); **peace is concluded on condition that ...** pāx cónvenit in eam condiciónem ut ... ; **to break the peace** pācem frang·ō -ere frēgī frāctus; **to bring about peace** pācem conciliāre; **to have peace negotiations with s.o.** ag·ō -ere ēgī āctus cum āliquō dē pāce; **to make peace with** pācem fác·iō -ere fēcī factus cum (+ *abl*)

prisoner of war captív·us -ī *m*, captív·a -ae *f*; **ransom prisoners** captívōs rédim·ō -ere redēmī redēptus

private mil·es -itis *mf* gregárius (-a)

promote prómóv·eō -ére prómóvī prómótus; **to promote to higher rank** ad (*or in*) ampliórem gradum prómóvère

promotion prómóti·ō -ónis *f*

raid excúrsi·ō -ónis *f*

raise the siege on the town oppidum obsidióne liberāre

rank grad·us -ūs *m*

raze a town to the ground oppidum solō aequāre

recruit tír·ō -ónis *m*; **raw recruit** tīro rudis

recruit troops diléctum ag·ō -ere ēgī āctus

recruitment diléct·us -ūs *m*

regiment légi·ō -ónis *f*

regimental commander legiónis legát·us -ī *m*

retake a town oppidum recíp·iō -ere recépī recéptus

review the army exércitum recéns·eō -ére -uī, lūstrāre

rifle sclopét·um -ī *n*

sailor naut·a -ae *m* (·ria -riae *f*)
send relief to subsidiū summitt·ō -ere
 summīsī summīssus (+ *dat*)
sergeant opti·ō -ōnis *mf*
serve stipēdia faci·ō -ere fecī factus,
 (stipēdium) mēr·eō -ēre -uī; **to**
serve as a soldier or sailor (ut)
 miles aut nauta merēre
serviceman militār·is -is *m*
ship nāv·is -is *f*
shoot (a person) sclopētō trānsfig·ō -ere
 trānsfīxī trānsfīxus
soldier mil·es -itis *mf*
starve a town into surrender oppidum
 fame dom·ō -āre dōmū
storm a town oppidum oppugnāre
submarine nāv·is -is *f* submarīna
success rēs, reī *f* fēlīciter gesta, rēs bene
 gesta
supplies commēat·us -ūs *m* (used both
 as collective singular and in the
 plural); **to cut off the enemy's**
supplies inter·clūdō -clūdere -clūsī
 hostēs commēatibus
supply: to supply s.o. with men and
arms ālicui virōs et arma ministrāre
surrender s dēdīti·ō -ōnis *f*
surrender *intr* sē dē·dō -dere -didī; **to**
force a people to surrender
 pópulum in dēditionem venīre cōg·ō
 -ere coēgī coactus
swear in the soldiers mīlitēs
 sacrāmētō ādig·ō -ere adēgī adactus
tactics: to change one's tactics
 ratiōnem bellī gerēndī mūtāre
tank autocurr·us -ūs *m* armātus
terms condiciōn·ēs -um *fpl*; **on these**
terms hīs condiciōnibus; **to be on**
friendly terms with a country in
 amicitīā pópulī esse; **to stick by the**
terms in condiciōnibus mán·eō -ēre
 mānsī

terms of peace pācis condiciōn·ēs -um
fpl; **to accept terms of peace** pācis
 condiciōnēs accipi·ō -ere accēpī
 (*opp*: repudiāre); **to dictate terms of**
peace to pācis condiciōnēs dic·ō -ere
 dīxī (+ *dat*); **to propose terms of**
peace pācis condiciōnēs ferō ferre
 tulī lātus

terrain nātūr·a -ae *f* locī

theater of operations bellī sēd·ēs -is *f*

tour of duty milīti·a -ae *f*; **to complete**
a three-year tour of duty triennium
 milītiaē expl·eō -ēre -ēvī -ētus

treaty foed·us -eris *n*; **according to the**
terms of the treaty ex pactō, ex
 foedere; **to break a treaty** foedus
 frang·ō -ere frēgī fractus; **to**
conclude a treaty with foedus ícō
 ícere ícī ictus *or* fēr·iō -íre cum (+
abl); **to violate a treaty** foedus
 violāre

truce indūti·ae -ārum *fpl*; **a six-years'**
truce indūtiaē annōrum sex; **to**
break a truce indūtiās violāre; **to**
make a truce indūtiās fácere

turn in weapons arma trād·ō -ere
 trādīdī trādītus

uniform ōrnāt·us -ūs *m* militāris

veteran veterān·us ī *m*, ēmerit·us -ī *m*

victory victōri·a -ae *f*; **to gain (or win)**
a victory victōriam adipisc·or -ī
 adēptus sum; **to gain (or win) a**
victory over the enemy victōriam
 reportāre ab hoste; **to let a sure**
victory slip through one's fingers
 victōriam explorātam dīmītt·ō -ere
 dīmīsī

volunteer voluntāri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

war (against or with) bell·um -ī *n*
 (contrā *or* advērsus (+ *acc*) *or* cum
 (+ *abl*); **civil war** bellum cīvīle *or*
 domésticum; **in war** bellō, bellī
 témpore; **foreign war** bellum
 extérnum; **guerilla war** bellum
 clandestīnum; **in war and in peace**

pāce bellóque, domī bellóque;
offensive war (*of war yet to be begun*) bellum ultrō īferéndum; (*of war already begun*) bellum ultrō illátum; **to be involved in a war** bellō implicārī; **to bring a war to a successful conclusion** bellum cōnfíc·iō -ere cōnfēcī cōnféctus; **to carry on war with** bellum ger·ō -ere gessī gestus cum (+ *abl*); **to cause a war** bellum mōv·eō -ēre mōvī mōtus; **to conduct a war** (*of a general*) bellum administrāre; **to declare war on** bellum indíc·ō -ere indíxī indíctus (+ *dat*); **to drag out a war** bellum trah·ō -ere traxī tractus; **to end a war** bellum perfíc·iō -ere perfēcī perféctus; **to fight a war with** bellum ger·ō -ere gessī gestus cum (+ *abl*); **to fight a war of aggression with** bellum *or* arma ultrō īferō īfērre íntulī illátus (+

dat); **to go off to war** profícisc·or -ī proféctus sum ad bellum; **to go to war with** bellum īferō īfērre íntulī illátus (+ *dat*); **to prepare for war** bellum (com)parāre; **to send to war** mitt·ō -ere mīsī missus ad bellum; **to start a war with** bellum ín·eō -íre -ívī *or* -īī cum (+ *abl*); **to stir up a war** bellum concitāre *or* incitāre; **to take part in a war** bellum capéss·ō -ere; **to terminate a war by diplomacy** bellum compón·ō -ere compósuī compósitus; **to wage war with** bellum ger·ō -ere gessī gestus cum (+ *abl*); **war against pirates** bellum pīráticum; **war against slaves** bellum servíle; **war is imminent** bellum ímmínet *or* impéndet *or* ínstāt; **war of extermination** bellum internecínium; **war breaks out** bellum exārdéscit
warfare bell·um -ī *n*

Chapter XXII: Law and Criminal Justice

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I News of an important trial.

Rebécca	Salvē, Antónī. Unde venīs?	<i>Rebecca: Hello, Anthony. Where are you coming from?</i>
Antónius	Ā basílicā Iúliā ā forō.	<i>Anthony: From the Julian courthouse in the forum.</i>
Rebécca	Quid ibi fiēbat?	<i>What was going on there?</i>
Antónius	Iūdícium nōtum fiēbat.	<i>A notorious trial was taking place.</i>
Rebécca	Quis iūs dīcēbat?	<i>Who presided as judge?</i>
Antónius	Nésciō quis senátor.	<i>Some senator or other.</i>
Rebécca	Quis erat reus?	<i>Who was the defendant?</i>
Antónius	Negōtiátor. Em vērō pátruus meus.	<i>A businessman. Well, in fact, my uncle.</i>
Rebécca	Quis crímina in eum íntulit?	<i>Who brought charges against him?</i>
Antónius	Horténsius, amícus Cicerónis, erat accūsátor.	<i>Hortensius, Cicero's friend, was the prosecutor.</i>
Rebécca	Quis erat eius dēfēnsor?	<i>Who was the defense lawyer?</i>
Antónius	Múcius Scaévola.	<i>Mucius Scaevola.</i>
Rebécca	Quae crímina in pátruum tuum íntulit?	<i>What charges did he bring against your uncle?</i>
Antónius	Horténsius eum míserum peculátūs accūsávit.	<i>Hortensius accused the poor guy of embezzlement.</i>
Rebécca	Prōdiērunt multī testēs?	<i>Did many witnesses step forward?</i>
Antónius	Erant trēs tantúmmodo.	<i>There were only three.</i>

Rebécca	Quī?	<i>Who?</i>
Antónius	Duo sóciī eius et argentārius.	<i>Two associates of his and the banker.</i>
Rebécca	Estne absolūtus an condemnātus?	<i>Was he acquitted or found guilty?</i>
Antónius	Absolūtus est quidem ómnibus sententiīs.	<i>Of course, he was acquitted unanimously.</i>

LEVEL II **The arrest of two hoodlums draws a crowd.**

Rīta	Quid reī est, praefécte? Cūr tanta turba hūc congregátur?	Rīta: <i>What's up, Chief? Why is such a large crowd gathering here?</i>
Praeféctus vígilum	Modo apprehéndimus duós nōtós grassātórēs.	Chief of Police: <i>We just arrested two notorious hoodlums.</i>
Rīta	Quid áccidit?	<i>What happened?</i>
Praeféctus	Latrōcínium modo factum est.	<i>A robbery just took place.</i>
Rīta	Ubi?	<i>Where?</i>
Praeféctus	Istī latrōnēs macéllum intrāvérunt et macellárium omnī argéntō eius spoliāvérunt.	<i>Those robbers entered the grocery store and robbed the grocer of all his money.</i>
Rīta	Latrōnésne macelláriō vim attulérunt?	<i>Did the robbers assault the grocer?</i>
Praeféctus	Étiam. Istī macellárium fústibus concidérunt.	<i>Yes, they beat the grocer up with clubs.</i>
Rīta	Effügéruntne latrōnēs?	<i>Did the robbers get away?</i>
Praeféctus	Nüllō modō! Vígilēs meī apprehendérunt istós grassātórēs et mánicās eīs iniēcérunt.	<i>No way! My officers arrested those hoodlums and put handcuffs on them.</i>
Rīta	Ubi sunt istī latrōnēs nunc?	<i>Where are those robbers now?</i>
Praeféctus	Vígilēs rapuérunt eós in cárcerem.	<i>The police hauled them off to jail.</i>
Rīta	Nōnne arguéntur dē latrōcínio?	<i>They'll be charged with robbery, won't they?</i>
Praeféctus	Arguéntur dē vī et manū atque latrōcínio.	<i>They'll be charged with assault and battery as well as with robbery.</i>

Rīta	Viae urbis nostrae nōn diūtius tūtae sunt. Ego véreor nē per mē obsōnem.	<i>The streets of our city are no longer safe. I am afraid to go shopping by myself.</i>
Praefectus	Uxor mea idem dicit.	<i>My wife says the same thing.</i>
Rīta	Spērō iūdicem summō iūre cum istīs āctūrum esse.	<i>I hope the judge throws the book at them.</i>
Praefectus	Adulēscētula, ego hābeō mǎximam fidem nostrae ratiōnī iūdicīālī.	<i>Young lady, I have the greatest confidence in our judicial system.</i>

LEVEL III A client gets himself a lawyer.

Cliēns	Dēsīderō iūrisconsūltum. Potēsne mihi succūrrere?	Client: <i>I need a lawyer. Can you help me?</i>
Patrōnus	Quid est? Estne causa prīvāta an causa pūblica?	Patron: <i>What is it? Is it a civil or a criminal case?</i>
Cliēns	Est causa pūblica. Āliquis parietem domūs meae perfōdit.	<i>It's a criminal case. Someone broke into my home.</i>
Patrōnus	Quandō effrāctūra facta est?	<i>When did the break-in take place?</i>
Cliēns	Médiā nocte, dum ego et famīlia ābsumus.	<i>At midnight, while I and the family were away.</i>
Patrōnus	Quid perfossōrēs sustulērunt?	<i>What did the robbers steal?</i>
Cliēns	Pecūniam, pictūrās, argētea.	<i>Money, pictures, and silverware.</i>
Patrōnus	Scīsne quis parietēs perfōderit?	<i>Do you know who broke into your home?</i>
Cliēns	Nēsciō.	<i>No, I don't.</i>
Patrōnus	Aderāntne oculātī testēs?	<i>Were there any eyewitnesses?</i>
Cliēns	Ūnus ex vīcīnīs meīs, nōmine Varrō.	<i>One of my neighbors, named Varro.</i>
Patrōnus	Quid vīdit?	<i>What did he see?</i>
Cliēns	Vīdit et perfossōrem et índicem eius.	<i>He saw the robber and his lookout man.</i>
Patrōnus	Volētne testis prōdīre?	<i>Will he be willing to step forward as a witness.</i>

Cliēns	Volet.	<i>Yes, he will.</i>
Patrōnus	Arcessīvistīne vīgīlēs?	<i>Did you call the police?</i>
Cliēns	Arcessīvī. Vīgīlēs mīserunt investīgātōrem ad mē. Investīgātor iam coēgit nōnnūllōs suspēctōs.	<i>I did. The police sent an investigator to my home. The investigator has already rounded up several suspects.</i>
Patrōnus	Macte virtūte estō! Ego suspēctōs quam prīmum in iūdīcium addūcam. Mihi crēde, mox in cārcere sedēbunt.	<i>Good for you! I will take the suspects to court as soon as possible. Believe me, they will soon be sitting in jail.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

accusation accūsāti•ō -ōnis *f*

accuse accūsāre (*with acc of person and
gen or dē + abl of the charge*); **to**

accuse s.o. of a capital offense

āliquem reī capitālis re•um (-am)
fācere

acquit (of) absōlv•ō -ere -ī absolūtus
(*dē + abl; more rarely w. gen*); **to**

acquit s.o. of a capital crime

āliquem cāpitis absolvere

acquittal absolūti•ō -ōnis *f*

adjourn *tr* ampliāre

alimony alimōni•um -ī *n*

allegation: false allegation falsa
īnsimulāti•ō -ōnis *f*

allege ārgu•ō -ere -ī -ūtus

appeal *s* appellāti•ō -ōnis *f*; **to allow an**

appeal appellātiōnem admitt•ō -ere

admīsī admīssus; **to disallow an**

appeal appellātiōnem improbare

appeal *intr* (to) appellāre (*ad + acc*)

arrest apprehēn•dō -dere -dī -sus

assault *s* vīs *f* (*acc: vim; abl: vī*); **to**

accuse s.o. of assault (and battery)

aliquem dē vī (et manū) accūsāre; **to**

commit assault against vim fāc•iō

-ere fēcī factus in (+ *acc*)

assault *tr* vim fāc•iō -ere fēcī factus in
(+ *acc*)

attack *see* assault

attorney cōgnit•or -ōris *m* (•rīx -rīcis *f*);

to appoint an attorney to s.o.

cōgnitōrem ālicui adscrīb•ō -ere
adscrīpsi adscrīptus

bar: to serve at the bar in iūdīciīs
versārī; in forō ag•ō -ere ēgī

beat (with fists, clubs) (pugnīs,
fūstibus) caed•ō -ere cecīdī caesus;

to beat up concīd•ō -ere -ī concīsus

blame *s* culp•a -ae *f*

blame *tr* culpāre; **I am to blame** in

culpā sum; **to blame s.o. for** āliquem
culpāre ob (+ *acc*)

bludgeon *s* fūst•is -is *m*

bludgeon *tr* fūste (*or* fūstibus) concīd•ō
-ere concīdī concīsus; **to bludgeon**

to death fūstīgāre

break into a home domūs parietēs
perfōd•iō -ere perfōdī perfōssus

breaking and entering, break-in
effrāctūr•a -ae *f*

bribe *tr* corrūmp•ō -ere corrūpī
corrūptus

bribe *s* prēti•um -ī *n*

bribery corruptél·a -ae *f*; **influenced by bribery** corrupt·us -a -um

burglar effrác·or -óris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*), perfóss·or -óris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*); **to commit a burglary** parietēs perfód·iō -ere perfódī perfóssus

burglary (domūs) latrōcīni·um -ī *n*

capital punishment supplīci·um -ī *n* cápitis; **to suffer capital punishment** supplīciō cápitis affīcior affīcī affēctus sum

case caus·a -ae *f*, līs, lītis *f*; **civil case** causa prīvāta; **criminal case** causa pública; **to lose a case** causam per·dō -dere -didī; **to plead a case** causam ag·ō -ere ēgī *or* dīc·ō -ere dīxī; **to settle a case (out of court)** lītem compōn·ō -ere compósuī compósitus; **to win a case** causā (*or* iūdīciō) vinc·ō -ere vīcī victus

character witness advocāt·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

charge *s* crīm·en -inis *n*; **capital charge** capitāle crīmen; **false charge** calúmni·a -ae *f*; **to bring or file charges against s.o.** crīmīna álicui ínferō ínferre íntulī illátus

charge *tr* **to charge s.o. with a crime** áliquem crīmīne (*or* dē crīmīne *or* crīmīnis) árgu·ō -ere -ī

chief of police praeféc·us -ī *m* vígilum

civil rights iūr·a -ium *npl* cīvīlia; **to deprive s.o. of civil rights** áliquem cápite dēmín·uō -úere -uī -útus

client cli·ēns -éntis *mf*

commit (a crime) (scelus) committ·ō -ere commísī commíssus

condemn condemnāre

convict convínc·ō -ere convíci convíctus (*w. acc. of the person and w. gen. of the charge*); **convicted of** manifést·us -a (+ *gen*); **to convict s.o. on many counts of fraud**

áliquem multīs crīmínibus fraudis convíncere

conviction (for) condemnáti·ō -ónis *f* (+ *gen. of the charge*)

counselor iūrisperít·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

count crīm·en -inis *n*

court iūdīci·um -ī *n*; **court of appeal** iūdícium appellátórium; **to hold court** iūs dīc·ō -ere dīxī dictus; **to take s.o. to court** áliquem in iūdícium addúc·ō -ere addúxī addúctus *or* vocāre

courthouse basílic·a -ae *f*; **Julian courthouse** basílica Iúlia (*begun by Julius Caesar in 54 B.C.*)

crime fácin·us -oris *n*, scel·us -eris *n*, crīm·en -inis *n* (*more often means merely the charge*)

custody custódi·a -ae *f*; **to be held in custody** in custódiā háb·eor -ēri hábitus sum; **to take into custody** in custódiā trā·dō -dere -didī -ditus

death: to condemn s.o. to death áliquem cápitis damnāre; **to put s.o. to death** supplīcium cápitis dē áliquo sūm·ō -ere sūmpsī sūmptus

death sentence: to receive the death sentence cápitis damnārī

death penalty supplīci·um -ī *n* cápitis

defend s.o. causam alicúius dēfēnd·ō -ere -ī

defendant re·us -ī *m*, re·a -ae *f*

defense lawyer dēfēns·or -óris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

deprive: to deprive s.o. of áliquem prīvāre (+ *abl*)

detective inquísīt·or -óris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*)

divorce *tr* dīvórti·um fácere cum (+ *abl*)

divorce *s* dīvórti·um -ī *n*; **to seek a divorce** dīvórtium pet·ō -ere -īvī -ítus

embezzlement peculāt·us -ūs *m*

enforce the law lēgem exérc·eō -ére -uī
-itus

evidence testimōni·um -ī *n*; **on what evidence will you convict me?** quō mē teste convīcēs?; **this evidence is not admissible** hoc testimōnium nōn sūmēndum est; **to give evidence against s.o.** testimōnium dīc·ō -ere dīxī in āliquem; **to turn state's evidence** indīcium profit·eor -ēri profēssus sum

extortion violēnta exācti·ō -ōnis *f*
pecūniārum

eyewitness oculāt·us (a) test·is -is *mf*

fair aequ·us -a -um

falsely falsō

fault culp·a -ae *f*; **to be at fault** in culpā esse; **to not be at fault** extrā culpam esse

fine s.o. multāre āliquem (+ *abl of the fine*)

fraud frau·s -dis *f*

gang man·us -ūs *f*

gangster, gang member praed·ō -ōnis
m gregālis

guard *s* custōdiāri·us -ī *m* (•a -ae *f*)

guard *tr* custōd·iō -īre -īvī or -iī -itus

guilty re·us -a -um, sōn·s -tis; **guilty of** nōxi·us -a -um (+ *abl or gen*); **the guilty one** sōn·s -tis *mf*; **to be found guilty** nōxius iūdicārī; **to be guilty** in culpā esse; **to punish the guilty** poenam dē sōntibus éxig·ō -ere exégī exāctus

handcuff *tr* mánicās iníc·iō -ere iníēcī iníectus (+ *dat*)

handcuffs mánic·ae -ārum *fpl*

haul off to prison ráp·iō -ere -uī -tus in cárcerem

hearing cogníti·ō -ōnis *f*; **to hold a hearing** cognitiōnem háb·eō -ére -uī
-itus

homicide homicídi·um -ī *n*

hoodlum grassāt·or -ōris *m*

house arrest custōdi·a -ae *f* líbera

hung jury: to be acquitted by a hung jury senténtiīs páribus absól·v·or -ī absolútus sum

impartial incorrúpt·us -a -um et inte·ger -gra -grum

indict s.o. āliquem re·um (-am) fác·iō -ere fēcī factus

informant ind·ex -icis *mf*

innocent ínnoc·ēns -éntis

interrogate interrogāre

investigate investigāre

investigator investigāt·or -ōris *m* (•rīx -rícis *f*)

jail carc·er -eris *m*

jailer custōdiāri·us -ī *m* (•a -ae *f*)

judge iūd·ex -icis *mf*; **to sit as judge (hold court)** iūs dīc·ō -ere dīxī

judicial iūdicíāl·is -is -e; **judicial system** ráti·ō -ōnis *f* iūdicíālis

juror iūd·ex -icis *mf*

jury cōnsíli·um -ī *n*; iūdic·ēs -um *mpl*

just iūst·us -a -um

justice iūstítí·a -ae *f*

justly iūstē

law lēx, lēgis *f*; (*denoting the entire body of law*) iūs, iūris *n*; **against the law** contrā iūs; (*against a specific law*) contrā lēgem; **by law** lēge; **in accordance with the law** secūndum lēgem; **to break the law** lēgem violāre

lawsuit lī·s -tis *f*; **to bring (or file) a lawsuit against s.o.** litem álicui inténd·ō -ere -ī

lawyer iūrisconsúlt·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*);
(*trial lawyer*) causídīc·us -ī *m* (·a -ae
f); (*for the defense*) advocát·us -ī *m*
(·a -ae *f*)

legal lēgítīm·us -a -um, secúndum
lēgem *or* lēgēs

legally lēgítīmē, lēge

life imprisonment: give s.o. life imprisonment áliquem damnāre
cárcerē quoad vīvat

lock up (*in prison*) in cárcerem
compíng·ō -ere -ī compégī
compáctus

look-out ind·ex -icis *mf*

murder *s* nex, necis *f* (*passive in sense while caedēs is active in sense*); (*by hacking or striking*) caed·ēs -is *f*,
occísi·ō -ōnis *f*

murder *tr* (*by wicked and cruel means*)
necāre; (*violently and ruthlessly*)
trūcídāre; (*by hacking or striking*)
caed·ō -ere cecídī caesus

murderer necát·or -ōris *m*, homicíd·a
-ae *mf*; (*of a father, mother, or near relative*) parricíd·a -ae *mf*

murderess necátr·īx -ícis *f*

notorious nōt·us -a -um, infām·is -is -e

offenses delíct·a -ōrum *npl*

officer vig·il -ilis *mf*

pardon véni·a -ae *f*; **to grant s.o. a pardon** véniam álicui dō dare dedī;
to obtain pardon véniam impetrāre

penalty poen·a -ae *f*; **to pay the penalty** poenās persól·v·ō -ere -ī,
poenās dō dare dedī datus

perjure oneself pēierāre

perjury periūri·um -ī *n*; **to commit perjury** pēierāre

personal injury iniūri·a -āe *f*

plaintiff petít·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rícis *f*)

plead a case before the court causam
prō tribūnālī ag·ō -ere ēgī áctus

police officer vig·il -ilis *mf*

preside at a trial iūdiciō prae·sum -esse
-fuī, iūs dic·ō -ere dixī dictus

presiding judge quaesít·or -ōris *m* (·rīx
-rícis *f*)

prison carc·er -eris *m*; **to throw s.o. into prison** áliquem in cárcerem
coníc·iō -ere coniectī coniectus

prosecute s.o. áliquem iūdiciō
pérsequ·or -ī persecútus sum

prosecutor accūsát·or -ōris *m*,
accūsátr·īx -ícis *f*

punish pún·iō -íre -ívī -itus; poenā
affíc·iō -ere affēcī afféctus

punishment for crimes poen·a -ae *f*
facínorum

rape stupr·um -ī *n* per vim

rape *tr* per vim stuprāre, stuprō violāre

rapist stuprát·or -ōris *m*

rebut dissól·v·ō -ere -ī dissolútus

rebuttal dissolúti·ō -ōnis *f*

refute dissól·v·ō -ere -ī dissolútus

rob rāp·iō -ere -uī -tus; **to rob s.o. of**
áliquem spoliāre (+ *abl*)

robber latr·ō -ōnis *m*; (*house breaker*)
perfóss·or -ōris *m*

robbery latrōcínī·um -ī *n*

safe (from) tūt·us -a -um (ab + *abl*);
safe and sound salv·us -a -um et
sān·us -a -um; **safe from danger**
tūtus ā perículō

scot-free: to get off scot-free
impunít·us (-a) dimítt·or -ī dimíss·us
(-a) sum

serve a summons on diem dare (+ *dat*)

steal fūr·or -ārī -átus sum; clep·ō -ere
-sī -tus; toll·ō -ere sústulī sublátus

stool pigeon ind·ex -icis *mf*

sue s.o. litem álicui ínferō ínferre íntulī
illátus

suffer punishment poenās ferō ferre
tulī lātus

suit ācti·ō -ōnis *f*; **to bring a suit**
against s.o. āctiōnem ālicui intēn·dō
-dere -dī

suspect suspēct·us -ī *m*, suspēct·a -ae *f*

theft fūrt·um -ī *n*

testify test·or -ārī -ātus *sum*

thief fūr, fūris *mf*

throw the book at s.o. summō iūre cum
āliquō agō āgere ēgī āctus [*lit: to*
deal with s.o. with the utmost (rigor
of the) law]

treason prōdīti·ō -ōnis *f*

trial quaēsti·ō -ōnis *f*, iūdīci·um -ī *n*; **to**
bring to trial in iūdīcium addūc·ō
-ere addūxī addūctus; **to conduct a**
trial quaestiōnem exerc·eō -ēre -uī
-itus; **to be on trial for** iūdīcium dē
(+ *abl*) sūb·eō -īre -īvī *or* -īī; **to be**

on trial for one's life iūdīcium dē
cāpite subīre; **to go on trial** in iūs eō
īre īī *or* īvī

trial lawyer āct·or -ōris *m* (·rīx -rīcis *f*)
causārum, causīdic·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

try: to try a case (of) causam
cognōsc·ō -ere cognōvī cōgnitus (dē
+ *abl*)

verdict sentēti·a -ae *f*; **to give a**
verdict of acquittal absolūtōriam
sentētiām ferō ferre tulī lātus; **to**
give a guilty verdict condem-
nātōriam sentētiām ferre

unanimously omnibus sentētiīs

witness test·is -is *mf* (**for** prō + *abl*;
against in + *acc*); **to be called as a**
witness contestārī; **to come or step**
forward as a witness testis prōdeō
prōdīre prōdīī; **trustworthy witness**
testis lócupl·ēs -ētis

Chapter XXIII: Geography and Topography

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I

Colin wants to migrate to the U.S.

Cólinus	Salvē, Gregóri. Ego in ánimō hábeō mox ex Hibérniā in Américam ēmigrāre. Potésne nārrāre mihi áliquid dē Américā?	Colin: Hello, Gregory. I intend to emigrate from Ireland to America. Can you tell me something about America?
Gregórius	Libénter. Prīmō, América est multō ámplior quam Hibérnia.	Gregory: Gladly. First, America is much bigger than Ireland.
Cólinus	Ítane est? Quae sunt mēnsúrae Cīvitátum Foederátarum Américae?	Is that so? What are the dimensions of the United States?
Gregórius	Ōra marítima orientális tantum abest ab ōrā occidentālī quantum Hibérnia abest ā Cīvitátibus Foederátis Américae.	The east coast is as far distant from the west coast as is Ireland from the United States.
Cólinus	Incrēdfibile est! Estne Novum Eborácum caput Cīvitátum Foederátarum Américae?	That's incredible. Is New York the capital of the United States?
Gregórius	Novum Eborácum est urbs Américae amplíssima, sed, mīrābile dictū, nōn est caput.	New York is the biggest city in America, but, strange to say, it is not the capital.
Cólinus	Quae urbs est caput?	What city is the capital?
Gregórius	Vashintónia est caput Cīvitátum Foederátarum Américae.	Washington is the capital of the United States.
Cólinus	América ex quot cīvitátibus cōnstat?	Of how many states does America consist?
Gregórius	Sunt duodēquīnquāgíntā cīvitátēs in continēnte, praeter Aláscam et Havaíōs.	There are forty-eight states on the mainland, in addition to Alaska and Hawaii.

Cólinus	Ubi est Alásca?	<i>Where is Alaska?</i>
Gregórius	Est suprā Cánadam, quae attingit Cīvitātēs Foederātās Amēricae ā septentríone.	<i>It is north of Canada, which borders the United States on the north.</i>
Cólinus	Ubi sunt Havaíi?	<i>Where is Hawaii?</i>
Gregórius	Havaíi sunt celébritās īnsulárum longíssimē ante ōram Califórniae.	<i>Hawaii is a cluster of islands a very long way off the coast of California.</i>
Cólinus	Quae est urbs óptima in quā ego cum famíliā hábitem?	<i>What is the best city for me and family to live in?</i>
Gregórius	Est difficíllimum dictū. Urbs enim quaeque suās virtútēs habet.	<i>That's very hard to say. Every city, you see, has its good points.</i>

LEVEL II Rene wants to learn about the Tiber.

Renáta	Quid flūmen ádluit Rōmam?	Rene: <i>Which river flows by Rome?</i>
Magístra	Tíberis, cui vetus nōmen erat Álbula.	Teacher: <i>The Tiber, whose old name was the Albula.</i>
Renáta	Unde óritur Tíberis flūmen?	<i>Where does the Tiber River rise?</i>
Magístra	Fōns eius est in Apennínō monte inter Etrúriam ab occidēte et Úmbriam ab oriēte.	<i>Its source is in the Apennines between Etruria on the west side and Umbria on the east side.</i>
Renáta	Estne Tíberis flūmen látíssimum?	<i>Is the Tiber a very wide river?</i>
Magístra	Lātítūdō eius scílicet vária est. Ut ex Apennínō monte prófluit, prīmō angústus est. Sed ut flúvii in eum ínfluunt, Tíberis lātítúdine augétur.	<i>Its width varies, of course. As it flows down from the Apennines, it is narrow at first. But as tributaries flow into it, the Tiber increases in width.</i>
Renáta	Fertúrne Tíberis per dīrēctum?	<i>Does the Tiber flow in a straight line?</i>
Magístra	Mínimē. Ut scīs, Ítália intus est áspera et montána; itaque Tíberis cursū meánte Rōmam pérvenit.	<i>No. As you know, Italy is rugged and mountainous in the interior and so the Tiber arrives at Rome along a winding course.</i>

Renáta	Erátne Tíberis flūmen nāvigābile aetáte Rōmānā?	<i>Was the Tiber a navigable river in Roman times?</i>
Magístra	Ita, sed suprā Rōmam rátibus tantum nāvigābilis erat. Inter Rōmam autem et óstium ómnibus nāvibus nāvigābilis erat.	<i>Yes, but north of Rome it was navigable only to rafts. But between Rome and its mouth the Tiber was navigable to all ships.</i>
Renáta	Quā longitúdine est Tíberis?	<i>What is the length of the Tiber?</i>
Magístra	Círciter centum quīnquāgíntā mília pássuum.	<i>Around one hundred fifty miles.</i>
Renáta	Quantum abest Rōma ā Tíberis óstiō?	<i>How far is Rome from the mouth of the Tiber?</i>
Magístra	Círciter quíndecim mília pássuum distat. Ibi in mare Tyrrhēnum sē effúndit.	<i>About fifteen miles. There it empties into the Tyrrhenian Sea.</i>
Renáta	Quae gēns suprā Tíberim habitābat?	<i>What nation lived north of the Tiber?</i>
Magístra	Etrúscī, quórum prīnceps urbs erat Vēii.	<i>The Etruscans, whose chief city was Veii.</i>
Renáta	Estne Rōma clīvósa an plāna?	<i>Is Rome hilly or flat?</i>
Magístra	Rōma est quidem clīvósa; compléctitur illōs ínclutōs septem montēs. Urbs appósita est fléxui flúminis.	<i>Rome is indeed hilly; it takes in the famous seven hills. The city is located at the bend in the river.</i>
Renáta	Quis mōns est próxímus Tíberī?	<i>Which hill is closest to the Tiber?</i>
Magístra	Mōns Aventínus est próxímus; sed mōns Pālātínus est item prope flūmen.	<i>The Aventine is closest; but the Palatine Hill is likewise close to the river.</i>
Renáta	Útinam aliquándō aspíciam Tíberim!	<i>How I wish to see the Tiber someday!</i>
Magístra	Aspíciēs.	<i>You will.</i>

LEVEL III **Traveling from Rome to Greece.**

Gálfridus	Magíster, quā viā Rōmānī antíquitus in Graéciam iter faciébant?	<i>Jeffrey: Teacher, by what way did the Romans in antiquity travel to Greece?</i>
Magíster	In Ítaliā ipsā, viā Áppia ā portā Capēnā dūcit rēctā ad montem Albānum, deínde per palúdem Pomptínam ad urbem Cápua.	<i>Teacher: In Italy itself, the Via Appia leads from the Porta Capena in a straight line to the Alban Mount, then through the Pomptine marshes to the city of Capua.</i>
Gálfridus	Estne Cápua in Látio an in Campánia?	<i>Is Capua in Latium or in Campania?</i>
Magíster	Cápua est proféctō prínceps urbs Campániae.	<i>Capua is, in fact, the principal city of Campania.</i>
Gálfridus	Quantum Rōma abest Cápua?	<i>How far is Rome from Capua?</i>
Magíster	Abest paulō ámplius quam centum et vīgintī mília pássuum, mēnsūrā cúrrente. Deínde viā dūcit praeter Benevéntum in mediterráneō trāns montem Apennínium ad portum apud Brundísium.	<i>It's a little more than a hundred and twenty miles, as the crow flies. Then the road leads past Beneventum in the interior across the Apennines to the harbor at Brindisi.</i>
Gálfridus	Tendítne mōns Apennínus ad meridiánās regiōnes Ítaliae?	<i>Does the Apennine Range extend to the southern regions of Italy?</i>
Magíster	Ita. Mōns Apennínus, Ítaliae amplíssimus, tendit perpétuīs iugīs ab Álpibus ad Sículum frētum.	<i>Yes. The Apennines, the largest (mountains) of Italy, extend in an unbroken chain from the Alps to the Strait of Messina.</i>
Gálfridus	Nōne finítur viā Áppia ad portum?	<i>Does the Via Appia end at the harbor?</i>
Magíster	Ita. Etiámnum duae colúmnae altae ante portum índicant finem Viae Áppiae.	<i>Yes. Even today two high columns in front of the harbor mark the end of the Via Appia.</i>
Gálfridus	Nāvigábantne Rōmānī per dírectum ad sinum Corinthíacum?	<i>Did the Romans sail in a direct line to the Gulf of Corinth?</i>
Magíster	Nōn. Nam trānsitus trāns Hadriáticum mare erat brevíssimus inter Brundísium et Apollóniam, quae in Illyricō est.	<i>No. You see, the passage across the Adriatic Sea was shortest between Brindisi and Apollonia in Illyria.</i>

Gálfridus	Viātórēs deinde terrēnō itínere Athénās petébant?	<i>Did the travelers then head overland for Athens?</i>
Magíster	Prīmō nāvigábant in merídiem versus, secúndum ōram Illýrici; deinde intrábant sinum Corinthíacum. Postrémō vehébántur terrēnō itínere per isthmum in Átticam et Athénās.	<i>First they sailed southward close to the shore of Illyria; then they entered the Gulf of Corinth. Finally, they traveled overland along the isthmus to Attica and Athens.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

about (*approximately*) cíciter, fermē

accommodations hospíti·um -ī *n*

across trāns (+ *acc*); **across from** ex
advérsō (+ *gen*), exadvérsum (+ *acc*)

adjacent to contérmin·us -a -um (+ *dat*)

adjoin adiúng·or -ī adiúñctus sum (+
dat)

adjoining iūñct·us -a -um; **adjoining
nations** iūñctae nātiōnēs

Adriatic Hadriátic·us -a -um; **the
Adriatic** Hadriáticum mar·e -is *n*

Africa Áfric·a -ae *f*

along per (+ *acc*), secúndum (+ *acc*)

Alps Alp·ēs -ium *fpl*

Alpine Alpín·us -a -um; **Alpine chain**
Álpium iug·a -ŏrum *npl*

America Améric·a -ae *f*; **North
America** América Septentriōnális;
South America América Merīdiána

American Americān·us -a -um

Apennines, Apennine Range
Apennínus mōn·s -tis *m*

Appian Way vi·a -ae *f* Áppia

area tract·us -ūs *m*

Asia Ási·a -ae *f*

at apud (+ *acc*)

Atlantic Atlántic·us -a -um; **Atlantic
Ocean** Atlánticus ōcéan·us -ī *m*,
Atlánticum mar·e -is *n*

Athens Athén·ae -árum *fpl*

Attica Áttic·a -ae *f*

bank rīp·a -ae *f*; **the Tiber having
overflowed its banks** Tíberis super
rīpās effúsus

bay sin·us -ūs *m*, recéss·us -ūs *m*

before (*in front of*) ante (+ *acc*)

begin at incíp·iō -ere incēpī ab (+ *abl*)

Beneventum Benevént·um -ī *n*

big ampl·us -a -um

behind (*in the rear of*) ā tergō (+ *gen*)

bend *s* (*of a river*) flex·us -ūs *m*

bend *intr* sē flect·ō -ere flexī flexus

beyond ultrā (+ *acc*)

border on attíng·ō -ere (+ *acc*)

border fīn·is -is *m*, confīni·um -ī *n*

boundary fīn·is -is *m*; (*dividing line*)
discrīm·en -inis *n*; **at the boundary
between Italy and Switzerland** ad
discrīmen Ítaliae et Helvétiae

bounded: on the east it is bounded by
... ab oriēte cláuditur (+ *abl*)

breadth lātítúd·ō -inis *f*; **in breadth**
lātítúdine, in lātítúdinem

Brindisi Brundísi·um -ī *n*

brook rívul·us -ī *m*

business district empóri·um -ī *n*

called dict·us, appellát·us, vocitát·us,
vocát·us, nuncupát·us -a -um

Campania Campáni·a -ae *f*

canal foss·a -ae *f*

Capua Cápu·a -ae *f*

cape prōmontōri·um -ī *n*

capital cap·ut -itis *n*

cave spec·us -ūs *m*

cavern spēlunc·a -ae *f*

causeway pedēstris tránsit·us-ūs *m*

**chain: the Apennines extending in an
unbroken chain from the Alps to
... Apennínus mōns perpétuis iugīs
ab Álpibus tendēns ad (+ acc)**

circumference circúit·us -ūs *m*; **its
crater measures 500 feet in
circumference** eius crāter patet
circúitū quīngentōs pedēs

city urb·s -is *f*

climate cael·um -ī *n*

cluster (of islands, etc.) celēbrit·ās
-átis *f*

coast ōr·a -ae *f* (marítima); **on the coast**
in ōrā (marítimā)

confluence cónflu·ēns -éntis *m*; **at the
confluence of the Tiber and the
Anio** inter cōnfluéntēs Tíberim et
Aniōnem

course curs·us -ūs *m*; **along a winding
course** meánte cursū

continent par·s -tis *f* mundi (or orbis
terrárum)

Corinth Corínth·us -ī *f*; **gulf of Corinth**
sin·us -ūs *m* Corínthíacus (or
Corínthius)

crater crāt·ēr -éris *m*

creek rīv·us -ī *m*

crest (of a hill) iug·um -ī *n*

crossing (passage) tránsit·us -ūs *m*

crow: as the crow flies mēnsúrā
currēnte [*lit: in a running
measurement*]

current flūm·en -inis *n* (in the sense of
“the flow”); **against the current**
advērsō flūmine; **strong current** vīs
f (no gen; acc: vim; abl: vī)
flūminis; **with the current** sēcúndō
flūmine

curve (in a road, coast) ānfráct·us -ūs *m*

Danube river Danúvius amn·is -is *m*

densely populated region régiō
ubérrimae multitúdinis

desert dēsért·a -órum *npl*

dimensions mēnsúr·a -ae *f* or
mēnsúr·ae -árum *fpl*

directly rēctā, per dirēctum

distance spāti·um -ī *n*; **its distance
from the sea is three miles** abest ā
marī tria mília pássuum

distant longínqu·us -a -um; **to be
distant from** abesse ab (+ *abl*),
distāre ab (+ *abl*)

district tract·us -ūs *m*, ag·er -rī *m*

**dotted: the river is dotted with towns
on the right and left bank** amnis
accólitur (or frequentátur) dextrā
laevāque crebrīs óppidis

earthquake terrae mot·us -ūs *m*

east óri·ēns -éntis *m*; **on the east (side)**
ab oriēte; **to the east** in oriētem
versus (versus is an *adverb*)

eastern orientál·is -is -e

eastward in oriētem versus (versus is
an *adverb*)

empty (into) sē effúnd·ō -ere effúdi
effúsus

end s fin·is -is *m*

end intr désin·ō -ere, fín·ior -íri

estuary aestuári·um -ī *n*

Etruria Etrúri·a -ae *f*

Europe Eurōp·a -ae *f*

European Eurōpaē·us -a -um

extend (*of land, body of water*) tend·ō -ere, prōténd·ō -ere, pát·eō -ēre; **the region extends from ... to ...** régiō tendit ab (+ *abl*) ad (+ *acc*); **to extend over** (*to cover*) obtín·eō -ēre

face spectāre; **to face north** (south, east, west) spectāre in (*or ad*) septentríonēs (merídiem, oriéntem, occidéntem)

famous for ínclutus, nóbilis (+ *abl*)

far longē; **farthest to the south** longíssimē in merídiem; **(not) far from** (haud) procul ab (+ *abl*)

field ag·er -rī *m*

flat plān·us -a -um

flow flu·ō -ere flūxī flūxus; **to flow by** ádlu·ō, adlúere; **to flow down from** dēflúere dē (+ *abl*); **to flow into** ínflúere in (+ *acc*); **to flow out from** efflúere ab (+ *abl*); **to flow past** prae·flúere (+ *acc*), praeter·flúere (+ *acc*)

foot of a mountain rād·īx -ícis *m* montis; **at the foot of the mountain** rādíce montis

foothills rādfíc·ēs -um *mpl* montis

forest silv·a -ae *f*

formerly ánteā

front: in front of ante (+ *acc*)

frontier fín·is -is *m*, términ·us -ī *m*

geography geōgráphi·a -ae *f*

Gibraltar Calp·ē -ēs *f*; **strait of Gibraltar** Gādítānum frēt·um -ī *n*

Greece Graéci·a -ae *f*

gulf sin·us -ūs *m*

harbor port·us -ūs *m*

head for pet·ō -ere petívī petítus

hill coll·is -is *m*

hilly clivós·us -a -um

how: how far is ... from quantum distat (*or abest*) ... ab (+ *abl*)

Illyria Illýric·um -ī *n*

increase *tr* aúg·eō -ēre auxī auctus *ll* *intr* aúg·eor -ēri auctus sum

inland *adv* intus; **towns inland from Tarentum** óppida per continéntem ā Taréntō

inland *adj* intéri·or -or -us; **inland seas** már·ia -ium *npl* interióra

interior s: in the interior in mediterráneō, intus; **toward the interior** intus

interior *adj* intéri·or -or -us

Ireland Híbérni·a -ae *f*

island ínsul·a -ae *f*; **islands off the coast of Greece** ínsulae ante Graéciam

isthmus isthm·us -ī *m* (*f*)

Italy Ítáli·a -ae *f*

jut out *see* project

lagoon stāgn·um -ī *n*

lake lac·us -ūs *m*

land terr·a -ae *f*

lead (*of a road*) dūc·ō -ere dūxī ductus

left siníst·er -ra -rum, laev·us -a -um; **on the left** laevā, ā laevā; **(to the) left** sinistrórsum, laevórsum

length longitúd·ō -inis *f*; **in length** longitúdine, in longitúdinem

lengthwise per longitúdinem

lie iác·eō -ēre -uī; **to lie in the direction of** verg·ō -ere ad (+ *acc*)

line líne·a -ae *f*; **in a straight line** per dírēctum

live (*dwel*) habitāre; **to live near, (in the case of a river) to live on the banks of** áccol·ō -ere -uī accúltum

long long·us -a -um; **fifteen miles long** quíndecim mília pássuum (*often written: p.*) in longitúdinem *or*

quīndecim mīlia pássuum in
longitúdinem patēns

mainland cōntin·ēns -éntis *f*

map of the world orb·is -is *m* terrárum
pīctus

meander meáre

measure pá·eō -é·re, cōllig·ō -ere;

measuring ten miles in

circumference patēns (*or* cōlligēns)
decem mīlia pássuum circúitū

Mediterranean Sea Intérnum mar·e -is
n, Tuscum mare, Tyrrhēnum mare

mine metáll·um -ī *n*; **gold (lead, iron,
copper, silver, tin)** mine metállum
aurī (plumbī, ferrī, aeris, argéntī,
plumbī albī)

moderate: of moderate size módic·us
-a -um

mountain mōn·s -tis *m*

mountain chain mont·ēs -ium *mpl*
perpétuī

mountainous montuó·s·us -a -um,
montān·us -a -um

mouth (of a river) ósti·um -ī *n*

narrow angúst·us -a -um

nation gēn·s -tis *f*

navigable nāvīgābi·lis -is -e

near vīcīn·us -a -um (+ *dat*), prope (+
acc)

next *adv* próximē; **next comes, then ...
then ... after that** unde ... dein ...
dein ... inde ...

next to próxim·us -a -um (+ *dat*), iuxtā
(+ *acc*)

north *adj* supér·ior -ior -ius,
septentrionál·is -is -e

north *adv* ad septentrionēs; **north of**
suprā (+ *acc*), super (+ *acc*)

north *s* septētri·ō -ónis *m* *or*
septentrion·ēs -um *mpl*; **on the**

north ā septentríone; **on the north
(side)** látere septentrionáli

northern septentrionál·is -is -e

northward in septentrionēs versus
(*versus is an adverb*)

ocean océan·us -ī *m*; **the Atlantic**

Ocean océanus Atlánticus *or* mare
Atlánticum

off (said of an island) ante (+ *acc*), apud
(+ *acc*); **off (the coast of) Italy** ante
Ítáliam

opposite *prep* versus (+ *acc*) (*often
postpositive*), adversum (+ *acc*),
contrā (+ *acc*); **opposite of** ex
advérsō *or* exadvérsō (+ *gen*)

pass (defile) salt·us -ūs *m*

past praeter (+ *acc*)

peninsula paenínsul·a -ae *f*

plain camp·us -ī *m*; **open plains** campī
paténtēs

Pomptine Marshes pal·ūs -údis *f*
Pompťína

pond stāgn·um -ī *n*

pool stāgn·um -ī *n*

population multitúd·ō -inis *f*; **the total
number of the population** númer·us
-ī *m* omnis multitúdinis

port port·us -ūs *m*

previously ánteā

principal (chief) prīnc·eps -ipis

productivity (of fields, mines, etc.)
fértilit·ās -átis *f*

project (of a promontory or cape)
excúrr·ō -ere; **to project far out into
the sea** excúrrere longē in mare

race gēn·s -tis *f*

raft rat·is -is *f*

rapids vad·um -ī *n* cándicāns

reach (arrive at) pervén·iō -íre *ad* *or* in
(+ *acc*)

region régi·ō -ōnis *f*

ridge iug·um -ī *n*

right dexter -(e)ra -(e)rum; **on the right** dextrā, ā dexterā; **(to the) right** dextrōrsum; **to turn right** dextrōrsum sē vētere

rise (of a mountain) surg·ō -ere; (of several mountains) cōnsurgere; (of a river, have its source) (ex)ōrior (ex)orīri; **the Tiber rising in the Apennines** Tīberis monte Apennīnō (ex)ōriēns

river flūm·en -inis *n*, amn·is -is *m* (with no distinction as to size)

river bed álve·us -ī *m*

Roman Rōmān·us -a -um

Rome Rōm·a -ae *f* (often referred to simply as urbs)

rugged asp·er -era -erum

sail nāvigāre, (nāve) vehor vehī vectus sum

sea mar·e -is *n*

seacoast ōr·a -ae *f* marítima, lit·us -oris *n*

seashore act·a -ae *f*

separate sēparāre, discern·ō -ere, dúngu·ō -ere; **it is separated from Gaul by the Rhine River** discernitur (or dúnguitor or sēparātur) ā Gállia amne Rhēnō

shallow tenu·is -is -e

short brev·is -is -e

side lat·us -eris *n*; **on the other side of** ultrā (+ *acc*); **on the right (side) of** ā latere dextrō (+ *gen*); **on this side of** cis or citrā (+ *acc*)

site sit·us -ūs *m*, loc·us -ī *m* (*pl*: loc·a -ōrum *npl*)

situated on, near appósit·us -a -um (+ *dat*); **to be situated on a hill** insíd·ō -ere collem

size magnitúd·ō -inis *f*, amplitúd·ō -inis *f*

slope *s* clīv·us -ī *m*; **steep (gentle) slope** árdus (lēnis) clīvus

slope *intr* verg·ō -ere; **sloping toward the sea** vergēns ad mare

source fōn·s -tis *m*

south *adj* infér·ior -ior -ius, merīdián·us -a -um; **on the south side** latere merīdiánō

south *adv* ad merídiem; **south of** infrā (+ *acc*)

south *s* merídi·ēs -ēī *m*, merīdián·um -ī *n*; **in the south** ā merídiē

southern *s* merīdián·us -a -um, infér·ior -ior -ius

southward in merídiem versus (versus *is an adverb*)

spring fōn·s -tis *m*

state stat·us -ūs *m*, cívit·ās -átis *f*

strait frēt·um -ī *n*; **Strait of Messina** frētum Sículum

stream rīv·us -ī *m*

stretch *see extend*

suburb subúrbi·um -ī *n*; **suburbs** continént·ia -ium *npl*

summit cacúm·en -inis *n*

swamp pal·ūs -údis *f*

then (next) dein, inde; (at that time) tum

Tiber Tíber·is -is *m*; (*acc*: Tíberim)

tide aest·us -ūs *m*

topography locórum dēscrípti·ō -ōnis *f*

town oppid·um -ī *n*; **small town** oppídul·um -ī *n*

travel iter fác·iō -ere fēcī factus; (by sea) (nāve) veh·or -ī vectus sum

tributary flúvi·us -ī *m*

Tyrrhenian Sea Tyrrhénicum mar·e -is *n*, Tyrr(h)énium mare

Umbria Úmbri·a -ae *f*

United States (of America) Ūnītī
Stat·ūs -uum *mpl* (Américaē),
Civitatēs Foederātae Americae *tpl*

universe ūnivērs·um -ī *n*, ūnivērsit·ās
-ātis *f*

valley vall·ēs -is *f*

Veii Vēi·ī -ōrum *mpl*

village vīc·us -ī *m*

west occid·ēns -éntis *m*; **in the west** ab
occidēte; **to the west** in occidētem
versus (versus *is an adverb*)

western occidentāl·is -is -e

westward in occidētem versus (versus
is an adverb)

widen *intr* (of a country) sē pand·ō -ere

width lātītūd·ō -inis *f*; **in width**
lātītūdine, in lātītūdinem

winding flexuōs·us -a -um; **winding**
route ámbit·us -ūs *m*

world mund·us -ī *m*, orb·is -is *m*
terrārum

THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

Ūnītī Statūs Americae/Civitatēs Foederātae Americae

[**Note**—The name of each State is given, followed by the name of its capital (*cap*), sometimes another large city or two, the adjective form and the substantive (s) for the inhabitant of the State.]

Alabama Alabám·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Montgomery Mōn·s -tis *m*
Goméricī; **Mobile** Móbil·is -is *f*; *adj*
Alabāméns·is -is -e

Alabaman s Alabāméns·is -is (*gen pl*:
-ium) *mf*

Alaska Alásc·a -ae *f*; (*cap*) **Juneau**
Iunéll·um -ī *n*; **Anchorage**
Ancorári·a -ae *f*; *adj* Alascán·us -a
-um

Alaskan s Alascán·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Arizona Arizón·a -ae *f*; (*cap*) **Phoenix**
Phoen·ix -icis *f*; *adj* Arizónéns·is
-is -e

Arizonan s Arizónéns·is -is (*gen pl*:
-ium) *mf*

Arkansas Arcánsi·a -ae *f*; (*cap*) **Little**
Rock Petrícul·a -ae *f*; *adj*
Arcánsiēns·is -is -e

Arkansan s Arcánsiēns·is -is (*gen pl*:
-ium) *mf*

California Califórni·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Sacramento Sacramént·um -ī *n*; **Los**
Angeles Angelópol·is -is *f*;
Hollywood Ácrifōliórum Silv·a -ae
f; **San Diego** Didacópol·is -is *f*; **San**
Francisco Franciscópol·is -is *f*; *adj*
Californiēns·is -is -e

Californian s Californiēns·is -is (*gen*
pl: -ium) *mf*

Colorado Colōrāt·um -ī *n*; (*cap*)
Denver Denvéri·um -ī *n*; **Durango**
Dūráng·um -ī *n*; *adj* Colōrāténs·is
-is -e

Coloradan s Colōrāténs·is -is (*gen pl*:
-ium) *mf*

Connecticut Connecticút·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)
Hartford Hardifórdi·a -ae *f*; *adj*
Connecticūténs·is -is -e; *s*
Connecticūténs·is -is (*gen pl*: -ium)
mf

Delaware Delevári·a -ae *f*; (*cap*) **Dover**
Dubr·is -is *f*; *adj* Delavarián·us -a
-um

Delawarean *s* Delevārián·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Florida Flórid·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Tallahassee Tellahássi·a -ae *f*;

Miami Miámi·a -ae *f*; **Palm Beach**

Ōr·a -ae *f* Palmária; *adj* Flōridián·us -a -um

Floridian *s* Flōridián·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Georgia Geórgi·a -ae *f*; (*cap*) **Atlanta**

Atlánt·a -ae *f*; **Athens** Athén·ae

-árum *fpl*; **Savannah** Savánn·a -ae *f*;

adj Georgián·us -a -um

Georgian *s* Georgián·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Hawaii Havaí·ī -órum *mpl*; (*cap*)

Honolulu Honolúl·um -ī *n*; **Pearl**

Harbor Port·us -ūs *m* Margaritárius

Hawaiian *adj* Havaíán·us -a -um; *s*

Havaíán·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Idaho Ídah·um -ī *n*; (*cap*) **Boise**

Xylópol·is -is *f*; *adj* Idahéns·is -is -e

Idahoan *s* Idahéns·is -is (*gen pl*: -ium) *mf*

Illinois Illinoési·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Springfield Cāmpifōn·s -tis *m*;

Chicago Chicāg·um -ī *n*; *adj*

Illinoesián·us -a -um

Illinois *s* Illinoesián·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Indiana Indián·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Indianapolis Indiānāpól·is -is *f*; *adj*

Indiānéns·is -is -e

Indianian *s* Indiānéns·is -is *mf*

Iowa Íov·a -ae *f*; (*cap*) **Des Moines**

Monachópol·is -is *f*; *adj* Iován·us -a -um

Iowan *s* Iován·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Kansas Cānsi·a -ae *f*; (*cap*) **Topeka**

Topéc·a -ae *f*; **Kansas City**

Cānsiopol·is -is *f*; *adj* Cānsián·us -a -um

Kansan *s* Cānsián·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Kentucky Kentúki·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Frankfort Francofúrt·um -ī *n*;

Lexington Lexintóni·a -ae *f*; *adj*

Kentukián·us -a -um

Kentuckian *s* Kentukián·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Louisiana Ludovicián·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Baton Rouge Rubrobást·um -ī *n*;

New Orleans Nov·a Auréli·a -ae *f*;

adj Ludoviciānéns·is -is -e

Louisianan *s* Ludoviciānéns·is -is *mf*

Maine Cenománnic·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Augusta Augúst·a -ae *f*; *adj*

Cenománéns·is -is -e

Mainer *s* Cenománnic·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Maryland Terr·a -ae *f* Maríae; (*cap*)

Annapolis Annápol·is -is *f*;

Baltimore Baltimōr·a -ae *f*; *adj* (*use genitive* Terrae Maríae)

Massachusetts Massaciússet·a -ae *f*;

(*cap*) **Boston** Bostóni·a -ae *f*; *adj*

Massaciusetán·us -a -um; *s*

Massaciussetán·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Michigan Michigáni·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Lansing Lánsing·a -ae *f*; **Detroit**

Detroít·um ī *n*; *adj* Michigánéns·is -is -e

Michigander Michigánéns·is -is (*gen pl*: -ium) *mf*

Minnesota Minnesót·a -ae *f*; (*cap*) **St.**

Paul Paulópol·is -is *f*; **Minneapolis**

Minneápol·is -is *f*; *adj*

Minnesótán·us -a -um

Minnesotan *s* Minnesótán·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Mississippi Mississíppi·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Jackson Iacsóni·a -ae *f*; *adj*

Mississippíán·us -a -um

Mississippian *s* Mississippíán·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Missouri Missúri·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Jefferson City Jefferśóni·a -ae *f*; *adj*

Missūrián·us -a -um

Missourian *s* Missūrián·us -ī (·a -ae *f*)

Montana Montán·a -ae f; (*cap*) **Helena**
Helenópolis -is f; *adj* Montāniān·us
-a -um

Montanan s Montāniān·us -ī m (·a -ae
f)

Nebraska Nebrāsc·a -ae f; (*cap*)
Lincoln Lincólni·a -ae f; *adj*
Nebrascān·us -a -um

Nebraskan s Nebrascān·us -ī m (·a
-ae f)

Nevada Nivāt·a -ae f; (*cap*) **Carson**
City Carsóni·a -ae f; **Reno** Rēn·um
-ī n; *adj* Nivātēns·is -is -e

Nevadan s Nivātēns·is -is (*gen pl*:
-ium) *mf*

New Hampshire Nova Hantescír·a -ae
f; (*cap*) **Concord** Concórdi·a -ae f;
adj Novohantescirān·us -a -um; s
Novohantescirān·us -ī m (·a -ae f)

New Jersey Nova Caesarē·a -ae f; (*cap*)
Trenton Trentóni·a -ae f; **Newark**
Nov·a Arc·a -ae f; *adj*
Novocaesariēns·is -is -e

New Jerseyite s Novocaesariēns·is
-is *mf*

New Mexico Nov·um Méxic·um -ī n;
(*comp*) **Santa Fe** Fidēpol·is -is f; *adj*
Novomexicān·us -a -um

New Mexican s Novomexicān·us -ī m
(·a -ae f)

New York (state) Nov·um Eborác·um
-ī n; (*cap*) **Albany** Álbán·um -ī n;
Rochester Rúcup·ae -ārum *fpl*;
Buffalo Búfal·um -ī n; *adj* Neo-
Eborácēns·is -is -e

New York (city) Nov·um Eborác·um -ī
n; **Bronx** Brónxi·a -ae f; **Brooklyn**
Brúclín·um -ī n; **Long Island**
Long·a Ínsul·a -ae f; **Manhattan**
Manhátan·um -ī n

New Yorker s Neo-Eborácēns·is -is *mf*

North Carolina Carolín·a -ae
Septentrionál·is -is f; (*cap*) **Raleigh**

Ralēi·a -ae f; *adj* Carolínēns·is
Septentrionál·is -is -e

North Carolinian s Carolínēns·is -is
mf Septentrionális

North Dakota Dacôt·a -ae
Septentrionál·is -is f; (*cap*) **Bismark**
Bismarcópolis -is f

North Dakotan Dacōtān·us -ī m (·a -ae
f) Septentrionális

Ohio Ohí·um -ī n; (*cap*) **Columbus**
Columbópolis -is f; **Cincinnati**
Cincinnatiópolis -is f; *adj* Ohiēns·is
-is -e

Ohioan s Ohiēns·is -is (*gen pl*: -ium) *mf*

Oklahoma Oclahóm·a -ae f; (*cap*)
Oklahoma City Oclahóm·a -ae
Urb·s -is f; *adj* Oclahōmēns·is -is -e

Oklahoman s Oclahōmēns·is -is (*gen*
pl: -ium) *mf*

Oregon Oregōni·a -ae f; (*cap*) **Salem**
Salem *indecl n*; *adj* Oregōniēns·is
-is -e

Oregonian s Oregōniēns·is -is (*gen pl*:
-ium); *mf*

Pennsylvania Pennsilvāni·a -ae f; (*cap*)
Harrisburg Harrisbúrg·um -ī n;
Philadelphia Philadélphi·a -ae f;
Pittsburgh Pittsbúrg·um -ī n; *adj*
Pennsilvāniēns·is -is -e

Pennsylvanian s Pennsilvāniēns·is -is
(*gen pl*: -ium) *mf*

Rhode Island Rhodēns·is -is Ínsul·a -ae
f; (*cap*) **Providence** Prōvidēnti·a -ae
f; *adj* Rhodēns·is -is

Rhode Islander s Rhodēns·is -is (*gen*
pl: -ium) *mf*

South Carolina Carolín·a -ae
Merīdiōnāl·is -is f; (*cap*) **Columbia**
Colúmbi·a -ae f; *adj* Carolínēns·is
-is -e

South Carolinian s Carolínēns·is
-is (*gen pl*: -ium) *mf* Merīdiōnális

South Dakota Dacōt·a -ae

Merīdiōnāl·is -is *f*; (*cap*) **Pierre**

Petrópolis -is *f*; *adj* Dacōtān·us -a
-um

South Dakotan *s* Dacōtān·us -ī *m* (·a

-ae *f*) Merīdiōnāl·is -is

Tennessee Tennési·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Nashville Nasbúrg·um -ī *n*; *adj*

Tennesián·us -a -um

Tennessean *s* Tennesián·us -ī *m* (·a

-ae *f*)

Texas Téxi·ā -ae *f*; (*cap*) **Austin**

Austinópolis -is *f*; **Dallas**

Dallási·um -ī *n*; **Houston**

Hustópolis -is *f*; *adj* Texián·us -a
-um

Texan *s* Tex·ās -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

Utah Ūta -ae *f*; (*cap*) **Salt Lake City**

Urb·s -is *f* Lacūs Salsī; *adj* Ūténs·is
-is -e

Utahan *s* Ūténs·is -is *m* (*gen pl*
-ium) *mf*

Vermont Mōn·s -tis *m* Víridis ; (*cap*)

Montpelier Mōn·s -tis *m* Pessulānus
adj (*use genitive* Montis Víridis)

Virginia Virgíni·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Richmond Ricmóndi·a -ae *f*; *adj*

Virginiéns·is -is -e

Virginian *s* Virginiéns·is -is (*gen pl*:
-ium) *mf*

Washington Vashintóni·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Olýmpia Olýmpi·a -ae *f*; *adj*

Vashintóniéns·is -is -e

Washingtonian Vashintóniéns·is -is
(*gen pl*: -ium) *mf*

West Virginia Virgíni·a -ae *f*

Occidentális; (*cap*) **Charleston**

Carolópolis -is -is *f*

West Virginian Virginiéns·is -is (*gen*
pl: -ium) *mf* Occidentál·is

Wisconsin Visconsíni·a -ae *f*; (*cap*)

Madison Madisóni·a -ae *n*; *adj*

Visconsián·us -a -um

Wisconsinite Visconsián·us -ī *m* (·a
-ae *f*)

Wyoming Vyómin·a -ae *f*; **Casper**

Caspéri·a -ae *f*; **Cheyenne**

Cheyenn·a -ae *f*; *adj* Vyominánus -a
-um

Wyomingite Vyominán·us -ī *m* (·a -ae
f)

Chapter XXIV: Travel

CONVERSATIONS

LEVEL I At the New York train station.

Diána	Salvē! Velim comparāre tésseram itinerāriam prīmae classis.	Diane: Hello! I'd like to buy a first-class ticket.
Tesserārius	Quō, quaesō?	Ticket agent: Where to, please?
Diána	In Califórniā.	To California.
Tesserārius	Vīsne tésseram unūs cursūs an tésseram itūs reditūsque?	Do you want a one-way ticket or a round-trip ticket?
Diána	Tésseram itūs reditūsque. Quotā hōrā trāmen meum abscēdit?	A round-trip ticket. At what time does the train depart?
Tesserārius	Hōrā undécimā.	At eleven o'clock.
Diána	Ā quotā crepīdine trāmen abscēdit?	From which platform does the train depart?
Tesserārius	Ā crepīdine quārtā, in órbitā décimā.	From platform 4, on track 10.
Diána	Estne trāmen dirēctum?	Is it a through train?
Tesserārius	Mínimē. Mūtābis trāmina in statióne Chicāgēnsī. Quās sārčinās tēcum habēs?	No. You will change trains at the Chicago station. What luggage do you have with you?
Diána	Ūnum riscum, ūnam bulgam, ūnam pēram.	One suitcase, a handbag, and a shoulder bag.
Tesserārius	Cūratiō sarcinārum est illic, iuxtā oecum praestōlātōrium.	The baggage check is over there near the waiting room.
Diána	Suntne báiuilī in promptū?	Are there porters available?
Tesserārius	Ita. Illi illic stant prope scālās móbilēs.	Yes. They are standing there near the escalator.
Diána	Suntne currus cēnātōrius et currus dormitōrius in hōc trāmine?	Are there a dining car and a pullman car on this train?
Tesserārius	Certē.	Certainly.

Diána Quam mox mihi licet trāmen
ferriviārium īnscēdere? *How soon may I board the train?*

Tesserārius Vigīntī aut summum trīgīntā
minūtīs. En, cape hoc hōrārium
trāminum. *In twenty or at most thirty
minutes. Here, take this train
schedule.*

Diána Grātiās. Quantī cōnstat téssera
itinerária? *Thanks. How much is the ticket?*

Tesserārius Centum octōgīntā quīnque
dóllarīs. *\$185.00.*

Diána Ecce vectūram. *Here's the fare.*

Tesserārius Grātiās. Bene ámbulā!
Thanks. Have a good trip!

LEVEL II At the airport.

Rosa Salvē! Velim tésseram itineráriam
(ad urbem) Vindóbonam in
Aústriam comparāre. *Rose: Hello! I'd like to buy a
ticket to Vienna, Austria.*

Tesserārius Habēsne sēdem reservātam?
*Ticket agent: Did you make a
reservation?*

Rosa Nōn hábeō. *I have not.*

Tesserārius Contíngit tibi ut áliquot sēdēs
vácuac restent. Optāsne sēdem
prímae classis? *Lucky for you, there are still some
empty seats. Do you want a
first-class seat?*

Rosa Sānē. *Of course.*

Tesserārius In quā parte aēróplanī vīs sedēre?
*In what section of the plane do
you want to sit?*

Rosa Meā nīl ínterest. Volō autem
prope éxítum sedēre, sī fíerī
potest. *It makes no difference to me; but I
want to sit near an exit if
possible.*

Tesserārius Probē. Hábeō forte vácuam sēdem
in órdine décimō quartō. *Fine. I happen to have an empty
seat in row fourteen.*

Rosa Praéferō sēdem fenestrálem. *I prefer a window seat.*

Tesserārius Bene hoc habet. *That's fine.*

Rosa	Nōne poterō volāre rēctā in Aústriam?	<i>Can I fly directly to Austria?</i>
Tesserārius	Tibi volāndum erit aut per Parísiōs aut Francofórdiam.	<i>You will have to fly either by way of Paris or Frankfurt.</i>
Rosa	Mihi opus erit aëróplana mūtāre?	<i>Will I have to change planes?</i>
Tesserārius	Ita, apud utrúmque aëropórtum.	<i>Yes, at either airport.</i>
Rosa	Apud quem aëropórtum est coniúctiō melior?	<i>At which airport is there the better connection?</i>
Tesserārius	Commorātiō apud aërpórtum Francofordiēsem est satis brevis: duās hōrās summum.	<i>The layover at the Frankfurt airport is fairly short: two hours at most.</i>
Rosa	Bene. Cāpiam volátum per Francofórdiam.	<i>Good. I'll take the flight by way of Frankfurt.</i>
Tesserārius	Probē.	<i>Fine.</i>
Rosa	Licétne hanc sarcínulam manuālem mēcum in aëróplanum portāre?	<i>May I take my hand luggage with me on the plane?</i>
Tesserārius	Licet tibi. Modo repōne eam in retināculō sarcināli suprā sēdem tuam.	<i>You may. Just put it in the luggage rack over your seat.</i>
Rosa	Quāntī cōnstat téssera?	<i>How much is the ticket?</i>
Tesserārius	Ecce tésseram tuam. Prētium est octingēntī trīgintā dóllarī.	<i>Here's your ticket. The price is \$830.00.</i>
Rosa	Praesentāriam pecūniam nōn hábeō. Ecce autem meam tabéllam tribútāriam.	<i>I don't have the cash. But here's my credit card.</i>
Tesserārius	Bene est. Grátias. Bene valē!	<i>That's fine. Thanks. So long.</i>

LEVEL III Getting ready to go by car.

Uxor	Heus, tū, estne autocinētum nostrum adhūc in officiñā reparatōriā? Ut satis scīs, mihi hodiē obsōnāndum est.	Wife: <i>Hey, you, is our car still at the repair shop? As you well know, I have to go shopping today.</i>
Marítus	Mínimē. Ego id iam ex officiñā reparatōriā petīvī.	Husband: <i>No. I've already fetched it from the repair shop.</i>

Uxor	Estne proinde iste currus tandem reparátus?	<i>That car, then, is finally repaired?</i>
Marítus	Ita, motórium rûrsus in bono statû est.	<i>Yes, the motor is in good shape again.</i>
Uxor	Et quid de cúmméis canthîs?	<i>And what about the tires?</i>
Marítus	Cúmmei canthi iam a mechanicô opífice mūtatae sunt.	<i>The mechanic has already changed the tires.</i>
Uxor	Dā operam eîs rebus continuô! Nōn univêrsum diem hábeo quem absúmam.	<i>See to those things immediately! I don't have all day to waste.</i>
Marítus	Dabō profectō. Sed meménto, necesse habébimus cōsistere in statióne benzínariâ ad benzínum comparándum.	<i>I will all right. But remember that we will have to stop at the service station to get gas.</i>
Uxor	Rûrsus?	<i>Again?</i>
Marítus	Rûrsus quidem! Benzínum enim iam déficit.	<i>Yes, again! The gas, you see, is running low.</i>
Uxor	Dî immortalês! Ecquândo mihi erit locus obsônândi! Istuc autocinétum est ingêns moléstia!	<i>Good heavens! When will I ever have a chance to shop? That car is a big pain in the neck!</i>
Marítus	(<i>Sēcum</i>) Et sic tū quoque!	<i>(To himself) And so are you!</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

accelerator accelerát·um -ī *n*

accident cās·us -ūs *m*; **an accident happened on the way** cāsus fortuítō ēvēnit in itínere

airbag aērius foll·is -is *m*

airline trām·es -itis *m* aērius

airplane aēróplan·um -ī *n*

airport aēropórt·us -ūs *m*

air pressure prēssi·ō -ōnis *f* āéria

aisle (*of bus, plane, train*)
ambulātiúncul·a -ae *f*

ambulance autoárce·a -ae *f*

arrival advént·us -ūs *m*

arrival time temp·us -oris *n* adveniéndī

arrive advén·iō -īre advēnī adventūrus;
arrive at pervén·iō -īre pervēnī ad
or in (+ acc)

automobile autoraéd·a -ae *f*,
autocínēt·um -ī *n* (*used interchangeably*)

baggage cart chīramáxi·um -ī *n*
sarcinárum

baggage check cūrátī·ō -ōnis *f*
sarcinárum

board īncénd·ō -ere -ī

bicycle bírot·a -ae *f*

brake *s* sufflám·en -inis *n*; **to apply the brake** rotās sufflāmināre

brake lights (autoraédae) lúminár·ia
-ium *npl* postíca

bumper cont·us -ī *m* tūtórius

bus autoraéd·a -ae *f* longa,
coenautocínēt·um -ī *n*

bypass circúit·us -ūs *m*

can vāscul·um -ī *n* stánneum

car curr·us -ūs *m*, autoraéd·a -ae *f*; **to climb into a car** in currum *or* in autoraédam īncénd·ō -ere -ī; **to**

drive a car currum *or* autoraédam gubernāre *or* agō ágere ēgī āctus; **to get (buy) a car** currum *or* autoraédam comparāre; **to get into a car** currum *or* autoraédam intrō·grédior -gredi -gréssus sum; **to get out of the car** dē currū *or* autoraédā ēgrédior ēgredi ēgréssus sum; **to go by (or in a) car** currū *or* autoraédā eō īre īvī *or* īī; **to go to town by car** autoraédā in urbem sē cónferō -ferre -tulī; **to head for someplace in a car** autóraedā áliquem locum pet·ō -ere -ívi -ítus; **to put the car into the garage** autoraédam in receptáculō collocāre; **to rent a car** autoraédam condúc·ō -ere condúxī condúctus; **to ride in a car** autoraédā vehor vehī vectus sum; **to stop the car** autoraédam sistō sistere stitī; **to take a ride in a car** gestatiónem autoraédā facere; **to take s.o. by car** áliquem autoraédā dúc·ō -ere dúxī ductus; **to take s.o. home in a car** áliquem domum autoraédā addúcere; **car door** autoraédae ōstíol·um -ī *n*; **car key** clav·is -is accēnsíva -ae *f*

carry (*luggage*) báiluláre

car wash autocínēt·ī laváti·ō -ōnis *f*;
(*place*) autocínēti lavatóri·um -ī *n*

change (buses, trains, planes) mūtāre
(autoraédās longās, trámina,
aēróplana)

check into a hotel nōmen in tábulās dēversórii réfer·ō reférre rétulī;
check out of a hotel ā dēversóriō discēd·ō -ere discéssī (post ratiónem compōnéndam)

check luggage sárcinās mandáre

class: first-class seat sēd·ēs -is *f* prīmae classis; **second-class seat** sēd·ēs -is *f* secúndae classis; **tourist-class seat** sēd·ēs -is *f* tūrísticae classis

clutch pedāl·e -is *n* iūnctiōnis (*or* cōpulātiōnis)

cockpit cēllul·a -ae *f* āērōplanī

collision collīsi·ō -ōnis *f*

concourse oec·us -ī *m* praestōlātōrius

conductor (*of a train*) trāminis
īnspect·or -ōris *m*

connection conīūncti·ō -ōnis *f*

depart abscēd·ō -ere abscēssī
abscēssūrus

departure abscēss·us -ūs *m*

detour flex·us -ūs *m*

diesel engine Dīseliānum mōtr·um -ī *n*

diesel fuel Dīseliānum benzīn·um -ī *n*

dining car curr·us -ūs *m* cēnātōrius

drive (*a car, truck, bus*) gubernāre, ag·ō
-ere ēgī āctus; **to drive s.o. home**
āliquem domum autocīnētō (*or*
autoraédā) addūcere

driver autoraedāri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*),
autocīnētīst·ēs *mf*

driver's license autoraedāriī diplōm·a
-atis *n*

engine māchināmēt·um -ī *n*, mōtr·um
-ī *n*

escalator scāl·ae -ārum *fpl* mōbilēs

exhaust ēmissāri·um -ī *n*

exhaust pipe tub·us -ī *m* ēmissārius

exit exit·us -ūs *m*

express train trām·en -inis *n*
rapidīssimum

fare vectūr·a -ae *f*

ferry nāv·is -is *f* trāiectōria

fill it up, please! immissārium
benzīnārium replē tōtum, quaesō!

flight volāt·us -ūs *m*

fly tr fly a plane āērōplanum gubernāre
II *intr* volāre; (*of a passenger*)
āērōplanō vehor, vehī, vectus sum

fuel mātēri·a -ae *f* prōpulsōria

gallon gall·on -ōnis *m*

garage autocīnētī (autocīnētōrum)
receptācul·um -ī *n*; (*repair garage*)
officīn·a -ae *f* reparātōria

gas benzīn·um -ī *n*; **to step on the gas**
accelerāre

gas pedal pedāl·e -is *n* accelerātiōnis

gas pump āntli·a -ae *f* benzīnāria

gas station stāti·ō -ōnis *f* benzīnāria

gas tank immissāri·um -ī *n* benzīnārium

gate (at airport) ādit·us -ūs *m*

gearshift iūncti·ō -ōnis *f* vėlōcitatūm

get off (a bus, plane, ship, train)
ēgrēdiōr ēgredī ēgrēssus sum dē (+
abl)

get on (a bus, plane, ship, train)
īnscēnd·ō -ere -ī in (+ *acc*)

grease ūng·ō ūngere ūnxī ūnctus

grease job ūncti·ō -ōnis *f*

handbag bulg·a -ae *f*; (*of leather and*
bigger than a bulga) vīdul·us -ī *m*

hand luggage sarcīnul·ae -ārum *fpl*
manuālēs

hangar receptācul·um -ī *n*
āēroplanōrum

headlight autoraēdae lūminār·e -is *n*; **to**
turn on (turn off) the bright (dim)
lights lūmināria praecandēntia
(candēntia) accēnd·ō -ere -ī
(exstīngu·ō -ere exstīnxī)

helicopter helicōpter·um -ī *n*; **to be**
taken by helicopter to per
helicōpterum trāns·vehor -vehī
-vēctus sum; **to fly a helicopter**
helicōpterum gubernāre; **to fly in a**
helicopter helicōpterō vehor vehī
vectus sum

highway vi·a -ae *f* autocīnētica

hood plōxen·um -ī *n*

horn búcin·a -ae *f*; **to blow the horn**
búcinā clang·ō -ere

hostess hóspit·a -ae *f* aéria

information indíci·um -ī *n*

interchange coniuncti·ō -ōnis *f* viárum

intersection cómpit·um -ī *n*

jet plane aëróplan·um -ī *n*
pyraulocínéticum

kilometer chilíometr·um -ī *n*

land (*of a plane*) deórsum appéll·ō -ere
áppulī, dēscénd·ō -ere -ī; (*of a ship*)
ad terram appéllere; (*of a passenger*
on a ship) in terram ēgrédior -ī
ēgréssus sum

layover commoráti·ō -ōnis *f*

lead: does this road lead to ... ?
dūcítne haec via ad (+ *acc*)?

license (*to drive*) diplóm·a -atis *n*
gubernatiónis

license plate notácul·um -ī *n* autocínétī

liter litr·a -ae *f*

locomotive curr·us -ūs *m* tractórius

lost: get lost aberráre

lubrication ūncti·ō -ōnis *f* autocínétī

luggage sárcin·ae -árum *fpl*; **piece of**
luggage sárcin·a -ae *f*; (*small*)
sarcínul·a -ae *f*

luggage rack retinácul·um -ī *n*
sarcinále; **put up into the luggage**
rack in retináculō repón·ō -ere
repósui

luggage tag pittáci·um -ī *n* sarcinále

mechanic mechánicus óp·ifex -íficis *m*

moped autobirótul·a -ae *f*

motel dēversóri·um -ī *n* vehiculárium

motor mōtóri·um -ī *n*, mōtr·um -ī *n*

motor boat scaph·a -ae *f* automatária

motorcycle autobírot·a -ae *f*

motorcyclist autobírotári·us -ī *m* (·a
-ae *f*)

motorist autoraedári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*),
autocínētíst·ēs -ae *mf*

motor oil óle·um -ī *n* mōtórii

no parking cavē stātuās vehículum!

no stopping nē sístitō!

no passing cavē praeveháris!

pack (*luggage*) cóllig·ō -ere collégī
colléctus

park *tr* stātu·ō -ere -uī **II** *intr*
autocínētum statúere

parking fee tax·a -ae *f* statíva

parking lot áre·a -ae *f* statíva

parking-lot attendant cust·ōs -ōdis *mf*
áreae statívae

passenger vect·or -ōris *m*, vectr·ix -ícis
f

passenger train trām·en -inis *n*
commúne

passing: no passing! cavē praeveháris!

passport commeátus diplóm·a -atis *n*

pilot *s* gubernát·or -ōris *m*, gubernátr·ix
-ícis *f*

pilot *tr* gubernáre

plane aëróplan·um -ī *n*

platform (*in a train station*) crepíd·ō
-inis *f*

porter báíul·us -ī *m*

pullman car curr·us -ūs *m* dormitórius

railroad ferrívi·a -ae *f*

railroad car curr·us -ūs *m* ferriviárius

railroad station státi·ō -ōnis *f*
ferriviária

reach (*arrive at*) pervén·iō -íre pervēnī
pervéntus ad *or* in (+ *acc*)

reservation reserváti·ō -ōnis *f*

reserve reserváre

restaurant caupón·a -ae *f*

restroom loc·us -ī *m* sēcrētus

return réd·eō -īre -iī réditus

ride (*a car, plane, train*) vehor, vehī,
vectus sum (autocīnētō, aērōplanō,
trāmīne)

ride vécti·ō -ōnis *f*; **to go for a ride**
gestātiōnem autocīnētō fácere

route certus curs·us -ūs *m*

row ōrd·ō -inis *m*

runway aērōdrom·us -ī *m*

sail nāvigāre, nāve veh·or -ī vectus sum

schedule: bus schedule hōrāri·um -ī *n*
autoraedārum longārum; **flight**
schedule hōrāri·um -ī *n*
aērōplanōrum; **train schedule**
hōrāri·um -ī *n* trāminum

seat sēd·ēs -is *f*; **aisle seat** sēdēs
andrōnālis; **back seat** sēdēs
postērior; **front seat** sēdēs antērior;
reserved seat sēdēs reservāta;
window seat sēdēs fenestrālis

seatbelt cinctūr·a -ae *f* sēcūrītātis;
fasten (unfasten, take off) the
seatbelt cinctūram sēcūrītātis
adstrīng·ō -ere adstrīxī adstrīctus
(laxāre, levāre)

service station stāti·ō -ōnis *f* benzīnāria

shoulder bag per·a -ae *f*

side street vi·a -ae *f* laterālis

skycap báiu·us -ī *m*

sleeping car curr·us -ūs *m* dormitōrius

slow down cursum réprimō reprímere
représsī

spark plug candél·a -ae *f* accēnsíva

speed limit mod·us -ī *m* vélōcitatís

steer gubernāre

steering wheel rot·a -ae *f* moderātrīx

steward hos·pes -itis *m* aérius

stewardess hōspit·a -ae *f* aéria

stop (*come to a stop*) cōnsist·ō -ere
cōstitī; **does the bus (train) stop in**
... subsistītne autoraēda longa
(trāmen) in (+ *abl*)?; **make a stop**
(*of a bus, plane, train*) commór·or
-ārī -ātus sum

stop-over commorāti·ō -ōnis *f*

street (*paved*) strāt·a -ae *f*

streetcar curr·us -ūs *m* elēctricus

street map tábul·a -ae *f* viāria

subway ferrívi·a -ae *f* subterrānea

suitcase vídul·us -ī *m*, risc·us -ī *m*;
(*small one*) ríscul·us -ī *m*

taillight lūminār·e -is *n* postícum

take off (*of a plane*) sūrsum in aēra
ascēnd·ō -ere -ī

take-off (*of a plane*) āvolāti·ō -ōnis *f*

taxi raed·a -ae *f* meritória

terminal stāti·ō -ōnis *f* terminālis

ticket tesser·a -ae *f* (itinerāria); **first-**
class (second-class) ticket téssera
prīmae (secūndae) classis; **one-way**
ticket téssera ūnūs cursūs; **punch**
the ticket tésseram perforāre; **return**
ticket téssera réditūs; **round-trip**
ticket téssera itūs reditūsque

ticket agent tesserāri·us -ī *m*, (·a -ae *f*)

ticket window ōstíol·um -ī *n* tesserārum

time table hōrāri·um -ī *n*

tire cúmmes canth·us -ī *m*; **to put air**
in the tire cúmmes canthum
īnflāre

toll rotāri·um -ī *n*, vectīg·al -ālis *n*
rotāre

toll booth tabérn·a -ae *f* rotāris

toll road vi·a -ae *f* rotāris

tour peregrīnāti·ō -ōnis *f*

tour bus coenautocīnēt·um -ī *n*
perigētīcum

tour guide mystagóg·us -ī *m* (·a
-ae *f*)

tourist peregrinātor -tōris *m* (•trīx -trīcis *f*)

tourist class class-is *f* tūristica

track (rail) orbita -ae *f*

traffic célébritās -ātis *f* viae,
vehiculorum frequentia -ae *f*

traffic cop vigil -is *mf* viatōrius (-a)

traffic jam affluētia -ae *f* vehiculāria

traffic light sēmáphorūm -ī *n* (**red**
rubrum; **yellow** flāvum; **green**
vīride)

train trām-en -inis *n*; **a through train**
trāmen directum

train schedule hōrāriūm -ī *n* ferriviāle

train station stātiō -ōnis *f* ferriviāria

train ticket tésser-a -ae *f* ferriviāria

transfer to (another train, etc.)
trāscēndō -ere -ī *in* (+ *acc*)

transportation vectūra -ae *f*,
commēātūs vehicul-a -ōrum *npl*

travel iter fác-iō -ere fēcī factus; **travel**
by car (train, plane, ship)
autocinētō (trāmine, aērōplanō, nāvī)
vehor vehī vectus sum

travel agency sēd-ēs -is *f* periēgētica

travel agent itinērum prōcūrātor -tōris
m (•trīx -trīcis *f*)

traveler viāt-or -ōris *m*, viātr-īx -īcis *f*;
(abroad) peregrinātor -tōris *m* (•trīx
-trīcis *f*)

trip iter, itinēris *n*; **take a trip** iter
facere

trolley curr-us -ūs *m* ēléctricus

truck autocinētūm -ī *n* onerārium,
autocārrūm -ī *n*

truck driver, trucker autocinētī
onerārii gubernāt-or -ōris *m*

trunk (of a car) receptāculūm -ī *n*
sarcinārum; (for clothes) cist-a -ae *f*

tunnel (for trains, cars) spec-us -ūs *m*
(ferriviārius, autocinēticus)

turn s (in the road) flex-us -ūs *m* viae;
take a wrong turn pérperam vert-or
-ī versus sum

turn intr vert-or -ī versus sum; **turn**
around convért-or -ī convérsus sum

turn-off dēverticulūm -ī *n*

turnpike strāt-a -ae *f* autocinētica
quadripertīta

turn signal ind-ex -icis *m* dirēctiōnis

way vi-a -ae *f*, it-er -inēris *n*; **what is**
the quickest (best) way to ... ?
quae est via brevissima (óptima) ad
(+ *acc*)?

waiting room oec-us -ī *m*
praestōlātórius

window (of bus, car, etc.) fenestell-a
-ae *f*

window seat sēd-ēs -is *f* fenestrális

windshield vitrūm -ī *n* antiāérium

windshield wiper vitritérgiūm -ū *n*

Chapter XXV: Teaching Grammar in Latin

CONVERSATIONS

[Note 1]—In this chapter on teaching and learning Latin grammar in Latin, in place of the usual model conversations, there will be questions by the teacher (**Magistra**, **Magister**) and answers by the student (**Studēns**). Using these exchanges as models, Latin classes can be conducted in Latin. If some of the responses by the student seem overly long, they may easily be reformulated into several shorter questions. The grammatical terms and structures are based on the writings of the Roman grammarians.

Note 2—It is possible to proceed directly to “The Parsing of Words” which follows the section on principal parts, although it is better to at least read carefully the discussion of the principal parts in order to become familiar with the grammatical terminology before beginning to parse.]

Dē Pártibus Ōrātiónis *The Parts of Speech*

Magist.	Partēs ōrātiónis quot sunt?	<i>How many parts of speech are there?</i>
Studēns	Octō.	<i>Eight.</i>
Magist.	Quae?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Nōmen, prōnómen, verbum, adiectívum, advérbum, coniúctiō, praepositíō, interiéctiō.	<i>Noun, pronoun, verb, adjective, adverb, conjunction, preposition, interjection.</i>

Dē Nómīne *The Noun*

[Note]—When declining nouns, Roman grammarians used “hic, haec, hoc” as definite articles, meaning “the,” and not as demonstrative adjectives; they called them “prōnōmina articulāria praepositíva”, that is, “prepositive pronouns serving as articles.” Therefore, they will be translated as “the” in the declensions.]

Magist.	Díc [or dā] nōmen próprium.	<i>Give a proper noun.</i>
Studēns	Caesar.	<i>Caesar.</i>
Magist.	Díc nōmen appellatívum.	<i>Give a common noun.</i>
Studēns	Puella.	<i>Girl.</i>

Magist.	Dīc nōmen collectīvum.	<i>Give a collective noun.</i>
Studēns	Pópulus.	<i>People.</i>
Magist.	Quārē “pópulus” dīcitur nōmen collectīvum?	<i>Why is “people” called a collective noun?</i>
Studēns	Quia “pópulus” est númeri singuláris at multitúdinem significāns.	<i>Because “people” is singular in number, but indicating plural.</i>
Magist.	Génera nōminum quot sunt?	<i>How many genders do nouns have?</i>
Studēns	Tria.	<i>Three.</i>
Magist.	Quae?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Genus masculīnum, ut “hic magíster”; genus fēminīnum, ut “haec mātṛōna”; genus neutrum, ut “hoc dōnum.”	<i>Masculine gender, for example, “the teacher”; feminine gender, for example, “the lady”; neuter gender, for example, “the gift.”</i>
Magist.	Númeri nōminum quot sunt?	<i>How many numbers are there of nouns?</i>
Studēns	Duo.	<i>Two.</i>
Magist.	Quī?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Singuláris, ut “hic magíster”; plūrális, ut “hī magístṛī.”	<i>Singular, for example, “the teacher”; plural, for example, “the teachers.”</i>
Magist.	Cāsūs nōminum quot sunt?	<i>How many cases of nouns are there?</i>
Studēns	Sex.	<i>Six.</i>
Magist.	Quī?	<i>What (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Nōminātīvus, ut “hic magíster”; genítīvus, ut “hūius magístṛī”; datívus, ut “huic magístṛō”; accūsātívus, ut “hunc magístṛum”; vocātívus, ut “ō magíster”; ablātívus, ut “ab hōc magístṛō.”	<i>Nominative, for example, “the teacher”; genitive, for example, “of the teacher”; dative, for example, “to the teacher”; accusative, for example, “the teacher”; vocative, for example, “oh teacher”; ablative, for example, “from the teacher.”</i>

Magist.	Dā dēclīnātiōnem nōminis, gēneris fēmīnīnī, nūmerī singulāris.	<i>Give the declension of a noun of the feminine gender, singular number.</i>
Studēns	Nōminātīvō cāsū: “haec puēlla”; genitīvō cāsū: “hūius puēllae”; datīvō cāsū: “huic puēllae”; accūsātīvō cāsū: “hanc puēllam”; vocātīvō cāsū: “ō puēlla”; ablātīvō cāsū: “ab hāc puēllā.”	<i>In the nominative case: “the girl”; in the genitive case: “of the girl”; in the dative case: “to the girl”; in the accusative case: “the girl”; in the vocative case: “oh girl”; in the ablative case: “from the girl.”</i>
Magist.	Quae partēs ōrātiōnis eōdem modō dēclīnāntur?	<i>What parts of speech are declined in the same way?</i>
Studēns	Nōmina, prōnōmina, adiectīva, participīa, gerūndia.	<i>Nouns, pronouns, adjectives, participles, and gerunds.</i>
Magist.	Dēclīnātiōnēs nōminum quot sunt?	<i>How many declensions of nouns are there?</i>
Studēns	Quīnque.	<i>Five.</i>
Magist.	Prīma quae est?	<i>What is the first (declension)?</i>
Studēns	Prīma dēclīnātiō est nōminis, cūius genitīvus singulāris in “ae” diphthōngō terminātur.	<i>The first declension is of a noun whose genitive singular ends in the diphthong “ae.”</i>
Magist.	Dā exēmplum.	<i>Give an example.</i>
Studēns	haec puēlla hūius puēllae	<i>the girl of the girl</i>
Magist.	Secūnda dēclīnātiō quae est?	<i>What is the second declension?</i>
Studēns	Secūnda dēclīnātiō est nōminis, cūius genitīvus singulāris in “ī” longā terminātur.	<i>The second declension is of a noun whose genitive singular ends in a long “ī.”</i>
Magist.	Dā exēmplum.	<i>Give an example.</i>
Studēns	hic magīster hūius magīstrī vel hoc dōnum hūius dōnī	<i>the teacher of the teacher or the gift of the gift</i>
Magist.	Tértia dēclīnātiō quae est?	<i>What is the third declension?</i>
Studēns	Tértia dēclīnātiō est nōminis, cūius genitīvus singulāris in “is” brevī terminātur, ut “hic pater”, “hūius patris.”	<i>The third declension is of a noun whose genitive singular ends in a short “is,” for example, “the father,” “of the father.”</i>

Magist.	Quārta dēclīnātiō quae est?	<i>What is the fourth declension?</i>
Studēns	Quārta dēclīnātiō est nōminis, cūius genitīvus singulāris in “ūs” longā terminātur, ut “hic exércitus,” “hūius exércitūs.”	<i>The fourth declension is of a noun whose genitive singular ends in a long “ūs,” for example, “the army,” “of the army.”</i>
Magist.	Quīnta dēclīnātiō quae est?	<i>What is the fifth declension?</i>
Studēns	Quīnta dēclīnātiō est nōminis, cūius genitīvus singulāris terminātur in “ēī” divīsīs, ut “hic diēs,” “hūius diēī.”	<i>The fifth declension is of a noun whose genitive singular ends in “ēī” as separate letters, for example, “the day,” “of the day.”</i>
Magist.	Dēscribē proprietātēs “magīster” nōminis.	<i>Parse the noun “teacher.”</i>
Studēns	“Magīster” est nōmen appellatīvum, masculīnī gēneris, nūmerī singulāris, cāsū nōminatīvō.	<i>“Teacher” is a common noun, masculine gender, singular number, in the nominative case.</i>

Dē Prōnōmine

The Pronoun

Magist.	Prōnōmen quid est?	<i>What is a pronoun?</i>
Studēns	Pars ōrātiōnis quae prō nōmine pōnitur.	<i>A part of speech which is used in place of a noun.</i>
Magist.	Nūmerī prōnōminum quot sunt?	<i>How many numbers do pronouns have?</i>
Studēns	Duo.	<i>Two.</i>
Magist.	Quī?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Singulāris, ut “ille”; plurālis, ut “illī.”	<i>Singular, for example, “that one”; plural, for example, “those.”</i>
Magist.	Gēnera prōnōminum quot sunt?	<i>How many genders do pronouns have?</i>
Studēns	Tria.	<i>Three.</i>
Magist.	Quae?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Genus masculīnum, fēminīnum, neutrum.	<i>Masculine, feminine, and neuter gender.</i>

Magist.	Prōnōmina sunt aut finīta aut īnfīnīta. Dā exēmpla prōnōminis finīti.	<i>Pronouns are either definite or indefinite. Give examples of a definite pronoun.</i>
Studēns	Ego, tū, ille.	<i>I, you, he.</i>
Magist.	Dā exēmpla prōnōminis īnfīnīti.	<i>Give examples of an indefinite pronoun.</i>
Studēns	Quī, āliquis.	<i>Who, someone.</i>
Magist.	Dā exēmpla prōnōminis dēmōnstrātīvi.	<i>Give examples of a demonstrative pronoun.</i>
Studēns	Hic, ille.	<i>This one, that one.</i>
Magist.	Dā exēmpla prōnōminis relātīvi.	<i>Give examples of a relative pronoun.</i>
Studēns	Quī, quae, quod.	<i>Who, who, which.</i>
Magist.	Dā exēmpla prōnōminis interrōgātīvi.	<i>Give examples of an interrogative pronoun.</i>
Studēns	Quis, quid.	<i>Who, what.</i>
Magist.	Dā exēmpla prōnōminis intentiōnis.	<i>Give examples of an intensive pronoun.</i>
Studēns	Ipse, ipsa, ipsum.	<i>Himself, herself, itself.</i>
Magist.	Dā exēmpla prōnōminis recíproci.	<i>Give examples of a reflexive pronoun.</i>
Studēns	Sē, sibi.	<i>Himself (herself, itself), to himself (herself, itself).</i>
Magist.	Dā exēmpla prōnōminis persōnālis.	<i>Give examples of a personal pronoun.</i>
Studēns	Ego, nōs, tū.	<i>I, we, you.</i>
Magist.	Prōnōmen est aut simplex aut compōsitum. Dā exēmplum prōnōminis simplici.	<i>A pronoun is either simple or compound. Give an example of a simple pronoun.</i>
Studēns	Quis.	<i>Who.</i>
Magist.	Dā exēmplum prōnōminis compōsitī.	<i>Give an example of a compound pronoun.</i>
Studēns	Quisnam.	<i>Just who.</i>

Magist.	Ex quibus “quisnam” compónitur?	<i>Of what is “just who” composed?</i>
Studēns	Ex “quis” prōnómīne et ex “nam” partículā.	<i>Of the pronoun “who” and the particle “just.”</i>
Magist.	Estne figúra “quisquis” prōnómīnis simplex an compósita?	<i>Is the form of the pronoun “whoever” simple or compound?</i>
Studēns	Est compósita.	<i>It is compound.</i>
Magist.	Dēscrībe proprietátēs “ego” prōnómīnis.	<i>Parse the pronoun “I.”</i>
Studēns	“Ego” est prōnómen finítum, géneris masculínī et fēminínī, persónae primae, númerī singuláris, cāsū nōminatīvō.	<i>“I” is a definite pronoun, masculine and feminine, first person, singular, in the nominative case.</i>
Magist.	Dēscrībe proprietátēs “quōrum” prōnómīnis.	<i>Parse the pronoun “of whom.”</i>
Studēns	“Quōrum” est prōnómen relatīvum aut interrōgātīvum, persónae tertiāe, númerī plūrális, géneris masculínī et neutríus, cāsū genitívō.	<i>“Of whom” or “whose” is a relative or interrogative pronoun, third person, plural, masculine and neuter, in the genitive case.</i>

Dē Verbō

The Verb

[**Note**—Roman grammarians recognized five moods; modern Latin grammars recognize three: indicative, subjunctive, and imperative.]

Magist.	Verbum quid est?	<i>What is a verb?</i>
Studēns	Pars orātiónis cum témpore et persónā sine cāsū.	<i>A part of speech with tense and person, without case.</i>
Magist.	Modī quot sunt?	<i>How many moods are there?</i>
Studēns	Quínque.	<i>Five.</i>
Magist.	Quī?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Indicatīvus, ut “legō”; subiūctīvus, ut “cum legam”; imperatīvus, ut “lege”; infīnitīvus, ut “légere”; impersónális, ut “légitur.”	<i>Indicative, for example, “I read, am reading”; subjunctive, for example, “although I read”; imperative, for example, “read!”; infinitive, for example, “to read”; impersonal, for example, “people read.”</i>

Magist.	Númerī verbōrum quot sunt?	<i>How many numbers do verbs have?</i>
Studēns	Duo.	<i>Two.</i>
Magist.	Quī?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Singulāris et plūrālis.	<i>Singular and plural.</i>
Magist.	Persónae verbōrum quot sunt?	<i>How many persons of verbs are there?</i>
Studēns	Trēs.	<i>Three.</i>
Magist.	Quae?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Prīma, ut “legō”; secūnda, ut “legis”; tertia, ut “legit.”	<i>First, for example, “I read, am reading”; second, for example, “you read, are reading”; third, for example, “he, she reads, is reading.”</i>
Magist.	Tēpora in dēclinātiōne verbōrum quot sunt?	<i>How many tenses are there in the conjugation of verbs?</i>
Studēns	Sex.	<i>Six.</i>
Magist.	Quae?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Praesēns, ut “legō”; praetēritum imperfēctum, ut “legēbam”; futūrum, ut “legam”; praetēritum perfēctum, ut “lēgī”; praetēritum plūsquamperfēctum, ut “lēgeram”; futūrum perfēctum, ut “lēgerō.”	<i>Present, for example, “I read, am reading”; imperfect, for example, “I was reading, used to read”; future, for example, “I shall read”; perfect, for example, “I read, have read”; pluperfect, for example, “I had read”; future perfect, for example, “I shall have read.”</i>
Magist.	Coniugātiōnēs verbōrum quot sunt?	<i>How many conjugations are there?</i>
Studēns	Quattuor.	<i>Four.</i>
Magist.	Quae?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Prīma, secūnda, tertia, quārta.	<i>First, second, third, fourth.</i>

Magist.	Dēclīnā verbum āctīvum prīmae coniugātiōnis, indicātīvō modō, tēmpore praesēntī, nūmerō singulārī.	<i>Conjugate an active verb of the first conjugation, in the indicative mood, present tense, singular.</i>
Studēns	amō amās amat	<i>I love you love he or she loves</i>
Magist.	Dēclīnā verbum āctīvum secūndae coniugātiōnis, indicātīvō modō, tēmpore praetēritō imperfēctō, plūrālīter.	<i>Conjugate an active verb of the second conjugation, indicative mood, in the imperfect tense, in the plural.</i>
Studēns	docēbāmus docēbātis docēbant	<i>we were teaching you were teaching they were teaching</i>
Magist.	Dēclīnā verbum āctīvum tērtiae coniugātiōnis, indicātīvō modō, tēmpore futūrō, nūmerō singulārī.	<i>Conjugate an active verb of the third conjugation, indicative mood, future, singular.</i>
Studēns	regam regēs reget	<i>I shall rule you will rule he or she will rule</i>
Magist.	Dēclīnā verbum āctīvum quārtae coniugātiōnis, indicātīvō modō, tēmpore praetēritō plūsquamperfēctō, plūrālīter.	<i>Conjugate an active verb of the fourth conjugation, indicative mood, pluperfect tense, plural.</i>
Studēns	audīverāmus audīverātis audīverant	<i>we had heard you had heard they had heard</i>

[**Note**—*genus* in connection with nouns means “gender”; in connection with verbs it means “voice.”]

Magist.	Gēnera verbōrum quot sunt?	<i>How many voices of verbs are there?</i>
Studēns	Quattuor.	<i>Four.</i>
Magist.	Quae?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Āctīva, passīva, neutra vel neutrālīa, dēpōnēntīa.	<i>Active, passive, intransitive, deponent (verbs).</i>

Magist.	Dā exémpła verbī neutrális.	<i>Give (me some) examples of an intransitive verb.</i>
Studēns	Sédeō, stō, cubō.	<i>I sit, am sitting; I stand, am standing; I lie down, I am lying down.</i>
Magist.	Dā exémpła verbī dēpōnētis.	<i>Give (me some) examples of a deponent verb.</i>
Studēns	Loquor, sequor, fruor.	<i>I speak, am speaking; I follow, am following; I enjoy, am enjoying.</i>
Magist.	Dā dēclīnātiōnem verbī āctīvī “legō” indicātīvō modō, tēmpore praesēntī, singulārīter.	<i>Give the conjugation of the active verb “legō” in the indicative mood, present tense, in the singular.</i>
Studēns	Dēclīnātur: legō legis legit	<i>It is conjugated: I read, am reading you read, are reading he or she reads, is reading</i>
Magist.	Dēclīnā idem verbum āctīvum, tēmpore praetēritō imperfēctō, plūrālīter.	<i>Conjugate the same verb in the imperfect tense, in the plural.</i>
Studēns	Dēclīnātur: legēbāmus legēbātis legēbant	<i>It is conjugated: we were reading you were reading they were reading</i>
Magist.	Dā dēclīnātiōnem eiusdem verbī āctīvī, tēmpore praesēntī, modō subiūnctīvō, singulārīter.	<i>Give the conjugation of the same active verb in the present tense, subjunctive, singular.</i>
Studēns	Dēclīnātur: legam legās legat	<i>It is conjugated: I may read you may read he or she may read</i>
Magist.	Dēclīnā idem verbum āctīvum tēmpore praetēritō plūsquamperfēctō, modō subiūnctīvō, plūrālīter.	<i>Conjugate the same active verb in the pluperfect subjunctive plural.</i>
Studēns	Dēclīnātur: lēgissēmus lēgissētis lēgissent	<i>It is conjugated: we would have read you would have read they would have read</i>

Magist.	Dīc imperātīvum eīusdem verbī, tēmpore praesentī, singulāriter et plūrāliter.	<i>Give the present imperative of the same verb in the singular and the plural.</i>
Studēns	“Lege!,” “légite!”	<i>Read! (singular), read! (plural)</i>
Magist.	Dīc imperātīvum eīusdem verbī, tēmpore futūrō, secūdā et tertiā persónā, singulāriter et plūrāliter.	<i>Give the future imperative of the same verb in the second and third person singular and plural.</i>
Studēns	Persónā secūdā: “légitō!,” “legitôte!”; persónā tertiā: “légitō!,” “legúntō!”	<i>Second person: you will read! (singular); you will read! (plural); third person: let him or her read!; let them read!</i>
Magist.	Dīc participium hūius verbī, praesentī tēmpore.	<i>Give the present participle of this verb.</i>
Studēns	Legēns.	<i>Reading.</i>
Magist.	Dīc participium hūius verbī, futūrō tēmpore.	<i>Give the future participle of this verb.</i>
Studēns	Lēctūrus.	<i>About to read.</i>
Magist.	Dīc participium hūius verbī, praetēritō perfēctō tēmpore.	<i>Give the perfect participle of this verb.</i>
Studēns	Lēctus.	<i>Having been read.</i>
Magist.	Dīc īfinītīvum āctīvum hūius verbī, praesentī tēmpore.	<i>Give the present active infinitive of this verb.</i>
Studēns	Légere.	<i>To read.</i>
Magist.	Dīc īfinītīvum passīvum hūius verbī, praesentī tēmpore.	<i>Give the present passive infinitive of this verb.</i>
Studēns	Legī.	<i>To be read.</i>
Magist.	Dīc īfinītīvum āctīvum hūius verbī, praetēritō perfēctō tēmpore.	<i>Give the perfect active infinitive of this verb.</i>
Studēns	Lēgisse.	<i>To have read.</i>
Magist.	Dīc īfinītīvum passīvum hūius verbī, praetēritō perfēctō tēmpore.	<i>Give the perfect passive infinitive of this verb.</i>
Studēns	Lēctus esse.	<i>To have been read.</i>

Magist.	Dēscrībe proprietātēs “legō” verbī.	<i>Parse the verb “legō.”</i>
Studēns	“Legō” est verbum āctīvum indicātīvī modī, prīmae persónae, númerī singulāris, témporis praeséntis, tértiae coniugātiónis.	<i>“Legō” is an active verb, used in the indicative mood, first person, singular, present tense, third conjugation.</i>
Magist.	Dā exémpła verbī inaequális.	<i>Give (me some) examples of an irregular verb.</i>
Studēns	Fiō, sóleō, ferō, gaúdeō, nōlō.	<i>I become, I am wont, I bear, I am glad, I do not want.</i>
Magist.	Quārē inaequália dīcuntur?	<i>Why are they called irregular?</i>
Studēns	Quia dēclīnātiónes extrā régulam sunt.	<i>Because they are conjugated outside the (normal) pattern.</i>
Magist.	Dā exémpła verbī dēfectívī.	<i>Give (some) examples of a defective verb.</i>
Studēns	Pudet, ōdī.	<i>It shames, I hate.</i>
Magist.	Quārē dēfectíva dīcuntur?	<i>Why are they called defective?</i>
Studēns	Quia haec verba quibúsdam figúrīs egent.	<i>Because these verbs lack certain forms.</i>
Magist.	Quibus figúrīs “pudet” eget?	<i>What forms does “pudet” (it shames) lack?</i>
Studēns	Eget persónā prīmā et secúndā. Díctur étiam verbum impersónále.	<i>It lacks the first and second person. It is also called an impersonal verb.</i>
Magist.	Quibus figúrīs “ōdī” eget?	<i>What forms does “ōdī” (I hate) lack?</i>
Studēns	Habet neque tempus praesēns, neque praetérítum imperfécum neque futúrum.	<i>It doesn’t have a present, imperfect, or future tense.</i>
Magist.	Dā partēs prīncipālēs “dóceō” verbī.	<i>Give the principal parts of the verb “doceō.”</i>
Studēns	Dóceō, docēre, dócuī, doctus.	<i>I teach, am teaching; to teach; I taught, have taught; taught, having been taught.</i>

Dē Advérbiō

The Adverb

Magist.	Advérbiū quid est?	<i>What is an adverb?</i>
Studēns	Pars ōrātiōnis quae verbō adīcitur et verbum explānat atque implet.	<i>The part of speech which modifies the verb and explains and completes it.</i>
Magist.	Cui dictiōnī advérbiū adīcitur?	<i>What word does an adverb modify?</i>
Studēns	Vel verbō vel advérbiō vel adiectívō adīcitur.	<i>It modifies a verb, an adverb, or an adjective.</i>
Magist.	Dā advérbia locī.	<i>Give (some) adverbs of place.</i>
Studēns	Hīc, ibi, intus, forīs, illīc, inde.	<i>Here, there, inside, outside, there, from there.</i>
Magist.	Dā advérbia témporis.	<i>Give (some) adverbs of time.</i>
Studēns	Hódiē, nūper, aliquándō, mox.	<i>Today, recently, sometime, soon.</i>
Magist.	Dā advérbia númerī.	<i>Give (some) adverbs of number.</i>
Studēns	Semel, bis, ter, déciēs.	<i>Once, twice, three times, ten times.</i>
Magist.	Dā advérbiū affirmándī.	<i>Give an adverb of affirmation.</i>
Studēns	Étiam.	<i>Yes.</i>
Magist.	Dā advérbiū negándī.	<i>Give an adverb of negation.</i>
Studēns	Nōn.	<i>No.</i>
Magist.	Dā advérbia interrōgándī.	<i>Give (some) interrogative adverbs.</i>
Studēns	Cūr, quārē, quámobrem.	<i>Why, why, why.</i>
Magist.	Dā advérbia órdisinis.	<i>Give (some) adverbs of a series.</i>
Studēns	Prīmum, deінде, postrémō.	<i>First, then, finally.</i>
Magist.	Dā advérbia quantitátis.	<i>Give (some) adverbs of quantity.</i>
Studēns	Multum, parum.	<i>Much, little.</i>
Magist.	Dā advérbia qualitátis.	<i>Give (some) adverbs of quality.</i>
Studēns	Pulchrē, bene, male.	<i>Beautifully, well, badly.</i>

Magist.	Quot gradūs comparātiōnis sunt advérbiis?	<i>How many degrees of comparison do adverbs have?</i>
Studēns	Trēs.	<i>Three.</i>
Magist.	Quī?	<i>What (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Positīvus, ut “saepe”; comparatīvus, ut “saepius”; superlatīvus, ut “saepissimē.”	<i>The positive, for example, “often”; the comparative, for example, “more often”; the superlative, for example, “very often.”</i>
Magist.	Suntne advérbia declinábilia an indeclinábilia?	<i>Are adverbs declinable or indeclinable?</i>
Studēns	Sunt indeclinábilia.	<i>They are indeclinable.</i>

Dē Adiectívō

The Adjective

Magist.	Adiectívum quid est?	<i>What is an adjective?</i>
Studēns	Pars orātiōnis est quae nōminī adīcitur.	<i>It is a part of speech that modifies a noun.</i>
Magist.	Quot gradūs comparātiōnis sunt adiectívīs?	<i>How many degrees of comparison do adjectives have?</i>
Studēns	Trēs gradūs comparātiōnis.	<i>Three degrees of comparison.</i>
Magist.	Quī?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Positīvus, ut “doctus”; comparatīvus, ut “dóctior”; superlatīvus, ut “doctíssimus”	<i>The positive, for example, “learned”; the comparative, for example, “more learned”; the superlative, for example, “most learned.”</i>
Magist.	Quot terminātiōnēs sunt adiectívīs, gradūs positívī?	<i>How many endings do adjectives have in the positive degree?</i>
Studēns	Trēs.	<i>Three.</i>
Magist.	Quae?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Masculína, ut “doctus”; fēminína, ut “docta”; neutra, ut “doctum.”	<i>Masculine, for example, “learned”; feminine, for example, “learned”; neuter, for example, “learned.”</i>

Magist.	Quot terminatiōnēs sunt adiectīvīs, gradūs comparatīvī?	<i>How many endings do adjectives have in the comparative degree?</i>
Studēns	Duae.	<i>Two.</i>
Magist.	Quae?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Masculīna et fēminīna, ut “dóctior”; neutra, ut “dóctius.”	<i>Masculine and feminine, for example, “more learned”; neuter, for example, “more learned.”</i>
Magist.	Quot terminatiōnēs sunt adiectīvīs, gradūs superlatīvī?	<i>How many endings do adjectives in the superlative degree have?</i>
Studēns	Trēs, sicut in gradū positīvō.	<i>Three, just as in the positive degree.</i>
Magist.	Dic adiectívum possessívum.	<i>Give a possessive adjective.</i>
Studēns	Meus.	<i>My.</i>
Magist.	Dic adiectívum quālitātis.	<i>Give an adjective of quality.</i>
Studēns	Bonus.	<i>Good.</i>
Magist.	Dic adiectíva quantitātis.	<i>Give (some) adjectives of quantity.</i>
Studēns	Magnus, parvus.	<i>Big, small.</i>
Magist.	Dic adiectíva númeri.	<i>Give (some) adjectives of number.</i>
Studēns	Ūnus, duo, trēs.	<i>One, two, three.</i>
Magist.	Dic adiectíva númeri ordinális.	<i>Give (some) adjectives of ordinal numbers.</i>
Studēns	Prīmus, secūndus, tērtius.	<i>First, second, third.</i>

Dē Particípīo

Magist.	Particípium quid est?
Studēns	Pars ōratiōnis partem adiectívī cápiēns, partem verbī.

The Participle

	<i>What is a participle?</i>
	<i>A part of speech assuming the role of an adjective and the role of a verb.</i>

Magist.	Témpora participiórū quot sunt?	<i>How many tenses do participles have?</i>
Studēns	Praesēns, ut “legēns”; praetérítum, ut “lēctus”; futúrum, ut “lēctúrus.”	<i>The present, for example, “reading”; the perfect, for example, “read, having been read”; the future, for example, “about to read.”</i>
Magist.	Quot participia ab áctívō verbō véniunt?	<i>How many participles come from the active verb?</i>
Studēns	Duo.	<i>Two.</i>
Magist.	Quae?	<i>Which (are they)?</i>
Studēns	Praesēns, ut “legēns” et futúrum ut “lēctúrus.”	<i>The present, for example, “reading”, and the future, for example, “about to read.”</i>
Magist.	Quot participia ā passívō verbō véniunt?	<i>How many participles come from the passive verb?</i>
Studēns	Ūnum.	<i>One.</i>
Magist.	Quod?	<i>Which one?</i>
Studēns	Praetérítum perféctum, ut “lēctus.”	<i>The perfect, for example, “read, having been read.”</i>

Dē Gerúndiō

Magist.	Gerúndium quid est?	<i>What is a gerund?</i>
Studēns	Est nōmen verbále.	<i>It is a verbal noun.</i>
Magist.	Quārē sic vocátur?	<i>Why is it called that?</i>
Studēns	Quia partem nōminis capit, partem verbī.	<i>Because it assumes the role of a noun and the role of a verb.</i>
Magist.	Dā exémplum gerúndiī.	<i>Give an example of a gerund.</i>
Studēns	Legéndi librōs causā.	<i>For the sake of reading books.</i>
Magist.	Quómodo capit partem nōminis?	<i>How does it assume the role of a noun?</i>
Studēns	Eō quod habet cāsūs oblíquōs, perinde ut nōmina.	<i>In that it has oblique cases, just as nouns do.</i>

The Gerund

Magist.	Quómodo capit partem verbī?	<i>How does it assume the role of a verb?</i>
Studēns	Eō quod adiungitur cāsui accūsātvō, perinde ut verba.	<i>In that it takes the accusative case, just as verbs do.</i>

Dē Gerundívō

The Gerundive

Magist.	Gerundívum quid est?	<i>What is a gerundive?</i>
Studēns	Est adiectívum verbále.	<i>It is a verbal adjective.</i>
Magist.	Quārē sic vocátur?	<i>Why is it called that?</i>
Studēns	Quia partem adiectívī capit, partem verbī.	<i>Because it assumes the role of an adjective and the role of a verb.</i>
Magist.	Dā exémpulum gerundívī.	<i>Give an example of a gerundive.</i>
Studēns	Legendórum librórum causā.	<i>For the sake of reading books.</i>
Magist.	Quómodo partem adiectívī capit?	<i>How does it assume the role of an adjective?</i>
Studēns	Eō quod “librós” nómīni adícitur.	<i>In that it modifies the noun “books.”</i>

Dē Coniūnctióne

The Conjunction

Magist.	Coniūnctiō quid est?	<i>What is a conjunction?</i>
Studēns	Pars oratiōnis connéctēns ordinānsque senténtiam.	<i>A part of speech connecting and arranging a sentence.</i>
Magist.	Dā coniūnctiōnēs copulātvās.	<i>Give (some) coordinate conjunctions.</i>
Studēns	Et, atque, ac.	<i>And, and, and.</i>
Magist.	Dā coniūnctiōnēs disiūnctívās.	<i>Give (some) disjunctive conjunctions.</i>
Studēns	Aut, -ve, vel.	<i>Or, or, or.</i>
Magist.	Dā coniūnctiōnēs adversātvās.	<i>Give (some) adversative conjunctions.</i>
Studēns	Sed, at.	<i>But, but.</i>

Magist.	Dā coniūctiōnēs concessīvās.	<i>Give (some) concessive conjunctions.</i>
Studēns	Quamquam, quamvīs.	<i>Although, although.</i>
Magist.	Dā coniūctiōnēs temporālēs.	<i>Give (some) temporal conjunctions.</i>
Studēns	Cum, ántequam, postquam.	<i>When, before, after.</i>
Magist.	Dā coniūctiōnēs condiōnālēs.	<i>Give (some) conditional conjunctions.</i>
Studēns	Sī, nisi.	<i>If, unless.</i>

Dē Praepositíone

The Preposition

Magist.	Praepositiō quid est?	<i>What is a preposition?</i>
Studēns	Pars ōratiōnis quae, áliis pártibus ōratiōnis praepósita, significātiōnem eárum implet aut mūtāt.	<i>A part of speech which, placed before other parts of speech, completes or changes their meaning.</i>
Magist.	Quibus cāsibus praepositiónēs sérviant?	<i>What cases do prepositions take?</i>
Studēns	Accūsātvō et ablātvō.	<i>The accusative and the ablative.</i>
Magist.	Dā praepositiónēs cāsūs accūsātvī.	<i>Give (some) prepositions taking the accusative.</i>
Studēns	Ad, apud, ante, advérsum, ergā.	<i>To, at, before, against, toward.</i>
Magist.	Dā praepositiónēs cāsūs ablātvī.	<i>Give (some) prepositions taking the ablative case.</i>
Studēns	Ab, cum, cōram, clam, dē, ex, prō.	<i>From, with, in the presence of, without the knowledge of, concerning, out of, for.</i>
Magist.	Dā praepositiónēs utrīusque cāsūs.	<i>Give (some) prepositions taking both cases.</i>
Studēns	In, sub, super, subter.	<i>In(to), under, above, below.</i>
Magist.	“In” et “sub” quandō ablātvō sérviant?	<i>When do “in” and “under” take the ablative case?</i>
Studēns	Quandō significāmus quóslibet aut quaelibet in locō esse.	<i>When we mean that someone or something is in a place.</i>

Magist.	“In” et “sub” quondō accūsātfvō sērviant?	<i>When do “in” and “under” take the accusative?</i>
Studēns	Quandō significāmus quōslibet aut quālibet in locum ire.	<i>When we mean that someone or something is going into a place.</i>
Magist.	“Super” quam vim habet?	<i>What is the sense of “super”?</i>
Studēns	Ubi locum significat, magis accūsātfvō cāsūī servit quam ablātfvō locī; ubi mentiōnem alicūius facimus, ablātfvō cāsūī dumtāxat servit, ut “Multa super Prāmō rōgītāns.”	<i>When it indicates place, it takes the accusative rather than the ablative of place; when we make mention of someone or something, it takes only the ablative, for example: “Asking many questions about Priam.”</i>

Dē Interiectiōne

The Interjection

Magist.	Interiectiō quid est?	<i>What is an interjection?</i>
Studēns	Pars ōrātiōnis significāns mentis affēctum vōce incōnditā.	<i>A part of speech indicating an emotion with inarticulate sound.</i>
Magist.	Interiectiō quid significāre potest?	<i>What can an interjection indicate?</i>
Studēns	Vel lāctīam, ut “evax”; vel dōlōrem, ut “heu”; vel admirātiōnem, ut “papaé”; vel metum, ut “attāt.”	<i>Either joy, for example, “hurrah!”; or grief, for example, “oh no!”; or astonishment, for example, “wow!”; or fear, for example, “oh!”</i>

Dē Accētū

The Accent

Magist.	In quā sýllabā accētum pōnimus?	<i>On which syllable do we place the accent?</i>
Studēns	Aut in antepaenúltimā aut in paenúltimā.	<i>On the antepenult or the penult.</i>
Magist.	Quandō accētum in paenúltimā sýllabā pōnimus?	<i>When do we place the accent on the penult?</i>
Studēns	Quandō paenúltima sýllaba est longa, ut “amāmus.”	<i>When the penult is long, for example, “amāmus” (we love).</i>

Magist.	In quā sýllabā accéntum pónimus sī paenúltima sýllaba est brevis?	<i>On which syllable do we place the accent if the penult is short?</i>
Studēns	In antepaenúltimā sýllabā.	<i>On the antepenult.</i>
Magist.	Quandō accéntus pónitur in últimā sýllabā?	<i>When is the accent placed on the last syllable?</i>
Studēns	Numquam aut útique rāríssimō.	<i>Never or, in any event, very rarely.</i>

Dē Proprietátibus Dictiónum Dēscribéndis

The Parsing of Words

[**Note**—The genitive of quality, or better, of description, is generally used in parsing words, for example; “Cūius generis est ‘puella’?” (Of) what gender is “girl”? “Fēminīnī generis” (of the) feminine gender. But when indicating the case of a noun or adjective, the ablative is generally used, e.g., “homine” quō cāsū est? (In) what case is “the man”? “Ablātīvō.” (In) the ablative case. The Romans also reverse our order of apposition, for example, “sī ultima syllaba in ‘a’ litterā terminātur” (if the last syllable ends in the letter “a”).]

Magist.	Dēscribāmus nunc proprietātēs dictiónum in hāc sententiā: Ego arma virúmque canō, quī ōlim ā Trōiae ōris longínquīs vēnit. “Ego” quae pars ōratiōnis est?	<i>Let’s now parse the words of this sentence: I sing of war and a hero who once upon a time came from the distant shores of Troy. What part of speech is “I”?</i>
Studēns	Prōnómen.	<i>A pronoun.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est númerī?	<i>What number is it?</i>
Studēns	Númerī singuláris.	<i>Singular.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est géneris in hōc locō?	<i>What gender is it in this passage?</i>
Studēns	Masculīnī.	<i>Masculine.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est persónae?	<i>What person is it?</i>
Studēns	Prīmae persónae.	<i>First person.</i>
Magist.	Quō est cāsū?	<i>In what case?</i>
Studēns	Cāsū nōminātfvō.	<i>In the nominative case.</i>
Magist.	Estne prōnómen fínitum an ínfínitum?	<i>Is it a definite or indefinite pronoun?</i>
Studēns	Prōnómen fínitum.	<i>A definite pronoun.</i>

Magist.	“ <i>Arma</i> ” quae pars orationis est?	<i>What part of speech is “arms”?</i>
Studēns	Nōmen.	<i>A noun.</i>
Magist.	Quāle? Nōmen proprium an appellativum?	<i>What kind? Proper or common?</i>
Studēns	Nōmen appellativum.	<i>A common noun.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est generis?	<i>What gender is it?</i>
Studēns	Neutrū.	<i>Neuter.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est nūmeri?	<i>What number is it?</i>
Studēns	Plūrālis.	<i>Plural.</i>
Magist.	Quō cāsū est in hōc locō?	<i>What case is it in this passage?</i>
Studēns	Accūsativō.	<i>Accusative.</i>
Magist.	Unde hoc certum est?	<i>How is that certain?</i>
Studēns	Ā syntaxe; “canō” enim verbum accūsativō adiungitur.	<i>From the syntax; for the verb “canō” takes the accusative case.</i>
Magist.	Quotae declinationis est “arma”?	<i>What declension is “arms”?</i>
Studēns	Secūndae.	<i>Second.</i>
Magist.	Pōnitūrne “arma” propriē an figuratē?	<i>Is “arms” used literally or figuratively?</i>
Studēns	Figuratē.	<i>Figuratively.</i>
Magist.	Quārē?	<i>Why?</i>
Studēns	Quia prō “bellō” pōnitur.	<i>Because it is used for “war.”</i>
Magist.	“ <i>Virum</i> ” quae pars orationis est?	<i>What part of speech is “hero”?</i>
Studēns	Nōmen.	<i>A noun.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est generis?	<i>What gender is it?</i>
Studēns	Masculīnī.	<i>Masculine.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est nūmeri?	<i>What number is it?</i>
Studēns	Singulāris.	<i>Singular.</i>
Magist.	Quō cāsū est?	<i>What case is it?</i>
Studēns	Accūsativō.	<i>Accusative.</i>

Magist.	Dīc cāsum nōminātivum.	<i>Give the nominative case.</i>
Studēns	Vir.	<i>Vir (hero).</i>
Magist.	Quotae dēclīnātiōnis est “virum”?	<i>What declension is “the hero”?</i>
Studēns	Secūndae.	<i>Second.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est nūmerī?	<i>What number is it?</i>
Studēns	Singulāris.	<i>Singular.</i>
Magist.	Quāle? Prōpriū an appellātivum?	<i>What kind? Proper or common (noun)?</i>
Studēns	Nōmen appellātivum.	<i>Common (noun).</i>
Magist.	“Que” quae pars ōrātiōnis est?	<i>What part of speech is “and”?</i>
Studēns	Cōniūctiō.	<i>A conjunction.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est potestātis? Copulātivae an disiūctivae?	<i>(Of) what function is it? Coordinate or disjunctive?</i>
Studēns	Copulātivae.	<i>Coordinate.</i>
Magist.	Cūius ōrdinis? Praepositivī an postpositivī?	<i>What is its word order? Prepositive or postpositive?</i>
Studēns	Postpositivī; itaque dīcitur encliticum.	<i>It is postpositive; and so it is called an enclitic.</i>
Magist.	Fac compōsitum ab eō quod est “que.”	<i>Form a compound from “que.”</i>
Studēns	Itaque, neque, quoque.	<i>And so, neither, too.</i>
Magist.	“Canō” quae pars ōrātiōnis est?	<i>What part of speech is “sing”?</i>
Studēns	Verbum.	<i>A verb.</i>
Magist.	Cūius modī est?	<i>In what mood is it?</i>
Studēns	Indicātivī.	<i>The indicative.</i>
Magist.	Cūius persōnae est?	<i>What person is it?</i>
Studēns	Prīmae.	<i>First (person).</i>
Magist.	Dīc tertiam persōnam.	<i>Give the third person.</i>
Studēns	Canit.	<i>He or she sings, is singing.</i>

Magist.	Cūius nūmerī est?	<i>What number is it?</i>
Studēns	Singulāris.	<i>Singular.</i>
Magist.	Dīc plūrālem prīmae persōnae.	<i>Give the first person plural.</i>
Studēns	Cānimus.	<i>We sing.</i>
Magist.	Cūius gēneris est? Āctīvī an passīvī?	<i>What voice is it? Active or passive?</i>
Studēns	Āctīvī.	<i>Active.</i>
Magist.	Dīc passīvum.	<i>Give the passive.</i>
Studēns	Canor.	<i>I am sung of.</i>
Magist.	Cūius témporis est?	<i>What tense is it?</i>
Studēns	Praeséntis.	<i>The present.</i>
Magist.	Dīc praetérítum imperféctum.	<i>Give the imperfect.</i>
Studēns	Canēbam.	<i>I was singing, used to sing.</i>
Magist.	Dīc praetérítum perféctum.	<i>Give the perfect.</i>
Studēns	Cécinī.	<i>I sang, have sung.</i>
Magist.	Dīc participium praesēns.	<i>Give the present participle.</i>
Studēns	Canēns.	<i>Singing.</i>
Magist.	Dīc participium futūrum.	<i>Give the future participle.</i>
Studēns	Cantūrus.	<i>About to sing, going to sing.</i>
Magist.	Dīc infinītvum āctīvum.	<i>Give the active infinitive.</i>
Studēns	Cānere.	<i>To sing.</i>
Magist.	Dīc gerúndium.	<i>Give the gerund.</i>
Studēns	Canéndī.	<i>Of singing.</i>
Magist.	Dīc gerúndium cāsū nōminātvō.	<i>Give the gerund in the nominative case.</i>
Studēns	Gerúndium eget cāsū nōminātvō.	<i>The gerund lacks a nominative case.</i>
Magist.	“Qui” quae pars ōrātiōnis est?	<i>What part of speech is “who”?</i>
Studēns	Prōnómen.	<i>A pronoun.</i>

Magist.	Quāle prōnōmen?	<i>What kind of pronoun?</i>
Studēns	Relātīvum prōnōmen.	<i>A relative pronoun.</i>
Magist.	Quid est eius nōmen antecēdēns?	<i>What is its antecedent?</i>
Studēns	Virum.	<i>A hero.</i>
Magist.	“Quī” cūius est gēneris?	<i>What gender is “who”?</i>
Studēns	Masculīnī.	<i>Masculine.</i>
Magist.	Cūius nūmerī est?	<i>What number is it?</i>
Studēns	Singulāris.	<i>Singular.</i>
Magist.	Quārē nūmerus singulāris pōnitur?	<i>Why is the singular number used?</i>
Studēns	Quia nōmen antecēdēns est nūmerī singulāris.	<i>Because the antecedent is singular.</i>
Magist.	Quō cāsū est “quī”?	<i>In what case is “who”?</i>
Studēns	Cāsū nōminātīvō.	<i>In the nominative case.</i>
Magist.	Cūius potēntiae est?	<i>What is its function?</i>
Studēns	Est subiēctum “vēnit” verbī.	<i>It is the subject of the verb “came”.</i>
Magist.	“Ōlim” quae pars ōrātiōnis est?	<i>What part of speech is “once upon a time”?</i>
Studēns	Advērbium.	<i>An adverb.</i>
Magist.	Cui dictiōnī “ōlim” adīcitur?	<i>Which word does “once upon a time” modify?</i>
Studēns	“Vēnit” verbō.	<i>The verb “came”.</i>
Magist.	Estne advērbium locī an tēmporis an qualitātis an quantitātis?	<i>Is it an adverb of place or time or quality or quantity?</i>
Studēns	Tēmporis.	<i>Of time.</i>
Magist.	“Ā” quae pars ōrātiōnis est?	<i>What part of speech is “from”?</i>
Studēns	Praepositiō.	<i>A preposition.</i>
Magist.	Cui cāsūī servit?	<i>What case does it take [lit: serve]?</i>
Studēns	Cāsūī ablātīvō.	<i>The ablative case.</i>

Magist.	Cui nómīnī adiúngitur?	<i>What noun is its object?</i>
Studēns	“Ōrīs” nómīnī.	<i>The noun “shores”.</i>
Magist.	“Trōiae” quae pars ōrātiōnis est?	<i>What part of speech is “Troy’s”?</i>
Studēns	Nōmen.	<i>A noun.</i>
Magist.	Quāle? Próprium an appellātívum?	<i>What kind? Proper or common?</i>
Studēns	Próprium.	<i>Proper.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est géneris?	<i>What gender is it?</i>
Studēns	Fēminínī.	<i>Feminine.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est númerī?	<i>What number is it?</i>
Studēns	Singuláris.	<i>Singular.</i>
Magist.	Quō est cāsū?	<i>In what case is it?</i>
Studēns	Genitívō.	<i>The genitive.</i>
Magist.	“Ōrīs” quae pars ōrātiōnis est?	<i>What part of speech is “shores”?</i>
Studēns	Nōmen.	<i>A noun.</i>
Magist.	Quāle? Próprium an appellātívum?	<i>What kind? Proper or common?</i>
Studēns	Appellātívum.	<i>Common.</i>
Magist.	Cūius géneris est?	<i>What gender is it?</i>
Studēns	Fēminínī.	<i>Feminine.</i>
Magist.	Quō cāsū est?	<i>What case is it?</i>
Studēns	Ablātívō plūrālī.	<i>Ablative plural.</i>
Magist.	Dīc cāsum nōminātívum singulárem.	<i>Give the nominative singular.</i>
Studēns	Ōra.	<i>“Shore.”</i>
Magist.	“Longínquīs” quae pars ōrātiōnis est?	<i>What part of speech is “distant”?</i>
Studēns	Adiectívum.	<i>Adjective.</i>
Magist.	Quō est cāsū?	<i>In what case is it?</i>
Studēns	Ablātívō.	<i>The ablative.</i>

Magist.	Cūius est géneris?	<i>What gender is it?</i>
Studēns	Fēminīnī.	<i>Feminine.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est númerī?	<i>What number is it?</i>
Studēns	Plūrālis.	<i>The plural.</i>
Magist.	Cui dictiōnī adīcitur?	<i>What noun does it modify?</i>
Studēns	“Ōrīs.”	<i>“Shores.”</i>
Magist.	Cūius gradūs comparātiōnis est?	<i>What degree of comparison is it?</i>
Studēns	Positīvī.	<i>The positive.</i>
Magist.	Dā gradum superlātīvum.	<i>Give the superlative degree.</i>
Studēns	“Longinquissim-us -a -um.”	<i>“Most distant.”</i>
Magist.	“Vēnit” quae pars ōrātiōnis est?	<i>What part of speech is “came”?</i>
Studēns	Verbū.	<i>A verb.</i>
Magist.	Cūius est témporis?	<i>What tense is it?</i>
Studēns	Temporis praetēritī perfēctī.	<i>The perfect.</i>
Magist.	Cūius persōnae est?	<i>What person is it?</i>
Studēns	Tértiae.	<i>Third (person).</i>
Magist.	Dīc persōnam prīmam.	<i>Give the first person.</i>
Studēns	Vēnī.	<i>“I came, have come”.</i>
Magist.	Cūius númerī est?	<i>What number is it?</i>
Studēns	Singulāris.	<i>The singular.</i>
Magist.	Cūius modī est?	<i>What mood is it?</i>
Studēns	Indicātīvī.	<i>Indicative.</i>
Magist.	Cūius géneris est?	<i>What voice is it?</i>
Studēns	Neutrālis.	<i>Intransitive.</i>
Magist.	Cūius coniugātiōnis est?	<i>What conjugation is it?</i>
Studēns	Quārtae.	<i>The fourth.</i>

Magist.	Dic partēs prīcipālēs “canō” verbī.	<i>Give the principal parts of the verb “sing”.</i>
Studēs	Canō, cānere, cēcini, cantus.	<i>I sing, am singing; to sing; I sang, have sung; sung, having been sung.</i>

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

abbreviate *tr* brevīāre

abbreviation *s* not·a -ae *f* compendiāria

ablative *adj* ablātīv·us -a -um; **ablative case** cās·us -ūs *m* ablātīvus, ablātīv·us -ī *m*; **in the ablative case** cāsū ablātīvō

abstract noun *s* appellāti·ō -ōnis *f* (ut “bōnitās” **goodness**)

accent *s* accēt·us -ūs *m*; **to place the accent on a syllable** accētum in sýllabā pōnere

active *adj* āctīv·us -a -um; **active verb** verbum agēndī *or* agēns *or* āctīvum; **active voice** gen·us -eris *n* āctīvum

adjectival *adj* adiectīvāl·is -is -e

adjective *s* adiectīv·um -ī *n*

adverb *s* advérbi·um -ī *n*

adverbial *adj* adverbiāl·is -is -e

alphabet *s* alphabēt·um -ī *n*, prīmae lītter·ae -ārum *fpl*

antecedent *s* nōm·en -inis *n* antecēdēns

antepenult *s* antepaenúltima sýllab·a -ae *f*

article *s* artícul·us -ī *m* (hic haec hoc, normally demonstrative, serve as articles only in declensions)

as *adv* sicut, ut; **as for instance** ut putā

capital letter *s* lītter·a -ae *f* grandis (*opp*: līttera minúta)

case *s* cās·us -ūs *m*; **a noun in the genitive case** nōmen genitívō cāsū; *or more rarely* nōmen cāsūs genitívī

clause *s* membr·um -ī *n*; **main clause** ōrāti·ō -ōnis *f* [**Note**—ōrātiō can be a complete sentence or a main clause]

collective *adj* collectī·vus -a -um

combination *s* comprehēnsi·ō -ōnis *f*; **a syllable is a combination of letters** sýllaba est comprehēnsiō lītterārum

combine *tr* compōn·ō -ere compósuī compósitus; **prepositions can be combined with verbs** praepositionēs cum verbīs compōnī possunt

come *intr* (**from**) vén·iō -īre vēnī ventum (ab + *abl*), dērīvārī (ab + *abl*)

comma *s* comm·a -atis *n*

common noun *s* nōm·en -inis *n* appellātívum

comparative *adj* comparātīv·us -a -um; **comparative degree** grad·us -ūs *m* comparātívus; **in the comparative** comparātívē, in comparatiōne

comparison *s* comparāti·ō -ōnis *f*

compound *adj* compósit·us -a -um (ut “indóctus” **uneducated**) (*opp*: simplex, ut “doctus”)

concrete noun *s* vocábul·um -ī *n* (*opp*: appellātiō)

conjugate *tr* dēclīnāre

conjugation *s* dēclīnāti·ō -ōnis *f* (more commonly used); coniugāti·ō -ōnis *f*

conjunction *s* coniūcti·ō -ōnis *f*

consist of cōnst·ō -āre cōstitī ex (+ *abl*)

consonant *s* cōnson·āns -āntis *f*

construction *s* cōnstrūcti·ō -ōnis *f*

coordinate conjunction *s* coniūcti·ō -ōnis *f* cōpulātīva

correlative *adj* relātīvus -a -um (ut “tālis . . . quālis” **such** . . . as)

correct *adj* rēct·us -a -um, ēmendāt·us -a -um

correct *tr* ēmendāre

correction *s* ēmendāti·ō -ōnis *f*

correctly *adv* rēctē, ēmendātē (*opp*: vitiōsē)

dative *adj* datīv·us -a -um

dative *s* datīv·us -ī *m*, cās·us -ūs *m* datīvus

declension *s* dēclīnāti·ō -ōnis *f*

decline *tr* dēclīnāre

defective *adj* dēfectīv·us -a -um

define *tr* dēfīn·iō -īre -īvī -ītus

definite *adj* finīt·us -a -um (*opp*: infīnītus)

degree *s* grad·us -ūs *m*; **positive degree** gradus positīvus; **comparative degree** gradus comparātīvus; **superlative degree** gradus superlātīvus

demonstrative *adj* dēmōnstrātīv·us -a -um

deponent *s* dēpōn·ēns -ēntis *n*, verb·um -ī *n* dēpōnēns

derive *tr* (from) dērivāre (ab + *abl*)

diminutive *s* dēminūtīvum nōm·en -inis *n*, dēminūtīv·um -ī *n*

diphthong *s* diphthóng·us -ī *f*

double *adj* gemināt·us -a -um: **double “i” as in “armārii”** “i” līttera gemināta, ut armārii

enclitic *s* enclītic·um -ī *n* (ut “-que,” “-ve” and, or)

end *intr* (in) tērmin·or -ārī -ātus sum (in + *acc* or *abl*)

ending *adj* (in) termināt·us -a -um (in + *acc*)

ending *s* termināti·ō -ōnis *f*

error *s* vīti·um -ī *n*, mend·um -ī *n*

explain *tr* explānāre, explicāre

express *tr* ēxprimō exprīmere expressī expressus

feminine *adj* fēminīnus -a -um

figurative *adj* trānslātīv·us -a -um

figuratively *adv* figūrātē, trānslātīvē

final *adj* fināl·is -is -e

form *tr* fāc·iō -ere fēcī factus; **form the imperative of the verb “venīre”** fac imperātīvum “venīre” verbī

form *s* figūr·a -ae *f*; **the form is either simple, like “doctus,” or compound, like “indoctus,”** figūra est aut simplex, ut “doctus,” aut compōsita, ut “indoctus”

function *s* potēnti·a -ae *f*

future *s* temp·us -oris *n* futūrum

gender *s* gen·us -eris *n*

genitive *s* genitīv·us -ī *m*, cās·us -ūs *m* genitīvus

gerund *s* gerūndi·um -ī *n*

gerundive *s* gerundīv·um -ī *n*

give *tr* dō dare dedī datus; dīc·ō -ere dīxī dictus; **give the plural form of gaudium** dā (*or* dīc) figūrā plūrālem “gaūdium” nōminis

grammar *s* grammātic·a -ae *f*, ar·s -tis *f* grammātica

imperative *adj* imperātīv·us -a -um; **imperative mood** mod·us -ī *m* imperātīvus

imperfect tense *s* témp·us -ōris *n* praetēritum imperfēctum

impersonal *adj* impersōnāl·is -is -e

incorrect *adj* vitiōs·us -a -um

incorrectly *adv* vitiōsē

indeclinable *adj* indēclīnābil·is -is -e

indefinite *adj* īnfīnīt·us -a -um (*opp*: fīnītus)

indicate *tr* significāre

indicative *adj* indicātīv·us -a -um ; **in the indicative mood** modō indicātīvō

infinitive *adj* īnfīnītīv·us -a -um;
infinitive mood mod·us -ī *m*
īnfīnītīvus

infinitive *s* īnfīnītīv·um -ī *n*

inflect *tr* dēclīnāre

inflection *s* dēclīnāti·ō -ōnis *f*

intensive pronoun *s* prōnōm·en -inis *n*
intentiōnis (ut “ipse” **himself**)

interjection *s* interiēcti·ō -ōnis *f* (ut
“heus tū!” **hey you!**)

intransitive *adj* intrānsitīv·us -a -um (ut
“sédeō,” “surgō” **I sit, I get up**)

irregular *adj* inaequāl·is -is -e; **an irregular verb** inaequāle verbum (ut
“volō,” “nōlō,” “fiō” **I want, I do not want, I become**)

irregularly *adv* inaequāliter; **“duo” is irregularly declined** “duo”
inaequāliter dēclīnātur

last *adj* ūltim·us -a -um

lengthen *tr* prōdūc·ō -ere prōdūxī
prōdūctus (*opp*: corrīpere)

letter *s* lītter·a -ae *f*; **letters form syllables** lītterae faciunt sýllabās

literal *adj* prōpri·us -a -um (*opp*:
trāslātīvus)

literally *adv* prōpriē, ad verbum (*opp*:
figūrātē)

long *adj* long·us -a -um, prōdūct·us -a -um (*opp*: brevis, corrēptus); **a vowel is long by nature or by position** vocālis est longa nātūrā aut positiōne

mark *s* not·a -ae *f* (ut “nota longa,” “nota brevis” **long mark, short mark**)

masculine *adj* masculīn·us -a -um

mean *tr* significāre

meaning *s* significāti·ō -ōnis *f*

meter *s* metr·um -ī *n*

mistake *s* vīti·um -ī *n*; **to make a mistake** vītium fácere

modify *tr* adiciōr ádicī adiectus sum (+ *dat*); **which noun does “bonus” modify?** cui nōminī “bonus” adicitur?

modifying *adj* adiect·us -a -um (+ *dat*)

monosyllable *s* monosýllab·a -ae *f*

mood *s* mod·us -ī *m*; **imperative mood, e.g., “read!”** modus imperātīvus, ut “lege!”; **indicative mood, e.g., “I read”** modus indicātīvus, ut “legō”; **subjunctive mood, e.g., “although I read”** modus subiūctīvus, ut “cum legam”

neuter *adj* neu·ter -tra -trum, neutrāl·is -is -e; **in the** — neutrālīter

nominative *adj* nōminātīv·us -a -um

noun *s* nōm·en -inis *n*; (*of an inanimate object*) vocābul·um -ī *n*

number *s* númer·us -ī *m*

numeral *s* nōm·en -inis *n* numerāle (ut “ūnus,” “duo,” “trēs” **one, two three**)

object *s* expressed by the verb adiūngī, for example, **“the man” is the object of the verb** “hic homō” verbō adiūngitur

[**Note**—Roman grammarians never used the word “obiectum” in connection with a verb or preposition. Whereas we would say, for example, “*man* is the object of the verb” the Romans would say “*man* is joined to the verb.” See also the definition of “modify” above.]

ordinal *adj* ōrdināl·is -is -e (ut “prīmus”, “secūndus” **first, second**)

parse *tr* proprietātēs (+ *gen*) dēscrībere

part of speech *s* par·s -tis *f* ōrātiōnis

participle *s* participi·um -ī *n*; **past or perfect participle** praetēriti tēporis participium; **present participle** praesētis tēporis participium

particle *s* partīcul·a -ae *f* (*namely, the four parts of speech that are indeclinable: adverb, preposition, conjunction, interjection*)

passive *adj* passīv·us -a -um

past *s* praetērit·um temp·us -ōris *n*

pattern *s* rēgul·a -ae *f*

penult *s* paenultima sýllab·a -ae *f*

perfect tense *s* temp·us -ōris *n*
praetēritum perfectum

period *s* pūct·um -ī *n*

person *s* persōn·a -ae *f*

personal *adj* persōnāl·is -is -e

phrase *s* locūti·ō -ōnis *f* (*also used of a single word*)

pluperfect tense *s* temp·us -ōris *n*
plūquamperfectum

plural *adj* plūrāl·is -is -e; **in the plural** plūrāliter

plural *s* multitud·ō -inis *f*; **signifying a plural** multitudinem significāns

positive *s* grad·us -ūs *m* positīvus

possessive *adj* possessīv·us -a -um

prefix *s* praeposīti·ō -ōnis *f* per
compositiōnem

preposition *s* praeposīti·ō -ōnis *f* (per appositionēnem); **prepositions take** (*lit: serve*) **either the accusative or the ablative case** praepositionēs aut accūsātīvō aut ablātīvō cāsui sērviant

present *adj* praes·ēns -ētis; **present tense** praesēns temp·us -ōris *n*

principal parts part·ēs -ium *fpl*
prīncipālēs

pronoun *s* prōnōm·en -inis *n*

pronounce *tr* prōnūntiāre; **to pronounce a vowel short or long** vocālem corrēptē aut prōdūctē prōnūntiāre

proper noun *s* prōpriūm nōm·en -inis *n*
(ut “Hector” **Hector**) (*opp:* appellātīvum nōmen (ut “homō” **man**))

punctuation *s* interpūcti·ō -ōnis *f*

punctuation mark *s* interpūct·um -ī *n*,
pūct·um -ī *n*

relative *adj* relātīv·us -a -um

repeat *tr* répet·ō -ere -īvi -ītus

rule *s* rēgul·a -ae *f*; **to follow (observe)** the rule rēgulam servāre

sentence *s* sentēti·a -ae *f*, ōrāti·ō -ōnis *f*

short *adj* brev·is -is -e, corrēpt·us -a -um

singular *adj* singulār·is -is -e (*opp:* plūrāl·is -is -e); **in the singular** singulāriter

sound *s* son·us -ī *m*

speak *tr & intr* loquor loquī locūtus sum; **to speak Latin, to speak correct Latin** Latīnē loquī

spell *tr* scrīb·ō -ere scrīpsī scrīptus; **to spell correctly** rēctē scrībere; **to spell with** scrībere per (+ *acc*); **some spell “cum” with a “q” if it signifies time** quīdam scrībunt “cum” per “q” lītteram, sī tempus significat

spelling *s* orthogrāphi·a -ae *f*, scrīptūr·a -ae *f*

subject *n* (*gram*) subiēct·um -ī *n*; (*topic studied*) gen·us -eris *n* studiōrum, doctrīn·a -ae *f*

subjunctive *adj* subiūctīv·us -a -um;
subjunctive mood subiūctīvus
 mod·us -ī *m*

subjunctive *s* subiūctīv·us -ī *m*

subordinate conjunction *s* subiūctīva
 coniūcti·ō -ōnis *f*

superlative *adj* superlātīv·us -a -um

superlative *s* grad·us -ūs *m*
 superlātīvus; **in the superlative**
 superlātīvē; **give me “laetus” in the**
superlative dīc “laetus” superlātīvē

supine *s* supīn·um -ī *n*

syllable *s* sýllab·a -ae *f*; **syllables form**
 words sýllabae faciunt dictiōnēs

syntax *s* (pure Latin) ōrdināti·ō -ōnis *f*;
 syntáx·is -is *f*

take *tr* accíp·iō -ere accēpī accēptus,
 recíp·iō -ere recēpī recēptus; **names**
of cities don’t take prepositions,
for instance, “I’m going to Rome”
 nómīna civitātum nōn accipiunt
 praepositionēs, ut “Rōmam vādō”;
the preposition “ad” takes the
accusative case “ad” praepositiō
 cāsui accūsātīvō servit; **this verb**
takes the accusative case hoc
 verbum coniūngitur (or adiūngitur)
 cāsui accūsātīvō

tense *s* temp·us -ōris *n*

transitive trānsitīv·us -a -um

translate *tr* convért·ō -ere -ī convérsus,
 transférō transférre trānstulī
 trānslātus; **to translate from Latin**
to English ex Latīnō in Ánglicum
 convértere

translation *s* trānslāti·ō -ōnis *f*

understood *tr* it is understood
 subaudītur; “ego” is understood if I

should say, “Sum philosophus.”
 subaudītur “ego” sī dicam “sum
 philosophus.”

use *tr* pōnō pōnere pōsuī pōsitus; **Use**
“legō” in a sentence. Pōne “legō” in
 sententiā.

utter *tr* prōferō prōferre prōtulī prōlātus

verb *s* verb·um -ī *n*

verbal *adj* verbāl·is -is -e

vocative *s* vocātīvus -ī *m*, cās·us -ūs *m*
 vocātīvus

voice *s* vōx, vōcis *f*; (of a verb) gen·us
 -eris *n*; **What voice is “audīmur”?**
Passive. Cūius gēneris est “audītur”?
 Passīvi. [Note—“genus,” in
 connection with nouns and adjectives
 means “gender,” and in connection
 with verbs means “voice.”]

vowel *s* vocāl·is -is *f*

word *s* (gram) dicti·ō -ōnis *f*; **syllables**
form words sýllabae faciunt
 dictiōnēs; **word for word** verbum
 prō verbō [Note—In Roman
 grammars, “verbum” is used only for
 “verb”; Quintilian says: “Verbum,
 of course, has two meanings; in one
 sense, “verbum” covers all parts of
 which language is composed; in
 another sense, it is restricted to the
 part of speech such as “legō” and
 “scrībō”. To avoid this ambiguity,
 some have preferred to say “vōcēs,”
 “locūtiōnēs,” “dictiōnēs.”]

write *tr* scrībō scrībēre scrīpsī scrīptus;
to write Latin Latīnē scrībēre

wrong *adj* vitiōs·us -a -um; *adv*
 pérperam

Appendix I: Yes and No in Latin

It may strike you as strange, but the Romans did not have a single word for Yes and No. (We, too, can say “yes” or “O.K.” or, informally, “yeah” or “yep” or, even more informally, “uhuh.”) There are single Latin adverbs that mean “yes”: **étiam**, **ita**, **sīc**, **sānē**, **máximē**, **ádmódum**, **óppidō**, **certē**, **plānē**, **plānissimē**. These are not perfect synonyms. For example, **ita** and **sīc** mean “it is so”; **plānissimē** means “yes, exactly so”; **certē** means “certainly”; **ádmódum** and **óppidō** both means “yes” or “quite so,” but **óppidō** is slightly more emphatic, carrying the sense of “precisely so.” Cicero indicates the most direct and simple response when he says: **aut “étiam” aut “nōn” respōndē** (answer either “yes” or “no.”)

Probably the most frequent way of saying “yes” in Latin is to repeat the word on which the emphasis rests in the question:

Erus eam véndidit?
Véndidit.

The master sold her?
Yes.

Ad patrémne eam dūcis?
Ad eum ipsū.

Are you taking her to her father?
Yes.

An nōn dīxī hoc esse futūrum?
Dīxistī.

Didn't I say that this was going to happen?
Yes.

Aiō. Nēgās.

I say yes. You say no.

You can safely use any of the adverbs for “yes.” When you get up your confidence, you can try to answer by repeating the emphatic word in the question. But then be sure to provide the correct form, as in the third example above.

As indicated above, the most direct negative particle is **nōn** (more frequently with the verb supplied from the question, or when something is immediately added). **Mínimē** is more emphatic, meaning “no, indeed” or “not in the least,” strengthened by **vērō**: **mínimē vērō** = “no, certainly not” or the informal **mínimē géntium** “absolutely not.” **Immō** or **imō** is used especially where a correction of something in the question is given. These expressions are in turn made more emphatic by appeals to deities such as **ēcástor** “by Castor,” **pol** or **édepol** “by Pollux,” **hércule** or **mehércule** “by Hercules,” **prō Iúppiter** “by Jupiter,” **prō dī immortalēs** “by the immortal gods” and similar expressions. When refusing an offer with “no, thank you,” the Romans simply said: **benígnē** or **rēctē**.

Appendix II: Colors

amber ēléctric·us -a -um

black: dull black ā·ter -tra -trum;
glossy black ni·ger -gra -grum;
pitch-black píce·us -a -um

beige flávid·us -a -um

blond flāv·us -a -um

blue: azure blue vénet·us -a -um; **dark blue** cýāne·us -a -um; **leaden blue** lívid·us -a -um; **sky-blue** caerúle·us -a -um (*esp. of eyes*)

bluish subcaerúle·us -a -um

bluish gray caési·us -a -um (*often referred by the Romans to blue eyes*)

brown fulv·us -a -um (*ranging from dull yellow to reddish brown; applied to hair, wine, sand, gold, stars, jasper*); **bright brown** spādíce·us -a -um; **dark brown** fusc·us -a -um [**Note:** brúnne·us -a -um *is of Germanic origin.*]

chartreuse chlōrín·us -a -um

chestnut spād·īx -ícis; bádi·us -a -um (*applied to horses only*)

color col·or -óris *m*; **to color** colōráre

cream-colored ebúrne·us -a -um

crimson coccíne·us -a -um

dark colored pull·us -a -um

dun-colored gilv·us -a -um (*ranging from almost neutral brownish gray to dull grayish brown, applied to horses*)

flame-colored flámme·us -a -um

flesh-colored cárne·us -a -um

golden auréol·us -a -um; aúre·us -a -um (*applied to hair*)

gray: ash-gray cinére·us -a -um; **dark gray** pull·us -a -um; **light gray** cān·us -a -um (*esp. hair*); **to be gray** cáneō -ére -uī; **to become gray** cānēsc·ō -ere; **to be gray-haired** cānō cápite esse

grayish cānēsc·ēns -éntis

green vírid·is -is -e (*most common term; vir·ēns -éntis, virídul·us -a -um, are shades of this*); **bright grass green** prásin·us -a -um; **emerald green** smarágdin·us -a -um; **grass green** herbáce·us -a -um; **olive green** oleváce·us -a -um; **(deep) sea green** vénet·us -a -um; **(light) sea green** glauc·us -a -um (*a dull green, passing into graying blue*); **very green** pervírid·is -is -e; **to be green** (*of green foliage*) vír·eō -ére -uī; (*of things growing*) vir·ēns -éntis, vírid·ēns -éntis; **to become green** virēsc·ō -ere

greenish subvírid·is -is -e

hazel (*light to strong brown*) fulv·us -a -um; (*strong brown*) spād·īx -ícis

lavander lavanduláce·us -a -um; (*pale blue, with a slight mixture of gray*) caési·us -a -um

mauve violáce·us -a -um

ochre siláce·us -a -im

orange auránti·us -a -um, lúte·us -a -um; **dull orange** armeníac·us -a -um (*apricot-color*)

pink róse·us -a -um, pūnice·us -a -um

pinkish subróse·us -a -um

purple (*dull red with a slight dash of blue*) purpúre·us -a -um [*purpura was originally the name of the shell fish itself; later the name of the dye.*]

This varied according to the shellfish used and the processing applied. The epithet purpúreus came to cover various red colors; now it embraces colors between red and violet: purple, scarlet, crimson, rosy red)

red rūf·us -a -um (*all shades*); ru·ber -bra -brum (*common term for any pure red*); **blood red** sanguíne·us -a -um; **bright red** rútil·us -a -um; **cardinal-red** cardinál·is -is -e; **dark red** rúbid·us -a -um; **cherry-red** cerásin·us -a -um; **deep red** coccíne·us -a -um; **pure lively red** phoeníce·us -a -um, pūníce·us -a -um

reddish súbru·ber -bra -brum, rubéll·us -a -um; subrúf·us -a -um, rúful·us -a -um (*of hair*); rubicúnd·us -a -um (*of the skin: flushed*)

rust-colored rubiginós·us -a -um

sandy (hair) fulv·us -a -um

scarlet miniát·us -a -um; **dull scarlet** phoeníce·us -a -um

silvery argénte·us -a -um

snow-white *see white*

strawberry-blond fulv·us -a -um

tan fulv·us -a -um

tawny fulv·us -a -um (*dull yellow, with a mixture of gray and brown*); cervín·us -a -um (*is a darker shade of it*)

turquoise túric·us -a -um

vermilion coccíne·us -a -um, miniát·us -a -um

violet violáce·us -a -um

white: dead white alb·us -a -um; **dull white** crētáce·us -a -um; **shiny white** cándid·us -a -um; **snow-white** níve·us -a -um (*the purest white*)

whitish subálb·us -a -um, álbul·us -a -um, subálbid·us -a -um

yellow flāv·us -a -um (*commonest term, a pale yellow*); **deep yellow** (*like egg yolk*) lúte·us -a -um or vitellín·us -a -um; **golden yellow** aúre·us -a -um; **lemon yellow** cítre·us -a -um (*purest yellow, without any brightness*); **pale yellow** gilv·us or gilb·us -a -um, lútéol·us -a -um

yellowish flávidus -a -um; subflāv·us -a -um (*of hair, approaching blond*)

yellowish gray rāv·us -a -um

yellowish orange gilv·us -a -um

[**Note**—The prefix sub- means “somewhat”, “almost” and can often be rendered by the English suffix “-ish.” Thus, **albus** means “white” and **subálbus** means “whitish.”

The vagueness of Latin color terms is due to the origin of colors out of dyestuff and pigments. The colors of minerals vary, and dyes produce different effects according to the mode of preparation and the materials dyed. Their applications have to be guessed from literary sources, which for the most part are incidental and vague. Color names used by poets tend to be applied metaphorically or indefinitely.

To get a better idea of how the Romans applied color terms, it is necessary to cite the objects to which colors were attached. For example, when Horace describes Augustus as being transformed into a god, he speaks of the lips of the deified Augustus as **purpúreus**, indicating his health. **Purpúreus**, at least there, is crimson, not purple.]

When asking what color something is, the Romans used either the genitive or ablative of description; e.g.

What color is the house? Quō colóre est domus tua?
or Cuius colóris est domus tua?

Appendix III: Numbers

	CARDINAL	ORDINAL	
1	ūnus, ūna, ūnum	prīmus	I
2	duo, duae, duo	secūndus	II
3	trēs, tria	tertius	III
4	quattuor	quārtus	IV
5	quīnque	quīntus	V
6	sex	sextus	VI
7	septem	sēptimus	VII
8	octō	octāvus	VIII
9	novem	nōnus	IX
10	decem	décimus	X
11	ūndecim	ūndécimus	XI
12	duódecim	duodécimus	XII
13	trédecim	tērtius décimus	XIII
14	quattuórdecim	quārtus décimus	XIV
15	quīndecim	quīntus décimus	XV
16	sédecim	sextus décimus	XVI
17	septéndecim	sēptimus décimus	XVII
18	duodēvigintī	duodēvīcésimus	XVIII
19	ūndēvigintī	ūndēvīcésimus	XIX
20	vīgintī	vīcésimus	XX
21	vīgintī ūnus	vīcésimus prīmus	XXI
	ūnus et vīgintī		
22	vīgintī duo	vīcésimus secūndus	XXII
	duo et vīgintī		
30	trīgintā	trīcésimus	XXX
40	quadrāgintā	quadrāgésimus	XL
50	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgésimus	L
60	sexāgintā	sexāgésimus	LX
70	septuāgintā	septuāgésimus	LXX
80	octōgintā	octōgésimus	LXXX
90	nōnāgintā	nōnāgésimus	XC
100	centum	centésimus	C
101	centum ūnus	centésimus prīmus	CI
	centum et ūnus		
200	ducéntī, -ae, -a	ducentésimus	CC
300	trecéntī, -ae, -a	trecentésimus	CCC
400	quadríngentī, -ae, -a	quadringentésimus	CCCC
500	quīngéntī, -ae, -a	quīngentésimus	D
600	sescéntī, -ae, -a	sescentésimus	DC
700	septíngentī, -ae, -a	septingentésimus	DCC
800	octíngentī, -ae, -a	octingentésimus	DCCC
900	nōngéntī, -ae, -a	nōngentésimus	DCCCC
1,000	mille	millésimus	M
2,000	duo mília	bis millésimus	MM
10,000	decem mília	déciēs millésimus	CCI/C/C
100,000	centum mília	céntiēs millésimus	CCCI/C/C/C

Appendix IV: Proverbs and Sayings

[**Note**—The proverbs are arranged in alphabetical order. If a proverb does not begin with a significant word, a key word from the proverb is placed at the beginning to help you find the proverb that you are looking for.]

advantage: To whose advantage? Cui bonō?

advantage: One advantage in exchange for another. Quid prō quō. [*Something for something.*]

All or nothing. Aut Caesar aut nūllus. [*Either Caesar or no one.*]

All's well that ends well. Ōmnia rēctē sunt quae bene finiūntur.

Anger is brief madness. Īra furor brevis est.

apple cart: Don't upset the apple cart. Nōlī plaustrum percēllere. [*Don't knock over the wagon.*]

attack: A personal attack. Argūmētum ad hōminem. [*An argument against a person (instead of against the issue).*]

bigger: The bigger they come, the harder they fall. Cāsus excēlsīs multō facilius nocet. [*The fall from high places more readily causes harm.*]

Birds of a feather flock together. Parēs cum páribus faciillimē congregántur. [*Likes easily flock together with likes.*]

bite off: Don't bite off more than you can chew. Quī maióra cupit saepe minóra capit. [*He who desires bigger things often gets the smaller (ones).*]

bold front: You're just putting on a bold front. Audácia prō mūrō habétur. [*Boldness serves as a wall.*]

borrowed time: You're living on borrowed time. Dē lucrō vīvis. [*You're living on profits.*]

buyer: Let the buyer beware. Cáveat ēmptor.

castles: You're building castles in the air. In arēnā aedificās. [*You are building on sand.*]

Caught in the act (or caught red-handed). In flagrāntī dēlictō. [*In a flagrant crime.*]

changes: After making all necessary adjustments. Mūtātīs mūtándīs. [*Things having been changed that must be changed.*]

Charity begins at home. Prīma cāritās incipit ā sē ipsō. [*Charity first begins with oneself.*]

Cheap gift, cheap thanks. Vile dōnum, vilis grátia.

chickens: Don't count your chickens before they are hatched. Adhūc tua messis in herbā est. [*Your harvest is still on the stalk.*]

childhood: The old are in second childhood. Bis púerī senēs. [*Old men are boys twice.*]

Clothes make the man. Vestis virum facit.

companion: A constant companion. (*e.g., a favorite book*) Vāde mēcum. [*Go with me.*]

Crying brings a certain pleasure. Est quaedam volúptās flēre. [*To cry is a certain pleasure.*]

damn: People damn what they do not understand. *Damnant quod nōn intēlegunt.*

dead: Say nothing but good about the dead. *Dē mōrtuīs nīl nisi bonum.*

deaf: To preach to deaf ears. *Ad surdās aurēs cantāre [To sing to deaf ears.]*

die: The die is cast. *Iacta est ālea.*

Do nothing in excess. *Nē nīmium. [Not too much.]*

Do unto others as you would have done unto you. *Ab āliō exspēctēs ālterī quod fēceris. [You may expect from another what you have done to the other.]*

dogs: Let sleeping dogs lie. *Nōlī irritāre leōnēs. [Do not provoke lions.]*

Don't worry about tomorrow. *Quid sit futūrum crās, fuge quaērere. [Don't ask what tomorrow will be.]*

drinking buddy: I hate a drinking buddy with a (good) memory. *Ōdī mēmorem compōtōrem.*

drop: A drop hollows out stone. *Gutta cavat lapidem.*

education: No one can take your education from you. *Homō doctus in sē divītiās semper habet. [An educated person always has wealth within himself.]*

eggs: Don't put all your eggs in one basket. *Nē committās omnia ūnī nāvī. [Don't entrust everything to one ship.]*

eleventh: At the eleventh hour. *Inter caesa et porrēcta. [between the slaughtering and the offering]*

end: Look, the end is in sight! *Fīnis ecce labōrum! [Behold, the end of troubles.]*

Enjoy the moment. *Carpe diem. [Pluck the day.]*

err: To err is human, to forgive, divine. *Errāre hūmānum est, ignōscere divīnum.*

Everyone has his price. *Vēnālis pópulus, vēnālis cúria patrum. [The people are for sale, for sale is the senate.]*

Experience is the best teacher. *Ūsus est óptimus magīster.*

faith: In good faith. *Bonā fidē.*

Familiarity breeds contempt. *Conversātiō parit contēptum. [Close association produces contempt.]*

fates: Fate leads the willing; it drags the unwilling. *Dūcunt volēntem fāta, nōlēntem trahunt.*

favor: To accept a favor is to sell one's freedom. *Benefícium accípere, libertātem est vëndere.*

Fight over nothing. *Dē lānā caprínā rīxārī. [To quarrel about goat's wool.]*

fire: Fight fire with fire. *Simília similibus cūrāntur. [Like things are taken care of by like.]*

First come, first served. *Prior témpore, prior iūre. [First in time, first by right.]*

foot: You put your foot in your mouth. *Ō sī tacuīsses, philósophus mānsīsses. [Oh, if you had remained silent, you would have remained a philosopher.]*

forward: Not to go forward is to go backward. *Nōn prógredi est régredi.*

fox: A fox changes its fur, not its nature. *Vulpēs pilum mūtāt, nōn mōrēs.*

friend: A friend in need is a friend indeed. *Is est amīcus quī in rē dúbīā*

rē iuvat. [*He is a friend who really helps in need.*]

give: He gives twice who gives quickly. Bis dat, quī dat cito.

glory: So passes away the glory of the world. Sic trānsit glōria mundi.

God willing Deō volēnte.

God helps those that help themselves.

Fortēs fortūna ādiuvat. [*Fortune helps the brave.*]

God: If God (is) for us, who (can be) against us? Sī Deus prō nōbīs, quis contrā nōs?

golden: The golden mean. Áurea mediócritās.

grain: With a grain of salt. Cum grānō sālīs.

greedy: The greedy man always feels need. Semper avārus eget.

grief: True grief is a private matter. Ille dolet vērē quī sine teste dolet. [*He truly grieves who grieves without a witness.*]

guard: Who will guard the guards? Quis custódēs custódiēt?

hair: Even a single hair casts a shadow. Étiam capillus ūnus habet umbram suam.

Hard work overcomes all. Labor vincit ómnia.

Harp on the same old theme. Eándem recóquere crambem. [*To recook the same cabbage.*]

Haste makes waste. Festínatiō tarda est. [*Haste is slow.*]

hat: That's old hat. Crambē repetīta est. [*It's cabbage served up again.*]

heart: My heart was in my throat. Ánima mihi in nāsō erat.

heart: One speaks what's in one's heart. Ex abundántiā cordis ōs

lóquitur. [*From the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks.*]

high road: I see the high road but take the low road. Vídeō meliōra probóque; dēteriōra sequor. [*I see and approve of the better; I follow the worse.*]

High offices change one's character. Honórēs mūtant mōrēs.

holy of holies. Sānctum Sānctórum.

horse: A fast-running horse needs no spurs. Equō curréntī nōn opus calcáribus.

hovel: A great man can come from a hovel. Exíre magnus vir ex tugúriō potest.

I am what you will be; I was what you are. (*On a Roman tombstone*) Sum quod eris; fuī quod es.

imitator: Oh imitators, you servile herd. Ō imitatórēs, servum pecus.

impressions: First impressions are deceptive. Frōns prīma multōs dēcipit. [*The first appearance deceives many.*]

indispensable: An indispensable condition. Causa sine quā nōn.

It's not who you are but what you are that counts. Nōn quis sed quid. [*Not who but what.*]

It's a good omen. Ōmen faustum est.

Jack of all trades. Áliquis in ómnibus, nūllus in singulīs. [*A somebody in general, a nobody in particular.*]

Jack of all trades. Homō omnis Minérvae. [*A person of all Minerva = goddess of handicrafts.*]

justice: Let justice be done though the heavens fall. Fiat iústítia, ruat caelum.

Kill two birds with one stone. Duōs parietēs dē eādem fidéliā dealbāre.

[*To whitewash two walls with one bucket.*]

Kindness begets kindness. Grátia grátiam parit.

Knowledge is power. Ipsa sciéntia potéstās est.

law: No one is above the law. Caesar nōn suprā grammáticōs est. [*Caesar is not above grammarians.*]

learn: People learn while they teach. Hóminēs, dum docent, discunt.

Like father, like son. Cólubra restem nōn parit. [*A snake does not give birth to a rope.*]

like: He who says whatever he likes, must hear what he does not like. Quī quae vult dīcit, quae nōn vult aúdiat.

live: Don't live one way in private, another in public. Nōn vīvēs áliter in sōlitúdine, áliter in forō.

logical: That's not logical. Nōn sēquitur. [*It doesn't follow.*]

lonely: He is absolutely lonely who is friendless. Sólus omnínō est quī sine amícō est.

Love is blind. Nēmō in amóre videt. [*No one sees when in love.*]

love: A woman loves or hates; there's nothing inbetween. Aut amat aut odit múlīer; nihil est tértium.

love: You can't hide love or a cough. Amor tussísque nōn cēlántur. [*Love and a cough do not hide.*]

lucky: You're lucky to be alive. Dē lucrō vīvis. [*You're living on profits.*]

make mountains out of molehills Ē rīvō flúmina magna fácere

matter: The matter is still undecided. Adhūc sub iúdice līs est. [*The case is still before the judge.*]

mind: A sound mind in a sound body. Mēns sána in córpore sánō.

Moderation in all things. Modus in ómnibus.

moon: To promise the moon. Montēs aurī pollicērī. [*To promise mountains of gold.*]

nail: You've hit the nail on the head. Acū rem tetigístī. [*You've touched the thing with a needle.*]

Necessity is the mother of invention. Ingeniósa rērum egéstās est. [*Need of things is ingenious.*]

Necessity takes no vacation. Necéssitās caret fēriīs.

needle: To look for a needle in a haystack. Nōdum in scirpō quaérere. [*To look for a knot on a bulrush.*]

Nip the thing in the bud. Princípiis obstāre. [*To block the beginnings.*]

No sooner said than done. Cítius factō. (*also: Dictum factum.*)

No one is obliged to do more than he can. Ultrā posse nēmō obligátur.

nose: To lead someone by the nose. Lábīis áliquem ductāre. [*To lead someone by the lips.*]

Nothing new under the sun. Nīl dictum quod nōn prius dictum. [*Nothing said that has not been said before.*]

Nothing ventured, nothing gained. Bene est tentāre. [*It is good to try.*]

Now or never. Nunc aut numquam.

office: By virtue of his (her) office. Ex offícīō.

One of a kind. Suī géneris.

One quarrel leads to another. Līs litem génerat. [*Strife begets strife.*]

opinion: There are as many opinions as there are people. Quot hóminēs,

tot sententiae. [*As many people, so many opinions.*]

own: To each his own. *Suum cuique.*

pair: They make a pair. *Pār bene comparātum.* [*A well matched pair.*]

Patience is a cure for all pain. *Cuivīs dolōrī remēdium est patiētia.*

peace/war: He who desires peace should prepare for war. *Quī dēsīderat pācem praēparet bellum.*

peas: As like as two peas in a pod. *Tam sīmilis quam lacte lāctī est.* [*As similar as milk is to milk.*]

plans: The best laid plans often go awry. *Bene cōgitāta saepe cecidērunt male.* [*Well thought-out things have often turned out badly.*]

please: You can't please everybody. *Frūstrā labōrat quī omnibus placēre studet.* [*He who tries to please everyone labors in vain.*]

point: Carrying a point to extremes. *Redūctiō ad absūrdum.*

Pour oil on the flame. *Óleum áddere camínō.* [*To add oil to the stove.*]

Practice makes perfect. *Exercitātiō óptima magístra est.* [*Practice is the best teacher.*]

public: For the public good. *Prō bonō públicō.*

punishment: Let the punishment fit the crime. *Culpaē (or nóxiae) poena pār estō.*

Quality rather than quantity. *Nōn multa sed multum.* [*Not many things but much.*]

reap: You reap what you sow. *Ut seméntem fēcēris, ita metēs.* [*As you will have done the sowing, so you shall reap.*]

Repetition is the mother of studies. *Repetítiō est mātēr studiōrum.*

right: By what right? *Quō iūre?*

right: Where there's a right, there's an obligation. *Ubi iūs, ibi officiūm.*

road: The road to the stars is through the rough. *Per áspēra ad astra.* [*Through the rough to the stars.*]

rock: Between a rock and a hard place. *Inter sacrum saxúmque.* [*Between the altar and the sacrificial knife.*]

Rome: When in Rome, do as the Romans do. *Cōsuetúdō loci observānda est.* [*The custom of the place must be observed.*]

scratch: You scratch my back, and I'll scratch yours. *Manus manum lavat.* [*A hand washes a hand.*]

scratch: To start over from scratch. *Ad cárcērēs ā calce revocārī.* [*To be called back from the finish line to the starting gate.*]

secret: If you want another to keep your secret, keep it first yourself. *Álium silēre quod volēs, prīmus silē.*

Seeing is believing. *Vidē et crēde.* [*See and believe.*]

Self-love is blind. *Caecus est amor suī.* [*Love of oneself is blind.*]

Shame on you! *Prō pudor!* [*For shame.*]

Silence is consent. *Quī tacet, cōséntit.* [*He who is silent gives his consent.*]

smoke: Where there's smoke, there's fire. *Flamma fūmō est próxīma.* [*A flame is next to smoke.*]

sore spot: You've hit a sore spot. *Tangis ulcus.* [*You are touching a sore.*]

sow: As you sow, so shall you reap. *Ut sēméntem fēcēris, ita metēs.*

Speaking of the devil. *Lupus in fābulā (or in sermōne).* [*Wolf in the story (or conversation).*]

stomach: You can't study well on a full stomach. Plēnus venter nōn studet libēnter. [*A full stomach does not study well.*]

stomach: The stomach doesn't have ears. (i.e., *don't preach to the hungry.*) Venter nōn habet aurēs.

stone: A rolling stone gathers no moss. Lapis volūtus haud mūscō obdūcitur. [*A rolling stone does not get covered with moss.*]

Strike the iron when it is hot. Ferrum, dum in igne candet, cūdendum est. [*Iron must be struck while it glows in the fire.*]

surprised: Be surprised at nothing. Nīl mīrāre.

taste: You can't argue about taste. Dē gūstibus nōn disputandum est. [*There should be no dispute about tastes.*]

tears: Nothing dries faster than tears. Lācrimā nihil citius ārēscit.

tea pot: To stir up a tempest in a tea pot. Excitāre flūctūs in sīmpulō. [*To stir up waves in a ladle.*]

Thank God. Deō grātiās.

tiger: I have a tiger by the tail. Aúribus téneō lupum. [*I have a wolf by the ears.*]

tiger: A tiger never changes his stripes. Vulpēs pilum mūtāt, nōn mōrēs. [*The fox changes his fur, not his character.*]

Time brings all to light. Tempus ómnia revēlat.

Time flies. Tempus fugit.

Time will tell. Diēs vēritātem áperit. [*Time uncovers the truth.*]

Times change, and we change with them. Témpora mūtántur, nōs et mūtámur in illis.

tip: It's on the tip of my tongue. Versátur mihi in prīmóribus labrīs. [*It's on the edge of my lips.*]

tit: To give tit for tat. Pār parī respondēre. [*To render like for like.*]

tongue: To have tongue in cheek. Tācitō ridēre nāsō. [*To laugh with a quiet nose.*]

treasure: Where your treasure is there is also your heart. Ubi est thesaúrus tuus, ibi est et cor tuum.

Trust begets trust. Fidēs facit fidem.

tune: You're singing the same old tune. Cantilénam eándem canis. [*You're singing the same refrain.*]

waste: You are wasting your time. Láterem crūdum lavās. [*You are washing an unbaked brick.*]

wealth: Where there are friends, there are riches. Ubi amíci, ibi opēs.

welfare: The welfare of the people is the supreme law. Salūs pópulī supréma est lēx.

Well, the last of the Romans! Em, últimus Rōmānórum.

Where there's life there's hope. Dum ánima est, spēs est. [*As long as there is breath, there is hope.*]

Winning is everything. Víncre aut morī. [*To conquer or to die.*]

wise: A word to the wise is sufficient. Dictum sapiéntī sat est.

world: The world wants to be deceived. Mundus vult dēcipī.

words: They went from words to blows. Á verbis ad vérbera. [*From words to blows.*]

wrong: One wrong does not excuse another. Iniúria nōn excúsat iniúriam.

You're getting in over your head. Magnum mare ingrēderis. [*You're entering the great sea.*]

Appendix V: Computer Terms

address īnscrīpti•ō -ōnis *f* ēlectrōnica
address book lib•er -rī *m* īnscrīptiōnum
 ēlectronicārum
attachment appendīcul•a -ae *f*,
 document•um -ī *n* annexum
boot up īnīti•ō -āre -āvī systēma
booting-up initiāti•ō -ōnis *f* systēmatis
browse (*the Web*) nāvīgāre; (*text
 documents*) perlūstrāre
browser (*Web viewer*) nāvīgātr•um -ī *n*;
 (*viewer of text documents*)
 perlūstrātr•um -ī *n*
button plēctr•um -ī *n*
byte octēt•us -ī *m*
carbon copy exēmpl•ar -āris *n*
 carbōneum
CD compāctus disc•us -ī *m*
CD-ROM compāctus disc•us -ī *m*
 ópticus
chip tal•us -ī *m*
click *tr* dēprim•ō -ere dēprēssī; pulsāre;
left-click sinistrōrsum dēprīmere;
right-click dextrōrsum dēprīmere;
double-click bis dēprīmere *or* bis
 pulsāre
close conclūd•ō -ere -ī conclūsus
command iuss•um -ī *n*
compact disk (CD) compāctus disc•us
 -ī *m*
computer *s* computātr•um -ī *n*,
 ōrdinātr•um -ī *n*
computer *adj* computātrāl•is -is -e,
 ōrdinātrāl•is -is -e
computer game lūs•us -ūs *m*
 computātrālis; **to play a computer**

game lūsū computātrālem lūd•ō -ere
 lūsī
connect cōnēct•ō -ere cōnēxuī cōnēxus
connection connēx•us -ūs *m*
copy *s* exēmpl•ar -āris *n*
copy exēmplar fácere
crash *intr* cōrru•ō -ere -ī
cursor curs•or -ōris *m*
cut and paste sec•ō secāre sécuī et
 glūtīnāre
cyberspace cyberspāti•um -ī *n*
data dat•a -ōrum *npl*
database datōrum repositōri•um -ī *n*
DCD digitālis compāctus disc•us -ī *m*
delete dēl•eō dēlēre dēlēvī dēlētus
desktop (*on the screen*) in quadrō
digital digitāl•is -is -e
directory plicārum ind•ex -icis *m*
disk disc•us -ī *m*; **floppy disk** discus
 flexībilis
disk drive discōrum receptācul•um -ī *n*,
 īnstrūment•um -ī *n* discīs legēndīs
diskette díscul•us -ī *m*
download ex rēte prehén•dō -dere -dī
 -sus (*or* éxprom•ō -ere -psī -tus
drag trah•ō -ere traxī
edit ēdō ēdere édidī éditus
electronic ēlectrōnic•us -a -um
e-mail *s* lītter•ae -ārum *fpl* ēlectrōnicae;
 (*the system*) curs•us -ūs *m*
 ēlectrōnicus
e-mail *tr* (ad áliquem) lītterās
 ēlectrōnicās mittere

- e-mail address** īnscrīpti·ō -ōnis *f*
electrónica
- enter** *tr* in computātrum réferō reférre
rétulī relātus
- file** documēt·um -ī *n*
- folder** coōpércul·um -ī *n*
- font** typ·us -ī *m*
- format** *s* form·a -ae *f*
- format** *tr* (discum) cōnformāre
- forward** (*e-mail letter*) dēfer·ō dēférre
détulī dēlātus
- garbage in, garbage out** ex quisquiliis
fiunt quisquiliae
- hacker** plagiāri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
ēlectrōnic·us (-a), effrāctāri·us -ī *m*
(·a -ae *f*) ēlectronic·us (-a)
- hard drive** dūra stāti·ō -ōnis *f*
- hardware** apparāt·us -ūs *m*
computātrālis
- home page** págin·a -ae *f* doméstica
- hypertext** *adj* hypertextuāl·is -is -e
- hypertext** *s* hypertéxt·us -ūs *m*
- icon** īcōn, íconis *f*
- input** *s* ínīt·us -ūs *m*; **input and output**
(datōrum) ínītus exitúsque
- install** ínstru·ō ínstruere ínstrúxī
ínstrúctus
- internet** *s* interrēt·e -is *n*
- internet** *adj* interrētiāl·is -is -e
- joystick** vect·is -is *m*, véctul·us -ī *m*
- key** malléol·us -ī *m*, plēctr·um -ī *n*
- keyboard** plēctrológi·um -ī *n*, ōrd·ō
-inis *m* plēctrōrum
- laptop** computātrul·um -ī *n* portátilē
- link** *tr* cōnécť·ō -ere cōnēxuī cōnēxus
- link** *s* cōnēx·us -ūs *m*
- linker** cōnécťr·um -ī *n*
- linking** *s* cōnēxi·ō -ōnis *f*
- list** (*mailing list*) grex, gregis *m*
(interrētiālis)
- list owner** gregis moderā·tor -tōris *m*
(·trīx -trīcis *f*)
- log in** *intr* ín·eō -íre -ívī *or* -ī inītūrus
- log out** *intr* éx·eō -íre -ívī *or* -ī exitūrus
- magnetic** magnétic·us -a -um
- mail** lítter·ae -ārum *fpl* electrónicae,
epístul·a -ae *f* electrónica
- memory** memóri·a -ae *f*
- menu** iussōrum tabéll·a -ae *f*
- message** nūnti·us -ī *m*
- modem** trānsmodulātr·um -ī *n*
- monitor** monitōri·um -ī *n*, caps·a -ae *f*
computātrālis
- mouse** múscl·us -ī *m*, mūs, mūris *m*
- mouse clicker** mūris pulsābul·um -ī *n*
- net** rēt·e -is *n*
- open** apér·iō -íre -uī -tus
- operating system** systēm·a -atis *n*
intērum
- output** éxit·us -ūs *m*
- password** tésser·a -ae *f*
- personal computer** computātr·um -ī *n*
domésticum
- pointer** (mūris) ind·ex -icis *m*
- port** port·us -ūs *m*
- print** typīs ímprim·ō -ere impréssī
impréssus
- printer** máchin·a -ae *f* typographica,
impressōri·um -ī *n*
- processor** ēditōri·um -ī *n*
- program** *s* prográmm·a -atis *n*
- program** *tr* prográmm·ō -āre -ávī -átus
- programmer** programmā·tor -tōris *m*
(·trīx -trīcis *f*)
- prompt** mōnit·us -ūs *m*
- RAM** memóri·a -ae *f* volátilis

reboot redinitiāre

reply respōnd·eō -ēre -ī

ROM memóri·a -ae *f* fīxa

run *tr* **to run a program** progrāmma
administrāre **||** *intr* óper·or -ārī -ātus
sum; **the program is running**
progrāmma operátur

save servāre

scan scan·dō -dere -dī -sus

scanner scānsóri·um -ī *n*

screen quadr·um -ī *n* vīsíficum

scroll down dēvól·ō -ere -ī

send mitt·ō -ere mīsi missus

shut down claud·ō -ere clausi clausus

software part·ēs -ium *fpl*
programmātiōnis

spam sagīnāti·ō -ōnis

speaker megaphóni·um -ī *n*

spread sheet chart·a -ae *f* computátīva

string sér·iēs -ēī *f*

subdirectory plicárum subínd·ex -icis
m

subscribe subscrib·ō -ere subscripsi

terminal terminál·e -is *n*

text text·us -ūs *m*

thread séri·ēs -ēī *f* epistolárum
electronicárum

toolbar instrūmentórum tabéll·a -ae *f*

tools instrūment·a -órum *npl*

turn off exstín·guō -gere -xī -tus

turn on excitāre

type dactylographāre

unsubscribe cessāre

URL Ūniversále Rērum Locátr·um -ī *n*,
ínscripti·ō -ōnis interrētiālis

web site sit·us -ūs *m* interrētiālis

window fenestéll·a -ae *f*

word processor progrāmm·a -atis *n*
ēditórium

World Wide Web (WWW) Tēl·a -ae *f*
Tōtíus Terrae (TTT)

write compōn·ō -ere compósui
compósitus; **to write a program**
progrāmma compōnere

Appendix VI: Cantūs Latīnī

Latin Songs

Ecce Caesar

(Clementine or Ode to Joy)

1. Ecce Caesar nunc triumphat quī subēgit Galliam
Cīviumque multitudō celebrat victōriam.

Chorus:

Gāius Iūlius Caesar noster, imperātor, pontifex,
Prīmum praetor, deinde cōsul, nunc dictātor, moxque rēx.

2. En victōrēs prōcēdentēs, laetī flōribus novīs,
Magnā praedā sunt potītī et captīvīs plūrimīs.
3. Exsultantēs magnā vōce ‘iō triumphē’ concinunt,
Dum aurātum ante currum victae urbēs prōcēdunt.
4. Legiōnēs Viam Sacram tōtam complent strepitū,
Capitōlinumque collem scandit Caesar in currū.
5. Ō sōl pulcher, ō laudande, Caesarem recēpimus,
et corōnā triumphālī honōrātum vīdimus.

Gaudeāmus igitur

Gaudeāmus igitur, iuvenēs dum
sumus (2)

Post iūcundam iuventūtem,
Post molestam senectūtem
Nōs habēbit humus,
Nōs habēbit humus.

Ubi sunt quī ante nōs in mundō
fuere? (2)

Trānseās ad superōs,
abeās ad īnferōs,
quōs sī vīs vidēre,
quōs sī vīs vidēre.

Vīta nostra brevis est, brevī finiētur;
(2)

Venit mors velōciter,
Rapit nōs atrōciter
Nēminī parcētur,
Nēminī parcētur.

Vīvat acadēmia, vīvant prōfessōrēs,
(2)

Vīvat membrum quodlibet,
Vīvant membra quaelibet;
Semper sint in flōre,
Semper sint in flōre.

Vivat et rēs pūblica, et quī illam
regit (2)

Vivat nostra cīvitas,
Maecēnātum cāritās,
quae nōs hīc prōtegit,
quae nōs hīc prōtegit.

Tē, canō, Patria

(America)

Tē canō, patria, candida libera, tē referet.
Portus et exulum, et tumulus senum
Libera montium vōx resonet.

Battle Hymn of the Republic

Advenientis dominī cōspexī glōriam;
Īrārū ūvās conterēns calcāt vīndēmiam;
Ēvāgīnāvit fulguris fātālis lāminam;
Incēdit vērītās.
Glōria, glōria, allelūia! Glōria, glōria allelūia!
Glōria, glōria allelūia! Incēdit vērītās.

Tū es Sōl meus

(You are my Sunshine)

Tū es sōl meus, sōl sōlus meus,
Laetificās mē cum nūbēs sunt.
Ō numquam sciēs quantum tē
amem,
Nōlī, sīs, auferre sōlem.

Tū es sōl meus, sōl sōlus meus,
Laetificās mē cum nūbēs sunt.
Ō numquam sciēs quantum tē
amem,
Nōlī, sīs, auferre sōlem.

Tē semper amāb(ō) et laetificābō,
Sī modo eris similis.
Sed sī mē linquis et aliam amās,
Paenitēbit tē ōlim.

Dilēcta est trāns Ōceanum

(My Bonnie Lies Over the Ocean)

Dilēcta est trāns ōceanum,
Nōn est iam dilecta domī!
Dilēcta est trāns ōceanum
Refer dilectam ad mē.

Refrain:

Refer, refer,
O refer dilēctam ad mē, ad mē
Refer, refer,
O refer dilēctam ad me.

Domus in Prātō

(Home on the Range)

Dā mī domum ubi ūrī errant,
Ubi cervī et dorcī lūdunt;
Et rārō audīs verbum incommodum
Et nūbila caela nōn sunt.

Chorus:

Domus in prātō
Ubi cervī et dorcī lūdunt;
Et rārō audīs verbum incommodum
Et nūbila caela nōn sunt.

Penitus in Corde Texae

(Deep in the Heart of Texas)

Noctū stellae
Magnae, clārae
Penitus in corde Texae.
Prātī caelum
Lātum, altum
Penitus in corde Texae.

Mē memorant
Quem eg(o) amō
Penitus in corde Texae.
Salvia flōrēns
Est unguentum,
Penitus in corde Texae.

Flāva Rosa Texiae

(The Yellow Rose of Texas)

1. Est flāva Rosa Texae
Ībō ut videam
Nūllus cognōscit eam
Nēmō, solum ego.
Sic flēvit cum abīvī
Cor paene frangēbat
Sī iterum coibimus
Numquam abibimus.

2. Ubi Flūmen Magnum fluit,
Stellae lūcent clārae,
Per flūmen vadēbāmus
Quiētā noct(e) aestīvā.
Inquit: “Sī meministī,
Ut ōlim discessimus,
Prōmistī tū redīre
Nec sic mē linquere.

Chorus:

Dulcissim(a) est rosella
Quam Texas alēbat,
Oclī ut diamantēs
Micant sicutī ros.
Dicās dē Clēmentinā,
Cantēs Rosaliam,
Sed Flāva Rosa Texae
Est ūnica mihi.

Auld Lang Syne

1. Sodālitātis veteris cūr immemor erō?
Cūr temporis praeteritī fiet oblīviō?

Chorus:

Ob aevum iam praeteritum, praeteritum diū,
Nōs pōculum plēnissimum sūmēmus nunc manū.

2. Tum dextra dextrum implicet, ō vōx fīdissimī;
Prōlixē proluāmus nōs flūminibus vīnī.

Happy Birthday to You

Fēlix nātālis tibi,
Fēlix nātālis tibi,
Fēlicissimus diēs
Nātālis tibi!

N.B. For additional Latin songs, see *Latine Cantemus*, Franz Schlosser, Bolchazy-Carducci Publisher, Inc., ISBN 0-86516-315-4

General Vocabulary

N.B.

This General Vocabulary is a compilation of the topical vocabularies in the chapters. For a more complete resource, consult Traupman, *Latin Dictionary*, Amsco, N.Y.

The principal parts of the following commonly occurring verbs are not provided in the vocabulary:

accípiō accípere accēpī accēptus
agō agere egī āctus
dō dare dedī datus
dicō dícere dīxī dictus
ducō dúcere dūxī ductus
fáciō facere fēcī factus
hábeō habére hábuī hábitus
lūdō lúdere lūsī lusus
sum esse fuī futūrus
véniō veníre vēnī ventum

A

A: she explained everything to me from A to Z ab áciā et acū mihi ómnia expósuit

abbreviate breviāre, immínu·ō -ere -ī imminútus

abbreviation not·a -ae *f* (compendiária)

ABC's prīm·ae lítter·ae -árū *fpl*; **know one's ABC's** lítterās sciō scīre scīvī

abdomen ven·ter -tris *m*

ability facúlt·ās -átis *f*; **ability to read and write** legéndi scrībendíque facúltās; **natural ability** ingéni·um -ī *n*; **speaking ability** dicéndi facúltās;

to the best of my ability prō meā parte

ablative *adj* ablátiv·us -a -um; **ablative case** cās·us -ūs *m* ablátivus, ablátiv·us -ī *m*; **in the ablative case** cāsū ablátivō

able: be able to possum posse pótuī (+ *inf*), queō quíre quīvī *or* quīī (+ *inf*)

abounding in abúnd·āns -ántis (+ *abl*)

about (*approximately*) círciter, ferē; (*concerning*) dē (+ *abl*)

above suprà (+ *acc*); **be above** (*e.g., bribery*) indígn·or -ári -átus sum (+ *acc*)

abroad: from abroad extrínsec·us -a -um; **go abroad, live abroad, travel abroad** peregrín·or -ári

absence: in my absence mē absénte

absent abs·ēns -éntis; **be absent** absum abesse áfuī áfutūrus; **be absent without leave** ad commeátus diem nōn adsum adesse ádfuī

absentee abs·ēns -éntis *mf*

absolutely omnínō, prōrsus; **absolutely nothing** nihil prōrsus

abstract noun *s* appelláti·ō -ónis *f* (ut “bónitās” **goodness**)

absurd absúrd·us -a -um

abusive malédic·us -a -um

academy académi·a -ae *f*

accent *s* accént·us -ūs *m*; **place the accent on a syllable** accéntum in sýllabā pōn·ō -ere pōsuī pósitus

accent mark ap·ex -icis *m*

accident cās·us -ūs *m*; calāmit·ās -ātis *f*
(autocīnētica)

accidentally cāsū, fortuitō

accommodations hospīti·um -ī *n*

accomplish cōnfic·iō -ere cōnfēcī
cōnfēctus

accomplished ērudītus -a -um

according to secūndum (+ *acc*)

accordion harmōnic·a -ae *f* didūctilis

account rāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **audit accounts**

ratiōnēs dispūn·gō -gere -xī -ctus;

balance accounts ratiōnēs cōnferō

cōnfēre cōntulī collātus; **the account**

balances rātiō cōnstat

accountant ratiōcināt·or -ōris *m*,
ratiōcinātr·īx -īcis *f*

account books tābul·ae -ārum *fpl*
(accēptī et expēnsī)

accounting cōnfēcī·ō -ōnis *f* tabulārum;

keep (accounting) books tābulās

cōnfic·iō -ere cōnfēcī cōnfēctus

accusation accūsāti·ō -ōnis *f*

accuse accūsāre (*with acc of person and
gen or dē + abl of the charge*);

ārgu·ō -ere -ī (*with acc of the person
and gen of the charge*); **accuse s.o.**

of a capital offense āliquem reī
capitālis re·um (-am) fācere

ache *intr* dól·eō -ēre -uī; **I ache all over**
tōtus (-a) dóleō

ache *s* dol·or -ōris *m*; **have a headache**
ā cāpite labōrāre; **have a toothache** ā
dente labōrāre

acquit (of) absól·v·ō -ere -ī absólūtus (dē
+ *abl*; *more rarely w. gen*); **acquit
s.o. of a capital crime** āliquem
cāpitis absólvere

acquittal absólūti·ō -ōnis *f*

acrobat petauristāri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

across trāns (+ *acc*); **across from** ex
advērsō (+ *gen*), exadvērsum (+ *acc*)

act *intr* ag·ō -ere ēgī actus; **act as a
friend** amīcum āgere; (*behave*) **act
badly** sē tūrpiter ger·ō -ere gessī

active āla·cer -cris -cre; (*gram*) āctīv·us
-a -um; **active service: be on active
service** stipēndia fācere; **active verb**
verbum agēndī *or* agēns *or* āctīvum;
active voice gen·us -eris *n* āctīvum;
be active in vers·or -ārī -ātus sum *in*
(+ *abl*)

actor hīstri·ō -ōnis *m*, āct·or -ōris *m*

actress āctr·īx -īcis *f*

acute (illness) acūt·us -a -um

ad praecōni·um -ī *n*

Adam's apple pōm·um -ī *n* Adāmī;
nōd·us -ī *m* gútturis

add (to) adíc·iō -ere adiēcī adiēctus (+
dat)

adding machine máchin·a -ae *f*
additiōnālis

addition: in addition accēdit quod (+
indic)

address *s* īnscrīpti·ō -ōnis *f* cursuālis;
(*comput*) īnscrīptiō ēlectrónica

address *tr* ádloqu·or -ī adlocūtus sum;
(*a letter*) īnscrīb·ō -ere īnscrīpsī
īnscrīptus; **a letter addressed to you**
epístula tibi īnscrīpta

address book (comput) lib·er -brī *m*
īnscrīptiōnum (ēlectronicārum)

adhesive glūt·en -inis *n*; **adhesive tape**
taēni·a -ae *f* adhaesīva

adjacent to contérmin·us -a -um (+ *dat*)

adjectival *adj* adiectīvāl·is -is -e

adjective *s* adiectīv·um -ī *n*

adjoin adiúng·or -ī adiūnctus sum (+
dat)

adjoining iūnct·us -a -um; **adjoining rooms** iūncta cubícula

adjourn ampliáre

administration administráti·ō -ōnis *f*

admirable admīrābil·is -is -e

admiration admīrāti·ō -ōnis *f*

admission ticket tésser·a -ae *f* aditiális

adopt adoptáre

adoptive daughter fīli·a -ae *f* adoptíva

adoptive son fīli·us -ī *m* adoptívus

adore adōráre

Adriatic Hadriáticum mar·e -is *n*

adult *adj* adúlt·us -a -um, grand·is -is -e

adult *s* adúltus hom·ō -inis *m*; (*not including aged persons*) pūb·ēs -is *mf*

advantage bon·um -ī *n*; **be of**

advantage (to) prōsum prōdésse prōfuī (+ *dat*); **derive great**

advantage from multum cómmodum

ex áliquā rē cápere; **take advantage**

of s.o.'s ignorance alicúius

ignorántiam sibi quaestuī habére;

take advantage of the opportunity

occásiōnem nancísc·or -ī nāntus

sum; **to whose advantage was it**

(that ...)? cui bonō fuit (+ *acc w.*

inf)?

adverb advérbi·um -ī *n*

adverbial adverbiál·is -is -e

advertise prōscrīb·ō -ere prōscrípsī prōscríptus

advertisement praecóni·um -ī *n*; (*poster*) prōscrípti·ō -ōnis *f*

advice cōnsíli·um -ī *n*; **good advice** rēctum cōnsílium; **I will take your advice on the matter** cōnsílium tuum illíus rēi cápiam; **on your advice** tē auctóre; **sound advice** vērūm cōnsílium

advise suád·eō -ére suāsī (+ *dat*)

aedile aedíl·is -is *m*

aedileship aedílit·ās -átis *f*

affable affābil·is -is -e

affair rēs, rēī *f*; **have an affair with s.o.** cōnsuetúdinem cum áliquō habére

affected affectát·us -a -um

affection am·or -ōris *m*

affectionate am·āns -ántis

afraid formídulós·us -a -um; **afraid of** tímíd·us -a -um (+ *gen*); **be afraid (of)** tím·eō -ére -uī (+ *acc*), métuō metúere metuī; **I am afraid that ...** vér·eor -ēri véritus sum nē ... ; **what are you afraid of?** quid est quod métuis?

after *conj* postquam (+ *indic*)

after *prep* post (+ *acc*); (*immediately after*) ē or ex (+ *abl*), dē (+ *abl*);

after all rē vērā; **after this** post hāc;

after that deínde, subínde; **be after**

s.o. (romantically) áliquem pet·ō -ere

-ívī; **immediately after** statim ā or

ab (+ *abl*)

afternoon temp·us -oris *n*

postmeridiānum; **in the afternoon**

postmerídiē, post merídiem; **this**

afternoon hódíē post merídiem

afterwards pósteā

again íterum, rūsus; **again and again** idéntidem, étiam atque étiam

age aet·ās -átis *f*; **at age fifteen**

décimum quíntum annum ag·ēns

-éntis; **he is under twenty years of**

age minor vīgínti annórum est; **she**

was ten years of age erat decem

annós nāta

aged annós·us -a -um, longaév·us -a -um

agile ágil·is -is -e

ago (*prepositive*) abhinc, e.g., **ten years**

ago abhinc decem annós; **a short**

while ago paulō ante; **how long ago?** quam pridem?; **long ago** iamdūdum, iampridem; **not so long ago** haud ita pridem; **sometime ago** pridem dūdum

agree (with) cōsént·iō -īre cōsēnsī cōsēnsus (cum + *abl*)

agreeable cōmmod·us -a -um, grāt·us -a -um

agreement foed·us -eris *n*; **according to the terms of the agreement** ex foedere

aha! attāt!

ahead: go ahead, tell me! Ágedum, dāc mihi!; **ahead of time** ante tempus

ail: what ails you? quid tibi est?

ailment mal·um -ī *n*

airbag aërius foll·is -is *m*

air conditioner instrūment·um -ī *n* āērī temperándō

aircraft carrier nāv·is -is *f* āëroplanígera

airline trām·es -itis *m* āërius

airplane āëróplan·um -ī *n*

airport āëropórt·us -ūs *m*

air pressure préssi·ō -ōnis *f* áeria

alarm suscitábul·um -ī *n*; (*terror*) pav·or -ōris *m*; **set the alarm for (six o'clock)** óbicem ad (hōram sextam) infīg·ō -ere infīxī infīxus; **the alarm went off** suscitábulum sónuit

alarm clock hōrológi·um -ī *n* suscitātórium

alcohol álcohol -is *n*

alcoholic alcohólic·us -a -um

alert ā·cer -cris -cre

alibi absēntiae argūmént·um -ī *n*

alimony alimóni·um -ī *n*

all omn·is -is -e; **all along: I knew all along** ūsque ab inítiō scīvī; **all but** propémódum; **I have all but given up hope** propémódum spem dēmísi; **all in all** prōrsus; **in all** omnínō; **all over the world** ubíque terrárum; **all right** quidem, licet; **it's all right** rēctē est; bene habet; **all the same (anyhow)** níhilō sētius; **all's well** salva rēs est; **all the way from** ūsque ab (+ *abl*); **it's all over!** áctum est!; **all there: are you quite all there?** satísne sānus (-a) es?; **all too late** immo iam sērō

allegation insimuláti·ō -ōnis *f*

allege árgu·ō -ere -ī argútus

alley angipórt·um -ī *n*

alliance foed·us -eris *n*, societ·ās -átis *f*; **conclude an alliance with** foedus íc·ō -ere -ī -tus cum (+ *abl*); **form an alliance with** societátem fácere cum (+ *abl*)

alluring illecebrós·us -a -um

almond amýgdal·um -ī *n*

almost paene, ferē (*postpositive*); **almost like** paene quasi

alone sōl·us -a -um

along per (+ *acc*), secúndum (+ *acc*); **along with** ūnā cum (+ *abl*); **I knew all along** iam inde ā prīncípīō scīvī

aloud clārē; **read aloud** clārē leg·ō -ere lēgī lēctus

alphabet s alphabēt·um -ī *n*, prīm·ae lítter·ae -ārum *fpl*, elemént·a -ōrum *npl*

Alpine Alpín·us -a -um; **Alpine chain** Alpium iug·a -ōrum *npl*

Alps Alp·ēs -ium *fpl*

already iam

alright licet

also étiam

alternating current fluént·um -ī *n*
altérnum

although quamquam (+ *indic*); quamvīs
(+ *subj*), cum (+ *subj*)

always semper

ambassador legát·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

ambition ambít·o -ónis *f*

ambitious ambitíōs·us -a -um

ambulance árcer·a -ae *f*, autoárcer·a
-ae *f*

America Améric·a -ae *f*; **North**

America América Septentriōnális;

South America América Merīdiána

American Americán·us -a -um

amount: it amounts to the same thing
tantúndem est

amphitheater amphitheátr·um -ī *n*

amplifier amplificátr·um -ī *n*

amuse oblectáre; **amuse oneself** sē
oblectáre

amusement: for one's amusement
ánimī causā

amusement park hort·ī -órum *mpl*
públicī oblectárii

anchor (*anchor person*) nūntiá·tor -tóris
m (·trīx -trícis *f*)

and et, atque; **and so** itaque; **and so forth** et perinde, et cētera

anger īr·a -ae *f*

angry (at) īrát·us -a -um (+ *dat*); **be angry** (at) succēns·eō -ēre -uī (+ *dat*); **get angry with** īrāsc·or -āri (+ *dat*); **he did nothing for you to be angry at** nihil fēcīt quod succēnsēas

anguish ang·or -óris *m*

animal anim·al -ális *n*; **wild animal**
fer·a -ae *f*

ankle tal·us -ī *m*

ankle-length tālár·is -is -e

anklet perīscel·is -idis *f*

anniversary fēstus di·ēs -ēī *m*
anniversárius

announcer annūntiá·tor -tóris *m* (·trīx
-ícis *f*)

annoy male habére; **this annoys me** hoc
mē male habet

annoyance molésti·a -ae *f*

annoyed: be annoyed at moléstē ferō
ferre tulī

answer *s* respōns·um -ī *n*; **give s.o. an answer** álicui respōnsum red·dō
-dere -didī -ditus

answer *tr* (*in both speaking and writing: with dat of person and ad + acc of the thing*) respōn·deō -dēre -dī -sum; **answer a letter** ad lītterās rescrīb·ō -ere rescrípsī; **answer in complete sentences** tōtis senténtiis respondēre; **answer a question** ad interrogátum respondēre; **I'll answer you point by point** tibi respondébō (*in writing: rescríbam*) ad síngula; **now I'll answer your questions** nunc respondébō ad ea quae rogāvístī; **that's not an answer to my question** áliud tē rogō

answering machine respōnstr·um -ī *n*
tēlephónicum

ant formíc·a -ae *f*

antagonistic infést·us -a -um

antecedent *s* nōm·en -inis *n* antecédēns

antelope búbul·us -ī *m*, tarándr·us -ī *m*

antepenult *s* antepaenúltima sýllab·a
-ae *f*

anthropologist anthrōpolog·us -ī *m* (·a
-ae *f*)

anthropology anthrōpológi·a -ae *f*

antiquity: in antiquity antíquitus [*adv*]

anxiety anxiet·ās -ātis *f*; **anxiety about**
cūr·a -ae *f* (+ *gen*)

anxious anxī·us -a -um

anxiously anxīē

anyhow (*just the same*) nec eō sētius; (*in any event*) útique

anyone quíspiam (*gen*: cūiúspiam); **if anyone** sī quis

anything else áliquíd ámplius, quicquam áliud

apartment diaét·a -ae *f*, cēnācul·um -ī *n*; **furnished apartment** diaéta omnī supelléctile ínstrúcta

apartment building ínsul·a -ae *f*

apathetic dēs·es -idis

ape sími·us -ī *m*, sími·a -ae *f*

Apennines, Apennine Range
Apennínus mōn·s -tis *m*

apologize (for) sē excūsāre (*dē* + *abl*); **I apologize to you** mē tibi excūsō

apology: please accept my apologies
quaesō, áccipe excūsatióne

apparently ut vidétur

appeal *s* (*attractiveness*) suávit·ās -ātis *f*; (*legal*) appellāti·ō -ónis *f*; **allow an appeal** appellatióne admiſt·ō -ere admiſī admiſsus; **disallow an appeal** appellatióne improbāre

appeal *tr* (**to**) appellāre (*ad* + *acc*)

appear appār·eō -ēre -uī; (*seem*) víd·eor -ērī vīsus sum

appendicitis appendicít·is -idis *f*

appendix (*of a book; of the body*)
appénd·ix -icis *f*

appetite (cibī) appeténti·a -ae *f*, (cibī) appetíti·ō -ónis *f*; **lack of appetite** inédi·a -ae *f*; **give s.o. a good appetite** álicuī (cibī) appeténtiam excitāre or fácere

appetizer gustāti·ō -ónis *f*

apple māl·um -ī *n*

applecart: upset the applecart
plaustrum percéll·ō -ere pérículī

apple pie māla *npl* in crustō cocta

apple polisher adulát·or -óris *m*, adulátr·īx -īcis *f*

apply (*a remedy*) adhíb·eō -ēre -uī -itus; **apply oneself to** sē cōnfer·ō cōnférre cōntulī (+ *dat* or *ad* + *acc*)

appointment: have an appointment with cōstitútum habére cum (+ *abl*); **keep an appointment** ad cōstitútum veníre

appreciate: I appreciate your kindness
benefícium tuum túeor tuérī túitus sum

apricot armeníac·um -ī *n*

April mēns·is -is *m* Apríl·is; **in April** mēse Apríli

apron súblig·ar -áris *n*

aqueduct aquaedúct·us -ūs *m*

archeologist archaeológ·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); **the archeologists excavated this site** archaeológī hunc situm excavérunt

archeology archaeológi·a -ae *f*

archery sagittāti·ō -ónis *f* (*see Chapter V*)

architect architét·us -ī *m*

architecture architectúr·a -ae *f*

Ardea Árde·a -ae *f*

area tract·us -ūs *m*

area code (tēlephónicus) númer·us -ī *m* praeléctórius

arena arén·a -ae *f*

Argiletum Argilét·um -ī *n* (*a district of Rome extending from the base of the Quirinal to the Capitoline and chiefly*

inhabited by booksellers and mechanics)

argue argūment·or -ārī; (*to wrangle*)
altērc·or -ārī; **stop arguing!** désine
(*pl: dēsínite*) altercārī!

argument altercāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **get into an argument** in litem ambíguam
dēscēnd·ō -ere -ī; **put up an argument** recūsāre

aristocracy nōbilit·ās -ātis *f*, optimāt·ēs
-ium *mpl*

arm *s* bráčchi·um -ī *n*; (*upper*) lacért·us
-ī *m* (*see arms*)

arm *tr* armāre

armaments apparát·us -ūs *m* bellī
(*rarely pl of apparátus*)

armchair sell·a -ae *f* bráčchiáta

armed armát·us -a -um; **be armed** in
armīs esse

armpit āl·a -ae *f*, axíll·a -ae *f*

arms: arm·a -órum *npl*; **arms race**
armórum certām·en -inis *n*; **be under arms** in armīs esse; **by force of arms**
vī et armīs; **lay down arms** ab armīs
discēd·ō -ere discēssī; **take up arms**
arma cápere

army exércit·us -ūs *m*; **join the army**
ad mīlítiam īre; **raise an army**
exércitum comparāre

around circā, círciter (+ *acc*), dē (+
abl); **around midnight** dē médiā
nocte; **around noon** círciter
merídiem

arouse (*feelings*) exagitāre, suscitāre;
arouse suspicion suspiciōnem
móv·eō -ēre móvī mótus; **arouse**
from sleep ē somnō excitāre

arrest *s* prehénsi·ō -ōnis *f*

arrest *tr* prehén·dō -dere -dī -sus

arrival advént·us -ūs *m*

arrive advén·iō -íre advēnī advéntum;
arrive at pervén·iō -íre pervēnī
pervéntum (*ad or in + acc*)

arrogance arrogánti·a -ae *f*

arrogant árrog·āns -ántis

artery artéri·a -ae *f*

art gallery pinacothéc·a -ae *f*

arthritis arthrit·is -idis *f*; articuláris
morb·us -ī *m*

artichoke cínar·a -ae *f*

article *s* (*in newspaper or magazine*)
commentāriol·us -ī *m*, commentāti·ō
-ōnis *f*; (*clause in a law, treaty*)
cap·ut -itis *n*; (*gram*) articul·us -ī *m*
(*hic haec hoc, normally*
demonstrative, serve as articles only
in declensions); **definite (indefinite)**
article finítus (ínfinítus) articul·us

articulate *adj* disért·us -a -um

articulate *tr* articulāre

artillery tormént·a -órum *npl*

artist ártif·ex -icis *m*

as *adv* sicut, ut; **as far as** (*up to*) ūsque
ad (+ *acc*); **as far as** (*e.g. I am*
concerned) quoad; **as far as I know**
quod sciō; **as for instance** ut putā; **as**
long as quámdiū; **as often as**
quotiēscúmque; **as soon as** cum
prīmum; **as soon as possible** quam
prīmum; **as well as** atque; **as yet**
adhūc

ashamed: I'm ashamed of it mē pudet
eius; **I'm ashamed to say** mē pudet
dícere

ask rogāre, pet·ō -ere petīvī petítus; (*for*
information) quaerō quaérere
quaesfvī quaesfús; **ask about**
(*someone, something*) dē (áliquō)
rogāre; **ask a few questions** pauca
quaérere; **ask further questions**
quaérere ultrā; **ask s.o. s.th.** áliquem

áliquid rogáre; **ask s.o. for s.th.** ab áliquō áliquid rogáre; **ask the teacher (student) a question** docéntem (discéntem) interrogáre; **ask the price of an item** mercis prétium inquír·ō -ere inquísívi inquísitus; **ask this question** hoc quaérere; **he asked me whether** quaesívit ā mē (*or* dē mē *or* ex mē) num; **he asked you a question** ille tē interrogávit; **I want to ask you this** hoc tē rogáre volō; **why do you ask me that?** quid mē istud rogās?

asparagus aspárag·us -ī *m*

assault *s* vīs *f* (*acc*: vim; *abl*: vī); **accuse s.o. of assault (and battery)** áliquem dē vī (*et* manū) accūsáre; **commit assault against** vim fácere in (+ *acc*)

assault *tr* vim fácere in (+ *acc*)

assembly concíli·um -ī *n*

assign assignáre

assignment pēns·um -ī *n*; (*written*) praescript·um -ī *n*; **do the assignment** pēsum (*or* praescriptum) pér·igō -ígere -égī -áctum

assistant assíst·ēns -éntis *mf*

assistant principal *see* principal

associate sóci·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

asthma asthm·a -atis *n*

astrologer astrólog·us -ī *m*

astrology astrológi·a -ae *f*

astronaut astronaút·a -ae *m*,
astronaútri·a -ae *f*

astronomer astrólog·us -ī *m*

astronomy astronómi·a -ae *f*, astrológi·a -ae *f*

astute astút·us -a -um

at apud (+ *acc*); **at all** prōrsum, omnínō: **you have no common sense at all**

Nōn cor omnínō habēs; **at least** útique; **at most** summum; **at once** contínuō, moméntō; **at the house of** apud (+ *acc*)

Athens Athén·ae -árum *fpl*

athlete áthlēt·a -ae *m*, áthléttri·a -ae *f*;
like an athlete áthléticē

athletic áthlétic·us -a -um; **athletic competition** áthlētárum certám·en -inis *n*

athletics áthlétic·a -ae *f*

Atlantic Atlántic·us -a -um; **Atlantic Ocean** Atlánticus ócēan·us -ī *m*,
Atlánticum mar·e -is *n*

atrium átri·um -ī *n*

atrocious atr·ōx -ócis

attack *s* (*of illness*) ímpet·us -ūs *m*,
accéssi·ō -ónis *f*; (*verbal*) petíti·ō -ónis *f*; (*mil*) oppugnáti·ō -ónis *f*

attack *tr* oppugnáre, adórior adoríri
adórtus sum; (*verbally*) impugnáre;
(*of a disease*) occupáre

attend *tr* (*to be present at*) inté·sum -esse -fuī (+ *dat*); (*school*)
frequentáre **II intr attend to** óperam dare (+ *dat*); **I'll certainly attend to it** dabō équidem óperam

attention (ánimī) atténti·ō -ónis *f*; **pay attention** ánimum attén·dō -dere -dī -tus; **pay attention!** atténde! (*pl*: atténdite!) *or* ánimum atténde! (*pl*: ánimōs atténdite!); **pay attention to what I am saying!** dictīs meis atténde! (*pl*: atténdite!)

attentive attént·us -a -um, ērēct·us -a -um

attic subtēguláne·um -ī *n*

attitude gest·us -ūs *m*; **I don't like your attitude** gestus tuus mihi dísplicet

attorney cógnit·or -óris *m*, cógnitr·ix -ícis *f*; **appoint an attorney to s.o.**

cognitōrem álicui adscrīb·ō -ere
adscrīpsī adscrīptus

attract conciliāre, trah·ō -ere traxī
tractus

attractive lépid·us -a -um; (*esp. in looks*) speciōs·us -a -um, venúst·us -a -um

audiocassette phōnocasēt·a -ae *f*

audiotape phōnotaéni·a -ae *f*

audiovisual aid audīvisíficum
subsídi·um -ī *n*

August mēns·is -is *m* Augústus; **in August** mēnse Augústō

aunt (*father's side*) ámit·a -ae *f*;
(*mother's side*) mātérter·a -ae *f*

austere asp·er -era -erum, austér·us -a -um

author auct·or -óris *m*, auctr·īx -ícis *f*;
(*writer*) scrīp·tor -tóris *m* (-trīx -trícis *f*); **classical author** clássicus scrīptor

automobile autoraéd·a -ae *f*, auto-
cīnēt·um -ī *n* [*used interchangeably*]

available: be available praestō [*indecl*]
esse

avalanche lābīn·a -ae *f* nivális

average *adj* módic·us -a -um

average *s on the average* médiā hábitā
ratiōne; peraéquē

aw, keep quiet! au, tacē!

awake: be awake vigilāre; **be awake all night** pervigilāre

away: away with you! abī abhinc!; **be far away** longē abesse; **go away** ab·eō -íre -iī *or* -ívī; **he's away** abest

awesome! mīrābile!

awful dīr·us -a -um

awkward inconcīnn·us -a -um

aye yai yai! heu heu!

B

baby inf·āns -ántis *mf*

baby carriage chīramáxi·um -ī *n*

back *s* terg·um -ī *n*; **back of the classroom** postérior par·s -tis *f*
conclávis scholáris; **back of the head** occipíti·um -ī *n*; **get off my back!**
ápage tē ā dorsō meō!

back *tr* fáv·eō -éire fāvī fautúrus (+ *dat*)

back door postíc·um -ī *n*

backhand (*tennis*) íct·us -ūs *m* invérsus

backpack mántic·a -ae *f*

back seat sēd·ēs -is *f* postérior

backside (*anat*) clūn·ēs -ium *mpl*, nat·ēs -ium *fpl*; (*facetiously*) postíc·um -ī *n*

backstroke natāti·ō -ónis *f* resupína

backward (*mentally*) lent·us -a -um

backwards retrō

bacon lard·um -ī *n*

bad mal·us -a -um, ímprob·us -a -um,
alién·us -a -um; (*weather*) advérs·us -a -um, grav·is -is -e; **feel (very) bad about** (valdē) dól·eō -éire -ui dē (+ *abl*); **too bad about Edward** male dē Eduárdō; **wine is bad for you** vīnum est aliénū tibi

badminton lūd·us -ī *m* pilae pinnátae;
play badminton pilā pinnátā lúdere
(*see Chapter V*)

bag sacc·us -ī *m*; (*small bag*) sáccul·us -ī *m*; (*handbag*) bulg·a -ae *f*

baggage car curr·us -ī *m* sarcinárius

baggage cart chīramáxi·um -ī *n*
sarcinárum

baggage check cūrāti·ō -ónis *f*
sarcinárum

bagpipes ūtriculári·um -ī *n*; **play the bagpipes** ūtriculáriō lúdere

bait esc·a -ae *f*

bake coqu·ō -ere coxī coctus; tórr·eō
-ére -uī tostus; in furnō cóquere

baker pīst·or -óris *m*, pīstr·īx -ícis *f*,
pānif·ex -icis *m*, pānífic·a -ae *f*

bakery pīstrín·a -ae *f*, furnári·a -ae *f*

balance beam tign·um -ī *n* aequilíbrīi

bald calv·us -a -um

bald head calvíti·um -ī *n*

ball (*dance*) saltáti·ō -ónis *f*

ball pil·a -ae *f*; (*inflated*) foll·is -is *m*;
catch the ball pilam *or* follem
excíp·iō -ere excēpī excéptus; **kick**
the ball follem pede pulsáre; **play**
ball pilā *or* folle lúdere; **throw the**
ball pilam *or* follem coníc·iō -ere
coniécī

ball field camp·us -ī *m* lūsórius

ball game lūs·us -ūs *m* pilae (*or* follis)

ballot tabéll·a -ae *f*, suffrági·um -ī *n*;
cast a ballot suffrágium ferō ferre
tulī látus

ballot box suffrágiórum cist·a -ae *f*

ballpoint pen stil·us -ī *m* sphaerátus

baloney fárcim·en -inis *n*; **baloney!**
fábulae!

bamboozle verba dare (+ *dat*); **you**
bamboozled me mihi verba dedístī

banana arién·a -ae *f*, banán·a -ae *f*; **he**
wants to be top banana vult sē esse
prīmum ómnium rerum

band symphóni·a -ae *f*, concént·us -ūs
m músicus

bandage s fásci·a -ae *f*

bandage *tr* (*an arm, etc.*) ligáre,
dēligáre; (*a wound*) adstrín·gō -gere
-xī adstríctus

bang (*noise*) strépít·us -ūs *m*

bangs (*of hair*) ánti·ae -árūm *fp*

banish (*worries, cares*) éxim·ō -ere
exémī exéemptus; (*a person*)
extermináre

banister adminícul·um -ī *n*

bank argentári·a -ae *f*, tabérn·a -ae *f*
argentária; (*of a river*) rīp·a -ae *f*;
manage a bank argentárium
móder·or -ári moderátus sum; **the**
Tiber overflowed its banks Tíberis
super rīpās effúsus est

bank account ráti·ō -ónis *f* argentária

bank book libéll·us -ī *m* comparsórum,
argentariae libéll·us -ī *m*

banker argentári·us (-a -ae *f*)

banking business argentári·a -ae *f*; **run**
a (big) banking business
argentárium (máximam) fácere

bank manager argentariae moderá·tor
-tóris *m* (-trīx -trícis *f*)

bank teller argentári·us -ī *m* (-a -ae *f*)

bank window óstíol·um -ī *n*
argentárium

bankrupt: go bankrupt decóqu·ō -ere
decócxi decóctum

bankruptcy decóccti·ō -ónis *f*; **declare**
bankruptcy bonam cópiam eīuráre

bar oec·us -ī *m* pōtórius; (*of chocolate*
or soap) quádrul·a -ae *f*; **barroom**
oec·us -ī *m* pōtórius; **bar stool**
sedíl·e -is *n* praeáltum, seliquástr·um
-ī *n*; **bartender** ministrá·tor -tóris *m*
(-trīx -trícis *f*), ínservít·or -óris *m*;
serve at the bar in iūdiciīs versári;
in forō ágere

barbecue *tr* in cráticulā assáre

barbecue grill crátícul·a -ae *f*

barber tōns·or -óris *m*

barber chair sell·a -ae *f* tōnsória

barber shop tōnstrín·a -ae *f*

barely vix

bargain préti·um -ī *n* speciāle; **buy at a good bargain** bene em·ō -ere emī emptus

baritone cant·or -ōris *m* vōcis gravis, barytoníst·a -ae *m*

bark *intr* latráre; **bark at** allatrāre

bark *s* latrát·us -ūs *m*

barley hórde·um -ī *n*

barn hórre·um -ī *n*

barnyard coh·ors -órtis *f*

barometer barómetr·um -ī *n*

barracks mílitum contubérni·um -ī *n*

barrel (*of pottery or wood*) dóli·um -ī *n*; (*wooden*) cūp·a -ae *f*

base bas·is -is *f*; **first** (**second, third, home**) **base** basis prīma (secúnda, tértia, summa); **play first** (**second, third**) **base** apud prīmam (secúndam, tértiam) basim lúdere (*see Chapter V*)

baseball (*the ball itself*) basípil·a -ae *f*; (*the sport*) lūd·us -ī *m* basípilae; **a baseball game** basípilae lūs·us -ūs *m*, basípilae certāmen -inis *n*; **play baseball** basípilā lúdere

baseman (**first, second, third**) (prīmus, secúndus, tértius) basiári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

basement hypogé·um -ī *n*

basic training rudīménta *npl* militária

basics elemént·a -órum *npl*

basin aquál·is -is *m(f)*

basket corb·is -is *m*; **make a basket** follem per corbem iác·iō -ere iēcī

basketball corbifóll·is -is *m*; **play basketball** corbifólle lúdere (*see Chapter V*)

bass viol contrábáss·um -ī *n*

bat *tr & intr* clāvō pulsáre

bat *s* (*club*) clāv·a -ae *f* (lūsória); (*bird*) vespertíli·ō -ónis *m*

bath bálne·um -ī *n*; **public bath** therm·ae -árum *fpl*

bathe *tr* (*a sore limb*) fōv·eō -ēre fōvī; (*a person*) laváre **II** *intr* lavári

bathroom bálne·um -ī *n*; (*small*) balnéol·um -ī *n*; (*toilet*) lātrín·a -ae *f*; (*public toilet*) fóric·a -ae *f*

bathroom sink lābéll·um -ī *n*

bath towel gausápin·a -ae *f*

bathtub sóli·um -ī *n*, lābr·um -ī *n*

battalion cohors, cohórtis *f*

battalion commander praeféct·us -ī *m* cohórtis

batter clavát·or -óris *m*, clavátr·ix -ícis *f*, pulsát·or -óris *m*, pulsátr·ix -ícis *f*

battery accumulátr·um -ī *n*

battle pugn·a -ae *f*, proéli·um -ī *n*; **the battle of** (*at or near a town*) proélium apud *or* ad *or* circā (+ *acc*); **fight a battle** proélium fácere; **in battle** proéliō, áciē; **naval battle off Tenedos** pugna nāvális ante Tenedum; **successful battle** proélium secúndum

battlefield aci·ēs -ēī *f*

bay sin·us -ūs *m*, recéss·us -ūs *m*

bay window prōiectúr·a -ae *f*

be sum esse fuī futúrus, exst·ō -āre; **be here, be present** ádsum adésse ádfuī; **be off to** ábeō -íre -iī -itum hinc ad (+ *acc*); **be fine** bene sē habére; vál·eō -ēre -uī; **be up for sale** vén·eō -íre -iī; **be up in years** aetáte prōvéct·us -a -um esse; **be up to a task** óperī par esse

beach lit·us -oris *n*

beach chair sell·a -ae *f* litorális (*or* cubitória)

beak rōstr·um -ī *n*

beam trabs, trabis *f*

bean fab·a -ae *f*; (*kidney bean*)
phasēl·us -ī *mf*

bear *tr* fer·ō ferre tulī lātus; (*children, young*) pār·iō -ere péperī partus; (*to tolerate*) tolerāre; **bear in mind** recordārī

bear urs·us -ī *m*, urs·a -ae *f*; **bears**
grunt ursī grūnniunt

bear cub ursae cātul·us -ī *m*

beard barb·a -ae *f*

beat *tr* (*with fists, clubs*) (pugnīs, fūstibus) caed·ō -ere cecīdī caesus; (*eggs*) coagitāre; **beat up** concīd·ō -ere -ī concīsus; (*in combat, in competition*) vinc·ō -ere vīcī victus; **beat the daylight out of** pulchre percopolāre **|| intr beat around the bush** circumitiōne ūt·or -ī ūsus sum

beautician ōrnātr·īx -īcis *f*

beautiful pulch·er -ra -rum, formōs·us -a -um

beauty pulchritūd·ō -inis *f*

beaver fi·ber -brī *m*

because quod, quia, quoniam

become fiō fierī factus sum

becoming dec·ēns -ēntis

bed lect·us -ī *m*; (*small*) léctul·us -ī *m*;
bed of roses rosári·um -ī *n*; **be confined to bed** lectō tén·eor -ēri tentus sum; **get out of bed** ē lectō sur·gō -gere -rēxī; **go to bed** cúbitum īre; **make the bed** lectum (*or* léctulum) stern·ō -ere strāvī strātus

bedbug sciníph·is -is *m*

bed covers strágul·a -ōrum *npl*

bedding strágul·a -ōrum *npl*

bed frame spond·a -ae *f*

bed-ridden valētūdinári·us -a -um

bedroom dormitōrium cubícul·um -ī *n*

bedspread opertōri·um -ī *n*, peristróm·a -atis *n*

bee ap·is -is *f*; **bees buzz** apēs bómbilant

beef búbul·a -ae *f*; **roast beef** búbula assa

beehive álve·us -ī *m*

beer cervísi·a -ae *f*

beer glass hýal·us -ī *m* cervisárius

beer mug úrce·us -ī *m* cervisárius

beet bēt·a -ae *f*

before *adv* ánteā

before *conj* ántequam, priúsqvam (+ *indic*)

before *prep* ante (+ *acc*); (*directly in front of*) prō (+ *abl*); **before daylight** ante lūcem; **before long** propédiem; **before now** ántehāc

begin incíp·iō -ere incépī incéptus;
begin at incípere ab (+ *abl*); **begin to bloom** flōrésc·ō -ere; **to begin with** primum enim

beginning prīncipi·um -ī *n*; **at the beginning of the year** prīncipiō annī; ineúnte annō; **from the very beginning** iam inde ā prīncipiō

behave (*to act*) sē ger·ō -ere gessī;
behave oneself sē probē gérere

behind *prep* post (+ *acc*); (*with verbs of motion*) pōne (+ *acc*); (*in the rear of*) ā tergō (+ *gen*)

behind *s* (*anat*) postíc·um -ī *n*

believe crēd·ō -ere crēdidī crēditum (+ *dat*); **believe me** mihi crēde

bell campān·a -ae *f*; (*small bell*) tintinnābul·um -ī *n*; **bell tower** campānīl·e -is *n*

bellow (*or low*) bōāre; mūg·iō -īre -īvī
or -ī -ītum

belly alv·us -ī *f*

belt cingul·um -ī *n*; zōn·a -ae *f* (*wide belt, usu. of cloth, used by men and women with a tunic; often used as money belt*)

bench scabell·um -ī *n*, scāmn·um -ī *n*

bend *intr* sē flect·ō -ere flexī; **bend down** (*or over*) (*stoop*) sē inclināre

bend *s* (*of a river*) flex·us -ūs *m*

berry bacc·a -ae *f*

besides *adv* porrō, praeterea

besides *prep* praeter (+ *acc*)

besiege (**blockade**) a town oppidum
obsīd·ō -ere obsēdī obsessus

best *adv* máximē; (*especially*)
potissimum

best *s* **do one's best** prō virīli parte;
make the best of it aequō ānimō ferō
ferre tulī lātus; **to the best of one's**
ability prō vīribus

best *adj* optim·us -a -um; (*friend*)
summ·us -a -um; **it is best to**
optimum est (+ *inf*)

bet *s* spōnsi·ō -ōnis *f*; (*the stake*)
pign·us -oris *n*

bet *tr* **I bet he has taken off** pōnō eum
abīvīsse; **I bet you he doesn't win** tē
spōnsiōne prōvocō illum nōn esse
victūrum

better *adj* **it's better to** commōdius est
(+ *inf*); **there, that's better!** em istuc
rēctius!; **where is your better half?**
ūbinam est tua āltera?

better *adv* mēlius

better *s* **it's for the better** in mēlius est

beyond ultrā (+ *acc*)

bicycle bírot·a -ae *f*; **ride a bicycle**
bírotā veh·or -ī vectus sum

bicycle handlebars manúbri·um -ī *n*

bicycle pedal pedál·e -is *n*

bicycle seat sessíbul·um -ī *n*

bicyclist birotári·us -ī *m*, birotári·a -ae *f*

big magn·us -a -um; ampl·us -a -um;
talk big ampullári

big-hearted magnánim·us -a -um

big-mouth: big-mouth! ōs dūrum!; **he**
was always a big-mouth semper
dūrae buccae fuit

big toe poll·ex -icis *m*

bike *see* **bicycle**

bile bil·is -is *f*

bill (*parl*) rogāti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*of money*
owed) rāti·ō -ōnis *f* débīti; (*paper*
money) numm·us -ī *m* chartāreus,
schedinúmm·us -ī *m*; **ten-dollar bill**
nummus chartāreus decem
dollarōrum

biographer vītae (alicūius) scrīp·tor
-tōris *m* (·trīx -trīcis *f*); biógraph·us
-ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

biographical biográphic·us -a -um

biography vīt·a -ae *f*, biográphi·a -ae *f*

biological biológic·us -a -um; **biological**
warfare bell·um -ī *n* biológicum

biologist biológ·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

biology biológ·i·a -ae *f*

bird av·is -is *f*

egg ōv·um -ī *n*

feather penn·a -ae *f*

flap the wings ālis plaud·ō -ere
plausī plausum

flight volāt·us -ūs *m*

fly volāre; **fly away** avolāre

land (**on**) insīd·ō -ere insēdī (+ *dat*)

nest nīd·us -ī *m*; **build a nest**
nīdificāre

sing can·ō -ere cēcīnī cantum

song cant·us -ūs *m*

- tail** caud·a -ae *f*
wing al·a -ae *f*
birth nātívit·ās -ātis *f*
birthday di·ēs -ēī *m* nātālis (*or simply* nātāl·is -is *m*); **Happy Birthday!** Felícem Nātálem (tibi exóptō)
birthday cake lib·um -ī *n* nātālicium
birthday party nātālici·a -ae *f*; **give (throw) a birthday party** nātāliciam dare (agitāre)
birthday present nātālici·um -ī *n*
birth place nātālis loc·us -ī *m*
bishop episcop·us -ī *m*
bit: a bit of advice (food) áliquid cōnsiliū (cibi)
bite mors·us -ūs *m*; (*of a snake, insect*) ict·us -ūs *m*; **a bite to eat** gústul·us -ī *m*
bite *tr* mórd·eō -ēre momórdī morsus; (*of a snake, insect*) ic·ō -ere -ī ictus
bitter acérb·us -a -um; (*in taste*) amár·us -a -um
bitterly: complain bitterly gráviter queror querī questus sum; **cry bitterly** gráviter lacrimāre, ūbértim flēō flēre flēvī
bitterness acérbit·ās -ātis *f*; (*esp. of taste*) amāritúd·ō -inis *f*
black āt·er -ra -rum; (*shiny black*) nig·er -ra -rum
black and blue lívid·us -a -um; **black and blue mark** liv·or -ōris *m*
blackbird mérul·a -ae *f* (*see bird*)
blackboard tábul·a -ae *f* ātra, tábul·a -ae *f* scrīptória
bladder vēsíc·a -ae *f*
blade lámin·a -ae *f*
blame *s* culp·a -ae *f*; **push the blame on** culpam in (+ *acc*) cōnferō cōnférre cōntulī collátus
blame *tr* culpāre, incūsāre; **blame s.o. for** áliquem culpāre ob (+ *acc*); **I am to blame** in culpā sum; **I don't blame you** tibi nōn impróperō
bland lēn·is -is -e
blanket lōd·īx -ícis *f*; **blanket of snow** tégim·en -inis *n* níveum
blast flāt·us -ūs *m*
bleachers for·ī -ōrum *mpl*
bleat (*of sheep, rams*) bālāre
blender máchin·a -ae *f* concisória
bless (*eccles.*) bene·díc·ō -dícere -dícī;
bless you! dī tē ament!; (*after s.o. has sneezed*) salvē! *or* salútem!
blind caec·us -a -um
blind alley fúndul·a -ae *f*
blindness caécit·ās -ātis *f*
blinds (*on window*) trānsénn·a -ae *f* volúbilis; **close (open) the blinds** trānsénnam apériō -íre -uī (dēmítt·ō -ere dēmísī dēmíssus)
block (*of a city*) vīc·us -ī *m*; *s* (*sports*) obstrúcti·ō -ōnis *f*
block *tr* & *intr* (*sports*) obstō obstāre óbstitī (+ *dat*), óbstru·ō -ere obstrúxī obstrúctus
blockhead (*slang*) caud·ex -icis *m*
blond flāv·us -a -um
blood sangu·is -inis *m*; (*outside the body*) cru·or -ōris *m*
blood pressure pressúr·a -ae *f* sánguinis; **high blood pressure** hypertóni·a -ae *f*
bloodshot: he has bloodshot eyes oculī eius ságuine suffúsī sunt
blouse pēlúsi·a -ae *f*, blūs·a -ae *f*

blow flāre; **blow hard** perflāre

bludgeon *s* fūst·is -is *m*

bludgeon *tr* fūste (*or* fūstibus) concíd·ō
-ere concídī concísus; **bludgeon to death** fūstigāre

blueberry vaccíni·um -ī *n*

blunt (*not sharp*) heb·es -etis; (*abrupt*)
inurbán·us -a -um

bluntly libérius

blurt out effút·iō -íre

blush ērubesc·ō -ere ērúbui

bluster (*boasting*) iactāti·ō -ónis *f*

blustery ventós·us -a -um

boar ap·er -rī *m*; **boars grunt** aprī
grúnniunt

board (*of wood*) tábul·a -ae *f*; (*food*)
vict·us -ūs *m*; (*council*) cōnsíli·um -ī
n; **room and board** mánsi·ō -ónis *f*
et vict·us -ūs *m*

board *tr* (*a ship, vehicle, airplane*)
inścénd·ō -ere -ī in (+ *acc*)

boarding school oecotrophé·um -ī *n*

boardwalk ambulácr·um -ī *n* in lítore

boastful iact·āns -ántis

body corp·us -oris *n*

bodyguard satellít·ēs -um *mpl*

boil *tr* fervefác·iō -ere fervefēcī
fervefáctus; **boil thoroughly** ēlixāre
It intr bullāre, fērv·eō -ēre fērbui; **it makes my blood boil** facit ut sanguis
ab irā fervēscit

boiled ēlīx·us -a -um

bold aud·āx -ácis

boldness audáci·a -ae *f*

bolt *s* (*on a door*) ser·a -ae *f*, péssul·us
-ī *m*; **bolt of lightning** fúlmen *n*
fúlminis

bolt *tr* **bolt the door** óstium obserāre

bomb *s* míssil·e -is *n* dirúmpēs,
bomb·a -ae *f*; **atomic bomb** bomba
atómica; **nuclear bomb** bomba
nucleáris

bomb *tr* míssilibus dirumpéntibus
concút·iō -ere concússī concússus

bombastic bullát·us -a -um

bomber aeróplan·um -ī *n* bombíferum

bond (*on the stockmarket*) chrēmató-
graph·um -ī *n*

bone os, ossis *n*

book li·ber -brī *m*

book bag mántic·a -ae *f* librária

book binder glūtínát·or -óris *m*

bookcase bibliothéc·a -ae *f*; **built-in bookcase** bibliothéca parietī insérta

book cover tegimént·um -ī *n* librī

bookkeeper actuári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

bookmark *s* (*comput*) not·a -ae *f*

bookseller bibliopól·a -ae *mf*

bookshelf plúte·us -ī *m*, pegm·a -atis *n*
librarium

bookstore librári·a -ae *f*; bibliopól·a -ae
f

boorish agrést·is -is -e

boot pēr·ō -ónis *m* (*of rawhide, reaching up to the calf, worn by peasants, shepherds, soldiers*); cálig·a -ae *f*
(*worn by soldiers of lower rank*)

booting up (*comput*) initiāti·ō -ónis *f*
systématis

boot up (*comput*) initiāre systéma

booze tēmēt·um -ī *n*

border fin·is -is *m*, cōnfīni·um -ī *n*

border on attíng·ō -ere (+ *acc*)

bore *s* molést·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); **don't be a bore** nē sīs odiósus (-a)

bore *tr* obtúnd·ō -ere óbtudī obtúsus

boring taediōsus -a -um

born: be born nasc•or -ī nātus (-a) sum

borrow mūtū•or -ārī -ātus sum; **borrow money at interest** pecūniam faēnorī mūtūārī

bosom sin•us -ūs *m*; (*of a female*) mamīll•ae -ārum *fpl*

boss (*owner*) dōmin•us -ī *m*; (*coll*) īpsim•us -ī *m*, īpsim•a -ae *f*

both utérque útraque utrúmque; **both of us** [*lit.*; “*each*” *of us*] utérque nostrum

bother (*annoy*) exérc•eō -ére -uī -itus; **don’t bother** nōlī tē (*pl.* nōlíte vōs) movére; **don’t bother me** nē mihi moléstus (-a) sīs

bothered exercitāt•us -a -um

bothersome molést•us -a -um

boundary fin•is -is *m*; (*dividing line*) discrīm•en -inis *n*; **at the boundary between Italy and Switzerland** ad discrīmen Itáliae et Helvétiae

bounded: on the east it is bounded by ... ab oriēte claúditur (+ *abl*)

bowels alv•us -ī *f*

bowl *intr* globum volutáre, cōnīs lúdere; **bowl a strike** omnēs cōnōs (*simul*) prōstérn•ō -ere prōstrāvī; **go bowling** ire lūsum cōnórum

bowl *s* crāt•ēr -éris *m*, lanx, lancis *f*; (*large with handles*) catīn•us -ī *m*; (*smaller*) catíll•us -ī *m*

bowling cōnórum lūs•us -ūs *m*, cōnilúdi•um -ī *n* (*see Chapter V*)

bowling alley cōnórum vi•a -ae *f*; (*the room*) oec•us -ī *m* cōnórum lūsūs; (*the building*) aedifici•um -ī *n* cōnórum lūsūs

bowling ball glob•us -ī *m* lūsórius; globus *m* cōnórum

bowling lane vi•a -ae *f* cōnária

bowling pin cōn•us -ī *m* (lūsórius)

box pugi(l)lāre

boxer pugil, púgil•is *m*

boxing pugilāt•us -ūs *m*, pugilāti•ō -ōnis *f* (*see Chapter V*)

boxing champion púgilum rēx, rēgis *m*

boxing glove caest•us -ūs *m*

boxing match pugilatórium certām•en -inis *n*

boxing ring suggést•us -ūs *m* pugilatórius

boyfriend (*or girlfriend*) am•āns -āntis *mf*

boyhood pueríti•a -ae *f*, aet•ās -átis *f* puerfīlis; **from boyhood on** ā puerō

bra stróphi•um -ī *n*, mamillár•e -is *n*

bracelet armíll•a -ae *f* (*worn on the upper arm by the Romans*)

brag sē iactáre; **brag about** iactáre; **he brags too much about his money** pecūniam nimis iactat

brain cérébr•um -ī *n*; **brains** corcíll•um -ī *n*, cor, cordis *n*; **she’s got brains** corcillum habet

brake *s* sufflám•en -inis *n*; **apply the brake** rotās sufflāmináre

brake lights (autoraédae) lúmin•a -um *npl* postfca

brake pedal pedál•e -is *n* sufflāminis

brandy vínī spírít•us -ūs *m*

brat proc•āx -ácis púsi•ō -ōnis *m*, frust•um -ī *n* púerī (*or* puéllae)

bray (*of a mule*) rud•ō -ere -ívī -ítum

bread pān•is -is *m*; **loaf of bread** pānis

breadcrumb mīc•a -ae *f* pānis

breaded salígne•us -a -um

breadth lātitūd·ō -inis *f*; **in breadth** in lātitūdinem

break *tr* (*arm, dish, law, treaty, one's word*) frang·ō -ere frēgī frāctus; (*a law*) violāre; (*silence, law*) rump·ō -ere rūpī ruptus; **break one's word** fidem frāngere **|| intr break into a home** domūs parietēs perfōd·iō -ere perfōdī perfōssus

breakfast ientācul·um -ī *n*; **eat breakfast** ientāre; ientāculum sūm·ō -ere -psī -ptus

breaking and entering, break-in effrāctūr·a -ae *f*

breast (*of a female*) mamm·a -ae *f*, mammīll·a -ae *f*

breast stroke natāti·ō -ōnis *f* prōna

breath: catch one's breath respirāre; anhēlitum recīpere

breathe spīrāre; **breathe in** īnspīrāre; **breathe out** exspīrāre

breeze vēntul·us -ī *m*, aur·a -ae *f*

brew *tr* **brew beer** cerevīsiā cōqu·ō -ere coxī coctus **|| intr there is some trouble brewing** nēsciō quid malī concinnātur

brewery (*of beer*) bracīn·a -ae *f*

bribe *s* prēti·um -ī *n*

bribe *tr* corrump·ō -ere corrūpī corrūptus

bribery corruptēl·a -ae *f*; (*in politics*) āmbit·us -ūs *m*; **influenced by bribery** corrūpt·us -a -um

brick *adj* laterīci·us -a -um

brick *s* lat·er -eris *m* (coctīlis = **baked**); **lay bricks** lāterēs stru·ō -ere struxī structus

bricklayer lāterum strūct·or -ōris *m*

bride nūpt·a -ae *f*

bridegroom marīt·us -ī *m*

brief brev·is -is -e; **make it brief!** in pauca cōfer!

briefly bréviter, summātim, paucīs (verbīs); **to put it briefly** ut bréviter dicam

bright: (*beaming*) nítid·us -a -um; (*smart*) lūculent·us -a -um; (*eyes*) véget·us -a -um; (*day, sky*) serén·us -a -um; (*moon, stars, gems*) lúcid·us -a -um;

brilliant! sophos!; doctē!; **absolutely brilliant!** immō doctē!

bring (*along*) áfferō áfferre áttulī allátus; **bring about** effíc·iō -ere effēcī effēctus, cōnficiō; **bring oneself to** (*do s.th.*) ánimum indúc·ō -ere indúcī ut (+ *subj*); **bring to order** in ōrdinem cōg·ō -ere coégī coáctus

broad lāt·us -a -um

broadcast *s* ēmissi·ō -ōnis *f*

broadcast *tr* ēmitt·ō -ere ēmīsi ēmissus

broadcast station ēmístr·um -ī *n*

brocade séric·um -ī *n* aurō (*or* argéntō) intéxtum (*or* intertéxtum)

broil tórr·eō -ēre -uī tostus

broke: be broke solvéndō nōn esse

brooch fībul·a -ae *f*

brook rīvul·us -ī *m*

broom scōp·ae -ārum *fpl*

broth iūs, iūris *n*, iūscul·um -ī *n*

brother frā·ter -tris *m*

brother-in-law (*sister's husband*) marīt·us -ī *m* sorōris; (*husband's brother*) lē·vīr -vīri *m*

brown fusc·us -a -um

browse (*comput*) (*the Web*) nāvīgāre; (*text documents*) perlūstrāre

browser (*comput*) (*Web viewer*)

nāvigātr·um -ī *n*; (*viewer of text documents*) perlūstrātr·um -ī *n*

bruise *s* contūsi·ō -ōnis *f*

bruise *tr* contūd·ō -ere cōtudi
contūsus

brunette fusc·us -a -um

brush *s* pēnicul·us -ī *m*

brush *tr* verr·ō -ere -ī; **brush the teeth**
dentēs purgāre

bucket sítul·a -ae *f*; **come down in**
buckets ūrceātim cad·it -ere cécidit
cāsūrus; **rain buckets** ūrceātim
plūere; **kick the bucket** ānimam
ēbúll·iō -īre -īvi

buckle up sē accíng·ō -ere accínxī;
buckle up! tē accíngē (*pl*: vōs
accíngite)

buddy convíct·or -ōris *m*; contubernālis
-is *mf*

buffalo ūr·us -ī *m*

bug cīm·ex -icis *m*

buggy cīsi·um -ī *n*; **ride in a buggy**
cīsiō veh·or -ī vectus sum

build éxstru·ō -ere exstrúxī exstrúctus,
aedificāre

builder struct·or -ōris *m*, aedificāt·or
-ōris *m*

building aedifici·um -ī *n*; **put up a**
building aedificium éxstru·ō -ere
exstrúxī exstrúctus

building material aedificāndī matéri·a
-ae *f*

bull taur·us -ī *m*; (*slang*) fābul·āe -ārum
fpl; **bull's eye** scop·us -ī *m* médius;
sling the bull (*slang*) cōnfābul·or
-ārī -ātus sum

bullet glāns, glandis *f* plúmbea

bulletin libéll·us -ī *m*; (*message*)
núnti·us -ī *m*

bulletin board tábul·a -ae *f* pública

bully grassát·or -ōris *m*

bump: bump against offénd·ō -ere -ī;
bump into s.o. (*meet accidentally*)
álicui occurr·ō -ere -ī

bumper cont·us -ī *m* tūtórius

bun collŷr·is -idis *f*

bundle up (*against the cold*) sē bene
opér·iō -īre -uī

bunker (*golf*) obstácul·um -ī *n*; (*mil*)
subterrāneum castéll·um -ī *n*

burden on·us -eris *n*; **place the whole**
burden on my shoulders mihi omne
onus impōnere

bureau ministéri·um -ī *n*; (*chest*)
armāri·um -ī *n*

burglar effrāct·or -ōris *m*, (parietum)
perfóss·or -ōris *m*

burglary (domūs) latrōcīni·um -ī *n*;
commit a burglary parietēs
perfód·iō -ere perfódī perfóssus

burn *tr* ur·ō -ere ūssī ūstus; (*burn to*
ashes) cremāre; **burn down** dēūrere
ll intr árd·eō -ēre -uī

burner disc·us -ī *m* coctórius

burst out laughing rīsum effúnd·ō -ere
effúdi

bury the hatchet (*fig*) simultātem
dēpón·ō -ere dēpósui

bus raéd·a -ae *f* longa, coenautocīnēt·um
-ī *n*

bus driver coenautocīnētī gubernā·tor
-tōris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

bush: don't beat around the bush nōlī
(*pl*: nōlíte) schēmās loquī; **he didn't**
beat around the bush nīl
circumitiōne ūsus est

bushed: be bushed dē·fíciō -fícere -fēcī
-fécus

bushel medím·us -ī *m*

business *adj* negōtiāl·is -is -e

business *s* negōti·um -ī *n*; **be engaged in business** in negōtiō vers·or -ārī -ātus sum; **do** (*or carry on*) **business** negōti·or -ārī -ātus sum; **I always mind my own business** negōtium agō semper meum; **it's my (your, etc.) business to see what's going on** meum (tuum, *etc.*) est vidēre quid agātur; **run a business** negōtium exérc·eō -ēre -uī -itus; **put s.o. out of business** áliquem dē negōtiō dēfc·iō -ere dēiēcī dēiēctus; **transact business with s.o.** negōtium cum áliquō trāns·igō -ígere -égī -āctus; **that's none of your business** nihil ad tē áttinet; **what business is it of yours?** quid id ad tē áttinet?

business card chártul·a -ae *f* negōtiālis

business district empóri·um -ī *n*

business establishment (*with its premises*) negōtiāti·ō -ónis *f*

business letter epístul·a -ae *f* negōtiālis

businessman negōtiāt·or -óris *m*

businesswoman negōtiātr·īx -ícis *f*

bust imág·ō -inis *f*

busy occupát·us -a -um, negōtiós·us -a -um; **be busy** sāt·agō -ágere -égī

busy: busy oneself with vers·or -ārī versātus sum in (+ *abl*)

busybody ardéli·ō -ónis *mf*

but sed, vērūm; (*when objecting to or correcting a previous statement*) at

butcher láni·us -ī *m* (*see chapter on food*)

butcher shop laniēna -ae *f*

butter bŭtŕ·um -ī *n*

butter *tr* bŭtŕum adhibére ad (+ *acc*)

butterfly pāpili·ō -ónis *m*

button *s* glóbul·us -ī *m*; (*comput*) plēctr·um -ī *n*

button *tr* glóbulis string·ō -ere strīnxī strīctus

buttonhole *s.o.* áliquem prehēnsáre

buy em·ō -ere ēmī ēmptus; **paráre** (*from s.o.* dē aliqŭō); **buy at a bargain** bene émere

buyer ēmpt·or -óris *m*, ēmptŕ·īx -ícis *f*

buzz (*of a bee, horsefly*) bombiláre

by (*a certain time, not later than*) ad (+ *acc*); **by January** ad mēnsem Iānuárium; **by myself** per mē; **by now** iam; **by the way** óbiter

bye bene valē (*pl*: valéte)

bypass circŭit·us -ūs *m*

bystander persón·a -ae *f* mŭta; **among the bystanders** in circumstántibus

byte (*comput*) octét·us -ī *m*

C

cabbage brássic·a -ae *f*, cramb·ē -ēs *f*

cabinet (*of advisors*) summum cōnsili·um -ī *n*; (*furniture*) zothēcul·a -ae *f*

cabinet member cōnsiliári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

cackle (*of geese*) gríng·iō -íre; (*of hens*) gracilláre

cafe cafē·um -ī *n*

cafeteria refectóri·um -ī *n*

cage cáve·a -ae *f*

cahoots: be in cahoots with s.o. cum áliquō collŭ·dō -dere -sī

cake placént·a -ae *f*; (*esp. for birthdays*) lib·um -ī *n*

calculator mächínul·a -ae *f* calculátória

calendar calendári·um -ī *n*; (*in the Roman period*) fast·ī -ŏrum *mpl*

calf vítul·us -ī *m*, vítul·a -ae *f*; (*anat*) sūr·a -ae *f*

call (*name*) nōmināre, vocāre, appellāre, dicere, nuncupāre; (*summon*) ad sē vocāre; arcēss·ō -ere -īvī -ītus; **call roll** nōmina citāre; **call up the troops** ēvocāre cōpiās

callous dūr·us -a -um

callousness dūrítī·a -ae *f*

calm *adj* plácíd·us -a -um

calm *s* tranqúillit·ās -átis *f* ventī, maláci·a -ae *f*

calmly aequō ánimō

camel camél·us -ī *m*; **camel's hump** gibb·er -eris *m*

camera phōtomáchin·a -ae *f*, máchínul·a -ae *f* phōtographica

camp castr·a -ŏrum *npl*; **camp ground** camp·us -ī *m* tentórius

campaign *intr* (*pol*) ámb·iō -īre -īvī *or* -īi -itum

campaign *s* expediti·ō -ŏnis *f*; (*pol*) petíti·ō -ŏnis *f*

can *aux.* v. possum posse potuī, queō quīre quīvī *or* quīi

can *s* váscul·um -ī *n* stánneum

canal foss·a -ae *f*

canary fringíll·a -ae *f* Canária (*see bird*)

cancer can·cer -crī *m*

candid cándid·us -a -um, apért·us -a -um

candidate candidát·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*), petí·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

candy cuppédi·ae -árum *fpl*; **piece of candy** dulcíol·um -ī *n*

canvas téxtil·e -is *n*; **a painting on canvas** pictúra in téxtili

cap pílle·us -ī *m*

cape prōmontóri·um -ī *n*; (*clothing*) humerál·e -is *n*

capital cap·ut -itis *n*

capital letter *s* lítter·a -ae *f* grandis (*opp*: lítterā minúta); lítterā māiúscula (*opp*: minúscula)

capital punishment supplíci·um -ī *n* cápitis; **suffer capital punishment** supplíciō cápitis afficior áffici afféctus sum

captain (*of a ship*) naúarch·us -ī *m*

car autocīnēt·um -ī *n*, (auto) raéd·a -ae *f* (*used interchangeably*); **car door** raedae ōstíol·um -ī *n*; **car key** clāvis -is *f* accēnsíva; **car wash** raedae laváti·ō -ŏnis *f*; (*place*) raedae lavātóri·um -ī *n*; **drive a car** raedam gubernāre *or* ágere; **get (buy) a car** raedam comparāre; **go by (or in a) car** raedā eō ire īvī *or* īi; **put the car into the garage** raedam in receptáculō collocāre; **ride in a car** raedā vehor vehī vectus sum; **stop the car** raedam sistō sistere stitī; **take (or go for) a ride in a car** gestatíōnem raedā fácere; **take s.o. by car** áliquem raedā dúcere

carbon copy exémpl·ar -áris *n* carbóneum

card chártul·a -ae *f*; (*playing card*) chártul·a -ae *f* lūsória; (**ace** bñi·ō -ŏnis *m*; **jack** pedísequ·us -ī *m*; **joker** chártul·a -ae *f* fortúnāns; **king** rēx, rēgis *m*; **queen** rēgín·a -ae *f*; **club** crux, crucis (*gen pl*: crucum) *f*; **diamond** rūt·a -ae *f*; **heart** cor, cord·is *n*; **spade** pāl·a -ae *f*); **card game** chartulárum (lūsóriárum) lūs·us -ūs *m*; **play cards** chártulis (lūsóriis) lúdere; **shuffle (cut, deal) the cards** chártulās mísc·eō -ēre -uī mīxtus (sēpōn·ō -ere sēpōsuī sēpōsitus, distríbu·ō -ere -uī); **suit**

col·or -ôris *m*; **trick** vicēs *fpl* (ūnae, bīnae, trīnae, quatérnae); **trump** col·or -ôris *m* praelátus; *intr* chártulās fēr·iō -íre

care cūr·a -ae *f*; (*diligence*) dīligēti·a -ae *f*; **take good care of your health!** cūrā dīligēnter valētúdinem tuam!

care for (*like*) cūrāre; **for all I care** meā causā; **I don't care about such things** ista nōn cūrō; **I don't care for her** ea meō cordī nōn cāra est; **I don't care to say more** nōn libet plūra dīcere; **I don't really care as long as ...** meā nīl rēfert dum (+ *indic*); **take care of** (*treat*) cūrāre; **take care of yourself** cūrā ut váleās (*pl*: cūrāte ut valeátis); **what do I care!** quid meā!

carefree sēcūr·us -a -um

careful dīlig·ēns -éntis

careless incūrīōs·us -a -um

carelessness incūrī·a -ae *f*

carpenter fa·ber -brī *m* tignárius

carpet tapēt·um -ī *n*

carrot carōt·a -ae *f*

carry gerō gérere gessī gestus; (*luggage*) bāiulāre; **don't get carried away with enthusiasm** nōlī (*pl*: nōlíte) stúdiō efférri.

cartilage cartilág·ō -inis *f*

carve sculp·ō -ere -sī -tus

case (*container*) thēc·a -ae *f*; (*gram*) cās·us -ūs *m*; (*leg*) caus·a -ae *f*, līs, lītis *f*; **a noun in the genitive case** nōmen genitívō cāsū, (*or more rarely*) nōmen cāsūs genitívī; **as is generally the case** ut cōnsuetúdo est; **civil case** causa prīvāta; **criminal case** causa púbica; **in that case** eō cāsū; ígitur; **get off my case!** nē mihi moléstus (-a) sis!; **if that's the case**

sī rēs sīc habet; **in any case** utcúmque; **in case you have not ...** sī minus ... ; **in no case** haudquáquam; **in that case** ígitur; eō cāsū; **lose a case** causam per·dō -dere -didī; **plead a case** causam ag·ō -ere ēgī; **settle a case (out of court)** litem compón·ō -ere compósuī compósitus; **win a case** causā (*or* iūdiciō) vinc·ō -ere vícī victus; **since that's the case** quae cum ita sint; **that's not the case** nōn ita rēs est

cash argént·um -ī *n* presentárium, numerát·um -ī *n*; **I need cold cash** opus mihi est nummīs cálidīs; **pay \$10 in cash for** dēnumerāre decem dóllarōs praesentáriōs prō (+ *abl*)

cashier arcári·us -ī *m*, arcári·a -ae *f*

casino aleatōri·um -ī *n*

casserole coctōri·um -ī *n*

cassette casēt·a -ae *f*; (*for video*) casēta magnētoscópa

cassette recorder casētophón·um -ī *n*

cast a shadow: umbrae respōnd·eō -ére -ī; **the tree cast a ten-foot shadow** arbor umbrae decem pedum respōndit

cast a vote suffrágium ferō ferre tulī lātus

cat fēl·is *or* fēl·ēs -is *f*, catt·a -ae *f*, catt·us -ī *m*; **cats meow** fēlēs fēliunt; **cats purr** fēlēs múrmurant

catch *s* **there's a catch to it** enim istaec cáptiō est; **what's the catch?** quid est cáptiō?

catch *tr* (*fish*) captāre; (*baseball*) excíp·iō -ere excēpī excēptus; (*what one has said*) exaúd·iō -íre -ívī; **catch a cold** gravédine afflíg·or -ī afflīctus sum; **catch hell** convícium habére; **catch red-handed** flagrantī delíctō dēprehén·dō -dere -dī -sus; **catch sight of** cōspíc·iō -ere

cōnspēxī; **catch up with** cōn·sequor
-sequī -secūtus sum; **I didn't quite**
catch what you said nōn satis
exaudiēbam dicta tua; **let me catch**
my breath, please sine respīrem,
quaesō

catcher except·or -ōris *m*, excēptr·īx
-īcis *f*

caterpillar ērūc·a -ae *f*; (*machine*)
vehīcul·um -ī *n* ērūcātum

catsup *see* **ketchup**

cattle bov·ēs -um *mpl* (*dat & abl pl*:
bōbus or būbus); (*collective*) pec·us
-oris *n*; **cattle bellow** (or **low**) bovēs
mūgiunt; **head of cattle** pec·us
-oris *n*

cauliflower brāssic·a -ae *f* Pompēiāna

cause *tr* fāc·iō -ere fēcī factus; (*pain*,
swelling, war) mōveō movēre mōvī
mōtus; (*stir up*) excitāre; **what**
caused him to leave? quid fēcit ut
abīret?

causeway agger, āggeris *m* viae

caution cauti·ō -ōnis *f*; **exercise caution**
cāv·eō -ēre cāvī cautum

cautious caut·us -a -um

cavalry equitāt·us -ūs *m*

cave spec·us -ūs *m*

cavern spēlūnc·a -ae *f*

CD compāctus disc·us -ī *m*

CD player discophōn·um -ī *n*

CD-ROM orbīcul·us -ī *m* ópticus

CD-ROM drive īnstrūment·um -ī *n*
orbīculīs legēndīs

cease-fire indūti·ae -ārum *fpl*; **call for a**
cease-fire indūtiās posc·ō -ere
popóscī; **the cease-fire is holding**.
indūtiaē dūrant .

ceiling tēct·um -ī *n*; (*arched or vaulted*)
cámer·a -ae *f*; (*paneled*) lacūn·ar
-áris *n*

celebrate celebrāre

celery helēoselín·um -ī *n*

cellar cellári·um -ī *n* subterrāneum;
hypogē·um -ī *n*

cello violoncēll·um -ī *n*

cell phone tēlephōnul·um -ī *n* portábile

cement caemént·um -ī *n*

cemetery coemētēri·um -ī *n*

censor cēns·or -ōris *m*

census pópulī recēns·us -ūs *m*

cent centésim·a -ae *f*; **I don't owe**
anyone a red cent assem aerárium
némīnī débeō

central médi·us -a -um

central heating calefācti·ō -ōnis *f*
centrális

century saécul·um -ī *n*

cereal cereál·e -is *n*

certain cert·us -a -um; **a certain person**
quīdam, quaedam; **I don't know for**
certain nōn certō (*or* certum) sciō; **I**
take it as certain prō certō hábeō

certainly certē, profēctō; (*in replies to*
denote emphatic agreement) sãnē; (*in*
answers) certō

chain catén·a -ae *f*; (*small chain, esp.*
used for ornament) catéll·a -ae *f*; **the**
Apennines extending in an
unbroken chain from the Alps to
... Apennīnus mōns perpétuīs iugīs
ab Álpibus tendēns ad (+ *acc*)

chair (*normally without back or arm-*
rests) sell·a -ae *f*; (*w. rounded back*)
arcisélli·um -ī *n*; **arm of a chair**
anc·ō -ōnis *m*; **back of a chair**
arc·us -ūs *m* sellae

chairlift tēlephéric·a -ae *f* selláris

chairman magís·ter -trī *m*

chalk crēt·a -ae *f*

chamber pot lásan·um -ī *n*, matéll·a -ae *f*

chance (*opportunity*) potést·ās -átis *f*; **by chance** forte, cāsū; **he didn't give me a chance to answer** mihi nōn potestātem dedit responēdī

chancellor cancellāri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

chandelier lámpadum corýmb·us -ī *m*

change *s* mūtāti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*coins*) numm·ī -ōrum *mpl* minórēs, númmulī *mpl*; **change of heart** ánimī mūtātiō; **for a change** varietātis causā

change *tr* mūtāre; (**buses, trains, planes**) mūtāre (autoraédās longās, trámina, āēróplana); **change one's mind** senténtiam mūtāre **|| intr** mūtārī; **the wind changed** ventus sē vertit

changing (*weather*) vári·us -a -um

channel canál·is -is *m*, canálicul·us -ī *m*; (*arm of the sea*) frēt·um -ī *n*

chapter cap·ut -itis *n*

character mōr·ēs -um *mpl*, índol·ēs -is *f*

character witness advocāt·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

charge *s* crīm·en -inis *n*; **capital charge** capitāle crīmen; **false charge** calúmni·a -ae *f*; **bring on file charges against s.o.** crīmīna álicui ínferō ínferre íntulī illātus

charge *tr* (*rush against*) incúrr·ō -ere -ī; **charge a price for** prétium cōnstítu·ō -ere -ī (+ *dat*); **charge s.o. with a crime** áliquem crīmīne (*or* dē crīmīne *or* crīmīnis) árgu·ō -ere -ī argútus

charm amoénit·ās -átis *f*, lep·us -ōris *m*; (*jewelry*) amulét·um -ī *n*

charming (*esp. to the eye*) amoén·us -a -um; (*cute*) bell·us -a -um; (*beautiful*) venúst·us -a -um; (*in manner*) lépid·us -a -um

chartreuse chlorín·us -a -um

chaste cast·us -a -um, pudíc·us -a -um

chat *intr* fábul·or -árī -átus *sum*

chat s have a chat with cōnfābulārī cum (+ *abl*)

chatter balbút·iō -íre; **my teeth are chattering** déntibus crépitō

chauffeur autoraedári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

cheap vīl·is -is -e; **be dirt cheap** prō lutō esse

cheaply parvō *or* vīlī prėtiō; **more cheaply** minórīs prětīi

cheat fraudāre; (*in school*) fūrtim exscrīb·ō -ere exscrípsī; **cheat someone out of his money** áliquem argéntō fraudāre

check *s* sýngraph·a -ae *f*; (*bill*) rāti·ō -ōnis *f* nummária; **cash a check** arcáriō sýngrapham praéb·eō -ére -uī solvéndam; **write a check** sýngrapham perscrīb·ō -ere perscrípsī

check *tr* (*investigate*) scrūt·or -árī -átus *sum*, investigāre; (*mark with a check mark*) vígulā notāre; (*to indicate an error*) vígulā cēnsōriā notāre; **check luggage** sárcinās mandāre; **check off** (*make a check mark at*) notāre; **check out** (*inquire into*) inquir·ō -ere inquísívi inquísítus in (+ *acc*)

check into a hotel nōmen in tábulās dēversóriū réferō reférre rétulī; **check out of a hotel** ā dēversóriō discēd·ō -ere discéssī (*post ratióne* compōnéndam)

checker latrúncul·us -ī *m*; *checkers* (*game*) latrunculórum lūd·us -ī *m*; **play checkers** latrúnculīs lúdere;

jump (*an opponent's checker*)
trānsfīl·iō -īre -uī; **king** rēx, rēgis *m*

check mark (*indicating error*) vírgul·a
-ae *f* cēnsōria

check gen·a -ae *f*

cheer *intr* acclāmāre

cheer *s* clām·or -ōris *m*; **cheers!** prōsit!

cheer up *tr* (ex)hilarāre, laetificāre **||**
intr **cheer up!** habē (*pl:* habēte)
ánimum bonum!

cheerful hílar·us -a -um

cheerfulness hilaritúd·ō -inis *f*

cheese cáse·us -ī *m*

cheese cake savíll·um -ī *n*

chef archimagír·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

chemical *adj* chémic·us -a -um

chemical *s* chémic·um -ī *n*

chemist chēmīc·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

chemistry chēmi·a -ae *f*, chémīc·ē -ēs *f*

cherry céras·um -ī *n*

cherry pie cérasa *npl* in crústō cocta

chess lūd·us -ī *m* scācōrum,
scācílūdī·um -ī *n*; **castle** *s* turr·is -is
f; *tr* adroccāre; **checkmate** rēgem
tén·eō -ēre -uī; **checkmate!** cavē
rēgī!; **chessboard** scācāri·um -ī *n*;
play chess scācīs lúdere (*see Chapter*
V)

chest (*anat*) pect·us -oris *n*; (*box*)
armāri·um -ī *n*; (*for clothes*)
vestiāri·um -ī *n*

chestnut *adj* (*of horse only*) bádīus

chestnut *s* castāne·a -ae *f*

chewing gum cumm·is -is *f* masticábilis

chew out (*scold*) pilāre

chick pull·us -ī *m*

chicken gallín·a -ae *f*, (gallínáceus)
pull·us -ī *m*; (*as food*) gallínáce·a
-ae *f*

chicken coop gallínári·um -ī *n*

chicken-hearted mūrīcid·us -a -um

chief (*principal*) prīnc·eps -ipis

chief of police praeféct·us -ī *m* vígilum

children líber·ī -ōrum *npl*

chilly frīgídul·us -a -um; **it's getting**
chilly aēr frīgēscit

chimney fūmāri·um -ī *n*

chin ment·um -ī *n*

China fictília Sinēnsium vās·a -ōrum
npl

chirp (*birds*) pīpilāre, pīpāre;
(*grasshoppers*) frítinn·iō -īre

chisel *s* scalpr·um -ī *n*

chisel *tr* scalprō caed·ō -ere cecídī
caesus; **chisel s.o. out of** (*cheat*)
áliquem ēmún·gō -gere -xī -ctus (+
abl)

chives porr·um -ī *n* sectívum

chocolate socolát·a -ae *f*; (*drink*) pōt·us
-ūs *m* socolátae

chocolate bar tabell·a -ae *f* socolátae

chocolate pudding érne·um -ī *n*
socoláteum

choice *adj* exquisít·us -a -um, ēléct·us -a
-um

choice *s* ópti·ō -ónis *f*; **the choice is**
yours óptiō tua est

choir chor·us -ī *m*

choir director chorī magís·ter -trī *m*
(·tra -ae *f*)

choir loft aps·is -idis *f*

chore pēns·um -ī *n*; **do chores** pēnsa
fācere

Christmas Eve prīdiē nātālem Chrīstī

Christmas fēst·um -ī *n* nātivitātis
 Chrīstī; **celebrate Christmas**
 nātālem Chrīstī diem celebrāre;
Merry Christmas! faustum ac
 fēlicem Chrīstī nātālem (tibi
 exóptō)!; fausta fēsta nātālícia Chrīstī
 (tibi exóptō)!

Christmas gift nātālícium mūnúscul·um
 -ī *n* (or dōn·um -ī *n*); **give**
 (exchange, receive, wrap)
Christmas gifts offēre (inter sē
 dare, accípere, invólvere) nātālícia
 mūnúscula

Christmas holidays fēri·ae -ārum *fpl*
 nātālíciae; **spend the Christmas**
holidays (vacation) fēriās nātālícíās
 ágere

Christmas tree arb·or -oris *f* nātālícia;
decorate the Christmas tree with
lights, balls, and tinsel árborem
 nātālíciam ignículis et glóbulis et
 lámínis argénteis ornāre

chronic long·us -a -um

chronological order órd·ō -inis *m*
 témporis; **in chronological order**
 servātō témporis órdine

chubby corpulént·us -a -um

chum sodál·is -is *mf*

church ecclési·a -ae *f*

cider vín·um -ī *n* málŕnum

cigar sígar·um -ī *n*

cigarette sigaréll·um -ī *n*; **pack of**
cigarettes capséll·a -ae *f*
 sigarellórum; **smoke a cigarette**
 fūmum sigaréllī sūg·ō -ere sūxī

cigarette lighter ignitábul·um -ī *n*

circulate circulāre; (of rumor, reports)
 percrēbrēc·ō -ere precrēbuī

circulation (of blood) circuláti·ō -ōnis *f*;
be in circulation (of books) in
 mánibus esse

circumference circúit·us -ūs *m*; **the**
crater measures 500 feet in
circumference crātēr patet circúitū
 quíngéntōs pedēs

cistern cistérn·a -ae *f*

citadel ar·x -cis *f*

citizen cīv·is -is *mf*; **my fellow citizens**
 cīvēs meī; **private citizen** (who holds
 no political office) prīvát·us -ī *m*

citizenship cívit·ās -átis *f*

city (physical entity) urb·s -is *f*; cívit·ās
 -átis *f*

city council decurióñ·ēs -um *mpl*

civil cívīl·is -is -e; **civil rights** iū·s -ris *n*
 cívīle; **deprive s.o. of civil rights**
 áliquem cápīte dēmínu·ō -ere -ī; **loss**
 (taking away) of civil rights
 dēminúti·ō -ōnis *f* cápītis

civilian *adj* togát·us -a -um, prīvát·us -a
 -um

civilian *s* togát·us -ī *m*, prīvát·us -ī *m*

civilized hūmán·us -a -um

claim (say) praedicāre; (demand)
 postulāre; **claim as one's own**
 vindicāre

clam my·ax -acis *m*

clam shell mýacis test·a -ae *f*

clamp cōnfībul·a -ae *f*

clamp down on (fig) compēsc·ō -ere

clarinet tíbi·a -ae *f* clārífona; **play the**
clarinet tíbiā clārífonā can·ō -ere
 cécini

clasp fībul·a -ae *f*

class (in school) class·is -is *f*; (social)
 ōrd·ō -inis *m*; **be at the head of the**
class classem dúcere; **first-class seat**
 sēd·ēs -is *f* prīmae classis; **lower**
class ōrdō infērior; **middle class** ōrdō
 médius; **second-class seat** sēdēs
 secúndae classis; **tourist-class seat**

sēdēs turística; **upper class** ōrdō supērior; **working class** ōrdō operārius

classical clāssic·us -a -um; **classical author** scrīpt·or -ōris *m* vetus et probus, scrīptor clāssicus

classics auctōr·ēs -um *mpl* utrūsq̄e linguae clārissimī

classroom conclāv·e -is *n* scholāre, schol·a -ae *f*

clause *s* membr·um -ī *n*; **main clause** ōrāti·ō -ōnis *f* [*note: ōrātiō can be a main clause or a complete sentence*]

clean (*the house, etc.*) pūrgāre

cleaning rag drapp·us -ī *m*

clear clār·us -a -um; (*unclouded*) serēn·us -a -um, sūd·us -a -um; (*conscience*) rēct·us -a -um

clear *tr* **clear the table** mundāre mēnsam; **clear out of here!** hinc āpage!; **clear \$1000 in the first year** prīmō annō mille dōllārōs dētērg·eō -ēre dētērsī dētērsus; **clear up** (*difficulties*) expēd·iō -īre -īvī -ītus **II** *intr* **clear up** disserēnāre

clerk scrīb·a -ae *mf*; (*in a shop*) tabernāri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

clever cāllid·us -a -um; **very clever!** (*well said!*) facētē dictum!

cleverness callīdit·ās -ātis *f*

click *tr* dēprim·ō -ere dēprēssī; pulsāre; **left-click** sinistrōrsum dēprimere; **right-click** dextrōrsum dēprimere; **double-click** bis dēprimere *or* bis pulsāre

client cli·ēns -ētis *mf*

climate cael·um -ī *n*; **hot (cold, temperate, warm) climate** fervēns (*frīgidum, temperātum, tēpidum*) cael·um -ī *n*; **mild climate** tempēri·ēs -ēī *f*

climb ascēnd·ō -ere -ī, ēscēndere; **climb a tree** in ārborem ēscēndere; **climb the stairs** per scalās ascēndere

clippers māchínul·a -ae *f* capillīs resecāndis

cloak pálli·um -ī *n* (*Greek item*)

clock hōrológi·um -ī *n*; **the clock keeps good time** hōrológium rēctē métitur; **look at the clock** hōrológium īnspíc·iō -ere īnspéxī; **set the clock** hōrológium temperāre; **wall clock** hōrológium parietārium; **wind the clock** hōrológium intén·dō -dere -dī intēnsus

clogs sóle·ae -ārum *fpl* lígneae

close (*comput*) conclūd·ō -ere -ī conclūsus

closet vestiári·um -ī *n* parietī īnsértum

cloth (*as a fabric*) text·um -ī *n*; (*a piece of cloth*) pann·us -ī *m*

cloth-bound book lib·er -rī *m* līnō contēctus

clothe vēst·iō -īre -īvī *or* -īī -ītus

clothes vestīmēt·a -ōrum *npl*; hábit·us -ūs *m* (*outfit of a particular class or occasion*)

clothes closet vestiári·um -ī *n* (parietī īnsértum)

clothes hanger fūlcim·en -inis *n* vestiārium

clothes hook unc·us -ī *m* vestiārius; **hang up** (*s.th.*) **on the clothes hook** in uncō vestiāriō suspend·ō -ere -ī

clothing vestít·us -ūs *m*, vestīmēt·a -ōrum *npl*

clothing store tabérn·a -ae *f* vestiária

cloud nūb·ēs -is *f*

cloudy nūbilós·us -a -um; **become cloudy** nūbilāre

clown scurr·a -ae *mf*

club fūst·is -is *m*; (*social club*)
sodālīci·um -ī *n*

cluck glōc·iō -īre

clumsy incompōsit·us -a -um

cluster (*of islands, etc.*) celēbrit·ās -ātis
f; (*of grapes*) ūv·a -ae *f*

clutch pedāl·e -is *n* iūnctiōnis (*or*)
cōpulātiōnis

coach *tr* exercitāre; (*a student*)
admón·eō -ēre -uī -itus

coach *s* (*sports*) exercitā·tor -tōris *m*
(·trīx -trīcis *f*)

coal lap·is gag·as (*gen.*: lapis gágatis) *m*,
carb·ō -ōnis *m*

coal mine fodín·a -ae *f* carbōnária

coast ōr·a -ae *f* (marítima); **off the coast**
of ante (+ *acc*); **on the coast** in ōrā
(marítimā)

coat amícul·a -ae *f*

coat hook véstium unc·us -ī *m*

coat rack sustentācul·um -ī *n* véstium

cobweb aráne·a -ae *f*

Coca-Cola Cocacól·a -ae *f*

cocain cocaín·um -ī *n*; **snort cocain**
cocaínūm olfactāre

cockpit cell·a -ae *f* aëróplanī

cockroach blatt·a -ae *f*

cocktail própoma, propómatis *n*, cinn·is
-is *m*

cocoa cóco·a -ae *f*

coffee cáffe·a -ae *f*

coffee break caffearia paus·a -ae *f*

coffee cup pōcill·um -ī *n* caffearium

coffee maker máchin·a -ae *f* caffearia

coffee pot hírnul·a -ae *f* cáffea

coffee set sínthes·is -is *f* caffearia

coffin cápul·us -ī *m*, arc·a -ae *f*

cohort coh·ors -órtis *f*

coin *s* numm·us -ī *m*

coin *tr* (*new words*) (nova verba) fíng·ō
-ere finxī fictus

cold *adj* (*the most general word, applied*
to all degrees from pleasant coolness
to severe cold; also, dispassionate)
frígíd·us -a -um; **ice-cold** gélid·us -a
-um; **be or feel cold** álgeō algére alsī,
fríg·eō -ēre; get cold algésc·ō -ere,
frígésc·ō -ere; **my hands and feet**
are cold manūs pedésque frígēt;
turn cold frígésc·ō -ere; **very cold**
perfrígídus

cold *s* frīg·us -oris *n*, gel·ū -ūs *n*; (*med*)
gravéd·ō -inis *f*; **catch a cold**
gravédinem cón·trahō -tráhere -tráxī
-tráctus; **have a cold** gravéidine
labōrāre; **liable to catch cold**
alsiós·us -a -um

coldcuts concís·a -órum *npl*

cold spell frígōr·a -um *npl*

cold weather gel·u -ūs *n*, tempest·ās
-ātis *f* frígida *or* gélida

collar collár·e -is *n*

collective *adj* collēctív·us -a -um

college collēgi·um -ī *n*

collision collísi·ō -ónis *f*

colonel tribún·us -ī *m* mīlitum

color *s* col·or -óris *m*

color *tr* (*the hair, etc.*) colōráre, ting·ō
-ere tīnxī tīnctus

colt ecúle·us -ī *m*

column colúm·n·a -ae *f*; (*marching*)
agm·en -inis *n*

comb *s* pect·en -inis *m*

comb *tr* pect·ō -ere pexī pexus; **comb**
back repéctere; **comb the hair**
capillum (*or* capíllōs *or* crínēs *or*
comam) péctere; **comb out** expéctere

combat proéli·um -ī *n*, pugn·a -ae *f*; **in hand-to-hand combat** cōminus [*adv*]

combatant proeliāt·or -ōris *m*

combination *s* comprehēsi·ō -ōnis *f*; **a syllable is a combination of letters** sýllaba est comprehēsiō litterārum

combine *tr* compōn·ō -ere compōsuī compōsitus; **prepositions can be combined with verbs** praepositiōnēs cum verbīs compōnī possunt

come vén·iō -īre vēnī ventum; **come about** ēvenīre; **come back soon** redī (*pl*: redīte) cito; **come down with an illness** morbō corríp·ior -ī corrēptus sum; **come from** venīre ab (+ *abl*), dērīvārī ab (+ *abl*); **come here this minute!** concēde hūc āctūtum!; **come on!** āgedum!; **come what may, we'll take it philosophically** quod fors feret, ferēmus aequō ānimō

comfort *s* levāti·ō -ōnis *f*

comfort *tr* allevāre

comfortable cōmod·us -a -um; **make yourselves comfortable** rogō ut vōbīs suāviter sit

comics libell·ī -ōrum *mpl* pictogrāphicī

coming: he's got what's coming to him habet quod sibi dēbētur

comma *s* comm·a -atis *n*

command *s* (comput) iūss·um -ī *n*

command *tr* (a legion, army) imperāre (+ *dat*)

commander in chief imperāt·or -ōris *m*; **be the commander in chief** impérii summam tēn·eō -ēre tēnuī

commence hostilities bellī inītiūm fácere

commerce commérci·um -ī *n*

commercial (advertisement) praecōni·um -ī *n*

commit (a crime) (scelus) committ·ō -ere commīsi commīssus

committee concíli·um -ī *n*

common noun *s* nōm·en -inis *n* appellātívum

common sense: have common sense cor habēre

community cívít·ās -átis *f*

compact disk (CD) compáctus disc·us -ī *m*

company (mil) centúri·a -ae *f*; **keep each other company** inter sē col·ō -ere -uī

company commander centúri·ō -ōnis *m*

comparative (degree) grad·us -ūs *m* comparātvus; **in the comparative** comparātvē, in comparātiōne

compare with comparāre cum (+ *abl*)

comparison *s* comparāti·ō -ōnis *f*

compartment (in a train, plane) diaét·a -ae *f* (prīmae, secūndae classis)

compass pyx·is -idis *f* magnética

compassion clēmēti·a -ae *f*

compassionate clēm·ēns -ēntis

compile compōn·ō -ere compōsuī compōsitus

complain about quer·or -ī questus sum dē (+ *abl*)

complete cōnfíc·iō -ere cōnfēcī cōnféctus; (a year) expl·eō -ēre -ēvī -ētus

complexion col·or -ōris *m*; **having a healthy complexion** colōrāt·us -a -um

composition scrīptúr·a -ae *f*, composíti·ō -ōnis *f*

compound *adj* compōsit·us -a -um (ut "indóctus" **uneducated**) (*opp*: simplex, ut "doctus")

computer *adj* computātrāl·is -is -e,
ōrdinātrāl·is -is -e

computer *s* computātr·um -ī *n*,
ōrdinātr·um -ī *n*

computer engineer māchinā·tor -tōris *m*
(·trīx -trīcis *f*) computātrālis

computer game lūs·us -ūs *m*
computātrālis; **play a computer
game** lūsum computātrālem lūdere

con *tr* verba dare (+ *dat*)

concentrate all the troops in one place
cōg·ō -ere cōēgī coāctus omnēs
cōpiās in ūnum locum; **concentrate
on something** ānimum in āliquid
dēfīg·ō -ere dēfīxī

concentration intēnti·ō -ōnis *f* ānimī

concern *s* cūr·a -ae *f*

concern *tr* (to worry) sollicitāre; **as far
as I'm concerned** per mē; **how does
that concern you?** quid id ad tē
āttinet?; **it concerns me (you)** meā
(tuā) rēfert; **it does not concern me
(you)** meā (tuā) mínimē rēfert

concerned about (for) sollicit·us -a -um
dē (prō) (+ *abl*); **I'm not terribly
concerned about ...** labōrō nōn
valdē dē (+ *abl*)

concert concēnt·us -ūs *m*; **attend a
concert** concēntuī adesse

concise brev·is -is -e

concrete *s* concrēt·um -ī *n*

concrete noun *s* vocābul·um -ī *n* (*opp*:
appellātiō)

condemn condemnāre

condition stat·us -ūs *m*; (*term of an
agreement*) condīci·ō -ōnis *f*; **in
excellent condition** habitīssim·us -a
-um; **in good (bad) condition** bene
(male) hābit·us -a -um; **on condition
that** eā lēge ut (+ *subj*); **physical
condition** cōrporis hābit·us -ūs *m*

conduct business negōtium āgere;
conduct oneself (behave) sē ger·ō
-ere gessi

conductor (*of an orchestra*)
symphonicōrum magīs·ter -trī *m*; (*of
a train*) trāminis cūrāt·or -ōris *m*

conference congréss·us -ūs *m*

confide in cōnfīd·ō -ere cōnfīsus sum (+
dat)

confidence fid·ēs -eī *f*, fīdūci·a -ae *f*;
(*esp. over-confidence, self-
confidence*) cōnfīdēnti·a -ae *f*; **have
confidence in** fidem habēre (+ *dat*)

confident cōnfīd·ēns -éntis; **be
confident** cōnfīd·ō -ere cōnfīsus sum

confluence cōnflu·ēns -éntis *m*; **at the
confluence of the Tiber and the
Anio** inter cōnfluētēs Tīberim et
Aniōnem

congratulate grātul·or -ārī -ātus sum (+
dat)

congratulations! macte virtūte estō!;
grātulātiōnēs!

congress congréss·us -ūs *m*

conjugate *tr* dēclīnāre

conjugation *s* dēclīnāti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*rarely
occurs*) coniugāti·ō -ōnis *f*

conjunction *s* coniūnti·ō -ōnis *f*

connect *tr* cōnēct·ō -ere cōnēxuī
cōnēxus

connection coniūnti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*comput*)
cōnēx·us -ūs *m*

conquer vinc·ō -ere vīcī victus;
conquer a country terrā pót·ior -īrī
pōtītus sum

conscience: bad conscience mala
cōnsciēnti·a -ae *f*; **good conscience**
mēns *f* cōnscia rēctī

consent: give one's consent permitt·ō
-ere permīsi (ut); **without my**
consent mē invītō

conservative *adj* cōservātv·us -a -um

conservative *s* cōservātv·us -ī *m* (·a
-ae *f*); **conservatives** (*in ancient*
Rome) optimāt·ēs -ium *mpl*

consider: to consider it already done
istuc iam prō factō habēre

consist of cōnst·ō -āre cōstiti (+ *abl* or
ex or *dē* + *abl*)

consonant *s* cōnson·āns -āntis *f*

constant cōnst·āns -āntis; (*incessant*)
perpētu·us -a -um

constantly perpētuō

consternation cōsternāti·ō -ōnis *f*

constipated: be constipated alvum
supprēssam habēre

constitution cōstitut·a -ōrum *npl*

construct (*with mechanical skill*)
fabricāre; (*buildings*) éxstru·ō -ere
exstrúxi exstrúctus

construction *s* cōstrúcti·ō -ōnis *f*

consul cōnsul -is *m*; **elect a consul**
cōnsulem creāre

consulship cōnsulāt·us -ūs *m*; **hold the**
consulship cōnsulátum ger·ō -ere
gessi

contempt contépt·us -ūs *m*,
dēspicāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **feel contempt for**
contémn·ō -ere -psi; **hold s.o. in**
contempt áliquem dēspicátum habēre

contemptuous (of) dēspici·ēns -éntis (+
gen)

content (with) contént·us -a -um (+
abl); **to your heart's content**
arbitráti tuō

contest *s* certám·en -inis *n*

continent par·s -tis *f* mundi [*not*
cōtinēns, which means "mainland"]

continual contínu·us -a -um

continually contínuē

contract contrāh·ō -ere contrāxi
contráctus; **contract an illness**
morbum *or* advērsam valētūdinem
contrāhere

contradict contrādicere (+ *dat*);
contradict oneself pugnántia loqu·or
-ī locútus sum

control *s* (*restraint*) continēti·a -ae *f*;
(*power*) potést·ās -átis *f*; **out of**
control effrēnāt·us -a -um

control *tr* contín·eō -ēre -uī; **control**
yourself! tē cōtinē!

convalesce convalēsc·ō -ere

convenience: at your convenience tuō
cómmodō; **write me at your earliest**
convenience scríbe ad mē cum
cómmodíssimē póteris

convenient: when it will be convenient
for you cum erit tuum cómmodum

conversation serm·ō -ōnis *f*,
collóqui·um -ī *n*; **engage in**
conversation with sermónēs cum (+
abl) cōnferō cōnférre cōntulī

convict convínc·ō -ere convícī convíctus
(*w. acc. of the person and w. gen of*
the charge); **convicted of**
manífest·us -a (+ *gen*); **convict s.o.**
on many counts of fraud áliquem
multis críminibus fraudis convíncere

conviction (for) condemnāti·ō -ōnis *f* (+
gen of the charge)

convince persuád·eō -ēre persuási (+
dat); **I am firmly convinced that**
plēnus (-a) persuásiónis sum (+ *acc*
w. inf)

coo (*of a pigeon*) gem·ō -ere -uī

cook *s* coqu·us -ī *m*, coqu·a -ae *f*

cook *tr* coqu·ō -ere coxi coctus; **cook up**
(*fig*) excogitāre

cookie crústul·um -ī *n*

cooking pot ōll·a -ae *f*

cool frīgídul·us -a -um

cool off *tr* refrīgerāre **II** *intr* refrīgerārī

coolness (*indifference*) frīg·us -oris *n*

coop up inclú·dō -dere -sī -sus; **be cooped up in the house** in aédibus coartátus (-a) esse

coordinate conjunction *s* coniúcti·ō -ónis *f* cōpulátīva

cope with pār esse (+ *dat*); **unable to cope with** impār esse (+ *dat*)

copier polýgraph·um -ī *n*

copy *s* exémpl·um -ī *n*, exémpl·ar -áris *n*

copy *tr* exscríb·ō -ere exscrípsī (**from** ex + *abl*) (*by cheating*) clandēstínō; (*with printer*) exémplum (+ *gen*) fácere

Corinth Corínth·us -ī *f*; **gulf of Corinth** sin·us -ūs *m* Corínthíacus (*or* Corínthius)

corkscrew extrácul·um -ī *n*

corn maízī·um -ī *n*; **corn on the cob** maízium -ī *n* in spīcā

corner kick (*soccer*) ict·us -ūs *m* anguláris

corporal decúri·ō -ónis *mf*

corpse cadáv·er -eris *n*

correct *adj* rēct·us -a -um (*opp*: prāvus), ēmendát·us -a -um (*free from faults*), corrēct·us -a -um (*in the sense of "corrected"*)

correct *tr* (*esp. mistakes in writing*) ēmendāre; (*a person or mistake*) córrig·ō -ere corrēxī corrēctus

correction corrēcti·ō -ónis *f*, ēmendāti·ō -ónis *f*

correctly rēctē (*opp*: prāvē), ēmendátē (*opp*: vitióse); **speak** (**spell**) **correctly** rēctē loquī (scríbere)

correlative *adj* relátīvus -a -um (ut "tālis ... quālis" **such ... as**)

correspond with epistulárum commércium habēre cum (+ *abl*)

correspondence epistulárum commérci·um -ī *n*

corresponding secretary ab epístulis

corridor ambulácr·um -ī *n*, andr·ōn -ónis *m*

cost *intr* cōnst·ō -āre cōstitī (+ *gen* of *indefinite price* or *abl* of *definite price*); **cost a lot** (**little, nothing, more, less**) multī (parvī, grātīs, plūris, minóris); cōnstāre; **it costs 100 denarii** centum denáriis constat

cost *s* impēns·a -ae *f*

couch léctul·us -ī *m* tōméntō fartus; (*semicircular*) stibádi·um -ī *n*

cough *intr* túss·iō -íre

cough *s* tuss·is -is *m*; **have a cough** túss·iō -íre

councilman decúri·ō -ónis *m*

counsel iūrisperít·us -ī *m* (-a -ae *f*)

count (*leg*) crīm·en -inis *n*

count *tr* numerāre; **count up or out** ēnumerāre; **you can count on me** potes nīti mē [*abl*]; **you can count on it that ...** erit tibi perspéctum (+ *acc & inf*); **you don't count** extrā númerum es mihi

country (*as a political unit*) rēs pública (*gen*: reī públicae) *f*; (*as a community*) cívit·ās -átis *f*; (*native land*) pátri·a -ae *f*; (*as a physical entity*) fín·ēs -ium *mpl*; (*as opposed to city*) rūs, rūris *n*; **from the country** rūre; **in the country** rūrī; **to the country** rūs

country road vi·a -ae *f* regiōnālis

courage fortitūd·ō -inis *f*

courageous fort·is -is -e

course curs·us -ūs *m*; (*in school*) curs·us

-ūs *m* ācroāsium; (*of a meal*)

fércul·um -ī *n*; **along a winding**

course meānte cursū; **be driven off**

course cursū excút·ior -ī excússus

sum; **in due course** mox; **in the**

course of inter (+ *acc*); **in the course**

of time prōcēdēnte tēmpore; **of**

course profectō, quidem, nempe,

(*also sarcastically*) scīlicet

court iūdici·um -ī *n*; (*of a king*) aul·a

-ae *f*; **court of appeal** iūdiciūm

appellātōrium; **hold court** iūs dīcere;

take s.o. to court āliquem in

iūdiciūm vocāre (*or addūcere*)

courteous cōm·is -is -e

courteously cōmiter

courtesy cōmit·ās -ātis *f*

courtesy call offici·um -ī *n*

courthouse basilic·a -ae *f*

courtroom iūdici·um -ī *n*

courtyard āre·a -ae *f*; (*in a Roman*

house) peristýli·um -ī *n*

cousin (*brother's child*) patruél·is -is *mf*;

(*sister's daughter*) cōnsōbrīn·a -ae *f*;

(*sister's son*) cōnsōbrīn·us -ī *m*

cover tegimént·um -ī *n*; (*lid*)

opércul·um -ī *n*; (*shelter*) suffúgi·um

-ī *n*; **take cover** suf·fúgiō -fúgere

-fúgī; **under cover of darkness**

nocte adiuvānte

cover up (*against the cold*) opér·iō -īre

-uī -tus

cow vacc·a -ae *f*; **cows moo** (*or low*)

vaccāe mŭgiunt

cowboy bubúl·us -ī *m* (*Americānus*)

cozy cōmmod·us -a -um

crab (*shellfish*) can·cer -crī *m*; (*person*)

morós·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

crabbiness morósit·ās -ātis *f*

crabby morós·us -a -um

crack s rīm·a -ae *f*

crack tr find·ō -ere fidī fissus; (*nuts*)

perfrīng·ō -ere perfrēgī perfráctus **II**

intr rīmās āgere

cracked (*crazy*) cerrít·us -a -um

crack troops rōbor·a -um *npl* peditum,

cōpi·ae -ārum *fpl* ēlēctīssimae

cradle cūn·ae -ārum *fpl*

craft artificī·um -ī *n*

craftsman fa·ber -brī *m*, ártifex,

artíficis *m*

craftsmanship artificī·um -ī *n*

cramp convúl·si·ō -ónis *f*

crane grūs, gruis *mf* (*see bird*);

(*machine*) tolēnn·ō -ónis *m*

crash (*comput*) cōrr·uit corrúere cōrruit

crater crāt·ēr -éris *m*

craving for appetíti·ō -ónis *f* (+ *gen*)

crawl rēp·ō -ere rēpsī rēptum; (*esp. of*

snakes) serp·ō -ere -sī

crazy dēlīr·us -a -um; **he's crazy about**

her eam dēperit; **he's crazy about**

sports morbósus est in lūdōs

cream crēm·um -ī *n*

credible crēdībil·is -is -e; **be credible**

fidem habēre

credit (*com*) fid·ēs -eī *f*; **academic**

credit insīgn·e -is *n* acadēmicum;

buy on credit fidē suā ēmere;

pecūniā haud praesentāriā ēmere; **get**

academic credit for this course

insīgne acadēmicum merēre prō hōc

cursū (ācroāsium); **have good credit**

bonā fidē esse

credit card tabéll·a -ae *f* trībūtāria

credit hour hōr·a -ae *f* acadēmica

creek rīv·us -ī *m*

creep (*term of contempt*) larv·a -ae *f*;
you give me the creeps facis ut
hórream

creep: it makes my skin creep facit ut
hórream

crest (*of a hill*) iug·um -ī *n*; (*of animals,*
helmet) crist·a -ae *f*

cricket gryll·us -ī *m*; (*game*) lūd·us -ī *m*
bāculi et pilae; **crickets chirp** grylli
strident

crime fácin·us -oris *n*, scel·us -eris *n*;
crīm·en -inis *n* (*more often means*
merely the charge)

criminal *adj* facinorós·us -a -um

criminal *s* sōns, sontis *mf*, crīminós·us -ī
m (·a -ae *f*)

crisis discrīm·en -inis *n*

critic crític·us -ī *m*

critical: the situation is critical rēs est
in summō discrīmine

criticize reprehén·dō -dere -dī -sus

crocodile crocodíl·us -ī *m*

crook (*thief*) fur, furis *m*

crooked curvát·us -a -um; (*morally*)
práv·us -a -um; (*crafty*) dolós·us -a
-um

crop up exsíst·ō -ere éxstitī; **unless**
something new crops up nisi álquid
novī exstítērit

crops (*standing grain*) seg·es -etis *f*;
(*field produce*) frūg·ēs -um *fpl*

cross-eyed strab·us -a -um

cross one's path álicui óbviā venīre

crossing (*passage*) tránsit·us -ūs *m*

crossroads cómpit·um -ī *n*

crow *intr* (*of roosters*) cūcūr·iō -īre;
can·ō -ere cécini

crow *s* corn·īx -ícis *f*; **as the crow flies**
mēnsūrā currēnte [*lit*: in a running
measurement]; **crows caw** cornícēs
crócitant (*see* **bird**)

crowd turb·a -ae *f*

cruel crūdél·is -is -e

cruelty crūdélit·ās -átis *f*

cry fleō flēre flēvī; (*of a baby*) vág·iō
-íre; **cry out to** clāmāre (+ *dat*); **cry**
over flēre

cucumber cúcumis, cucúmeris *m*

cue verb·um -ī *n* monitóriū

culture hūmánit·ās -átis *f*

cunning collubrín·us -a -um

cup pócūl·um -ī *n*, pōcíl·um -ī *n*; **cup**
of coffee (of tea) pocíl·um -ī *n*
cáffae (theae)

cupboard armári·um -ī *n* parietī
ínsertum

curable sánábil·is -is -e

curb crepíd·ō -inis *f* viária

cure *s* remédi·um -ī *n*

cure *tr* sánāre

curiosity cūriósit·ās -átis *f*

curl cirt·us -ī *m*, cincínnul·us -ī *m*

curl crīspāre

curler calamístr·um -ī *n*

curly crīsp·us -a -um, cirtát·us -a -um,
cincínnul·us -a -um; **have curly hair**
cincínnulō capíllō esse

current *adj* (*in general use*) ūsitát·us -a
-um; (*opinion*) vulgār·is -is -e

current *s* flūm·en -inis *n* (*in the sense of*
"the flow"); (*electrical*) ēléctricum
fluént·um -ī *n*; **against the current**
advérsō flúmine; **with the current**
sēcúndō flúmine

curriculum studiōrum currícul·um -ī *n*

cursor (*comput*) curs·or -ōris *m*

curtain (*on a window or shower*)
vĕl·um -ī *n*; (*in a theater*) aulaē·a
-ōrum *npl*; **draw the curtains** vĕla
obducere

curve (*in a road, coast*) ānfrāct·us -ūs *m*

custody custōdi·a -ae *f*; **be held in**
custody in custōdiā hāb·eor -ērī
hābitus sum; **take into custody** in
custōdiam trā·dō -dere -didī -ditus

custom mōs, mōris *m*

customer ĕmp·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trīcis
f)

cut (*hair*) tōnd·eō -ĕre totōndī tōnsus;
cut and paste (*comput*) secāre et
glūtīnāre; **cut it out!** dēsīnās! (*pl*:
dēsīnātis!); (*more emphatic*) dēsīste!
(*pl*: dēsīstite!); **cut that out right**
now! supersēdē istīs rēbus iam; **cut**
the talk! sēgregā sermōnem!

cute bell·us -a -um, bĕllul·us -a -um

cutlery instrūmēt·a -ōrum *npl* escāria

cyberspace cyberspāti·um -ī *n*

D

dad, daddy tat·a -ae *m*

daily *adj* cōtīdiān·us -a -um

daily *adv* cōtīdiē

dainty dēlicāt·us -a -um

daisy bell·is -idis *f*

dance *intr* saltāre

dance *s* saltāti·ō -ōnis *f*

dance band symphōniac·ī -ōrum *mpl*
saltātiōnis

dancer saltā·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trīcis *f*)

danger perīcul·um -ī *n*; **be in danger**
(*of*) perīclītārī (+ *abl*)

dangerous perīculōs·us -a -um

Danube river Danūvius amn·is -is *m*

dare aūd·eō -ĕre ausus sum (*semi*-
deponent)

daring aud·ēns -ēntis, aud·āx -ācis

dark *adj* obscūr·us -a -um; **as soon as it**
got dark prīmīs tēnebrīs

dark *s* **after dark** dē nocte; **in the dark**
per obscūrū; **I'm in the dark** (*fig*)
mihi tēnebrae sunt

darkness tēnebr·ae -ārum *fpl*; **darkness**
fell tēnebrae factae sunt

darling (*terms of endearment*) dēlicī·ae
-ārum *fpl*, cōrcul·um -ī *n*, anīmūl·us
-ī *m* (·a -ae *f*), ocēll·us -ī *m*,
volūpt·ās -ātis *f*; **my darling** (*in*
address) mī ocēlle

darn: I don't give a darn about that
(**him, them**) id (eum, eōs) nōn faciō
floccī

darned: I'll be darned if ... male mī
sit, sī ...; **I'll be darned if I ever ...**
male mī sit sī umquam (+ *fut indic*)

dashboard tābul·a -ae *f* indicātōria

data dat·a -ōrum *npl*

database (*comput*) datōrum
repositōri·um -ī *n*

date di·ēs -ēī *f*; **by what date?** quam ad
diem? **have a date with s.o.**
cōstitutū cum āliquō habēre; **to**
date adhūc

dative *adj* datīv·us -a -um

dative *s* datīv·us -ī *m*, cās·us -ūs *m*
datīvus

daughter fīli·a -ae *f*

daughter-in-law nur·us -ūs *f*

dawn dilūcul·um -ī *n*; **at dawn** prīmā
lūce; **before dawn** antelūculō

day di·ēs -ēī *mf*; **a day**, *e.g.*, **twice a**
day bis (in) diē; **any day now**
propēdiem; **by day** intērdiū; **day**

after day diem dē diē, in singulōs diēs; **day and night** et diēs et noctēs; **day off** (from school) (ab scholā) fēriātus di·ēs -ēī *m*; **every day** cōtīdiē, in singulōs diēs; **from day to day** in diēs; **from that day on** ex eō diē; **just the other day** nūper quidem; **one day** (on a certain day in the past) quōdam diē; **on the day before he departed** prīdiē quam abīret; **on the day before the Ides** prīdiē Idūs; **(on) the following day** pōsterō diē; **on the third day before the Calends of March** ante diem quārtum Kalēndās Mārtiās; **the day after postrīdiē**; **the day after that** postrīdiē eius diēī; **the day after tomorrow** perēndiē; **the day before** prīdiē; **the day before yesterday** nudīstertius [*adv*]; **till late in the day** ad multum diem; **two days after that** post diem tertium eius diēī; **these days** hīs temporibus

daybreak dilūcul·um -ī *n*; **at daybreak** prīmā lūce; **till daybreak** in prīmam lūcem

daycare center nēpiagōgi·um -ī *n*

daydream hallūcin·or -ārī -ātus sum

daydreamer hallūcināt·or -tōris *m*, hallūnicā·trix -trīcis *f*

daylight lūx, lūcis *f*, diēs, diēī *m*; **let in the daylight** diem admitt·ō -ere admīsi

DCD digitālis compāctus disc·us -ī *m*

dead *adj*: **I'm dead!** intērii! *or* pērii!

dead-end street fūndul·a -ae *f*

deaf surd·us -a -um; **you're preaching to deaf ears** ad surdās aurēs cantās

deal *s* (pact) pācti·ō -ōnis *f*; **a good deal** of aliquāntum (+ *gen*); **it's a deal** pactam rem habētō (*pl*: habētōte); **let's make a deal** pāctiōnem faciāmus

deal *tr* (cards) distrību·ō -ere -ī **|| intr with** (topic) tractāre, āgere dē (+ *abl*); (a person) āgere cum (+ *abl*); **I will deal with you later** tēcum mihi rēs erit sērius

dealer merc·āns -āntis *mf*, mercā·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trīcis *f*); (of cards) distribū·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trīcis *f*)

dean decān·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

dear cār·us -a -um

dearly (intensely) valdē; (at great expense) magnī

death mor·s -tis *f*; **condemn s.o. to death** āliquem cāpitis damnāre; **put s.o. to death** supplicium dē āliquo sūm·ō -ere sūmpsī sūmptus

death penalty supplici·um -ī *n* cāpitis

death sentence: receive the death sentence cāpitis damnārī

debate *s* disceptāti·ō -ōnis *f*

debate *tr* disceptāre dē (+ *abl*)

debt aes, aeris *n* aliēnum; **be in debt** in aere aliēno esse; **this has put me in debt** hoc mihi aes aliēnum attulit

decathlon decāthl·um -ī *n*

deceitful fall·āx -ācis

December mēns·is -is *m* Decēber; **in December** mēnse Decēbrī

decency decēnti·a -ae *f*

decent dec·ēns -ēntis; **do the decent thing** frūgem fācere

decide cōnstītu·ō -ere -ī cōnstītūtus; **decide to or not to** (of the senate, also of supreme magistrates) cēns·eō -ēre -uī (ut *or* ne + *subj*)

decision (a win in sports) praevālēnti·a -ae *f* pūctōrum; **make a (wise) decision** (sapiēnter) dēcērn·ō -ere dēcērēvī dēcētus

deck chair sell·a -ae *f* cubitōria

decked out exōrnāt·us -a -um; **why are you all decked out?** quam ob rem sīc subōrnāt·us (-a) es?

declaration dēnūntiāti·ō -ōnis

declarative dēclārātīv·us -a -um

declension s dēclīnāti·ō -ōnis *f*

decline *tr* dēclīnāre

decree of the senate senātūs cōnsult·um -ī *n*; **pass a decree of the senate** senātūs cōnsultum facere

deep freezer arc·a -ae *f* gelātōria

deep red coccīne·us -a -um

deep-seated īnsit·us -a -um

deer cerv·us -ī *m*, cerv·a -ae *f*

defeat *s* (mil) clād·ēs -is *f*; (pol) repūls·a -ae *f*; **a defeat at the polls** comitiis repūlsa; **defeat in running for the consulship** repūlsa cōnsulātūs; **suffer a defeat** (pol) repūlsam ferō ferre tulī lātus; (mil) clādem accipere

defeat *tr* superāre, vinc·ō -ere vicī victus

defective *adj* vitiōs·us -a -um; (gram) defectīv·us -a -um

defend dēfēnd·ō -ere -ī dēfēnsus

defendant re·us -ī *m*, re·a -ae *f*

defender (sports) dēfēns·or -ōris *m*, dēfēnstr·ix -īcis *f*

defense lawyer dēfēns·or -ōris *m*, dēfēnstr·ix -īcis *f*

defensive and offensive alliance sociēt·ās -ātis *f* ad bellum dēfendēndum atque īnferēndum facta

defensive and offensive weapons tēl·a -ōrum *npl* ad tēgēndum et ad nocēndum

define *tr* dēfīn·iō -īre -īvī -ītus

definite *adj* finīt·us -a -um (*opp*: infīnītus)

degree *s* grad·us -ūs *m*; (diploma) studiōrum diplōm·a -atis *n*; **positive degree** gradus positīvus; **comparative degree** gradus comparātīvus; **superlative degree** gradus superlātīvus

dejected dēmīss·us -a -um

delete (*comput*) dēl·eō -ēre -ēvī -ētus

delicate dēlicāt·us -a -um

delight dēlectāre

deliver (*a speech*) habēre; (*mail*) red·dō -dere -didī -itus; **the mailman delivered the letter yesterday** tabellārius lītterās herī réddidit

demanding; be demanding multa éxigō éxigere exēgī

demented dēm·ēns -éntis

democracy dēmocrāti·a -ae *f*

democrat dēmócrat·a -ae *m*, dēmocrátri·a -ae *f*

democratic dēmocrátic·us -a -um

demonstration prōtestāti·ō -ōnis *f* populāris

demonstrative *adj* dēmōnstrātīv·us -a -um

denarius dēnāri·us -ī *m* (*worth about one dollar*)

dense dēns·us -a -um

densely populated region régi·ō -ōnis *f* uberrimae multitudinis

dentist medic·us -ī *m* dentārius, medic·a -ae *f* dentāria

denture prōsthes·is -is *f* dentālis

deny īnfīti·or -ārī -ātus sum

depart abs·cēdō -cēdere -cēssī -cēssum

department (*academic*) facúlt·ās -ātis *f*; **department of classics** litterārum classicārum facúltās

department store pantopóli·um -ī *n*

departure abscess·us -ūs *m*

depend: it (all) depends on you tōtum
in tē pōsitum est; **it depends a lot on
whether ...** plūrimum rēfert num ...

deponent *s* dēpōn·ēns -ēntis *n*, verb·um
-ī *n* dēpōnēns

deposit money in a bank pecūniam in
argentāriā dēpōn·ō -ere dēpōsuī
dēpōsitus

depressed abiect·us -a -um; **be
depressed** abiectō ānimō esse

depression abiecti·ō -ōnis *f* ānimī

deprive: deprive s.o. of āliquem prīvāre
(+ *abl*)

deranged (mind) commōt·us -a -um;
(*person*) mente capt·us -a

derive *tr* (**from**) dērivāre (ab + *abl*)

desert dēsért·a -ōrum *npl*

deserving (of) dign·us -a -um (+ *abl*)

desire cupidit·ās -ātis *f*

desk mēns·a -ae *f* scrīptōria; (*teacher's
desk*) pūlpit·um -ī *n*

desktop (comput) (on the screen) in
quadrō

despair *intr* (**of**) dēspērāre (dē + *abl*)

despair *s* dēspērāti·ō -ōnis *f*

desperate dēspērāt·us -a -um

desperation dēspērāti·ō -ōnis *f*

despicable dēspicāt·us -a -um

despise dēspíc·iō -ere dēspéxī dēspéctus

dessert bellári·a -ōrum *npl*, secūnda
mēns·a -ae *f*

destination loc·us -ī *m* dēstinātus

destructive exitiōs·us -a -um

detail: go into a matter in detail rem
per sīngula ín·eō -īre -īī *or* -īvī; **in
detail** per sīngula, sīngulātīm; **details**
sīngul·a -ōrum *npl*

detective inquīsī·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trícis
f), indāgā·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

detergent lōmént·um -ī *n*

detour circūit·us -ūs *m*; **take a detour**
viam flect·ō -ere flexī

develop (character, mind) cōfirmāre;
(*improve*) éxcol·ō -ere excólui
excúltus

devote oneself to sē dare (+ *dat*)

dew rōs, rōris *m*

dial *s* (*of a clock*) tábul·a -ae *f* hōrāria;
(*of a telephone*) tábul·a -ae *f*
sēlectōria

dial *tr* sēlig·ō -ere sēlēgī sēlēctus **II** *intr*
númerum sēligere

diaphragm praecórdi·a -ōrum *npl*

diarrhea alv·us -ī *f* fūsa (*or cita*)

dictaphone dictaphón·um -ī *n*

dictate dictāre

dictation dictāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **take
dictation** dictāta exscrīb·ō -ere
exscrīpsī

dictator dictāt·or -ōris *m*

dictionary dictiōnár·ium -ī *n*, léxic·on
-ī *n*

die mór·ior -ī mórtuus *sum*

diesel Dīselián·us -a -um

diet *intr* victūs ratiōnem observāre

diet *s* victūs rāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **be on a diet**
victūs ratiōnem observāre

difference differēti·a -ae *f*; **difference
of opinion** dissēnsi·ō -ōnis *f*; **how
much difference does it make?**
quantum ínterest?; **it makes no (a lot
of) difference to me (you, etc.)
whether ... or** nīl (multum) meā
(tuā, etc.) ínterest (*or* rēfert) utrum
... an (+ *subj*); **what's the
difference anyhow!** quid útique
ínterest! *or* quid útique rēfert?

difficult difficil·is -is -e

dig (*a garden, well*) fód·iō -ere fōdī
fōssus; **dig a hole through** perfódere
(+ *acc*); **dig up s.th. about** quicquam
ēru·ō -ere -ī dē (+ *abl*)

digest cón·coquō -cóquere -cóxī -cóctus

digestion concócti·ō -ónis *f*

digital digitál·is -is -e

digital clock hōrológi·um -ī *n* digitále

dignified grav·is -is -e

dignity grávit·ās -átis *f*, dígnit·ās -átis *f*

diligence díligenti·a -ae *f*

diligent dílig·ēns -éntis

dimensions mēnsúr·a -ae *f* or mēnsúr·ae
-árum *fpl*

diminutive *s* dēminútiv·um -ī *n*

dine cēnāre; **dine out** foris cēnāre

dining car curr·us -ūs *m* cēnātórius

dining couch lect·us -ī *m*

dining room trīclīni·um -ī *n*; (*informal*)
cēnāti·ō -ónis *f*

dining table mēns·a -ae *f* escária

dinner cēn·a -ae *f*; **eat dinner** cēnāre,
cēnam sūm·ō -ere -psī -ptus; **have a**
roast for dinner assum in cēnā
habēre; **over dinner** per cēnam;
what are you having for dinner?
quid in cēnā habébis?

dinner clothes cēnātóri·a -órum *npl*,
sýnthēs·is -is *f*

dinnertime hōr·a -ae *f* cēnándī

dinosaur dinosaúr·us -ī *m*

diocese dioecēs·is -is *f*

diphthong *s* diphthóng·us -ī *f*

diploma studiórum diplóm·a -atis *n*; **get**
a diploma studiórum diplóma
mér·eō -ēre -uī

directly rēctā, per dírēctum

directory (*comput*) plicárū ind·ex
-icis *m*

dirt cheap prō lutō

dirty (*clothes, shoes*) immúnd·us -a
-um; **give s.o. a dirty look** respíc·iō
-ere respéxī áliquem minus familiári
vultū; **dirty talk** serm·ō -ónis *m*
obscénus

disagree: I strongly disagree with you
veheménter ā tē dissentiō

disappear ēvanēsc·ō -ere ēvánuī;
disappear from sight ē cōnspectū
aúferor aúferrī ablátus sum

disappoint frustr·or -árī -átus sum; **I'll**
not disappoint you nōn fallam
opiniónem tuam

disappointment (*act*) dēstitúti·ō -ónis *f*;
(*result*) incómod·um -ī *n*

disapprove of improbrāre

disarm s.o. áliquem armīs éxu·ō -ere -ī
-útus

discharge (*mil*) míssi·ō -ónis *f*; **get an**
honorable discharge honéstam
missiόnem impetrāre; **get a**
dishonorable discharge missiόnem
ignōminiόsam accípere

disciplinary: a strict disciplinarian
exác·tor -tóris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)
gravíssimus (-a) disciplínae

discipline disciplín·a -ae *f*

discotheque discothēc·a -ae *f*

discount remíssi·ō -ónis *f*; **five- (ten-**
twenty-) percent discount quínárum
(dénárum, vicēsímárum)
centēsímárum remíssiō

discuss disputāre dē (+ *abl*)

discussion disputāti·ō -ónis *f*

disease morb·us -ī *m*

disgrace dédec·us -oris *n*, ignōmíni·a
-ae *f*; **be a disgrace to** dēdēcōrī esse

(+ *dat*); **that's a darn disgrace!**
 édepol fácinus ímprobum est!

disgraceful dēdecór·us -a -um,
 ignōminiós·us -a -um

dish catíll·us -ī *m*; (*open and flat*)
 pátin·a -ae *f*; (*large*) lān·x -cis *f*;
dishes (*including pots and pans*)
 vās·a -órum *npl*; **wash the dishes**
 vāsa (coquinātória) élū·ō -ere -ī
 elútus

dishonorable dēdecór·us -a -um

dishwasher máchin·a -ae *f* ēlūtória

disk (*comput*) disc·us -ī *m*; **floppy disk**
 discus flexíbilis

disk drive (*comput*) īnstrūmént·um -ī *n*
 dísculis legéndis

diskette (*comput*) díscul·us -ī *m*

dismay cōnstrēnāti·ō -ónis *f*

dismiss dīmítt·ō -ere dīmísī dīmíssus

disposition afféct·us -ūs *m* (ánimī)

diss (*slang*) négleg·ō -ere negléxī
 negléctus

distance spāti·um -ī *n*; **its distance**
from the sea is three miles abest ā
 marī tria mília pássuum

distant longínqu·us -a -um; **be distant**
from abesse ab (+ *abl*), distāre ab (+
abl)

distinguished illústr·is -is -e

distress dol·or -óris *m*; (*difficulty*)
 angústi·ae -árum *fpl*

district tract·us -ūs *m*, ag·er -rī *m*

distrust *s* (*of*) diffidénti·a -ae *f* (+ *gen*)

distrust *tr* diffíd·ō -ere diffísus sum
 (*semi-deponent*) (+ *dat*)

dive (*of a swimmer*) praeceps dēsíl·iō
 -íre -uī; (*to submerge*) ūrín·or -ārī
 -átus sum

diver ūríná·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

diving board tábul·a -ae *f* dēsultória

divorce *s* dīvórti·um -ī *n*

divorce *tr* dīvórti·um fácere cum (+ *abl*)

dizziness vertíg·ō -inis *f*

dizzy vertiginós·us -a -um

do fácere, ágere; (*the hair*) cōm·ō -ere
 cōmpsi cōmptus; **do in: he has done**
me in pérdidit mē; **do one's best**
 óperam dō dare dedī; **do good: it will**
do you (a lot of, no) good próderit
 (multum, nihil) tibi; **do right well**
 rēctē valēre; **do s.o. in** (*ruin s.o.*)
 áliquem pessum dare; **I don't know**
what to do quid fáciam nesciō; **it**
won't do to (+ *inf*) nōn satis est (+
inf); **what else can I do?** quid áliud
 fáciam?; **what more can I do?** quid
 fáciam ámplius?; **will this do?**
 sátin(e) est?

doctor medic·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); (*as an*
academic title) doct·or -óris *m*,
 doct·īx -ícis *f*

doctorate doctōrāt·us -ūs *m*

doctor's degree doctóris grad·us -ūs *m*

documentary documentári·um -ī *n*

dodge the draft milítiam subter·fúgiō
 -fúgere -fúgī

dog can·is -is *m*; **go to the dogs** pessum
 eō ire -iī or -ivī

doing: what's doing? quid ágitur?

doll pūp·a -ae *f*

dollar dóllar·us -ī *m*, dollári·um -ī *n*

dolphin delphín·us -ī *m*

done for: I'm done for! nullus sum! or
 périi!

donkey ásin·us -ī *m*

door iānu·a -ae *f*, ósti·um -ī *n*; **double**
doors for·ēs -ium *fpl*; **folding doors**
 valv·ae -árum *fpl*; **out of doors** forīs

doorbell *ostíi tintinābul·um -ī n*; **ring the doorbell** *pulsābulum cōprim·ō -ere comprēssī*; **the doorbell is ringing** *ostíi tintinābulum tinnit*

doorknob *iānuae manūbri·um -ī n*

door lock *claustr·um -ī n*

doorpost *post·is -is m*

doorstep *lim·en -inis n*

doorway *ostí·um -ī n*

dormitory *hospiti·um -ī n* (*discipulorum or discipulārum*)

dorsal fin *pinn·a -ae f dorsālis*

dose *pórti·ō -ónis f*; **small dose** *portiūncul·a -ae f*

double *adj* *gemināt·us -a -um*; **double “i” as in “armārii”** *“i” līttera gemināta, ut armārii*

double s on the double *currículō*; **doubles** (*in tennis*) *lūd·us -ī m bis binōrum*

double home *dom·us -ūs f duplex*

double room *conclāve -is n duōrum lectōrum*

doubt s I have no doubt that ... *nōn mihi dúbium est quīn (+ subj)*

doubt tr & intr *dubitāre*

dove *palūmb·ēs -is f (see bird)*

downcast *dēiēct·us -a -um*; *dēmíss·us -a -um*; **be downcast** *iác·eō -ēre -uī*; **with downcast eyes** *dēiēctus oculōs*

downhearted *dēmíss·us -a -um*; **be downhearted** *ánimō percúlsō esse*

downhill *adj* *dēclí·is -is -e, prōclí·is -is -e*; **it was all downhill after that** *prōclí·via ómnia erant postílla*

downhill *adv* *per dēclí·ve*; **things are going downhill** *inclínāta rēs est*

downhill racing *dēcúrsi·ō -ónis f simplex*

download (*comput*) *ex rēte prehén·dō -dere -dī -sus, ex rēte éxprom·ō -ere -psī -ptus*

down pat: you have the whole thing **down pat** *órdine omnem rem tenēs*

down payment *árrab·ō -ónis f*; **make a down payment of \$20 (or pay \$20 down)** *vígintī dóllarōs arrabóni dare*

downstairs (*direction*) *deórsum*; (*position*) *in imō tabulátō*; **go downstairs** *per scālās dēscénd·ō -ere -ī*; **he is downstairs** *in imō tabulátō est*

doze off *in somnum delāb·or -ī delāpsus sum*

draft *cōnscrīb·ō -ere cōnscrípsi cōnscríptus*

draft s (mil) *dilēct·us -ūs m*; **hold a draft** *dilēctum habēre*

draft-dodger *quī milítiam subtérugit*

drag tr (*comput*) *trah·ō -ere trāxi tractus*; **drag out (a war)** (*bellum*) *trāhere or prōdúc·ō -ere* **ll intr drag on** *trah·or -ī*

draw (water) (*aquam*) *haúr·iō -íre hausi haustus*; **(lines)** (*líneās*) *dúcere*; **(a picture)** (*imāginem*) *dēlineāre*; **(geometrical figures)** (*formās*) (*geōmétricās*) *dēscrīb·ō -ere dēscrípsi*

drawbridge *pōns, pontis m sublevābilis*

drawer *lócul·us -ī m, fórul·us -ī m recíprocus*

dread *formídāre*

dreadful *dīr·us -a -um*

dress s *vest·is -is f muliebris*; (*ankle-length*) *vestis tálāris*; (*Roman*) *stol·a -ae f*

dress tr *índuō índuere índui indútus, vést·iō -íre -ívī or -ī -ítus*; **dress oneself, get dressed** *sē índuere, sē vestíre* **ll intr dress up** *sē exornāre*

dress shoes socc·ī -ōrum *mpl*, sóccul·ī -ōrum *mpl* (*for women, of different colors and often decorated with gems*)

dressing (*on a salad*) embámm·a -atis *n*;
Caesar (Blue Cheese, French, Italian, Russian, Thousand Island)
embámma Caesariánum (Cáseī
Caerúleī, Gállicum, Itálicum,
Rússicum, Mille Īnsulárum)

dressing table mēns·a -ae *f* cōmātória

dressmaker vestífic·a -ae *f*

dribble *tr* (*a basketball*) repercutitāre

dribbling repercuti·ō -ōnis *f*

drifter larífug·a -ae *m*

drill *s* (*tool*) térebr·a -ae *f*; (*in school*)
exercíti·um -ī *n*; (*mil*) exercitāti·ō
-ōnis *f*

drill *tr* terebrāre; (*students*) ĩnstítu·ō -ere
-ī ĩnstítútus; (*mil*) exérc·eō -ēre -uī
-itus

drink *s* pōti·ō -ōnis *f*; **drinks** pōtiōn·ēs
-um *fp*l, pōtulént·a -ōrum *npl*

drink *tr* pōtāre

drive *s* (*enthusiasm*) stúdi·um -ī *n*; (*in a vehicle*) gestāti·ō -ōnis *f*

drive *tr* (*a car, truck, bus*) gubernāre,
ágere; **drive s.o. home** áliquem
domum autocĭnētō (*or* autoraédā)
addúcere; **drive s.o. mad** áliquem
dēméntem fácere

driver autoraedári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*),
autocĭnētíst·ēs -is *mf*

driver's license autoraedáriī diplóm·a
-atis *n*

drizzle *intr* **it is drizzling** léniter pluit

drizzle *s* plúvi·a -ae *f* rāra et minúta

drop *s* (*e.g., of rain*) gutt·a -ae *f*

drop in on (*to visit*) invís·ō -ere -ī; **drop it!** (*no more of that!*) missa istaec

fac!; **drop it, please!** mittē, amábō!;
drop off to sleep obdormísc·ō -ere;
let's drop the subject missa haec
faciámus

drug medicám·en -inis *n*; (*narcotic*)
medicāmént·um -ī *n* psychotrópĭcum

druggist medicāmentári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae
f), pharmacopól·a -ae *m* (·ria -riae *f*)

drugstore medicāmentári·a -ae *f*

drum týmpan·um -ī *n*; **play the drum**
týmpanum pulsāre

drummer tympaníst·a -ae *m* (·ria -riae
f)

drunk ébri·us -a -um

drunkenness ēbriét·ās -átis *f*; (*habitual drunkenness*) ēbriósit·ās -átis *f*

dry cleaner full·ō -ōnis *m*

dry cleaner's (*establishment*) fullónic·a
-ae *f*

dryer (*for hair; for clothes*)
ĭnstrúmēt·um -ī *n* siccátōrium
(capillórum; véstium)

duck *s* an·as -atis *f*; (*as food*) anatĭn·a
-ae *f*; **ducks quack** ánatēs tetrĭnniunt

duck *tr* (*in the water*) dēprim·ō -ere
dēpréssī dēpréssus; **duck the issue**
rem evítāre **||** *intr* caput inclínāre

dull heb·es -etis

dummy (*slang*) frut·ex -icis *m*, bār·ō
-ōnis *m*

dumpling off·a -ae *f*, glóbul·us -ī *m*

dunce bār·ō -ōnis *m*

duped: you've been duped good and proper tibi ōs est súblĭtum plānē et probē

during inter (+ *acc*)

dust *tr* **dust the furniture** supelléctilem
dētér·geō -gēre -sī -sus

dustpan vatíll·um -ī *n*

DVD digitális díscul·us -ī *m* magnē-
toscópicus

dye ting·ō -ere tīnxī tīnctus

**dying to know: I am dying to know
how you are doing** valdē áveō scīre,
quid agās

E

each quisque quaeque quodque

eager (for) cupid·us -a -um (+ *gen*)

eagle áquil·a -ae *f*; **eagles screech**
áquilae strident

ear aur·is -is *f*; (*outer*) aurícul·a -ae *f*;

earlobe lann·a -ae *f*

early (*at an early period*) mātúrē; (*too
soon*) praemātúrē; **early in the
morning** bene māne

earrings inaúr·ēs -ium *fpl*

earthquake terrae mōt·us -ūs *m*

earthworm lumbríc·us -ī *m*

east óri·ēns -éntis *m*; **on the east (side)**
ab oriēte; **to the east** in oriētem
versus [*versus is an adverb*]

Easter *adj* Paschál·is -is -e

Easter *s* Pasch·a -ae *f*, Pasch·a -átis *n*

eastern orientál·is -is -e

eastward in oriētem versus [*versus is
an adverb*]

easy chair arcisélli·um -ī *n* tōméntō
fartum

easy-going fácil·is -is -e

eat edō ēsse *or* édere ēdī ēsus;
(*breakfast, lunch, dinner*) sūm·ō -ere
sūmpsī sūmptus; **eat out** foris cēnāre

edict edíct·um -ī *n*

edit edō édere édidī éditus

edition edítí·ō -ónis *f*

editor redáct·or -óris *m*, redáctr·īx -ícis
f; (*of a newspaper, magazine*) édit·or
tórís *m* (·tríx -trícis *f*); **editor in chief**
redáctor prīnceps *m*, redáctrīx
prīnceps *f*

educate instít·uō -úere -uī -útus, ērúd·iō
-íre -iī -ítus

educated ērudít·us -a -um

education instítútí·ō -ónis *f*, ērudítí·ō
-ónis *f* (*Note that ēdūcátíō refers to
“raising, bringing up” and can apply
to the raising of children as well as
livestock and crops, the training of
the body, etc.*)

eel anguill·a -ae *f*

effeminate effēminát·us -a -um

efficiency hábilit·ās -átis *f*

efficient hábíl·is -is -e

effort: it's (not) worth the effort

prétium óperae (nōn) est; **make an
effort to be on time** dā óperam ut
tempestívē adsīs; **you've wasted all
your effort** omnem óperam perdidísti

egg ōv·um -ī *n* (**fried** fríctum; **hard-
boiled** dūrum; **soft-boiled** ápalum;
scrambled permíxtum)

egg on concitāre

eggplant melongén·a -ae *f*

egg white albúm·en -inis *n*

either ... or aut ... aut

elbow cúbit·um -ī *n*

elect creāre; (*Roman senators*) coöptāre

elections comítí·a -órum *npl*; **hold
elections** comítia habére

electric(al) eléctric·us -a -um

electrical appliances eléctrica
instrūmént·a -órum *npl*

electrical outlet cápsul·a -ae *f* contáctūs
eléctrici

electric bulb glóbul·us -ī *m* ēléctricus

electric cord fūnicul·us -ī *m* ēléctricus

electric current fluént·um -ī *n*
ēléctricum

electric fan máchin·a -ae *f* ventígēna

electric light lūm·en -inis *n* ēléctricum;
turn off (turn off) the light lūmen
accénd·ō -ere -ī accēnsus (exstingu·ō
-ere extínxī extíctus)

electric shaver rāsōri·um -ī *n* ēléctricum

electric stove fócūl·us -ī *m* ēléctricus

electric wire fil·um -ī *n* ēléctricum

electrician ēléctridis ártif·ex -icis *m*

electricity ēléctr·is -idis *f*

electronic electrónic·us -a -um

elegance elegánti·a -ae *f*

elegant éleg·āns -ántis

elementary school litterárius lūd·us -ī *m*

elephant elephánt·us -ī *m*; **elephants**
trumpet elephánti bárriu

elevator célula·a -ae *f* scānsória

eloquent éloqu·ēns -éntis

else: anyone else quívis álius; **anything**
else? áliquíd ámplius? **no one else**
nēmō álius; **nothing else** nihil áliud;
who else is more deserving? quis
alter est dígnior homō?

elsewhere álibi

e-mail *s* líter·ae -árum *fpl* electrónicae;
(the system) curs·us -ūs *m*
electrónicus

e-mail *tr* líterās electrónicās míttēre ad
(+ *acc*)

e-mail address ínscrip̄ti·ō -ónis *f*
electrónica

embarrass perturbáre

embarrassed: I am embarrassed by
sum perturbátus cum (+ *abl*)

embezzle ēvērt·ō -ere -ī ēvērsus

embezzlement peculát·us -ūs *m*

embroider acū ping·ō -ere pīnxī pictus

embroidered (with colors) pict·us -a
-um

emerald *adj* smarágdin·us -a -um

emerald *s* smarágd·us -ī *m*

emigrate ēmigráre

emotion ánimī mōt·us -ūs *m*; **express**
emotions ánimī mōtūs éxprim·ō -ere
expréssī expréssus

emperor imperát·or -óris *m*; (title
chosen by Augustus) prīnc·eps -ipis
m

employ (to use) ūt·or -ī ūsus sum (+
abl); (to hire) condúcere

employee condúc·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*),
mercēnári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

employer (óperae) condúc·tor -tóris *m*
(·trīx -trícis *f*)

employment (act) ūs·us -ūs *m*;
(occupation) quaest·us -ūs *m*

empty (into) sē effúnd·ō -ere effúdi
effúsus (in + *acc*)

enclitic *s* enclític·um -ī *n* (ut “-que,”
“-ve” and, or)

encourage adhórt·or -áři -átus sum

encouragement hortát·us -ūs *m*,
hortám·en -inis *n*

end *s* fin·is -is *m*; **in the end** ab
extrémō; **put an end to a war** bellī
finem fácere; **toward the end of his**
life témpore extrémō; **that’s the end**
of me áctum est dē mē

end fín·iō -íre -ívi -ítus *II intr* désin·ō
-ere, fín·ior -írī finítus sum; (*gram*)
(in) términ·or -áři -átus sum (in +
acc or *abl*)

ending *s* (*gram*) termináti·ō -ónis *f*

ending *adj (gram) (in)* terminát·us -a -um (*in + acc*)

enemy host·ēs -ium *mpl*; (*personal enemy*) inimíc·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

energetic nāv·us -a -um

enforce the law lēgem exérc·eō -ēre -uī -itus

engine mächināmént·um -ī *n*, mōtr·um -ī *n*

engineer mächinā·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

engineering mächinális sciénti·a -ae *f*

enjoy (*good health, company, etc.*) ūtor ūtī ūsus sum (+ *abl*)

enlist *mil* nōmen (*of several*: nōmina) dare

enough satis; **enough and more than enough** satis supérque; **enough of this!** haec háctenus!; **enough time** satis témporis

enter intráre; (*comput*) in ōrdinátrum réferō reférre rétulī relátus

enthusiasm stúdi·um -ī *n*

enthusiastic (*about*) studiós·us -a -um (+ *gen*)

entrance (*entering*) intróit·us -ūs *m*; (*approach*) ádit·us -ūs *m*; (*doorway*) ósti·um -ī *n*

envelope involúcr·um -ī *n* epistuláre

envious ínvīd·us -a -um; **be envious of** invíd·eō -ēre invídī (+ *dat*)

environment circumiéc·a -ōrum *npl*

envy *s* invídī·a -ae *f*

envy *tr* invíd·eō -ēre invídī invísūm (+ *dat*)

epilepsy morb·us -ī *m* comitiális

equally aeque

erase ērád·ō -ere -ī ērásus

eraser (*for a blackboard*) dētersóri·um -ī *n*; (*on a pencil*) cumm·is -is *f* dēlétilis

erasure litúr·a -ae *f*

error err·or -óris *m*; (*in writing*) mend·um -ī *n*, mend·a -ae *f*, víti·um -ī *n*; **commit (make) an error** mendum admítt·ō -ere admísī admíssus

escalator scál·ae -árum *fpl* móbilēs (*or* volúbilēs)

escape *s* effúgi·um -ī *n*

escape *tr* **escape the notice of** fall·ō -ere feféllī || *intr* effúg·iō -ere effúgī

esophagus gul·a -ae *f*

especially potíssimum, praecípuē

espresso cáffe·a -ae *f* expréssa

essay tractát·us -ūs *m*

esteem *s* aestimáti·ō -ónis *f*; **hold s.o. in high (highest) esteem** áliquem magnī (máximī) fácere

esteem *tr* aestimáre

estranged: become estranged from s.o. áliquem ā sē aliēnāre

estuary aestuári·um -ī *n*

Etruria Etrúri·a -ae *f*

Europe Európ·a -ae *f*

European Eurōpaē·us -a -um

evasive ambígu·us -a -um

even étiam; **even today** etiámnum; **not even** ne ... quidem; **get even with s.o.** áliquem ulcísc·or -ī ultus sum

evening vesp·er -erī *m*, vésper·a -ae *f*; **all evening** tōtā vésperā; **early in the evening** prīmō vésperī; **in the evening** vésperī, véspere; **last evening** herī vésperī; **on Saturday evening** diē Sātúrnī vésperī; **this evening** hódīē vésperī; **toward evening** sub vésperum; **very late in**

- the evening** pervéspērī; **yesterday evening** herī vésperī
- evening wear** cēnātōri·a -ōrum *npl*
- ever** umquam
- every** omn·is -is -e; **every day** cōfīdiē; **every month** quot mēnsibus; **every night** per sīngulās noctēs; **every now and then** intērdum; **every year** quotānnīs
- evidence** testimōni·um -ī *n*; **give evidence against s.o.** testimōnium dīcere in āliquem; **on what evidence will you convict me?** quō mē teste convīcēs?; **this evidence is not admissible** hoc testimōnium nōn sūmēndum est; **turn state's evidence** indīcium profit·eor -ērī profēssus sum
- evidently** manifēstē
- exact** accūrāt·us -a -um, exāct·us -a -um
- exaggerate: don't exaggerate everything!** nōlī (*pl*: nōlīte) omnia in māius extōllere!
- exam** exām·en -inis *n*, probāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **flunk an exam** cad·ō -ere cēcidī cāsūrus in exāmine; **pass an exam** exāmen sustīn·eō -ēre -uī; **take an exam** exāmen ób·eō -īre -iī; **tough exam** exāmen rigōrōsum
- examine** exāmināre
- example** exémpl·um -ī *n*; **set a good example** bonum exémplum praéb·eō -ēre -uī
- excavator** máchin·a -ae *f* fōssória
- except** praeter (+ *acc*); **except that** nisi quod (+ *indic*)
- excessive (in)** immódic·us -a -um (+ *gen* or *abl*)
- exchange** permūtāre; **exchange greetings** cōnsalūtāre; **exchange prisoners** captīvōs inter sē permūtāre
- excite** excitāre
- excited** commót·us -a -um, excitāt·us -a -um
- excitement** ánimī commóti·ō -ōnis *f*; **feel excitement** éxcit·or -āri excitātus sum
- exclamation** exclāmāti·ō -ōnis *f*
- exclamation point** sign·um -ī *n* exclāmātiōnis
- excuse** *s* excūsāti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*pretext*) praetēxt·um -ī *n*
- excuse** *tr* (*pardon*) ignōsc·ō -ere ignōvī (+ *dat*); **excuse me** ignósce mihi; **please excuse me** óbsecrō, mihi ignóscās; **excuse oneself** sē excūsāre
- exempt: be exempt from military service** milítiae vacātiōnem habēre
- exemption from military service** milítiae vacāti·ō -ōnis *f*
- exercise** *intr* sē exérc·eō -ēre -uī
- exercise** *s* (*written*) exercíti·um -ī *n*; (*practice*) exercitāti·ō -ōnis *f*
- exhale** expirāre
- exhaust** ēmissári·um -ī *n*
- expect** exspectāre; **what do you expect?** quid vīs fīerī?
- expense** impēns·a -ae *f*, sūmpt·us -ūs *m*; **at my expense** meō sūmptū; **at your own expense** prīvātō sūmptū
- expensive** cār·us -a -um, pretiós·us -a -um
- experience** experiēnti·a -ae *f*, ūs·us -ūs *m*
- experienced (in)** perít·us -a -um (+ *gen*)
- expert** *s* perít·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- expert in** gnār·us -a -um (+ *gen*)
- explain** explānāre, explicāre
- explanation** explānāti·ō -ōnis *f*, explicāti·ō -ōnis *f*

express *exprim*·ō -ere *expressi*
expressus

expression *vult*·us -ūs *m*; **change one's expression** *vultum flect*·ō -ere *flexi flexus*

expressive (*eyes*) *argūt*·us -a -um

express train *trām*·en -inis *n*
rapidissimum

extend *intr* (*of land, body of water*)
tend·ō -ere, *prōtēnd*·ō -ere, *pāt*·eō
-ēre; **the region extends from ... to ...** *regiō tendit* (*or patet*) *ab* (+ *abl*)
ad (+ *acc*); **extend over** (*to cover*)
obtin·eō -ēre

extortion *violēnta exācti*·ō -ōnis *f*
pecūniārum

extracurricular *extraordināri*·us -a -um

eye *ōcul*·us -ī *m*; **keep an eye on that guy** *adservā* (*pl*: *adservāte*) *istum*;
keep your eyes open *cavē*
circumspiciās; **look me in the eye**
aspicedum contrā mē; **with eyes wide open** *hiāntibus oculis*

eyeball *orb*·is -is *m* *oculī*

eyebrow *supercīli*·um -ī *n*

eye doctor *mēdic*·us -ī *m* *oculārius*,
mēdic·a -ae *f* *oculāria*

eyeglasses *perspicill*·a -ōrum *npl*, *vitri*·a
-ōrum *npl* *oculāria*; **wear eyeglasses**
perspicillīs ut·or -ī *usus sum*

eyelash *pālpebrae pil*·us -ī *m*; **eyelashes**
palpebrārum pil·ī -ōrum *mpl*

eyelid *pālpebr*·a -ae *f*

eyewitness *oculātus* (-a) *test*·is -is *mf*

F

fabric (*pattern of weaving*) *text*·us -ūs *m*
(**coarse** *crassus*; **sheer, thin** *tēnuis*;
thick *pinguis*)

face *s faci*·ēs -ēī *f*; **be face to face with you** *praesēns praesenti tibi esse*;
make a face *ōs dūcere*; **on the face of it** *primā faciē*; **we can discuss that face to face** *cōram id āgere pōssumus*

face *tr spectāre*; (*to withstand, e.g., danger*) *ōbviam ire* (+ *dat*); **face north (south, east, west)** *spectāre in* (*or ad*) *septentrionēs* (*merīdiem, orientem, occidentem*)

fact: as a matter of fact *animvērō*; **in fact** *profectō, vērō, quidem*; **the fact that ...** *quod* (+ *indic*); **the facts speak for themselves** *rēs ipsa indicat or rēs prō sē lōquitur*

faction *fācti*·ō -ōnis *f*

factory *fābric*·a -ae *f*

faculty *ōrd*·ō -inis *m* *professorum*

fail *tr fail an exam (test, quiz)* *in exāmine* (*probātiōne, probātiunculā*)
cad·ō -ere *cecidī*; **words fail me** *quid dicam nōn invēniō*

fair *aequ*·us -a -um; (*complexion*)
candid·us -a -um; (*weather*) *serēn*·us
-a -um, *sūd*·us -a -um; **fair and square** *sine fūcō ac fallāciīs*; **I think that's fair** *id aequi faciō*; **that's not fair of you** *nōn aequum facis*

fairground(s) *prāt*·um -ī *n* *fēstivum*

fairly (*in a fair way*) *aequē*; (*somewhat*)
aliquāntulum; (*moderately*)
mediocriter

fair-minded *aequ*·us -a -um

fairness *aēquit*·ās -ātis *f*

fairy *dīv*·a -ae *f*

faith *fid*·ēs -eī *f*; **in bad faith** *dē fidē malā*; **in good faith** (*ex*) *bonā fidē*

faithful *fidēl*·is -is -e

fake *simulāre*

faker *simulā*·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trīcis *f*)

falcon falc·ō -ōnis *m* (*see* **bird**)

fall *adj* autumnāl·is -is -e

fall *intr* cadō cādere cecidī cāsūrus; **fall asleep** obdormisc·ō -ere; **fall (desperately) in love with** (périditē) amāre coep·ī -isse; **fall flat** (*of a speech, etc.*) frīgeō frīgēre; **fall for** (*a trick*) fall·or -ī (+ *abl*); **fall in love at first sight** ūnō aspéctū in amōrem incid·ō -ere -ī; **fall sick** in morbum incidere

fall *s* autūmn·us -ī *m*

false fals·us -a -um

falsely falsō

family famīli·a -ae *f*; **come from a good family** honéstō locō nāt·us -a esse

family name gentīle nōm·en -inis *n*

family tree stirp·s -is *f*, stemm·a -atis *n*

famous praeclār·us -a -um; **famous for** inclutus (+ *abl*), nōbilis (+ *abl*)

fan *s* flabéll·um -ī *n*; (*admirer*) faut·or -ōris *m*, fautr·īx -īcis *f*; **electric fan** māchínul·a -ae *f* ventígēna

fan *tr* ventilāre

fantastic mīrífic·us -a -um

far (*by far*) longē; **as far as I'm concerned** per mē; **by far** longē, multō; **far be it from me to say** équidem dīcere nōlim; **far from** procul ab (+ *abl*); **how far?** quoad, quóusque?; (**not**) **far from here** (haud) procul hinc; **far from it!** mínimē!; **farthest to the south** longíssimē in merídiem; **so far so good** bellē adhūc; **so far, thus far** háctenus

faraway (*distant*) longínqu·us -a -um

fare vectúr·a -ae *f*

farewell valē (*pl.* valéte)

far-fetched idea conquisítum cōnsíli·um -ī *n*

farm fund·us -ī *m*, rūs, rūris *n*; **on the farm** rūrī

farm animals pec·us -oris *n* or pécor·a -um *npl*

farmer agrícol·a -ae *m*

farm house vīll·a -ae *f* rústica

farsighted próvid·us -a -um

fashion cultūs mod·us -ī *m*; **be in fashion** more fierī; **come into fashion** in morem vén·iō -īre vērī; **go out of fashion** obsolēsc·ō -ere obsolévī obsolétum

fast cel·er -eris -ere; **be fast asleep** artē dōrm·iō -īre -īvī

fat obés·us -a -um (*opp.* grácil·is -is -e)

fathead (*slang*) fātu·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

father pa·ter -tris *m*; **father of the family** paterfamíliās (*gen.* patrisfamíliās) *m*

father-in-law soc·er -erī *m*

fatigue fatigáti·ō -ōnis *f*

fatigued fess·us -a -um

faucet epitóni·um -ī *n*; **turn on (off) the faucet** epitónium versāre (reversāre)

fault culp·a -ae *f*; **be at fault** in culpā esse; **not be at fault** extrā culpam esse

faultless ēmendát·us -a -um

favor benefíci·um -ī *n*, gráti·a -ae *f*, grāt·um -ī *n*; **accept and return a favor** benefícium accípere et réddere; **ask s.o. for a favor** grátiam ab áliqūo pet·ō -ere petívī; **do s.o. a favor** grátum álicui fácere; **do s.o. a big favor** grátíssimum álicui fácere; **return s.o. a favor** grátiam álicui réferō réferre rétulī; **please do me this favor!** amábō tē, fac (*or for a previous favor:* refer) hanc grátiam mihi

favorable (*auspices, circumstances, gods, wind*) *secúnd·us -a -um*

fax *tēlecópi·a -ae f*

fax machine *tēlecópiátr·um -ī n*

fear *s met·us -ūs m; he put the fear of God into them* *cūrāvit ut illīs Iúppiter irátus esset; out of fear* *prae metū*

fear *tr metu·ō -ere -ī, tīm·eō -ēre -uī*

fearful (*terrible*) *dīr·us -a -um; fearful of timid·us -a -um (+ gen)*

fearless *impávid·us -a -um*

feather *penn·a -ae f; (soft, downy) plūm·a -ae f*

February *mēns·is -is m Februárius; in February* *mēnse Februáriō*

feeble *imbēcíll·us -a -um*

feebleness *imbēcíllit·ās -átis f*

feed *pāsc·ō -ere pāvī pāstus*

feel *tr (with the hands) tentāre; (hunger, pain, cold, etc.) sent·iō -īre sēnsī sēnsus; feel one's way* *viam tentāre; (fig) cautē et cogitātē rem tractāre; feel pain* *dolōre afficior affici affectus sum* **|| intr because I felt like it** *quia mihi líbitum est; I wasn't feeling well* *ego mē nōn bellē habēbam; feel annoyed* *grav·or -ārī -átus sum; feel bad (good) (physically) sē male (bene) habēre; feel better (physically) mēlius sē habēre; mēlius vál·eō -ēre -uī; feel down and out* *infráctum ánimum ger·ō -ere gessī; feel fine* *sē bene habēre; feel glad* *laet·or -ārī laetátus sum; feel happy* *gaúd·eō -ēre gāvísus sum; How do you feel?* *ut tē habēs?; I feel fine* *mē bene hábeō; bene mihi est; feel really bad about* *valdē dól·eō -ēre -uī dē (+ abl); feel sad* *maest·us -a -um esse*

feelers: put out feelers to *tentāre*

feeling *sēns·us -ūs m, affect·us -ūs m; (feelings esp. with reference to anger) ánim·us -ī m; his (her) feelings were hurt* *ánimus eius saúcius erat; hurt s.o.'s feelings* *áliquem offénd·ō -ere -ī*

fellow citizen *cīv·is -is m/ su·us (-a)*

fellow passenger *convéct·or -óris m, convéctr·ix -ícis f*

fellow soldier *conmílīt·ō -ónis m*

fellow student *condiscípul·us -ī m (·a -ae f)*

fellow worker *sóci·us -ī m (·a -ae f) óperis*

felon *scelést·us -ī m (·a -ae f)*

felony *scel·us -eris n*

feminine *fēminín·us -a -um*

fence *saepímént·um -ī n*

fender *lutícipul·um -ī n*

ferry *nāv·is -is f tráiectória (or vectória)*

fetch *petō pétēre petívī (or pétīī) petítus*

fever *febr·is -is f; constant fever* *contínua febris; high fever* *magna or árdēns febris; run a fever* *febricitāre; slight fever* *febrécul·a -ae f*

few: a few *pauc·ī -ae -a*

fiction *fābulósa narráti·ō -ónis f*

fiddle *fidícul·a -ae f; play the fiddle* *fidiculā can·ō -ere cécinī*

fiddlesticks! *nūgae!*

fidelity *fidélit·ās -átis f*

field *ag·er -rī m; (untilled) camp·us -ī m; (of study) disciplín·a -ae f*

fierce *fer·ōx -ócis*

figure s: female figure *muliebris form·a -ae f; figure of speech* *figúr·a -ae f* *ōratiónis, trop·us -ī m*

figurative *trāslát·us -a -um; figūrátív·us -a -um*

figuratively per trānslātiōnem, trānslātīs verbīs, figurāte

figure on (*rely on*) nīt·or -ī nīxus sum *or* nīsus sum (+ *abl*)

figure out excōgitāre

figure skating patināti·ō -ōnis *f* artificiosa

file (*tool*) līm·a -ae *f*; (*for receiving papers*) scap·us -ī *m*; (*comput*) documēt·um -ī *n*; **files** documēt·a -ōrum *npl*, āct·a -ōrum *npl*

fill ímpl·eō -ēre -ēvī -ētus; **fill it up, please!** quaesō, immissārium benzīnārium replē tōtum!

film taeniol·a -ae *f*, pellicul·a -ae *f*; **documentary film** taeniol·a -ae *f* documentāria; **movie film** taeniola cīnēmatogrāphica; **photographic film** pellicula phōtogrāphica; **show a film** taeniolam (cīnēmatogrāphicam) exhīb·eō -ēre -uī -itus

filter filtr·um -ī *n*

fin pinn·a -ae *f*

final últim·us -a -um, extrém·us -a -um

finally tandem; (*at last*) ad extrémum

find repér·iō -īre répperī repértus

fine *adj* (*outstanding*) prae·stāns -stāntis; (*weather*) serēn·us -a -um; **everything's fine** rēctē est; **fine!** probē!; **fine arts** art·ēs -ium *fpl* ēlegantiorēs; **fine weather** serēnit·ās -ātis *f*; **that's fine** bene hoc habet; **you did fine** fecísti probē

fine *tr* **fine** s.o. multāre āliquem (+ *abl of the fine*)

finger *s* dígit·us -ī *m*; **index finger** ind·ex -icis dígitus *m*; **little finger** dígitus mínimus; **middle finger** dígitus médius; (*as an obscene gesture*) dígitus inpuđicus; **not lift a finger** pressis mánibus sēd·eō -ēre

sēdī; **point the finger at s.o.** dígitum ad āliquem intēnd·ō -ere -ī; **ring finger** dígitus ānulāris; **snap the fingers** dígitis cóncrep·ō -āre -uī

finger *tr* (*to handle*) attrēctāre; (*to inform on*) déferō défēre détulī

finger nail ungu·is -is *m*

finger tip dígitus -ī *m* prīmóris

finish cōnfíc·iō -ere cōnfēcī cōnfēctus; **finish off** (*to destroy*) per·dō -dere -didī; (*to kill*) occíd·ō -ere -ī occísus; **finish writing** (*a book, etc.*) absolv·ō -ere -ī absolútus; **put the finishing touch** to últimam manum áfferō affēre áttulī (+ *dat*)

finish line (*sports*) calx, calcis *f*, crēt·a -ae *f*

fire *s* incēndi·um -ī *n*; **be on fire** árd·eō -ēre -uī; **catch fire** ignem concíp·iō -ere concēpī; **put out a fire** incēndium exstíngu·ō -ere exstínxī exstíntus; **set on fire** incēnd·ō -ere -ī incēnsus

fire *tr* (*to dismiss*) āmóv·eō -ēre āmóvī āmótus

fire alarm sign·um -ī *n* monitórium incēndiī

fire chief praeféc·us -ī *m* vígilum

fire engine sīph·ō -ōnis *m*

firefighter vig·il -ilis *mf*; sīphōnāri·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

fireplace foc·us -ī *m*

fire station stāti·ō -ōnis *f* vígilum

fireworks spectācul·um -ī *n* pyrotéchnicum

firm *adj* firm·us -a -um

firm *s* sociēt·ās -ātis *f*

first (*in a series, followed by* deinde, postrémō) prīmum; **at first** (ā) prīmō, inítiō; **first of all** prīmum ómnium, in

prīmīs; for the first time prīmus; **he was the first to enter** prīmus introīvit

first-class (masterly) grāphic·us -a -um; **first-class seat** sēd·ēs -is *f* prīmae classis

fish *intr* pisc·or -ārī -ātus sum; **go fishing** piscātum eō ire īvi *or* īi

fish *s* pisc·is -is *m*; (*as food*) piscāt·us -ūs *m*; **catch fish** piscēs captāre; **teeming with fish** piscōs·us -a -um

fisherman piscāt·or -ōris *m*

fish food ēsc·a -ae *f* piscāria

fish hook hām·us -ī *m*

fishing *s* piscāt·us -ūs *m*; **fishing bait** ēsc·a -ae *f*; **fishing line** līn·um -ī *n* (piscātōrium); **fishing net** rēt·e -is *n* (piscātōrium); **fishing pole** harūd·ō -inis *f*; **fishing rod** cālam·us -ī *m* (piscātōrius); **fishing tackle** instrūment·um -ī *n* piscātōrium

fish market for·um -ī *n* piscārium

fish pond piscīn·a -ae *f*

fishy (smell) pisculēt·us -a -um; (*fig*) suspiciōs·us -a -um

fix *s* **be in a fix** in angūstiīs vers·or -ārī -ātus sum

fix *tr* (*to repair*) refic·iō -ere refēcī refectus; (*time, place, limits*) státu·ō -ere -uī statūtus

flabbergast conturbāre

flabbergasted: we were absolutely flabbergasted nōs omnīnō conturbābāmur

flag *s* vexill·um -ī *n*

flag *tr* signō indicāre

flame (of fire; sweetheart) flāmm·a -ae *f*

flap the wings ālis plaud·ō -ere plausī plausus

flashlight instrūment·um -ī *n* micāns

flash of lightning fulg·ur -uris *n*

flashy speciōs·us -a -um

flat (level) plān·us -a -um; (*dull, stale, e.g., joke*) frīgid·us -a -um; **fall flat (of a speech)** frīgēre

flatter blānd·ior -īrī -ītus sum (+ *dat*)

flattering blānd·us -a -um

flattery blandīti·a -ae *f*

flatware instrūment·a -ōrum *npl* escāria

flea pūl·ex -icis *m*

flea market for·um -ī *n* rērum vēnālīum

flesh car·ō -nis *f*

flight volāt·us -ūs *m*

flirt *s* dēsult·or -ōris *m*, vaga puell·a -ae *f*

flirt with subblānd·ior -īrī (+ *dat*)

flock (of birds, sheep, goats) grex, gregis *m*

floor (paved) pavimēt·um -ī *n*, sol·um -ī *n*; (*story*) tabulāt·um -ī *n*, contignāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **ground floor** pedeplán·a -ōrum *npl*; **marble floor** pavimētum (*or* solum) marmōreum; **mosaic floor** pavimētum (*or* solum) tesselātum; **wooden floor** tabulāt·um -ī *n*

floppy disk (comput) díscul·us -ī *m* flexíbilis

fluorescent light túbul·us -ī *m* flōrēscēns

flounder *intr* vólut·or -ārī -ātus sum; (*in speech*) haesitāre

flounder *s* (*fish*) pass·er -eris *m*

flour farín·a -ae *f*

flow flu·ō -ere flūxī flūxus; **flow by** ádlu·ō, adlūere; **flow down from** dēflūere dē (+ *abl*); **flow into** inflūere in (+ *acc*); **flow out from** efflūere ab (+ *abl*); **flow past** praeterflūere (+ *acc*)

flower (*lit & fig*) flō·s -ris *m*

flower shop tabérn·a -ae *f* flōrális

fluent prōflu·ēns -éntis

flunk: flunk a test cad·ō -ere cécidi
cāsūrus in probātiōne

fluorescent light túbul·us -ī *m* lūcífluus

flush the toilet lātrínam prōluō prōlūere
prōluī

flute tíbi·a -ae *f*

fly *s* musc·a -ae *f*; **a fly buzzes** musca
bómbilat

fly *tr* **fly a plane** āērōplanum gubernāre
|| *intr* volāre; (*of a passenger*)
āērōplanō vehor, vehī, vectus sum;
fly away āvolāre; **fly off the handle**
cito fērv·eō -ēre fērbuī

fog nébul·a -ae *f*

foggy nebulós·us -a -um

fold plicāre; **fold up** complicāre

folder integūmént·um -ī *n* astrictōrium;
(*comput*) coöpercul·um -ī *n*

fond: fond of cupid·us -a -um (+ *gen*);
be fond of dīlig·ō -ere dīlēxī
dīlēctus, amāre

fondness am·or -ōris *m*

font typ·us -ī *m*

food cib·us -ī *m*

food processor máchin·a -ae *f*
coquínaria

fool stult·us -ī *m*, stult·a -ae *f*; **make a**
fool of lūdificāre; **make a fool of**
oneself inépt·iō -īre

foolhardy temerári·us -a -um

foolish dēsípi·ēns -éntis

foolishly: act foolishly inépt·iō -īre

foolishness dēsipiénti·a -ae *f*

foot pēs, pedis *m*; **foot of a mountain**
rād·īx -ícis *m* montis; **at the foot of**
the mountain rādíce montis

football (*ball*) pedifóll·is -is *m*; (*game*)
pedifól·um -ī *n*, pedilúdi·um -ī *n*;
kick the (foot)ball pedifóllem
pulsāre; **pass the (foot)ball to**
pedifóllem trāsmíttere ad (+ *acc*);
play football pedifólle lúdere; **play**
in the first (second) half in parte
prióre (álterā) certáminis lúdere (*see*
Chapter V)

football player pedilús·or -ōris *m*

foothills rādíc·ēs -um *mpl* montis

footnote annotāti·ō -ōnis *f* īmae páginae

for (*during a certain period, expressed*
by acc), e.g., **for ten days** decem
diēs; (*to denote the appointment of*
definite time) in (+ *acc*), e.g., **he**
invited her to dinner for the
following day eam ad cēnam vocāvit
in pósterum diem; (*because of*) ob (+
acc); (*on behalf of*) prō (+ *abl*);
(*since*) nam; **as for** quod áttinet ad (+
acc); **for all that** nec eō sētius *or*
níhilō sētius; **for nothing** grātīs,
grātuítō; (*in vain*) frustrā; **for that**
matter ádeō; **for the last three**
months in ternōs novíssimōs mēnsēs;
for the rest of the year in réliquum
annī tempus; **for these reasons** hīs
dē causīs; **to be for** (*to be in favor*
of) fāv·eō -ēre fāvī (+ *dat*)

force *s* vīs *f*; **by force** vī; **large force**
magnae cópiae *fpl*; **small force**
exíguae cópiae; **be in force** (*of laws*)
vál·eō -ēre -uī; **use force** vim
adhīb·eō -ēre -uī -itus

force *tr* cōg·ō -ere coēgī coáctus

forearm bracchi·um -ī *n*

forecast praenūntiāti·ō -ōnis *f*
(tempestátis)

forefathers átav·ī -órum *mpl*; māiór·ēs
-um *mpl*

forehand (*in tennis*) īct·us -ūs *m*
dirēctus

forehead frōns, frontis *f*

foreign (*of another country*) extérn·us -a
-um; (*coming from abroad*)
peregrín·us -a -um

foreigner peregrín·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

forelady prōcūrātr·īx -ícis *f*

foreman prōcūrāt·or -óris *m*

forest silv·a -ae *f*

forget (about) oblīvīsc·or -ī oblītus sum
(+ *gen*); **forget about it!** Éice id ex
ánimō!

fork furcill·a -ae *f*, fuscínul·a -ae *f*

form *s* form·a -ae *f*; (*of a word*) figūr·a
-ae *f*; **the form is either simple, like**
“**doctus**,” **or compound, like**
“**indoctus**” figūra est aut simplex, ut
“doctus,” aut compósita, ut
“indoctus”

form *tr* fáci·iō -ere fēcī factus; (*a plan,*
partnership, alliance) ín·eō -íre -iī or
-ívi -itus; **form an opinion** iūdícium
fácere; **form the imperative of the**
verb “venire” fac imperātfvum
“veníre” verbī

format *s* (*comput*) form·a -ae *f*

format *tr* (*discum*) cōnformāre

formerly ánteā

fort castéll·um -ī *n*

fortunate fortunāt·us -a -um

fortune: tell fortunes haríol·or -ārī -átus
sum

fortuneteller haríol·us -ī *m*, haríol·a
-ae *f*

forum for·um -ī *n*

forward (*mail, e-mail*) déferō dēfēre
détuli dēlātus

forward (*sports*) oppugnā·tor -tōris *m*
(·trīx -trícis *f*)

foul: commit a foul (*sports*) poenáliter
ag·ō -ere ēgī

fountain pen gráphi·um -ī *n* replébile

fox vulp·ēs -is *f*; **foxes yelp** vulpēs
gánniunt

frame of mind ánim·us -ī *m*; **be in a**
good frame of mind bonō ánimō
esse

frank apért·us -a -um, cándid·us -a -um

frankly apértē, cándidē

frantic phrenétic·us -a -um

fraternity sodálit·ās -átis *f* alumnórum

fraud frau·s -dis *f*

free lib·er -era -erum; **free time** temp·us
-oris *n* líberum, vácuum temp·us
-oris *n*; **have no free time** nihil vácuī
témporis habére; **if you are free** sī
vacábis

free-style swimming natáti·ō -ónis *f*
líbera

freeze *tr* geláre || *intr* gelārī

freezer caps·a -ae *f* frīgorífica

freezing gelíd·us -a -um

freezing, freezing mark pūct·um -ī *n*
glaciále; **three degrees above**
freezing trēs gradūs suprā pūctum
glaciále

freight train trām·en -inis *n* onerárium

French Gallofránc·us -a -um

French fries pōm·a -órum *npl*
(terréstria) frīcta

fresh rec·ēns -éntis

freshman tīr·ō -ónis *mf*

Friday di·ēs -ēī *m* Vénēris

friend amíc•us -ī *m*, amíc•a -ae *f*; **she's my best friend** amíca summa mea est

friendly amíc•us -a -um; **in a friendly way** amícē

friendship amícítī•a -ae *f*

frighten térr•eō -éře -uī -itus

fringe fimbri•a -ae *f*

frivolous frívol•us -a -um

frog rān•a -ae *f*; **frogs croak** rānae coáxant

from *prep* ab or dē or ex (+ *abl*); **from a to z** ab áciā et acū; **from here** hinc; **from there** illinc; **from where** unde

front *adj* prī•or -or -us; (*teeth, feet*) prīmór•is -is -e

front *s* frōn•s -tis *f*; **in front** ā fronte; **in front of** (*position*) ante (+ *acc*), prō (+ *abl*); (*in the presence of*) coram (+ *abl*); **front of the classroom** prior par•s -tis *f* conclāvis scholāris; **front of the house** frōns aedium

front door antíc•um -ī *n*

front hall vēstíbul•um -ī *n*, fauc•ēs -ium *tpl*

front seat sēd•ēs -is *f* antérieur

frontier fīn•is -is *m*, términ•us -ī *m*

frost pruín•a -ae *f*

frosty pruínós•us -a -um

frozen rig•ēns -éntis; (*food*) gelát•us -a -um

fruit pōm•a -órum *npl*

fruit juice sūc•us -ī *m* pōmárius

fruit tree arb•or -oris *f* pōmífera

frustrate frūstr•or -āri -átus *sum*

frustration frūstráti•ō -ónis *f*

fry frīg•ō -ere frīxi fríctus

frying pan sartág•ō -inis *f*

fuel mātéri•a -ae *f* prōpulsória

full (of) plēn•us -a -um (+ *abl* or *gen*); **full moon** plēnilūni•um -ī *n*, plēna lūn•a -ae *f*

full-grown adúlt•us -a -um

full-length (*dress*) tālār•is -is -e

fully *adv* fúnditus

fun ioc•us -ī *m*; **he always makes fun of me** (*or pokes fun at me*) iste mē semper ēlūdít (*or inrídét*); **she said it for fun** id per iocum dīxit; **it's no fun if you ...** nōn iūcúndum est sī tū ...; **it was pure fun** hilária mera erat; **have fun** sē oblectáre

function *s* (*gram*) poténti•a -ae *f*

funeral fūn•us -eris *n*; **attend** (*or go to*) a funeral in fūnus veníre

funnel infundíbul•um -ī *n*

funny iocós•us -a -um, rídícūl•us -a -um; (*humorous*) fēstív•us -a -um

fur coat amícūl•um -ī *n* pellícium

fur jacket iacc•a -ae *f* pellícia

furlough comméat•us -ūs *m*; **be on furlough** in comméatū esse; **end of the furlough** comméatūs di•ēs -ēī *m*; **get a furlough** comméatum impetráre

furnish a home (*an apartment*) domum (*diaétam*) supelléctile ínstru•ō -ere ínstrúxī ínstrúctus

furniture supéll•ex -éctilis *f*; **piece of furniture** supelléctilis par•s -tis *f*

future futúr•a -órum *npl*, temp•us -oris *n* futúrum; **for the future** in pósterum; **in the future** posthāc

G

gale procéll•a -ae *f*

gallon gall•on -ónis *m*

gallop curs·us -ūs *m* citātus

gallop *intr* quadrupedāre

gamble *tr* **gamble away** in āleā per·dō
-dere -didī -ditus **||** *intr* āleā lūdere

gambler lūs·or -ōris *m*, aleā·tor -tōris *m*,
aleātr·īx -īcis *f*

game (*play*) lūd·us -ī *m*, lūs·us -ūs *m*;
(*prey*) praed·a -ae *f*, vēnāti·ō -ōnis *f*;
play a game lūsum lūdere

game show spectācul·um -ī *n* lūsōrium

gang man·us -ūs *f*, grex, gregis *m*

gangster, gang member praed·ō -ōnis
m gregālis

garage autocīnētī (autocīnētōrum)
receptācul·um -ī *n*; (*repair garage*)
officīn·a -ae *f* reparātōria

garbage in, garbage out (*comput*) ex
quisquīlis fiunt quisquīliae

garden hort·us -ī *m* rūsticus; **vegetable**
garden hortus (h)olītōrius

garden hose tūbul·us -ī *m* hōrticus

gardener hortulān·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

garlic āli·um -ī *n*, ālli·um -ī *n*

garrison praesīdi·um -ī *n*

garter perīscelis, periscēlidis *f*

gas benzīn·um -ī *n*, gāsi·um -ī *n*; **get**
gas benzīnum comparāre; **step on**
the gas pedāle benzīnārium dēprim·ō
-ere dēprēssī; **step on the gas!** (*fig*)
matūrā (*pl*: matūrāte)

gas pedal pedāl·e -is *n* benzīnārium

gas pump āntli·a -ae *f* benzīnāria

gas station stāti·ō -ōnis *f* benzīnāria

gas stove fōcul·us -ī *m* gāseus

gas tank immissāri·um -ī *n* benzīnārium

gate port·a -ae *f*; (*at airport*) ādit·us -ūs
m

gather *tr* cog·ō -ere coēgī coāctus **||** *intr*
cōngreg·or -ārī -ātus sum, convenīre

gearshift iūnci·ō -ōnis *f* vēlōcītātum

gee! hercle! *or* édepol!

geez! eu édepol! *or* eu hércle!

gender *s* gen·us -eris *n*

general dux, ducis *m*, imperāt·or -ōris *m*

general: in general ferē, vulgō

generally plērúmque

general store pantopōli·um -ī *n*

generosity liberālīt·ās -ātis *f*

generous benēfic·us -a -um, liberāl·is
-is -e

genitals genitāl·ia -ium *npl*; (*female*)
mulieb·ia -ium *npl*

genitive *s* genitīv·us -ī *m*, cās·us -ūs *m*
genitīvus

gentle clēm·ēns -ēntis, mīt·is -is -e

geography geōgrāphi·a -ae *f*

German *adj* Germānic·us -a -um

German *s* Germān·us -ī *m*, Germān·a
-ae *f*

Germany Germāni·a -ae *f*

gerund *s* gerūndi·um -ī *n*

gerundive *s* gerundīv·um -ī *n*

get *tr* (*to acquire*) nancisc·or -ī nactus
sum; (*to receive*) accipere; (*by*
asking) impetrāre; (*by purchase*)
parāre, comparāre; (*understand*)
tēn·eō -ēre -uī; **get back** rēpet·ō -ere
-īvī -ītus; recīp·iō -ere recēpī
recēptus; **get out** (*bring forth*)
prōm·ō -ere -psī -ptus; **get (the**
business) over and done with
(negōtium) absolv·ō -ere -ī absolūtus;
I can't get him to talk nōn queō
orāre ut loquātur; **now get this** nunc
cognōsce rem **||** *intr* (*become*) fiō
fierī factus sum; **get along with**

concorditer congru·ō -ere -uī cum (+ *abl*); **get along well with each other** (or **one another**) concorditer inter sē congruere; **I get along well with them** bene mihi cōvenit cum illīs; **get away** (*escape*) effūg·iō -ere effūgī effūgitūrus; **get anywhere** (*accomplish s.th.*) āliquid cōsequ·or -ī cōsecūtus sum; **get carried away by or with** ēfferor efferrī ēlātus sum (+ *abl*); **get even with s.o. for** ulcisc·or -ī ultus sum āliquem quod (+ *indic*); **get off** (*a bus, plane, ship, train*) ēgrēdior ēgredi ēgrēssus sum dē (+ *abl*); **get on** (*a bus, plane, ship, train*) īncēnd·ō -ere -ī in (+ *acc*); **get out of my way!** dē viā meā dēcēde (*pl*: dēcēdite!); **get over** (*grief, anger, etc.*) superāre; **get rid of: I want to get rid of that pest** istum molēstum āmolīrī volō; **get somewhere** āliquid cōsequ·or -ī cōsecūtus sum; **get to** (*a place*) pervēn·iō -īre pervēnī pervēntum ad or in (+ *acc*); **get up** (*rise*) surg·ō -ere surrēxī; (*said of several*) cōsurgere

ghost umbr·a -ae *f*; **give up the ghost** ānimam ēbūll·iō -īre

Gibraltar Calp·ē -ēs *f*; **strait of Gibraltar** Gādītānum frēt·um -ī *n*

gift dōn·um -ī *n*, mūn·us -eris *n*, mūnūscul·um -ī *n*; **natural gift** dōs, dōtis *m* (nātūrae)

gifted ingeniós·us -a -um

gills brānchi·ae -ārum *mpl*

gin vīn·um -ī *n* iūnīperum

gingerbread līb·um -ī *n* mellītum

giraffe camēlopārdal·is -is *f*

girdle stropp·ī -ōrum *mpl*

girlfriend amīcul·a -ae *f*

gist: the gist of what he said was this: ... hanc in sentēntiam dixit: ...; **this**

is the gist of my advice haec praecēptī meī summa est

give *tr* dō dare dedī datus; (*as a gift*) dōnāre; **give it here!** cedo (*pl*: cettē)! [*an old imperative; can take a direct object*]; **give it to 'em!** ādhibē! (*pl*: adhībete!); **give the plural form of gaudium** dā (*or* dīc) figūram plūrālem “gaudium” nōminis

glad laet·us -a -um; **be glad** laet·or -āri -ātus sum; **I am glad to hear that** libēnter aūdīō (*w. acc + inf*)

gladly libēnter

glass (*for drinking*) pōcul·um -ī *n* vītreum; hýal·us -ī *m*; **glasses** (*eyeglasses*) perspicīll·a -ōrum *npl*; **wear glasses** perspicīllis ūt·or -ī ūsus sum; **wine glass** hýalus vinārius

glider anemóplan·um -ī *n*, vélvol·um -ī *n*

glisten nít·eō -ēre -uī

gloat over exsultāre (+ *abl*)

globe glob·us -ī *m* terrárum

gloom maestīti·a -ae *f*

gloomy maést·us -a -um

glove digitābul·um -ī *n*

glue glūt·en -inis *n*

glue glūtīnāre; **glue together** congltūtīnāre

glued: I'm glued to my books in librīs haēr·eō -ēre haesī

glum maest·us -a -um, trist·is -is -e; **why so glum?** quid tū es tam tristis?

glutton hēllu·ō -ōnis *m*; **be a glutton** hēllu·or -āri

gluttonous ed·āx -ācis

gluttony edācit·ās -ātis *f*

gnat cul·ex -icis *m*

go eō ire īvī or īi itum, sē āgere; **go and see whether he has come home or not** abī, vīse redierītne an nōndum domum; **go around** (of a rumor) pervagārī; **go by** (to pass) praetēr·eō -īre -īvī; (the rules) servāre; **go down** (fever) conquiēscit -ere conquiēvit; (swelling) sē summīttit -ere summīsit; (prices) laxārī; (sun) occidere; (ship) merg·or -ī mersus sum; **go for** (fetch a person) addūc·ō -ere addūxī addūctus; (fetch a thing) ādferō adfērre āttulī; **at what price do these items go for?** quibus prētiis hae mercēs vēneunt?; **I don't go for** (don't like) nīl mor·or -ārī -ātus sum (+ acc); **I don't go in for sports** lūdīs [dat] nōn stūd·eō -ēre -uī; **go into a matter** rem īneō īnīre īnīi or īnīvī; **go on** prōcēd·ō -ere prōcēssī; **go on!** perge (pl: pērgite) porrō!; **go to bed** dormītum (or cūbitum) [supine] eō ire īi or īvī itum; **go to see** vīs·ō -ere -ī; **go to the aid of** succurr·ō -ere -ī (+ dat); **go on: what's going on?** quid negōtī est? or quid āgitur?; **what's going on here?** quid reī hīc est?; **go well: things are going fairly well** āgitur satis; **please, let me go!** mitte mē sīs!

goal port·a -ae f; **score a goal** (in soccer) follem in portam pede pulsāre

goal keeper portāri·us -ī m, portāri·a -ae f

goal line calx, calcis f, crēt·a -ae f

goal post pāl·us -ī m portae

goat cap·er -rī m, capr·a -ae f; **goats** bleat caprī bālant

God bless you! tibi dī bene fāciant; (to s.o. sneezing) salvē! or salūtem!

going: good going! bene factum!

gold, golden aūre·us -a -um

goldfish híppur·us -ī m

goldmine aurīfodīn·a -ae f

golf pilamálle·us -ī m; **play golf** pilamálleō lūdere (see Chapter V)

golf club clāv·a -ae f; (driver) clāva agitātória; (iron) clāva férrea

golf course pilamálleī camp·us -ī m

golfer pilamálleī lūs·or -ōris m, lūstr·īx -īcis f

golf green āre·a -ae f víridis

golf hole scrobícul·us -ī m

golf tee grūmul·us -ī m

goner: geez, I'm a goner pérīi hercle; hercle, nullus (-a) sum

good adj (also morally) bon·us -a -um; (esp. moral) prob·us -a -um; (advice) rēct·us -a -um; (weather) serēn·us -a -um; **be good for** prōsum prōdesse prōfui prōfutūrus (+ dat); **good for you!** (said in praise) macte virtūte estō!; **good, good!** euge, euge!; **good job!** bene (or rēctē) factum!; **good Lord!** O dī bonī!; **good luck to you!** tibi fēlīciter!; **good thinking!** bene putās!; **how long is that good for?** quam diū valēbit?; **you're a good fellow** frūgī [indecl] es; **very good!** (when agreeing with s.o.) óptimē vērō!

good s: do s.o. good ālicui prōsum prōdesse prōfui prōfutūrus

good and proper plānē et probē

goodbye valē (pl: valēte); bene valē (pl: bene valēte); **goodbye and good luck** bene valē et bene tibi sit

good-for-nothing adj nēquam [indecl]

good-for-nothing s: be a good-for-nothing nihil hómīnis esse

good-hearted benévol·ēns -éntis, benévol·us -a -um

good-natured fácil·is -is -e

goodness (*integrity, good behavior*)
bónit·ās -ātis *f*

goodwill benevolénti·a -ae *f*

goose ans·er -eris *m*; **geese cackle**
ánserēs gíngriunt (*see bird*)

gossip *intr* gárr·iō -íre

gossip *s* (*talk*) rŭm·or -óris *m* (*esp. pl.*);
(*person*) fāmigerá·tor -tóris *m* (·trīx
-trícis *f*)

govern (*a province*) praesíd·eō -ére
praesēdī (+ *acc or dat*); **govern the**
country rem públicam gubernáre

government régim·en -inis *n*; rēs *f*
pública (*gen: reī públicae*) [*also*
written as one word]

governor praes·es -idis *mf*, guberná·tor
-tóris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*); (*of a minor*
Roman province) prōcūrát·or -óris *m*

gown táláris vest·is -is *f*; (*Roman*) stol·a
-ae *f*

grade *s* grad·us -ūs *m*, class·is -is *f*;
(*mark or letter for performance*)
not·a -ae *f*

grade *tr* (*papers*) notáre; (*evaluate*
student's work) aestimáre

graduate *intr* diplóma adípisc·or -ī
adéptus sum, gradūs suscíp·iō -ere
suscépī

graduate *s* graduát·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

graft ámbit·us -ūs *m*

grain frŭmént·um -ī *n*; (*a grain*)
grān·um -ī *n*; **with a grain of salt**
cum grānō salis

grammar *s* grammátic·a -ae *f*, ar·s -tis *f*
grammática; (*book*) ars, artis *f*

grandchild nep·ōs -ótis *m*, nept·is -is *f*

granddaughter nept·is -is *f*

grandfather av·us -ī *m*

grandmother ávi·a -ae *f*

grand piano clāvicórdi·um -ī *n* álifórme

grandson nep·ōs -ótis *m*

granted estō; **granted, he himself is**
nothing estō, ipse nihil est

grape ūv·a -ae *f*; **a bunch of grapes** ūva

grapevine vīt·is -is *f*

grasshopper grill·us -ī *m*; **grasshoppers**
chirp grillī fritínniunt

grateful: I am deeply grateful to you
tibi grátiam hábeō maxímam

gratis grātis

grave *adj* grav·is -is -e

grave *s* sepúlcr·um -ī *n*

gravy iūs, iūris *n*

gravy bowl váscul·um -ī *n* iūris

grease ung·ō (unguō) úngere ūnxī
ūnctus

grease job ūncti·ō -ónis *f* autocínēti

great magn·us -a -um; **that's great!**
bene hercle factum!

great! Eu!; papae! (*expression of*
surprise and delight)

greater mǎi·or -or -us

greatest máxim·us -a -um

great-grandfather próav·us -ī *m*

great-grandmother proávi·a -ae *f*

great-grandson prónep·ōs -ótis *m*

great-uncle (*mother's side*) avúncul·us
-ī *m* mǎior; (*father's side*) pátru·us -ī
m mǎior

Greece Graéci·a -ae *f*

greed avāríti·a -ae *f*

greedy avárus -a -um; **greedy for** avárus
(+ *gen*)

Greek *adj* Graec·us -a -um

Greek *s* Graec·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); **know**
(**speak, write**) **Greek** Graecē scīre
(loquī, scrībere)

green vírid·is -is -e; (*unripe*) crūd·us -a
-um

green pepper piperít·is -idis *f*

gregarious (*sociable*) congregábil·is -is
-e

grief maer·or -óris *m*; **feel grief**
condolēsc·ō -ere condólui

grill *s* crátícul·a -ae *f*

grill *tr* super crátículam assáre

groan *s* gémit·us -ūs *m*

groan *intr* gem·ō -ere -uī -itum

grocer macellári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

groceries obsóni·a -órum *npl*, (*or*)
obsóni·um -ī *n*

grocery store macéll·um -ī *n*, tabérn·a
-ae *f* alimentária

groin ingu·en -inis *n*

ground beef búbul·a -ae *f* concísa

ground floor pedeplán·a -órum *npl*

grow *intr* grow old senēsc·ō -ere sénuī;
grow up iuvenēsc·ō -ere iúvenī

growl (*of a dog*) ring·or -ī rictus sum

grown-up *adj* adúlt·us -a -um

grumble increpáre

grumbling increpáti·ō -ónis *f*

grunt *intr* (*of a pig, bear*) grúnn·iō -íre
-ívi or -iī -ítum

grunt *s* (*of a pig, bear*) grunnít·us -ūs *m*

guard *s* cust·ōs -ódis *mf*

guard *tr* custód·iō -íre -ívi or -iī -ítus

guest hosp·ēs -itis *mf*

guest room hospíti·um -ī *n*

guidance counselor cōnsiliát·or -óris *m*
académicus, cōnsiliátr·īx -ícis *f*
académica

guide *s* dux, ducis *mf*

guide *tr* dūc·ō -ere dūxī ductus

guidebook lib·er -rī *m* periēgéticus

guilty re·us -a -um, sōn·s -tis; **be found**
guilty nōxius dñiudicārī; **be guilty** in
culpā esse; **guilty of** nōxi·us -a -um
(+ *abl or gen*); **punish the guilty**
poenam dē sōntibus éxig·ō -ere exégī
exáctus; **the guilty one** sōn·s -tis *mf*

guitar cíthar·a -ae *f* Hispánica

gulf sin·us -ūs *m*

gullible crédul·us -a -um

gum (*of the mouth*) gingí·v·a -ae *f*;
(*chewing gum*) cumm·is -is *f*
masticábilis

gun sclopét·um -ī *n*; **fire a gun**
sclopētáre

gym gymnási·um -ī *n* (*see Chapter V*)

gym instructor exercitát·or -óris *m*,
exercitátr·īx -ícis *f*

gymnasium gymnási·um -ī *n*

gymnastic gymnástic·us -a -um

gym shoes cálce·ī -órum *mpl* gýmnici

H

ha-ha-ha! hahahae!

habit cōnsuetúd·ō -inis *f*

hacker plagiári·us -ī (*or* effrāctári·us -ī)
m electrónicus

haddock gad·us -ī *m*

hail *impers v* grándin·at -áre

hail *s* grand·ō -inis *f*

hailstorm grándin·ēs -um *fpl*

hair (*a single hair or hair collectively*)
capíll·us -ī *m*; (*hair in locks*) crīn·is

-is *m*; com·a *ae f*; (*long, flowing hair*) caesári·ēs -ēī *f*; **layer the hair** comam in gradūs frang·ō -ere frēgī frāctus; **long hair** (*left uncut*) capíllī prōmíssī; **split hairs** cavillári

hairbrush pēnicul·us -ī *m* comātórius

haircut tōns·us -ūs *m*, tōnsúr·a -ae *f*; **get a haircut** fácere ut capillus tondeātur

hairdo cōmpt·us -ūs *m*

hairdresser ōrnátr·īx -ícis *f*, tónstr·īx -ícis *f*

hair drier favōni·us -ī *m*

hairpin ac·us -ūs *f* comātória

hair style cōmpt·us -ūs *m*

hale and hearty salv·us et válid·us -a -um

half-time (*sports*) dīmídium temp·us -oris *n*

hall (*large room*) oec·us -ī *m*

hallway ambulácr·um -ī *n*

halter capístr·um -ī *n*

ham pern·a -ae *f*; **smoked ham** perna fūmósa

hamburger búbul·a -ae *f* concísa

hammer málle·us -ī *m*

ham sandwich pastíll·um -ī *n* perna fartum

hamstring popl·es -itis *m*

hand *s* man·us -ūs *f*; (*of a clock*) ind·ex -icis *m*; **have one's hands full** sátag·ō -ere satégī; **hands off!** aufer manūs!; **on the other hand** contrā; **sit on one's hands** (*doing nothing*) compréssīs mánibus séd·eō -ére sēdī

hand *tr* hand in trā·dō -dere -didī -ditus; **hand me that food** pórrige mihi illum cibum; **hand it over!** cedo (*pl: cete*)! [*an old imperative; can take a direct object*]; **hand out**

distríbu·ō -ere -ī distribútus; **hand out the papers** chartās distribúere

handbag bulg·a -ae *f*; (*of leather*) pérul·a -ae *f* coriácea

hand brake sufflám·en -inis *n* manuále

handcuff *tr* mánicās iníc·iō -ere iniécī iniéctus (+ *dat*)

handcuffs *spl* mánic·ae -árūm *fpl*

handkerchief mūcínni·um -ī *n*, sūdári·um -ī *n*

handle *s* manúbri·um -ī *n*

handle *tr* tractáre

handlebars manúbri·um -ī *n*

hand luggage sarcínul·ae -árūm *fpl* manuálēs

handsome pulch·er -ra -rum, speciós·us -a -um

handwriting chīrógraph·um -ī *n*

hang; hang around with frequēns adesse únā cum (+ *abl*); **hang down** dépénd·eō -ére -ī; **hang out with** mor·or -ārī -átus sum cum (+ *abl*); **you can just go and hang yourself!** ī dírecte in máximam malam crúcem!

hangar receptácul·um -ī *n* aēróplanī

happen fiō fierī factus sum, áccid·ō -ere -ī; **happen to** contíng·ō -ere cóntigī (+ *dat*); **I just happened to spot him** forte eum cōspéxī; **what happened?** quid factum est?

happiness beātítúd·ō -inis *f*

happy beát·us -a -um, laet·us -a -um

harbor port·us -ūs *m*

hard (*to the touch*) dūr·us -a -um; (*difficult*) diffícil·is -is -e (*with abl of the supine*); **hard on** inimíc·us -a -um (+ *dat*), dūr·us -a -um in (+ *acc*); **hard work** op·us -eris *n* árduum; **hard to please** diffícil·is -is -e; **he was hard on me** in mē dūrus erat;

it's hard to do, but I'll try just the same difficile factū est, sed conābor nīhilō sētius; **take this hard** hoc dūrum accipere, hoc aegrē ferō ferre tulī

hardback or hardcover book lib·er -rī
m linō contēctus

hard drive (*comput*) dūra stāti·ō -ōnis *f*

hardware ferrāmēt·a -ōrum *npl*;
(*comput*) apparāt·us -ūs *m*
computātrālis

hardware store tabérn·a -ae *f* ferrāria

hard-working labōriōs·us -a -um

harmonica harmōnic·a -ae *f* īnflātil·is

harp harp·a -ae *f*; **play the harp** harpā lūdere

harp on the same theme cantilēnam eāndem can·ō -ere cēcinī

harsh sevēr·us -a -um; **harsh toward** dūr·us -a -um in (+ *acc*)

harshness dūrīti·a -ae *f*

harvest *s* (*reaping*) mess·is -is *f*; (*the crops themselves*) prōvēnt·us -ūs *m*

harvest *tr* met·ō -ere messuī mēssus

hat pétas·us -ī *m* (*with broad brim*)

hate *s* ódi·um -ī *n*

hate *tr* ōdī ōdisse (*defect v*)

hateful ōdiōs·us -a -um

hatred (of, toward) ódi·um -ī *n* (in + *acc*)

haughty ēlāt·us -a -um, supérb·us -a -um

haul off to prison rāp·iō -ere -uī -tus in cárcerem

have (*possess*) háb·eō -ēre -uī -itus;
(*e.g., dinner*) sūm·ō -ere -psī -ptus;
(*a sickness*) labōrāre (+ *abl*); **have a tough time of it** valdē labōrāre; **have it in for s.o.** álicui perículum

dēnuntiāre; **have it your way!** estō ut lubet!; **have to do: what do you have to do with her?** quid reī tibi est cum illā?; **have to say: this I have to say** haec hábeō dīcere.

hawk accípi·ter -tris *m*; **hawks caw** accípitrēs crōcitant (*see bird*)

hay fēn·um -ī *n*; **make hay** fēnum sec·ō -āre -uī -tus; **make hay while the sun shines!** occāsiónem amplēctere!; carpe diem!

hayloft fēnīl·ia -ium *npl*

hazelnut avellán·a -ae *f*

head *s* cap·ut -itis *n*; **back of the head** occipíti·um -ī *n*; **be a head taller than** tōtō vértice suprā (+ *acc*) esse; **come into one's head** in buccam venīre [*lit: come into one's cheek*]; **from head to foot** ā cápite ūsque ad calcem; **head of state** rēct·or -ōris *m* cívitatís; **put heads together** cápita cónferō cónfēre cóntulī; **top of the head** vert·ex -icis *m*

head *tr* (*a committee, etc.*) prae·sum -esse -fuī (+ *dat*) **ll intr head east** ad oriēntem tend·ō -ere tetēndī; **head for** pet·ō -ere -fvī -ftus

head-first prae·ceps -cípitis

heading titul·us -ī *m*

headlight (autocínēti) luminár·e -is *n*; **turn on (turn off) the bright (dim) lights** lūminária praecandētia (candētia) accēnd·ō -ere -ī (exstingu·ō -ere exstínxi)

headmaster scholae rēct·or -ōris *m*

headmistress scholae rēctr·ix -ícis *f*

headquarters (*mil*) praetóri·um -ī *n*; (*of a business*) sēd·ēs -is *f*

headway: make headway prōfic·iō -ere prōfēcī; **make no headway** nihil prōficere; **we are making some headway, I hope** ut spērō,

prōficimus aliquantum

heal *tr* sãnāre || *intr* sãnēsc·ō -ere

health (*good or bad*) valētūd·ō -inis *f*;
bad health advērsa (*or mala, gravis, infirma*) valētūdō; **bad health suddenly hit me** mala valētūdō mē repēntē invāsīt; **for reasons of bad health** valētūdinis causā; **good health** bona (*or firma, cōmmoda, prōspera*) valētūdō; **here's to your health!** tibi salūtem propīnō!; bene tibi!; **in sound health** vālīd·us -a -um

healthy sãn·us -a -um, salv·us -a -um

hear aūd·iō -īre -īvī *or* -īī -ītus; (*to find out about*) cognōsc·ō -ere cognōvī cōgnitus

hearing (*sense*) audīt·us -ūs *m*; (*legal*) cognīti·ō -ōnis *f*; **hold a hearing** cognitiōnem habēre

heart cor, cordis *n*; **from the heart** ex animō; **heart and soul** tōtō pēctore; **my heart was in my throat** ánima mihi in nāsō erat [*lit: my breath was in my nose*]; **take to heart** cordī habēre

heartache cūr·a -ae *f*, cordóli·um -ī *n*

heaven: for heaven's sake óbsecrō [*lit: I pray*]; **heavens!** édepol! **heavens above!** O dī immortālēs!; **heaven forbid!** dī mélius faxint!; **I'm in seventh heaven** dígitō caelum attíngō; **in heaven's name!** per fortúnās!

heck: give s.o. heck áliquem verbīs malīs obiūrgāre; **heck no!** mínimē vērō hercle!; **who the heck are they?** quī, malum, istī sunt?

heehaw *intr* rud·ō -ere -īvī -ītum

heehaw *s* rudīt·us -ūs *m*

heel cal·x -cis *f*; (*of a shoe*) fulmént·um -ī *n*; (*slang*) nequam hom·ō -inis *mf*;

take to one's heels sē conícere in pedēs

heifer iuvēnc·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

height: to be of average height statūrā prope iūstā esse

helicopter helicópter·um -ī *n*; **be taken by helicopter to** per helicópterum trāns·vehor -vehī -véctus sum; **fly a helicopter** helicópterum gubernāre; **fly in a helicopter** helicópterō vehor vehī vectus sum

hell: go to hell! ī (*pl: ite*) in malam crucem!; **I'm going to catch hell** habébō convícium; **where the hell are you?** úbinam, malum, es?

hello! salvē! (*pl: salvēte*)!; salvus (-a) sīs! (*pl: salvī (-ae) sītis*)!; **hello there!** eho istic!; **Terentia says hello to you** Terentia tibi salūtem dīcit

helmet (*of leather*) gále·a -ae *f*; (*of metal*) cass·is -idis *f*

help *s* auxili·um -ī *n*

help *tr* iuv·ō -āre iūvī iūtus, succúr·ō -ere -ī succúrsum (+ *dat*)

helpless in·ops -opis

helplessness inópi·a -ae *f*

hem limb·us -ī *m*

hem interj ehem!

hen gallín·a -ae *f* (*see bird*)

henpecked uxórius

herd (*of cattle, swine*) grex, gregis *m*; (*of oxen and large animals*) armént·um -ī *n*

here hīc; **here and now** dēpraesentiárum [*adv*]; **here I am!** Ecce mē! **here with it!** cedo! (*pl: cettē!*) (*can take an accusative object, e.g.: Here with that book!* cedo istum librum!)

heroin heroín·um -ī *n*; **use heroin** heroínō ūtor ūtī ūsus sum

hey heus!; **hey you, I'm talking to you!**
heus tū, tibi ego dīcō!

hi! salvē (*pl.* salvēte)

hide *s* cōri·um -ī *n*; **be after s.o.'s hide**
cōrium alicūius pet·ō -ere petīvī; **risk**
one's own hide cōriō suō lūdere;
save one's own hide cōrium servāre

high *adj* alt·us -a -um; (*rank*) ampl·us -a
-um; (*opinion, price*) magn·us -a
-um; (*fever*) ārd·ēns -ēntis; (*note*)
acūt·us -a -um ; (*on alcohol, drugs*)
ēbri·us -a -um; **be high on drugs** ā
medicāmētīs psychotrōpicīs
inebriāre; **high blood pressure**
hypertōni·a -ae *f*

high *adv* **to aim high** magnās rēs
āppet·ō -ere -īvī

high jump salt·us -ūs *m* in altum

highrise (building) multizōni·um -ī *n*

high school schol·a -ae *f* supērior

highway strāt·a -ae *f* autocinētica

hijack *tr* vī abdūcere

hijacking abdūcti·ō -ōnis *f* āeria

hike *intr* ambulāre

hike *s* ambulāti·ō -ōnis *f*

hill coll·is -is *m*

hilly clīvōs·us -a -um

hip cox·a -ae *f*, coxēnd·ix -icis *f*

hippie anticōnformist·a -ae *m* (·ria
-riae *f*)

hippopotamus hippopotam·us -ī *m*

hiss *intr* sībilāre

hiss *s* sībil·us -ī *m*

historian histōric·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

history histōri·a -ae *f*

hit *s* (*in baseball*) puls·us -ūs *m*

hit *tr* (*to strike*) īc·ō -ere -ī ictus; (*a*
baseball) pulsāre; **did you hit it off**

with them? concordābāsne cum
illis?; **hit s.o. for a loan** ferīre
āliquem mūtuō argētō

hmmm *interj* hem

hoarse rauc·us -a -um

hockey lūd·us -ī *m* hoccēius, alsülégi·a
-ae *f*; **field hockey** lūdus hoccēius
campēstris; **ice hockey** lūdus
hoccēius glaciālis; **play hockey**
hoccēiō (*or* alsülégiā) lūdere (*see*
Chapter V)

hockey player alsūlegāri·us -ī *m* (·a
-ae *f*)

hockey puck disc·us -ī *m*

hockey stick ped·um -ī *n*, fērul·a -ae *f*
repānda

hog sūs, suis *mf*; **hogs oink** sūēs
grūnniunt

hogwash: that's hogwash! quisquīlia!

hold *tr* tēn·eō -ēre -uī -tus; (*contain*)
cāp·iō -ere cēpī; (*an office*) ger·ō -ere
gessī gestus; (*a meeting*) habēre;
hold it! (*stop!*) astā!; **hold it please!**
manē ōbsécro!; **hold s.o. in high**
(highest) esteem āliquem magnī
(māximī) fācere; **hold up** (*detain*)
dētīn·eō -ēre -uī, impēd·iō -īre -īvī
-ītus; **what held you up?** quid tē
impedīvit? **||** *intr* **hold out** dūrāre

hole in the wall (*shabby lodgings*)
stābul·um -ī *n*

holiday fēri·ae -ārum *fpl*; (*from school*)
di·ēs -ēī *m* fēriātus; **today is a**
holiday hōdiē fēriās āgimus

holiness sānctit·ās -ātis *f*

holy sānct·us -a -um

home dom·us -ūs *f*; (*direction*) domum;
at home domī; **at your home** domī
tuaē, apud tē; **from home** domō; **to**
my home ad mē

home appliance īnstrūment·um -ī *n*
domesticum ēlēctricum; **home**
appliances ēlēctrica domūs ūtēnsīl·ia
-ium *npl*

home front: on the home front and on
the war front domī et mīlītiaē

homely īnspēcīōs·us -a -um

home page (*comput*) pāgin·a -ae *f*
domēstica

home plate bas·is -is *f* summa (*or*
domēstica)

home run circūit·us -ūs *m* básium; **hit a**
home run circūitum básium fácere

homesick: be homesick ex dēsīdēriō
labōrāre; **I am homesick for** mē
dēsīdērium tenet (+ *gen*)

homework pēns·um -ī *n* domēsticum;
(*written*) praescrīpt·um -ī *n*
domēsticum

homicide homicīdi·um -ī *n*

honest prob·us -a -um; (*speaking the*
truth) vēr·āx -ācis; **honest to God**
prō deum fidem

honestly: tell me honestly dīc bonā fide

honey mel, mellis *n*; (*terms of*
endearment) melīll·a -ae *f*, mel *n*,
mélcul·um -ī *n*

honor honōrāre

honorable honést·us -a -um

honorably honéstē

hood plóxen·um -ī *n*

hoodlum grassát·or -ōris *m*

hoof úngul·a -ae *f*

hooky: play hooky ínsciīs paréntibus ā
scholā abesse

hoot *intr* (*of owls*) būbulāre

hoot *s* **I don't give a hoot about him**
eum floccī nōn faciō

hope *intr* spērāre; **hope that** spērāre (+
acc & inf)

hope *s* spēs, speī *f*; **give up hope**
dēspērāre

hopefully ut spērō [*as I hope*]

hopeless dēspērāt·us -a -um

hopper lābēll·um -ī *n* íntimum, sell·a
-ae *f* familiárica

horizontal bar ferr·um -ī *n* trānsvērsum

hormone hormón·um -ī *n*

horn búcin·a -ae *f*; **blow the horn**
búcinā clang·ō -ere

hornet crābr·ō -ónis *m*

horrible horríbil·is -is -e

hors d'euveres prōmúls·is -idis *f*

horse equ·us -ī *m*

horsefly tabán·us -ī *m*; **horseflies buzz**
tabānī bómbilant

hose (*for watering*) túbul·us -ī *m*;
rubber hose túbulus cúmmeus

hospital valētūdīnāri·um -ī *n*

hostage obs·es -idis *mf*

hostess hóspt·a -ae *f*

hot (*of a person, sun, water, bath, day*)
cálid·us -a -um (*opp*: frígīd·us -a
-um); (*boiling hot*) fērvīd·us -a -um;
(*sultry*) aestuós·us -a -um; (*spicey*)
acer, acris, acre; **be hot** cál·eō -ére
-uī; **become hot** calēsc·ō -ere; **be**
uncomfortably hot aestuāre; **hot**
weather aest·us -ūs *m*; **it is hot**
today hódīē calétur

hot dog hill·a -ae calēns (*gen*: hillae
caléntis) *f*

hot pants brevíssimae brā·cae -ārum *fpl*
fēminīnae

hot-tempered irācúnd·us -a -um

hotel dēversóri·um -ī *n*; **stay at a hotel**
in dēversóriō mor·or -āri -ātus sum

hotel manager dēversórii dīrēc·tor -tōris
m (·trix -trícis f)

hotplate disc·us -ī m coctōrius

hound s.o. (coll) áliquem cōnséct·or -āri
-átus sum

hour hōr·a -ae f; **a half hour** sēmihōr·a
-ae f; **an hour and a half**
sēsquihōr·a -ae f; **a quarter of an**
hour quadr·āns -ántis m hōrae; **every**
hour sīngulīs hōrīs; **from hour to**
hour in hōrās; **three quarters of an**
hour dōdr·āns -ántis m hōrae

hourly in hōrās

house dom·us -ūs f, aed·ēs -ium fpl

house arrest custōdi·a -ae f líbera

how (in what way) quómodo, quō pactō;
(chiefly after verbs of hearing,
telling, etc.) ut (+ subj); (to what
degree) quam; **how are you? (how**
are you doing?) quid agis? (pl: quid
ágitis?); ut valēs? (pl: ut valétis?);
how come? quī fit? or quī istuc?
how far quóusque; **how far is ...**
from quantum distat (or abest) ... ab
(+ abl); **how goes it?** quid fit?; **how**
long quámdiū, quóusque; **how long**
ago? quam prīdem? or quam
dūdum?; **how many** quot [indecl];
how many times quótiēns, quótiēs;
how much quant·us -a -um; **how**
much did you sell it for? quantī hoc
vēnit?; **how much is this?** quantī hoc
cōstat?; **how much does it cost?** id
quantī cōstat?; **how often** quótiēns;
how old are you? quot annōs nāt·us
(-a) es?; **how so?** quid ita?;
(whatever made you say that?)
quīdum?; **how soon?** quam mox?;
how's that? (What did you say?)
quīdum? or quid iam?

however autem

hug compléct·or -ī compléxus sum; **hug**
each other inter sē compléctī

hum intr murmuráre; (of bees)
bombiláre

hum s murm·ur -uris m; (of bees)
bomb·us -ī m

human being hom·ō -inis mf

humane hūmán·us -a -um

humid úmid·us -a -um

humor s festívit·ās -átis f

humor tr humor s.o. álicui mōrem gerō
gérere gessī

humorous fēstív·us -a -um

humorously fēstívē

hump gibb·er -eris m

hunger fam·ēs -is f

hung jury: be acquitted by a hung
jury senténtiis páribus absól·or -ī
absolútus sum

hungry adj ēsúri·ēns -entis

hunt (also go hunting) vēr·or -āri -átus
sum (see Chapter V)

hunting vēr·at·us -ūs m

hunting dog can·is -is m vēr·áticus

hunting gear ínstrúmēt·um -ī n
vēr·atōrium

hurray! euax!

hurricane ingēns procell·a -ae f

hurry intr properáre; **hurry up!** mātúrā!
(pl: mātúrâte!)

hurry s: be in a hurry properáre,
festínáre; **but I'm in a hurry** at
próperō; **what's your hurry?** quid
festínās?

hurt tr nóc·eō -ēre -uī (+ dat) || intr
dól·eō -ēre -uī; **hurt a lot**
vehemēnter dolére

husband marít·us -ī m

hygiene *hygiēn·ē -ēs f*; **practice**

hygiene *hygiēnēn exerc·eō -ēre -uī -itus*

hygienic *hygiēnic·us -a -um*

hypertext *adj* *hypertextuāl·is -is -e*

hypertext *s* *hypertéxt·us -ūs m*

hypocrite *simulát·or -ōris m, simulátr·ix -ícis f*

hypocritical *coáct·us -a -um, simulát·us -a -um*

I

ice *gláci·ēs -ēī f*; **turn to ice** *glaciārī*

ice cream *gélidum crēm·um -ī n*

ice hockey (*see* **hockey**)

ice rink *stádi·ōn -ī n* *glaciále*

ice-skate *intr* *patināre*

iceskate *s* *pátin·us -ī m*

ice-skater *patinát·or -ōris m, patinátr·ix -ícis f*

ice-skating *patināti·ō -ōnis f* (*see* *Chapter V*)

icicle *stíri·a -ae f*

icon (*comput*) *īcōn, íconis f*

icy *glaciál·is -is -e*

idea *cōnsíli·um -ī n, cogníti·ō -ōnis f*;
you're full of ideas *plēnus (-a) cōnsíliū es*

ideal *exémpl·ar -áris n*

identical *idéntic·us -a -um, ídem et pār*

identification *identificáti·ō -ōnis f*

identify *identificāre*

identity *idéntit·ās -átis f*

idiom *figúr·a -ae f, propriét·ās -átis f*
linguae (Latínae or Ánglicae)

idiomatic expressions *quae linguae Latínae (or Ánglicae) própria sunt*

idiot *fátu·us -ī m (·a -ae f)*

if *sī*; **if only** *útinam (+ subj)*

iffy (*slang*) *dúbi·us -a -um*

ignoramus *nesápi·us -ī m, nesápi·a -ae f*

ignorance *īnsciéti·a -ae f*

ignorant *īnscít·us -a -um; (unlearned) indóct·us -a -um*

ill (*used of body and mind*) *ae·ger -gra -rum; (used of body only) aegrót·us -a -um; be ill* *aegrótáre; fall ill* *in morbum íncid·ō incídere íncidī*

ill health (*advérsa*) *valētúd·ō -inis f; for reasons of ill health* *valētúdinis causā*

illiterate *illitterát·us -a -um*

ill-mannered *male mōrát·us -a -um*

illness *morb·us -ī m, (mala) valētúd·ō -inis f; serious illness* *gravis valētúdō*

illogical *absúrd·us -a -um*

ills *mal·a -órum npl*

imagine *imágin·or -áři -átus sum*

immature *immātúr·us -a -um*

immaturity *immátúrit·ās -átis f*

immediately *statim, contínuō, extéplō*

immoderate *immódic·us -a -um*

immodest *impudíc·us -a -um*

impartial *aequ·us -a -um, incorrúpt·us -a -um et ínte·ger -gra -grum*

impatient: be impatient with *íníquō ánimō ferō ferre tulī (+ acc)*

impatiently *íníquō ánimō*

imperative *adj* *imperátív·us -a -um; imperative mood* *mod·us -ī m imperátívus*

imperfect tense *s* *temp·us -oris n praetérítum imperféctum*

imperial *imperiál·is -is -e*

impersonal *adj* impersonāl·is -is -e

impetuous fērvīd·us -a -um

impolite inurbān·us -a -um

importance: it is of the greatest importance to me that ... permāgnī meā īnterest (+ *acc & inf*);

important magn·us -a -um; **consider it important** id magnī aēstimāre; **it is (very) important to me (you) that** magnī (māximē) meā (tuā) īnterest (+ *acc & inf*); **it's not all that important** tantī nōn est

impress commōv·eō -ēre commōvī commōtus

impression: make a deep impression on māximē commōv·eō -ēre commōvī (+ *acc*)

improper īnec·ēns -ēntis

improve *tr* ēmendāre **||** *intr* mel·ior -ior -ius fiō fierī factus sum; (*in studies*) prōfic·iō -ere prōfēcī

improvement prōfēc·us -ūs *m*

imprudent imprūd·ēns -ēntis

impulse ānimī īmpet·us -ūs *m*

in *prep* in (+ *abl*); (*in the writings of*) apud (+ *acc*); **in all** ex tōtō

in *adv* (*motion*) intrō; (*rest or motion*) intus; **is your father in?** estne pater intus?

inappropriate inépt·us -a -um

incisors dentēs *mpl* primōrēs

include contīn·eō -ēre -uī

incorrect vitiōs·us -a -um

incorrectly vitiōsē

increase *tr* aūg·eō -ēre auxī auctus **||** *intr* crēsc·ō -ere crēvī

incredible incrēdībil·is -is -e

indecent īnec·ēns -ēntis

indecisive ambīgu·us -a -um

indeclinable indēclīnābil·is -is -e

indeed profēc·tō, quidem, vērō

indefinite īnfīnīt·us -a -um (*opp*: finītus)

indicate *tr* significāre

indicative indicātīv·us -a -um; **in the indicative mood** modō indicātīvō

indict s.o. āliquem re·um (-am) fācere

indifference frīg·us -oris *n*

indigestion crūdīt·ās -ātis *f*

indignant indignābūd·us -a -um

inept inépt·us -a -um

inexpensive vīl·is -is -e

inexperienced (in) inexpért·us -a -um
(*ab + abl or in + acc or advēsus + acc*)

infamous infām·is -is -e

infancy infānti·a -ae *f*

infant infāns, infāntis *mf*

infantry peditāt·us -ūs *m*

infantryman ped·es -itis *m*

infatuated: be infatuated with s.o.
āliquem efflīctim amāre

infer: I infer from what you say that
... ex verbīs tuīs cōllīgō (+ *acc & inf*)

infinitive s īnfīnītīv·um -ī *n*

infirmary valētudināri·um -ī *n*

inflamm īnflammāre

inflammation īnflammāti·ō -ōnis *f*

inflect *tr* dēclīnāre

inflection s dēclīnāti·ō -ōnis *f*

influence grāti·a -ae *f*; **have a lot of (more, little, no) influence on**
multum (plus, paulum, nihil) posse
apud (+ *acc*)

influential grātiōs·us -a -um

inform: inform s.o. about áliquem
certiōrem fácere dē (+ *abl*)

informant ind·ex -icis *mf*

information indíci·um -ī *n*

ingenious artificiōs·us -a -um

initiative: on my own initiative meā
sponte

injustice iniūstítí·a -ae *f*

ink ātrāmént·um -ī *n*

inland *adj* intéri·or -or -us; **inland seas**
már·ia -ium *npl* interiōra

inland *adv* intus; **towns inland from**
Tarentum óppida per continéntem ā
Taréntō

in-law affīn·is -is *mf*

inn caupón·a -ae *f*

inning (*of baseball*) miss·us -ūs *m*

innkeeper caup·ō -ōnis *m*

innocence innocénti·a -ae *f*

innocent (of) ínnoc·ēns -éntis (+ *gen*)

innumerable innúmer·us -a -um

input (*comput*) (datórum) ínit·us -ūs *m*;
input and output (datórum) ínitus
exitúsque

inquisitive cūriōs·us -a -um

insane ínsán·us -a -um

insanity ínsánit·ās -átis *f*

insect ínséct·um -ī *n*

insensitive dūr·us -a -um

insensitivity dūrítí·a -ae *f*

inside: go inside! ī (*pl: ite*) intus!

insincere ínsincēr·us -a -um

install (*comput*) ínstru·ō -ere ínstrúxī
ínstrúctus

installment pénsi·ō -ōnis *f*; **pay in five**
installments quínque pénsiōnibus
solv·ō -ere -ī solútus

instead of prō (+ *abl*)

instruct ínstitú·ō -ere -ī ínstitútus;
instruct s.o. in s.th. ínstruere
áliquem áliquō

instruction (*teaching*) ínstitúti·ō -ōnis *f*;
instructions praecépt·a -órum *npl*;
(*orders to do something*) mandát·a
-órum *npl*

instructor praecépt·or -óris *m*,
praecéptr·īx -ícis *f*

insurance caúti·ō -ōnis *f*, assēcūrāti·ō
-ōnis *f*; **car insurance** assēcūrātiō
vehiculária; **casualty insurance**
assēcūrātiō indemnitátis; **health**
insurance assēcūrātiō valētudinária;
insurance company societ·ās -átis *f*
vītae cautiōnī exercendae; **life**
insurance prō vītā caútiō, vītae
assēcūrātiō

integrity intégrit·ās -átis *f*

intellect intelléct·us -ūs *m*

intelligence intellegénti·a -ae *f*

intelligent intéllég·ēns -éntis

intend dēstināre; in ánimō esse (+ *dat of*
the subject); **I intended to set out**
straight for home erat mihi in ánimō
rēctā proficiscī domum

intense (*emotions*) grand·is -is -e

intensive pronoun s prōnóm·en -inis *n*
intentiōnis (ut “ipse” **himself**)

intentions: with the best intentions
óptimō ánimō útēns

interchange coniúnci·ō -ōnis *f* viárum

interest s **interest (in)** stúdi·um -ī *n* (+
gen); (*fin*) faen·us -oris *n*, úsúr·a -ae
f; **compound interest** anatocísm·us
-ī *m*; **have an interest in painting**
stúdium pinguéndī habére; **increase**
(**lower**) **interest** úsúram aúg·eō -ēre
auxī (mínu·ō -ere -ī); **lend money at**
interest pecúniā faenóri dare; **rate**

of interest ūsūr·ae -ārum *fpl*; **3 percent (4 percent, 5 percent, 6 percent, 12 percent) interest per annum** quadrāntēs (triētēs, quīncūncēs, sēmīssēs centēsīmae) ūsūrae; **pay interest on** ūsūram pend·o -ere pepēndī (+ *dat*); **simple interest** perpētuum faen·us; **take an interest in something** stūdiō alicūius tenērī

interest *tr* tēn·cō -ēre -uī; **sports don't interest me** lūdī mē nōn tenent

interested: children are interested in games líberī lūdīs tenēntur; **I am interested in music** mūsicae [*dat*] stūdeō; **I am interested in that** id mihi cūrae est; **I am not the least bit interested in the races** circēnsibus nē levīssimē quidem tēneor

interesting (in appearance) speciōs·us -a -um; **that book is interesting** ille liber mē tenet

interfere in sē interpōn·ō -ere interpōsuī (+ *dat*)

interior *adj* intēri·or -or -us

interior *s*: **in the interior** in mediterrāneō, intus; **toward the interior** intus

interjection *s* interiēcti·ō -ōnis *f* (ut “heus tū!” **hey you!**)

international law iūs, iūris *n* gēntium

internet *adj* interrētiāl·is -is -e

internet *s* interrēt·e -is *n*

interrogate interrogāre

interrupt interpellāre; **don't interrupt me!** nōlī (*pl*: nōlīte) mē interpellāre! (*or* mihi óbloquī!)

intersection cōmpit·um -ī *n*, quadrīvi·um -ī *n*

interview collóqui·um -ī *n*
interrogātórium

interviewer interrogā·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trīcis *f*)

intestines intestīn·a -ōrum *npl*

intransitive *adj* intrānsitīv·us -a -um

introduce (*e.g., a custom*) introdūcere; (*a person*) (**to**) trād·ō -ere -idī -itus (+ *dat*)

introductory intrōductóri·us -a -um

invade invād·ō -ere invāsī invāsus in (+ *acc*), cum exércitū ingréd·ior -ī ingrēssus sum

invest collocāre

investigate investigāre

investigator investigā·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trīcis *f*)

investment pecūniae collocāti·ō -ōnis *f*

invite invītāre; (*esp. to dinner*) vocāre

involve implicāre; **be involved in** vers·or -ārī -ātus sum in (+ *abl*)

Ireland Hibérni·a -ae *f*

Irish *adj* Hibérnic·us -a -um

iron *tr* prem·ō -ere pressī pressus, (ferrō) lēvigāre

irregular *adj* inaequāl·is -is -e; **an irregular verb** inaequāle verbum (ut “volō,” **I want**)

irregularly *adv* inaequāliter; **“duo” is irregularly declined** “duo” inaequāliter dēclīnātur

irresponsible inofficiōs·us -a -um

irritable īrācūnd·us -a -um

irritate exasperāre

is est; is that so? itane est?

island ínsul·a -ae *f*

isthmus ísthm·us -ī *m* (*f*)

it id, eius

Italy Itáli·a -ae *f*

itch *intr* prūr·iō -īre; (*fig*) gést·iō -īre;

I'm just itching to géstiō quidem (+ *inf*)

item of merchandise merx, mercis *f*

its eius

J

jacket iacc·a -ae *f*; (*of leather*) iacc·a -ae *f* scórtea

jail carc·er -eris *m*

jailer custōdiári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

jam baccárum conditúr·a -ae *f*; **be in a**

jam in angústiiis vers·or -āri -átus sum

January mēns·is -is *m* Iānuárius; **in January** mēnse Iānuáriō

jaw mal·ae -árum *fpl*

jawbone maxíll·a -ae *f*

jealous ínvīd·us -a -um; **be jealous of** invíd·eō -ēre invídī (+ *dat*)

jealousy invídi·a -ae *f*

jeans brāc·ae -árum *fpl* Genuénsēs

jello sorbíll·um -ī *n* concrétum

jelly cil·on (*also* quil·on) -ī *n*

jerk (*slang*) larv·a -ae *f*

jet plane āēróplan·um -ī *n* pyraulocínéticum

jewel gemm·a -ae *f*

jeweler aúríf·ex -icis *m*

jewelry store gemmári·a -ae *f*

jitters scrúpul·us -ī *m*; **give s.o. the**

jitters álicui scrúpulum íníc·iō -ere iníécī

job (*piece of work*) op·us -eris *n*; (*as a means of livelihood*) quaest·us -ūs *m*;

good job! rēctē factum!; **it's a big**

job but ... magnum opus est sed tamen ...

jog tolútīm cursitāre

joint articul·us -ī *m*

joke *intr* ioc·or -āri -átus sum; **all**

joking aside iocō remótō; **now**

you're joking iocáris nunc tū

joke *s* ioc·us -ī *m*; **as a joke** per iocum

jokingly per iocum *or* inter iocum

jot down annotāre, dēnotāre

journal commentári·ī -órum *mpl* periódicī

journalism diurnária ar·s -tis *f*

journalist diurnári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

joy gaúdi·um -ī *n*; **feel joy** gaúd·eō -ēre gāvísus sum

joystick (*comput*) véctul·us -ī *m*

judge iūd·ex -icis *m*; **sit as judge (hold court)** iūs dícere

judgment iūdící·ūm -ī *n*; **against my better judgment** adversum ingénium meum; **in my judgment** meō iūdícíō

judicial iūdiціаль·is -is -e; **judicial system** ráti·ō -ónis *f* iūdiціальis

judo luct·a -ae *f* iūdóica

juice succ·us -ī *m*

July mēns·is -is *m* Iúlius; **in July** mēnse Iúliō

jump sál·iō -īre -uī *or* -iī; **jump down** dēsílīre; **jump for joy** exsultāre; **jump rope** ad fūnem salīre

June mēns·is -is *m* Iúnus; **in June** mēnse Iúniō

junior iúni·or -óris *m*

junk scrūt·a -órum *npl*

juror iūd·ex -icis *m*

jury cōnslí·um -ī *n*; iúdic·ēs -um *mpl*

just *adj* iúst·us -a -um

just *adv* modo; **just about** (*pretty well, virtually*) propémódum; **just a**

moment ago modo; **just as** cum máximē; **just as I was writing that** cum haec máximē scríberem; **just before** (*an event*) sub (+ *acc*); **just in time** témporī; **just now** modo; **just then** tunc máxime; **just the other day** modo; **just the same** (*anyhow*) tamen *or* níhilō sētius; **just when** cum máximē; **just what?** quidnam?; **just who?** quisnam?

justice iūstítī·a -ae *f*

justly iūstē

jut out *see* **project**

K

kangaroo halmatúr·us -ī *m*

karate luct·a -ae *f* carática

keen-scented sagācíssim·us -a -um

keep (*retain*) tén·eō -ēre -uī -tus; (*confine*) contín·eō -ēre -uī conténtus; **am I keeping you?** num dētíneō tē?; **keep a stiff upper lip!** fac ut ánimō fortī sīs!; **keep this to yourself** haec tū tēcum habétō; **keep your cool!** compēsce mentem!; **keep one's eyes on** óculōs intentāre in (+ *acc*); **what kept you?** quid ténuít quō minus venírēs?

ketchup kétsup·um -ī *n*

key clāv·is -is *m*; (*of a typewriter or computer*) plēctr·um -ī *n*, malléol·us -ī *m*; (*on the keyboard*) malléol·us -ī *m*; **hit the key** malléolum pulsāre; **room key** clāv·is -is *f* conclávis

keyboard (*of a typewriter or computer*) plēctrológi·um -ī *n*, ōrd·ō -inis *m* plēctrórum; (*of a piano or organ*) clāviatúr·a -ae *f*

kick *tr* (*a ball*) pede pulsāre; **kick the bucket** ánimam ebúll·iō -íre -īī

kid *s* (*coll*) frust·um -ī *n* púerī *or* puéllae

kid *tr* lúdere, lūdificāre, ioc·or -ārī -átus sum; **don't kid me** nē mē lūdās; **you're kidding!** lūdis mē!

kidney rēn, rēnis *m*

kidney bean phasél·us -ī *m*(*f*)

kill occíd·ō -ere -ī occísus, necāre; **kill time** tempus fall·ō -ere feféllī; **you're killing me!** mē énicās!

kilometer chilíometr·um -ī *n*

kind *adj* (**to, toward**) benévól·us -a -um (*ergā + acc*)

kind *s* (*type*) gen·us -eris *n*; **what kind of person is ... ?** quālis homō est ...?

kindergarten paedotrophé·um -ī *n*

kind-hearted benévól·us -a -um, benígn·us -a -um

kindness benevoléntia -ae *f*; (*kind deed*) benefíci·um -ī *n*; **show kindness to s.o.** benevoléntiam álicui praest·ō -āre praestítī

kiss *s* óscul·um -ī *n*, suávi·um -ī *n*; (*passionate*) bási·um -ī *n*

kiss *tr* ōsculārī, suáviārī, suávium dare (+ *dat*), básiāre

kitchen culín·a -ae *f*

kitchen knife cul·ter -trī *m* coquínāris

kitchen utensils ínstrumént·a -órum *npl* coquínatória

knapsack saccipéri·um -ī *n* dorsuále

knee gen·ū -ūs *n*

kneecap patéll·a -ae *f*

knife cult·er -rī *m*; (*small knife*) cultéll·us -ī *m*

knock down deíc·iō -ere deíecī deíectus; (*in boxing*) stern·ō -ere strāvī strātus; **knock out** cōnstérnere, prōfligāre

knock it off! parce! (*pl*: párcite!)

know sciō scīre scīvī scītus; (*to be familiar with a person or place*) nōv·ī -isse (*defective verb*); **get to know** nōsc·ō -ere nōvī nōtus; **he thinks he knows better than I do** cēnsēt sē plūs sápere quam mē; **I'm dying to know how you are doing** quid agās, valdē áveō scīre; **know for sure** certum (*or certō*) scīre; **know how to** scīre (+ *inf*); **let me know what you are doing** mē velim certiórem fáciās, quid agās; **let me know where you are** fáciťō ut sciam ubi sīs; **not know** nēsc·iō -íre

knowledge sciēnti·a -ae f; (*acquisition of knowledge*) cogníti·ō -ónis f; **without the knowledge of** clam (+ *abl*); **without your knowledge** clam vōbīs

known nōt·us -a -um; **make known** palam fácere; **well known** nōtíssim·us -a -um

knuckle artícul·us -ī m dígitī

knucklehead bār·ō -ónis m

L

label pittáci·um -ī n

laborer operári·us -ī m, operári·a -ae f

lacrosse lūd·us -ī m lacrossénsis; **play lacrosse** lūdō lacrossénsī lúdere

lacrosse stick (*or crosse*) cróci·a -ae f; **cradle the stick** cróciām agitāre

ladle trüll·a -ae f

lagoon stāgn·um -ī n

lake lac·us -ūs m

lamb agn·us -ī m, agn·a -ae f; (*as food*) agnín·a -ae f; **lambs bleat** agnī bālant

lamp lucérn·a -ae f

land *intr* (*of a ship*) (ad terram) appéll·ō -ere áppulī; (*of a passenger on a*

ship) in terram ēgrédior -ī ēgréssus sum; (*of a plane*) deórsum appéllere; (*of a bird*) (on) ínsíd·ō -ere ínsédī (+ *dat*)

land s terr·a -ae f; (*a piece of land*) ag·er -rī m

landing (*of a plane*) appúls·us -ūs m; (*on stairs*) scālári·um -ī n

landscape regiónis form·a -ae f

language lingu·a -ae f, serm·ō -ónis m; **the Latin language** lingua Latína, sermō Latínus

language lab officín·a -ae f loquēlárīs

lap grémi·um -ī n

laptop (*comput*) computátrul·um -ī n portábile

lark alaúd·a -ae f (*see bird*)

last *adj* últim·us -a -um; (*in line*) novíssim·us -a -um; (*immediately preceding*) próxim·us -a -um; (*adj used where English uses an adv*) novíssim·us -a -um, e.g., **Cicero spoke last** Cícero novíssimus locútus est; **at last** dēmum; **last night** herī vésperī, próximā nocte; **the night before last** superióre nocte

last *intr* dūrāre, perdūrāre

late *adj* sēr·us -a -um

late *adv* sērō; **all too late** immō iam sērō; **too late** sérius; **very late** séríssimē

lately nūper

later pósteā; **a little later** pósteā aliquántō; **postpone till later** díf·ferō -férre dístulī dílátus in áliud tempus

latest: at latest summum; **perhaps tomorrow, at latest the day after that** fortásse crās, summum peréndiē

Latin (*to know, read, teach, speak, understand, write*) Latínē; **are you learning Latin?** discísne Latínē?;

did you forget Latin? *esne oblītus (-a) Latīnē?*; **do you know Latin?** *nōstīne Latīnē?*; **do you know how to speak Latin?** *scīsne Latīnē lóquī?*; **do you read Latin easily?** *legīsne Latīnē fácile?*; **do you speak Latin (fluently)?** *loquerīsne Latīnē (prōfluénter)?*; **do you teach Latin?** *docēsne Latīnē?*; **do you understand Latin?** *intelligīsne Latīnē?*; **first-year Latin** *prīmus Latīnitātis ann·us -ī m*; **since when have you been learning Latin?** *ex quō témpore Latīnē didicistī?*; **where did you study Latin?** *ubi Latīne studuistī?*; **who is able to write Latin?** *quis Latīne scrībere potest?*

Latin teacher *Latīnitātis magīstr·a -ae f*
or magīst·er -rī m

Latium *Lāti·um -ī n* (*district in which Rome lies*)

laugh *rīd·eō -ēre rīsī*; **I laughed till I cried** *rīsī ūsque ad lācrimās*; **laugh at** *rīdēre*

laundry *fullōnic·a -ae f*, *officīn·a -ae f*
lavātōria; (*dirty clothes*) *lavandāri·a -ōrum npl*

lavender *lavanduláce·us -a -um*

law *lēx*, *lēgis f*; (*divine law*) *fas n*
(*indecl*); (*denoting the entire body of law*) *iūs*, *iūris n*; **against the law** *contrā iūs*; (*against a specific law*) *contrā lēgem*; **by law** *lēge*; **break the law** *lēgem violāre*; **in accordance with the law** *lēge*

lawfully *lēgítimē*

lawn *prātul·um -ī n*; **mow the lawn** *prātulum reseccāre*

lawnmower *herbiséctr·um -ī n*

lawsuit *lī·s -tis f*; **bring (or file) a lawsuit against s.o.** *litem álicui inténd·ō -ere -ī*

lawyer *iūrisperít·us -ī m* (*·a -ae f*);
defense lawyer *advocat·us -ī m* (*·a -ae f*); **trial lawyer** *causídíc·us -ī m*
(*·a -ae f*)

lay (*to place*) *pōn·ō -ere pōsuī pōsitus*;
(*bricks*) *stru·ō -ere -xī -ctus*; (*eggs*)
pár·iō -ere péperi; **lay a finger on s.o.** *álicuem ūnō dígitō attíng·ō -ere áttígī*; **lay it on the line** *dírectum loquor*, *loquī locútus sum*; **lay off!**
désine (pl: désínite) tandem!

layer the hair *comam in gradūs fráng·ō -ere frēgī frāctus*

layover *commorāti·ō -ónis f*

laziness *ignávi·a -ae f*

lazy *ignáv·us -a -um*, *pi·ger -gra -grum*

lead *dūc·ō -ere dūxī ductus*; **all roads lead to Rome** *omnēs viae Rōmam dūcunt*

leader *prīnc·eps -ipis m*

lead pencil *stil·us -ī m* *plumbátus*,
gráphi·um -ī n

learn *disc·ō -ere dídici*; **learn by heart** *ēdfscere*; **learn thoroughly** *perdfscere*

learned *doct·us -a -um*, *ērudít·us -a -um*

learner *disc·ēns -éntis mf*

leash *s cingul·um -ī n*

leash tr (a dog) (*canem*) *cíngulō alligāre*

least *mínimē*; **at least** *útique*, *saltem*

leather *adj ex córiō*; (*for weatherproofing*) *scórte·us -a -um*;
leather raincoat *scórte·a paénul·a -ae f*

leather *s córi·um -ī n*

leave (*depart*) *discēd·ō -ere discéssī discessurus*; (*office*) *áb·eō -íre -īi* (+ *abl*); **leave it up to s.o. to ...** *álicui mandāre ut* (+ *subj*); **leave me alone!** *omítte (pl: omítíte) mē!*; **leave no**

stone unturned nullō locō dēsum
dēesse dēfui

leave of absence commeāt·us -ūs *m*

lecherous libīdinōs·us -a -um

lectern lēctōri·um -ī *n*

lecture ācroās·is -is *f*; (*explicating an author*) praelēcti·ō -ōnis *f*; **give a lecture** ācroāsīn fācere, sermōnem habēre

lecture hall audītōri·um -ī *n*

left siníst·er -ra -rum, laev·us -a -um; **on the left** ā sinístrā; (**to the**) **left** sinístrōsum

leftovers (*from a meal*) relíqui·ae -ārum *fpl*

leg crūs, crūris *n*

legal lēgítim·us -a -um, secúndum lēgem *or* lēgēs

legally lēgítimē, lēge *or* lēgibus

legislation lēgisláti·ō -ōnis *f*

legislator lēgislát·or -ōris *m* (*in Roman government, a proposer of a bill*)

leisure time óti·um -ī *n*, temp·us -oris *n*
vacuum

lemon cítre·um -ī *n*

lemonade límonát·a -ae *f*

length longitúd·ō -inis *f*; **in length** in
longitúdinem

lengthen tr prōdúc·ō -ere prōdúxī
prōductus (*opp*: corrípere)

lengthwise per longitúdinem

lens lēns, lentis *f* óptica

lentil lēn·s -tis *f*

leopard pard·us -ī *m*

lesson lēcti·ō -ōnis *f*, praecépt·um -ī *n*

let permítt·ō -ere permísī permíssus; **let fall** dēmítt·ō -ere dēmísī dēmíssus; **let fly** ēmítt·ō -ere ēmísī ēmíssus; **let**

me go! mitte (*pl*: míttite) mē!; **let me know** fac (*pl*: fācite) ut sciam; **let me see** licet (ut) videam; **let s.o. down** álicui dēsum dēesse dēfui, dēfici·ō -ere dēfēcī (+ *dat*); **let's go** eāmus; **let up** (*of rain, snow*) dētumēscit -ere

letter *s* epístul·a -ae *f*, lítter·ae -ārum *fpl*; (*of the alphabet*) lítter·a -ae *f*; **letters form syllables** lítterae fāciunt sýllabās

letter opener ēnsícul·us -ī *m* epístuláris

lettuce lactúc·a -ae *f*

leukemia leukaémi·a -ae *f*

level *s* (*instrument*) libr·a -ae *f* (aquária); **be on a level with s.o.** par esse álicuī

lever vect·is -is *m*

librarian bibliothēcári·us *m* (·a -ae *f*)

library bibliothēc·a -ae *f*

license (*to drive*) diplóm·a -atis *n*
gubernātiōnis

license plate notácul·um -ī *n* autocínētī

lie *intr* (*be lying down*) iác·eō -ēre -uī; (*in bed*) cub·ō -āre -uī; (*be situated*) sit·us -a -um esse; (*tell a lie*) mént·ior -íri méntíus sum; **lie down** (*to rest*) dēcúmb·ō -ere dēcúbuī; **lie in the direction of** verg·ō -ere ad (+ *acc*)

lie *s* fals·um -ī *n*, mendáci·um -ī *n*; **tell a lie** mendácium dīcere

lieutenant locumtén·ēns -éntis *mf*

life vīt·a -ae *f*; **but such is life** sed vīta fert; **it's not a question of life or death** nōn cápitis rēs ágitur; **lead the life of Riley** vītam Chiam ger·ō -ere gessi; **on my life!** ita vīvam!

life imprisonment: give s.o. life imprisonment áliquem damnāre cárcerī quoad vīvat

lift weights libráménta toll·ō -ere sústulī sublátus

ligament ligám·en -inis *n*

light *adj* make **light of** in levī habére

light *s* lūm·en -inis (ēléctricum) *n*; **turn on (off) the light** lūmen accénd·ō -ere -ī accénsus (expéd·iō -íre -ívī)

light bulb glóbul·us -ī *m* ēléctricus

lighter ignitábul·um -ī *n*

lightning *intr* it is **lightning** fulget fulgére fulsit, fulguráre

lightning *s* fulm·en -inis *n*; **be struck by lightning** fúlmine (or ē caelō) icor icī ictus sum

lightning bug musc·a -ae *f* ignífera

like *adj* símil·is -is -e (+ *gen or, more rarely, dat*); **he said something like this** haec ferē dīxit; **that's more like it** potémmodum est

like *tr* (care for) cūrāre; **I'd like to** velim (+ *inf*); **I'd like you to come** velim (ut) véniās; **I like s.th. (best)** áliquid mihi (potíssimum) placet; **I like summer** aestās mihi placet; **I like the city** urbs mē dēléctat; **I like this** hoc mihi placet; **I like to do this** mē iuvat hoc fácere; **I like to watch the races** libénter circénsēs spectō; **stay if you like** manē sī tibi placébit

likely vērísímil·is -is -e; **it is more likely that ...** vērísímilius est (*acc + inf*); **most likely she will come** próximum est ut véniat (or vērísímílimē est eam ventúram esse)

line líne·a -ae *f*; (*of prose or poetry*) vers·us -ūs *m*; **draw a line with a ruler** líneam per régulam dúcere; **drop me a line when you have time** scribe áliquid litterárū quandō vacās; **form a long line** longum agmen fácere; **in a straight line** per dírectum, rēctā; **he's feeding you a line** verba tibi iste dat; **lay it on the line** dírectum loquor loquī locútus sum

linen *adj* líne·us -a -um; **linen cloth** sában·um -ī *n*

linen *s* línteum -ī *n*, lín·um -ī *n*

linesman (*sports*) iūd·ex -icis *m* líneárius

link *s* (*comput*) cōnéx·us -ūs *m*

link *tr* (*comput*) cōnéct·ō -ere cōnéxuī cōnéxus

linker (*comput*) cōnéctr·um -ī *n*

linking (*comput*) cōnéxi·ō -ónis *f*

lion le·ō -ónis *m*, leaén·a -ae *f*; **lions** roar leónēs rúgiunt

lip labr·um -ī *n*; **lower lip** labrum inférius; **upper lip** labrum supérius; **keep a stiff upper lip** fac, ut ánimō fortī sīs

list númer·us -ī *m*; (*e-mail list*) grex, gregis *m* (interrētiális)

list owner (*comput*) gregis moderá·tor -tōris *m* (-trīx -trícis *f*)

listless dēs·es -idis

liter lít·a -ae *f*

literal *adj* própri·us -a -um (*opp*: tránslátívus)

literally *adv* própriē, ad verbum (*opp*: figūrátē)

litter lectíc·a -ae *f*

little *adv* paulum; **a little** paúlulum; **a little bigger** paulō ámplior

little *adj* parv·us -a -um; **for a little while** paulisper; **little brother** frátércul·us -ī *m*; **little sister** sorórcul·a -ae *f*

live (*be alive*) vív·ō -ere víxī víctum; (*reside*) habitāre; **live it up** pergraéc·or -ári; **live near, (in the case of a river) live on the banks of** áccol·ō -ere -uī accúltum; **live on** (*e.g., a venison*) vesc·or -ī (+ *abl*);

- you're living on borrowed time** dē lucrō vīvis (*pl.*: vīvitis)
- live** *adj* vīv·us -a -um
- liveliness** alácrit·ās -ātis *f*
- lively** ála·cer -cris -cre
- liver** iec·ur -oris *n*
- livestock** pec·us -oris *n*
- living** *s* **make a living** quaestum fácere *or* vīctum quaeritāre
- living room** sessóri·um -ī *n*, synoéci·um -ī *n*
- lizard** lacért·us -ī *m*, lacért·a -ae *f*
- loaded** (*with money*) cōpiós·us -a -um; (*drunk*) mádid·us -a -um
- loaf** *intr* cessāre
- loaf of bread** pān·is -is *m*
- loan** argént·um ī *n* mútuum; **may I hit you for a loan?** licetne tē mútuō ferīre?
- lobster** ástac·us -ī *m*
- local number** númer·us -ī *m* locális
- local train** trām·en -inis *n* commúne
- located** sit·us -a -um
- locket** capséll·a -ae *f*; **wear a locket around the neck** capséllam dē cervíce ger·ō -ere gessī gestus; (*worn by boys, of leather, silver or gold*) bull·a -ae *f*; **wearing a locket** bullát·us -a -um
- lock up** occlú·dō -dere -sī -sus; (*in prison*) in cárcerem compíng·ō -ere compéngī compáctus
- locust** lōcúst·a -ae *f*; **locusts chirp** lōcústae strident
- log in** *intr* (*comput*) ín·eō -íre -ívī *or* -īī
- log out** *intr* (*comput*) éx·eō -íre -ívī *or* -īī
- loneliness** sōlitúd·ō -inis *f*
- lonely** sōl·us -a -um
- long** *adj* long·us -a -um, pródúct·us -a -um (*opp.*: brevis, corréptus); **a vowel is long by nature or by position** vocális est longa nātūrā aut positióne; **fifteen miles long** quíndecim mília pássuum (*often written*: p.) in longitúdinem *or* quíndecim mília pássuum in longitúdinem patēns
- long** *adv* diū; (**for a**) **long time now** iamdúdum; **how long** quam diū; **how much longer** quámdīū étiam; **it would take too long to ...** longum erat (+ *inf*); **long ago** prīdem; **long after** (**before**) multō post (*ante*); **longer** diútius; **too long** diútius, nímium diū
- long-distance number** númer·us -ī *m* longínquus
- long for** dēsīderāre
- longing** (**for**) dēsīdéri·um -ī *n* (+ *gen*)
- long jump** (*sports*) salt·us -ūs *m* in longum
- long-sleeved** manicát·us -a -um
- long-winded** long·us -a -um
- look** aspíc·iō -ere aspéxī aspéctus; (*appear, seem*) vídeor vidēri vīsus sum; **it looks that way to me** ita mihi vidétur; **look!** ecce!; **look after** cūrāre; **look around** circumspícere; **look at** ínspic·iō -ere ínspéxī ínspéctus; **look down on** (*despise*) dēspectāre; **look for** quaer·ō -ere quaesívī quaesítus; **aha, the very person I was looking for!** attat, quem quaerēbam!; **look forward to** exspectāre; **look here, you!** eho tū!; **look into** ínspicere; (*examine*) perscrūtārī; **look like** víd·eor -ēri vīsus sum similis (+ *dat or gen*); **I don't know what he (or she) looks like** quā sit faciē, nēsciō; **look out of the window** ex fenēstrā prōspícere;

look over (*someone*) contemplāre; (*a book, essay*) perlég·ō -ere perlégī;

look someone in the eye áliquem rēctīs óculīs intú·eor -ēri intúitus sum; **look up** (*a reference*) inquĩr·ō -ere inquĩsĩvĩ inquĩsĩtus in (+ *acc*);

look up at suspícere; **look up to** (*out of respect*) suspícere

look-out: keep a careful look-out ómnia circumspectāre

look-out man ind·ex -icis *m*

loose (*not tight*) lax·us -a -um; (*morally*) dissolút·us -a -um

loose-leaf folder collēctóri·um -ī *n*

loose-leaf tablet cōdicill·us ī *m*
chartārum

lop-sided inaequāl·is -is -e

lose (*mostly unintentionally*) amítt·ō -ere amĩsĩ amĩssus; (*mostly blamably*) per·dō -dere -didĩ -ditus

loud *adj* magn·us -a -um, clār·us -a -um

loud *adv* magnā voce, clārē

loudmouth clāmát·or -óris *m*, clāmátr·īx -ícis *f*

loudspeaker megaphón·um -ī *n*

louse pēdicul·us -ī *m*

lousy foed·us -a -um; (*weather*) spurc·us -a -um; **feel lousy** sē male habēre

lovable amābil·is -is -e

love *s* am·or -óris *m* (*followed by erga or in + acc, or by gen, if the object is not a person*); **fall in love at first sight** unō aspēctū in amōrem incid·ō -ere -ī

love *tr* amāre

lover amát·or -óris *m*, amátr·īx -ícis *f*

love seat bisélli·um -ī *n* (tōméntō fartum)

loving am·āns -ántis

low *intr* (*of cattle*) mǫg·iō -íre -ívī or -īi

low *adj* **I am low on** (*e.g., paper*)

(charta) mihi dēest; **in a low voice** summĩssā vōce; **run low** dēfic·iō -ere dēfēcī

low-born ignóbil·is -is -e

lower jaw mandíbul·a -ae *f*

loyal fidēl·is -is -e, fid·us -a -um;
remain loyal in fidē mán·eō -ēre mānsī

loyalty fidēlit·ās -átis *f*

lube job, lubrication ūncti·ō -ónis *f*
autocínēti

luck fortún·a -ae *f*; **good luck!** fēlíciter!

luckily fēlíciter

lucky fēl·īx -ícis, fortunāt·us -a -um

luggage vās·a -órum *npl*; sarcin·ae -árum *fpl*; **piece of luggage** sarcin·a -ae *f*; (*small*) sarcínul·a -ae *f*

luggage rack retinācul·um -ī *n* sarcināle

luggage tag pittāci·um -ī *n* sarcināle

lump *s* túbercul·um -ī *n*

lump *tr* **lump s.o. together with**
áliquem accūd·ō -ere (+ *dat*)

lunch prándi·um -ī *n*; **eat lunch**

pránd·eō -ēre prandī; **have lunch**
prándium sũm·ō -ere sũmpsĩ sũmptus

lung pulm·ō -ónis *m*

lust cupídít·ās -átis *f*; (*sexual desire*)
libíd·ō -inis *f*

lying falsíloqu·us -a -um

lyre lyr·a -ae *f*

M

macaroni past·a -ae *f* tubulāta

machine máchin·a -ae *f*

machinery māchināle ínstrũment·um -ī *n*

machinist māchināt•or -ōris *m*

mackerel scomb•er -rī *m*

mad (*insane*) ĩnsān•us -a -um; (*angry*) ĩrāt•us -a -um; **be mad about** (*be madly in love with*) dēpēr•iō -īre -iī (+ *acc*); **go mad** mente aliēnārī; **I'm mad at you** tibi suscēnsēō *or* ego tibi ĩrātus sum

madam dōmīn•a -ae *f*

magazine commentāri•ī -ōrum *mpl*
periōdicī imāgīnēī

magic *s* mágica ar•s -tis *f*; **practice magic** mágicās artēs exērc•eō -ēre -uī

magic, magical *adj* mágic•us -a -um; **do magic tricks** praestīgi•or -ārī

magician mag•us -ī *m*, mag•a -ae *f*

magistracy magistrāt•us -ūs *m*

magistrate magistrāt•us -ūs *m*

magnetic magnētīc•us -a -um

maid ancīll•a -ae *f*, fāmūl•a -ae *f*

mail *s* epīstul•ae -ārum *fpl*, rēs (rērūm) *fpl* cursuālēs; (*postal system*) curs•us -ūs *m* públicus; (*comput*) lítter•ae -ārum *fpl* ēlectrónica; **deliver mail** rēs cursuālēs red•dō -dere -didī -ditus; **forward mail** rēs cursuālēs déferō défērre détulī délātus; **stack of mail** multīugae lítterae *fpl*

mail *tr* dō dare dedī datus; **I mailed the letter yesterday** lítterās herī dedī

mailbox cápsul•a -ae *f* tabellária

mailman tabellári•us -ī *m*

mainland cōntin•ēns -éntis *f*

main road vi•a -ae *f* prīncipális

major in óperam prīmáriam (cuidam disciplīnae) dare

make believe that adsimulāre quasi (+ *subj*), simulāre (+ *acc w. inf*); **make fun of** lūdificāre, ēlúd•ō -ere ēlūsī;

make the mouth water ad salīvam fácere; **make up** (*a story*) excógitāre; **make up with s.o.** in grátiam cum aliquō réd•eō -īre -iī

malaria malári•a -ae *f*

mall for•um -ī *n* subtēgulāneum

man vir, virī *m*

manage cūrāre; (*e.g., a bank*) móder•or -ārī -ātus sum; (*esp. on a large scale*) administrāre; **if you can manage it** sī id cōnficere póteris

manager moderāt•or -ōris *m*, moderātr•ix -ícis *f*

mane iūb•a -ae *f*

manuscript manuscrīpt•um -ī *n*

many mult•ī -ae -a

map chart•a -ae *f* geográphica; **map of the world** orb•is -is *m* terrárum pīctus

march *intr* iter fácere

March *s* mēns•is -is *m* Mártius; **in March** mēnse Mártiō

margarine margarín•um -ī *n*

marijuana cánnab•is -is *f*; **smoke marijuana** fūmum cánnabis sūg•ō -ere sūxī

marine mīl•es -itis *m* clássicus; **the marines** classiári•ī -ōrum *mpl*

mark *tr* (*draw or make a mark on anything*) notāre; (*set down mentally*) designāre; **mark my words** ánimum intēnde (*pl: intēndite*) in dicta mea

mason fa•ber -brī *m* lapidárius

mast māl•us -ī *m*

master's degree grad•us -ūs *m* magistrális

match rāmént•um -ī *n* flammíferum; (*sports*) certām•en -inis *n*

mathematics mathemátic•a -ae *f*

matter *intr* it doesn't matter to me
nihil ad mē pērtinet; **what does that matter to me (you, us)?** quid id meā (tuā, nōbīs) rēfert?

matter *s* rēs, reī *f*; **for that matter** ádeō;
no matter how... quamvīs (+ *subj*);
what on earth's the matter?
quidnam est?; **what's the matter with you?** quid est tēcum? *or* quid istuc est reī?

mattress cūlcit·a -ae *f*; **air mattress**
cūlcita inflātilis

May mēns·is -is *m* Māius; **in May**
mēse Māiō

may: I (you, etc.) may mihi (tibi, etc.)
licet; **may I leave?** licétne mihi
abíre? *or* licétne mihi (ut) ábeam?
(Note: in short phrases the *ut* is often omitted)

maybe fortásse

mayonnaise liquám·en -inis *n*
Magónicum

mayor praeféc·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*) urbī

meadow prāt·um -ī *n*

meal cib·us -ī *m*

mean *tr* significāre; (*intend*) volō velle
voluī; **do you know whom I mean?**
scīsne quem dīcam?; **do you mean me?** mēne vīs? **yes, you tē;** **do you really mean it?** aisne vērō? **Yes, I do aiō;** **how do you mean that?** quī istuc vīs?; **now you know what I mean** scīs iam quid loquar; **what does this mean?** quid hoc sibi vult?; **what do you mean?** quid tibi vīs?; **what do you mean by that?** quid istuc est verbī?; **what I mean is** (*in correcting a misunderstanding*) at enim

meaning *s* significāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **basic meaning** princeps significātiō

means: by all means! máximē!, immo!;
by fair means rēctē; **by means of**
render by abl or per (+ acc); **by no means** haudquāquam

meanwhile ínterim

measles morbíli·i -órum *mpl*

measure *intr* pát·eō -ére -uī, cóllig·ō
-ere collégī; **measuring ten miles in circumference** patēns (*or* cólligēns)
decem mília pássuum circúitū

meat car·ō -nis *f*

meatball glóbul·us -ī *m* cárneus

meat grinder máchin·a -ae *f* carnárium

meat tray fécul·um -ī carnári·um *m*

mechanic mechánicus ópif·ex -icis *m*

medal nomísm·a -atis *n*; **gold (silver, bronze) medal** nomísma aúreum
(argénteum, aéreum)

medical practice medicín·a -ae *f*

medication medicāmént·um -ī *n*

medicine medicín·a -ae *f*, medicám·en
-inis *n*; **practice medicine**
medicínam exérc·eō -ére -uī

Mediterranean Sea intérnum mar·e -is
n, Tuscum mare, Tyrrhénium mare

meet *tr & intr* con·véniō -veníre -vénī
-véntus

meeting congréss·us -ūs *m*

megaphone megaphón·um -ī *n*

melt *tr* dissól·vō -vere -vī -útus **||** *intr*
liquésc·ō -ere

member (*of the body*) membr·um -ī *n*;
(*of an organization*) sodál·is -is *mf*

memorize ēdisc·ō -ere ēdídici

memory memóri·a -ae *f*; **commit to memory** memóriae mandāre; **have a good memory** bonā memóriā esse; **if my memory serves me right** sī ego

- satis commémīnī; **in memory of** in memóriam (+ *gen*)
- mend** (*clothes*) sárċ·iō -íre sarsī sartus
- mention** *s* ménti·ō -ónis *f*; **since mention has been made of money** quóniam nummórum méntiō facta est
- mention** *tr* **I don't want to mention him by name** eum nōlō nōmināre; **not to mention** ut nōn (*or nihil*) dicam dē (+ *abl*); **not to mention the fact that** ... ut mittam quod (+ *indic*)
- menu** cibórum ind·ex -icis *m*, cibórum tabéll·a -ae *f*; (*comput*) iussórum tabéll·a -ae *f*
- merchandise** vēnālīci·a -órum *npl*, merc·ēs -ium *fpl*
- merchant** mercát·or -óris *m*; (*in a market*) macellári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
- mermaid** nymph·a -ae *f* marína
- merrily** hílarē, fēstíve
- merry** hílar·is -is -e, hílar·us -a -um; **Merry Christmas!** Faustum ac Fēlícem Chrísti Nātálem (tibi exóptō)! Fausta Fēsta Nātálícia Chrísti (tibi exóptō)!
- merry-go-round** circumvectábul·um -ī *n*
- mess** (*dirt*) squāl·or -óris *m*; (*confusion*) turb·a -ae *f*; **geez, what a mess!** eu édepol rēs turbuléntās!; **make a mess of it** turbās concí·eō -ēre concívī concítus
- message** nūnti·us -ī *m*
- metal** metáll·um -ī *n*
- meter** (*unit of measure, verse*) metr·um -ī *n*
- meticulous** accūrát·us -a -um
- microphone** microphón·um -ī *n*
- microscope** microscópi·um -ī *n*
- microwave oven** furn·us -ī *m* undárum brévium
- middle class** ōrd·ō -inis *m* médius; (*in Rome*) équit·ēs -um *mpl*
- middle school** schol·a -ae *f* média
- midget** nān·us -ī *m*, nān·a -ae *f*
- midnight** média no·x, -ctis *f*; **around midnight** médiā círciter nocte; **at midnight** (dē) médiā nocte; **before midnight** ante médiam noctem
- midwife** obstétr·ix -ícis *f*
- migraine** hēmícráni·a -ae *f*; **have a migraine headache** dól·eō -ēre -uī ab hēmícrániā
- mild** clém·ēns -éntis, mīt·is -is -e
- mile** mille pass·ūs -uum *mpl*; **two miles** duo mília *npl* pássuum
- military** mīlītár·is -is -e; **military age** aet·ās -ātis *f* mīlītáris; **military service** mīlíti·a -ae *f*; **enter military service** mīlítiam ínīre; **perform military service** mīlítāre; **the military** mīlíti·a -ae *f*
- milk** *s* lac lactis *n*
- milk** *tr* múl·geō -gēre -sī -sus *or* -ctus
- mince: without mincing words** sine fūcō ac falláciis
- mind** *tr* (*look after*) cūrāre, tú·eor -ēri túitus sum; (*regard*) respíc·iō -ere respéxi respéctus; (*object to*) aegrē (*or* moléstē) ferō ferre tulī lātus; **I don't mind if you stay** nōn labóro sī manēs; **if you don't mind** sī tibi moléstum nōn est; sī tibi vidétur; **mind my words** auscultā (*pl*: auscultáte) dictīs meis!; **mind one's own business** negótium suum agō ágere ēgi; **never mind!** sine! (*pl*: sínite!); **never mind what he says** mitte (*pl*: míttite) quod dicit

mind *s* mēn·s -tis *f*, ánim·us -ī *m*; **be in one's right mind** apud sē esse; **change one's mind** sentēntiam mūtāre; **come to mind** in mentem venīre; **enter my mind** mihi in mentem venīre; **have in mind to** in ánimō habēre (+ *inf*); **he's out of his mind** aliēnātus est ā sē; **I made up my mind to leave** constítui hinc abīre *or* certum est mihi hinc abīre; **I was out of my mind when ...** dēsiپیbam mentis cum ... ; **it slipped my mind to write to you** fūgit mē ad tē scrībere; **of sound mind** comp·os -otis mentis; **set your mind at ease** habē ánimum lēnem et tranqúillum; **what's on your mind?** quid tibi in ánimō est?

mine *s* metáll·um -ī *n*, fodín·a -ae *f*; **coal mine** fodín·a -ae *f* carbónária; **gold mine** aurifodín·a -ae *f*; **gold (lead, iron, copper, silver, tin) mine** metállum aurī (plumbī, ferrī, cuprī, argéntī, plumbī albī); **mine shaft** fodínae púte·us -ī *m*

mine *tr* effód·iō -ere effódī effóssus

miner metallári·us -ī *m*, fōss·or -óris *m*

mineral water aqu·a -ae *f* minerális

miniskirt cástul·a -ae *f* brevíssima (*or* dēcurtāta)

minister (*eccl*) minís·ter -trī *m* (·tra -trae *f*), pāst·or -óris *m*

minute minút·a, -ae *f*; **any minute now** iam iamque; **in a minute** mōmētō témporis; **the minute I saw you** extéplō ubi ego tē vīdī; **this minute (right now)** iam; (*immediately*) áctútum; **wait a minute** manē dum

mirror spécul·um -ī *n*; **look at oneself in the mirror** sē in spéculō intú·eor -éri; **look into the mirror** in spéculum inspíc·iō -ere inspéxi inspéctus

misbehave sē male (*or* indecórē) ger·ō -ere gessi

miserable mis·er -era -erum

misery miséri·a -ae *f*

misquote áliis verbīs pōn·ō -ere pōsuī pósitus

miss (*feel the want of*) dēsīderāre; (*pass by without noticing*) praeter·míttō -mittere -mísi; **miss the mark** dēstinátō aberrāre

missile missíl·e -is *n*

mist nébul·a -ae *f*

mistake err·or -óris *m*, errát·um -ī *n*; (*esp. in writing*) mend·um -ī *n*; **by mistake** imprúdēns, pérperam; **make a mistake** errāre; **you're making a big mistake** errās pervérsē *or* vehemēnter errās

mistaken (*idea*) fál·s·us -a -um; **unless I am mistaken** nisi fallor

misty nebulós·us -a -um

mixed salad commíxta acētári·a -órum *npl*

mixer máchin·a -ae *f* mīxtória

mobile home domúncul·a -ae *f* subrotāta; (*trailer home*) habitácul·um -ī *n* remulcátum

model exémpl·ar -áris *n*; (*of clothes*) vestimentórum mōnstátr·ix -ícis *f* (*or* mōnstrát·or -óris *m*)

modem (*comput*) trānsmodulátr·um -ī *n*

moderate (*of persons*) moderát·us -a -um; (*of things*) módic·us -a -um; **of moderate size** módic·us -a -um

modest modést·us -a -um

modesty modésti·a -ae *f*

modify *tr* adícior ádicī adíectus sum (+ *dat*); **which noun does "bonus"** **modify?** cui nōminī "bonus" adícitur?

modifying *adj* adiécť·us -a -um (+ *dat*)

molars *dentēs mpl* molárēs

mole *talp·a -ae f*

mom *mamm·a -ae f*

moment *momént·um -ī n* témporis; **at any moment** ómnibus moméntīs; **at the very moment** ipsō témpore; **at the very same moment** pūncťo témporis eódem; **for a moment** paulísper; **in a moment** (*i.e., presently*) statim; **just a moment ago** modo

Monday *di·ēs -ēī m* Lūnae

money *argént·um -ī n, pecúni·a -ae f, numm·ī -órum mpl; (of paper) monét·a -ae f* chartácea

money belt *ventrál·e -is n; (of cloth) zōn·a -ae f*

money order (*nummárium*) *mandát·um -ī n* cursuále

monitor (*comput*) *monitóri·um -ī n, caps·a -ae f* computátrális

monkey *sími·us -ī m, sími·a -ae f; (as term of abuse) you monkey! símia!; monkeys chatter símiī strident*

monopoly *monopóli·um -ī n; play monopoly* *monopólio lúdere*

monosyllable *s* *monosýllab·a -ae f*

month *mēns·is -is m*

monument *monumént·um -ī n*

moo *múg·iō -íre -ívī or -īī*

mood *afféct·us -ūs m* ánimī, ánim·us -ī *m; (gram) mod·us -ī m; be in a good mood* *bonum ánimum habére; get over one's mood* *ánimum superáre; imperative mood, e.g., "read!"* *modus imperáťivus, ut "lege!"*; **indicative mood, e.g., "I read"** *modus indicáťivus, ut "legō"*; **subjunctive mood, e.g., "although I**

read" *modus subiūncťivus, ut "cum legam"*

moose *alc·ēs -is f*

moped *autobirótul·a -ae f*

more *adj* plūs, plūris *n; plūr·ēs -ium mf pl; (denoting greater extent of space or time; also number) ámplius; more (things) plūr·a -ium npl; but more of this another time* *sed dē hōc áliās plūribus; more money, strength, power* *plūs pecúniae, vírium, poténtiae*

more *adv* *magis; more or less* *magis minúsve; more than* *magis quam; more (less) than ... years old* *māior (minor) ... annōs nāt·us -a -um*

moreover *praetéreā*

morning *mātútīn·um -ī n, temp·us -oris n* *mātútīnum; early in the morning* *bene māne, multō māne; from morning till evening* *ā māne ūsque ad vésperam; good morning!* *salvē!; in the morning* *māne; sleep all morning* *tōtum māne dormíre; the next morning* *māne postrídīē; this morning* *hódīē māne*

mortar *harēnát·um -ī n*

mortgage *s* *hypothéc·a -ae f; pay off a mortgage* *hypothécam liberáre; take out a mortgage* *hypothécam obligáre*

mortgage *tr* *hypothécā obligáre*

mosquito *cul·ex -icis m*

most *adj* *pleríque, pleraéque, pléraque; most people* *pleríque or pleríque hómīnēs*

most *adv (with verbs)* *máximē; (with adjs and advs, expressed by the superlative degree); (in the case of an adj in -ius máximē + positive)*

mostly (*for the most part, principally*) *máximam partem; (generally) plērúmque*

motel dēversōri·um -ī *n* vehiculārium

moth blatt·a -ae *f*

mother mā·ter -tris *f*

mother-in-law socr·us -ūs *f*

motherless mātēre orb·us -a -um

motherly mātērn·us -a -um

motion mōt·us -ūs *m*; (*parl*) sentēnti·a -ae *f*; **approve a motion** sentēntiam comprobāre; **make a motion regarding** réfērō réfērre réttulī relātus dē (+ *abl*); **on my motion** mē referēnte; **oppose a motion** sentēntiae [*dat*] obsist·ō -ere óbstitī

motivate concitāre

motivation (for) rāti·ō -ónis *f* (+ *gen*); incitāmēt·um -ī *n*; **motivation to study** incitāmētum studiēndī

motive caus·a -ae *f*, rāti·ō -ónis *f*; **what was his motive in coming?** Cuius rei causā vēnerat?; **he had a strong motive** magna rātiō eī erat

motor mōtōri·um -ī *n*, mōtr·um -ī *n*

motor boat scaph·a -ae *f* automatāria

motorcycle autobírot·a -ae *f*

motorcyclist autobírotári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

motorist autoraedári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*), autocīnētíst·ēs -ae *mf*

motor oil óle·um -ī *n* mōtōriī

mountain mōn·s -tis *m*

mountain chain mont·ēs -ium *mpl* perpétuī

mountain climbing ascēnsi·ō -ónis *f* mōntium (*see Chapter V*)

mountainous montuós·us -a -um, montān·us -a -um

mourn *tr* & *intr* lūg·eō -ēre lūxī lūctus

mourning maer·or -ōris *m*; (*outward expression of grief*) lūct·us -ūs *m*

mouse (*animal*) mūs, mūris *m*; (*comput*) mūs, mūris *m*, mūscul·us -ī *m*; **mice squeak** mūrēs míntrunt

mouse clicker (*comput*) mūris pulsábul·um -ī *n*

mouth ōs, ōris *n*; (*of a river*) ōsti·um -ī *n*; **I had better keep my mouth shut** táceam optimum est; **shut your mouth!** óbserā ōs tuum!

mouthful bucc·a -ae *f*

move *tr* mōv·eō -ēre mōvī mōtus **II** *intr* movērī, sē movēre; (*to change residence*) migrāre

movie taeníol·a -ae *f* cīnēmatogrāphica, fābul·a -ae *f* cīnēmatogrāphica; **go to see (watch) a movie** taeníolam cīnēmatogrāphicam vīs·ō -ere -ī; **show a movie** taeníolam cīnēmatogrāphicam exhíb·eō -ēre -uī -itus (*see Chapter V*)

movie camera māchínul·a -ae *f* cīnēmatogrāphica

movie projector prōiectōri·um -ī *n* cīnēmatogrāphicum

movie screen línte·um -ī *n* látē exténtum

movie theater cīnēmaté·um -ī *n*; **go the movie theater (or to the movies)** in cīnēmatéum eō ire ivī

movies imāgin·ēs -um *fpl* movéntēs

mow the lawn grāmen (*or* prátulum) résecō -āre -uī -tus

muffin scriblít·a -ae *f*

mug *s* (*cup*) pócūl·um -ī *n*

mug *tr* mulcāre

mugger percúss·or -ōris *m*

muggy aestuós·us -a -um

mulberry mōr·um -ī *n*

mule mūl·us -ī *m*, mūl·a -ae *f*; **mules bray** mūlī rudunt

mull over aestuāre in (+ *abl*)

mumps parōŕt·is -idis *f*

municipality mūnicipi·um -ī *n*

murder *s* nex, necis *f* (*passive in sense while caedēs is active in sense*); (*by hacking or striking*) caed·ēs -is *f*, occīsi·ō -ōnis *f*

murder *tr* (*by wicked and cruel means*) necāre; (*violently and ruthlessly*) trūcīdāre; (*by hacking or striking*) caed·ō -ere cecīdī caesus; **murder a song** cānticum lacerāre

murderer necāt·or -ōris *m*, homicīd·a -ae *mf*; (*of a father, mother, or near relative*) parricīd·a -ae *mf*

murderess necātr·īx -īcis *f*

muscle mūscul·us -ī *m*; **pull a muscle** mūsculum distórqu·eō -ēre distórsi distórtus

muscle-bound mūsculīs cōntrīct·us -a -um

muscular mūsculōs·us -a -um

museum mūsē·um -ī *n*

mushroom fung·us -ī *m*; (*a choice kind*) bōlēt·us -ī *m*

music mūsic·a -ae *f*

musical mūsic·us -a -um; **musical instrument** īnstrūment·um -ī *n* mūsicum; **musical note** not·a -ae *f* mūsicālis

musician mūsic·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

must: I (you) must go mihi (tibi) eūndum est

mustache súbi·um -ī *n*

mustard sināp·is -is *f*

mutter mussāre

mutual mūtu·us -a -um

my me·us -a -um

my oh my! vae míserō (-ae) mihi!

myth mýth·os -ī *m*

mythological mýthológic·us -a -um

mythology mýthológic·a -ae *f*

N

nag *tr* obiurgitāre

nail clav·us -ī *m*; (*of a finger, toe*) ungu·is -is *m*; **cut the nails** unguēs résec·ō -āre -uī -tus; **drive in a nail** clāvum fig·ō -ere fixī fixus; **you hit the nail on the head** tū rem acū tetigísti

nail *tr* (to) clāvō (*or* clāvīs) cōnffīg·ō -ere cōnffixī cōnffictus (+ *dat of that to which*); **to nail (boards) together** (tábulās) inter sē clāvīs cōnffigere

name *s* nōm·en -inis *n*; **Varrō by name** nómīne Varrō

name *tr* nōmināre; (*enumerate*) nuncupāre

nap brevis somn·us ī *m*; **take a nap** brevem somnum cāpere

napkin mapp·a -ae *f*, máppul·a -ae *f*

narcotic medicāmēt·um -ī *n* psychotrōpium

narrow angúst·us -a -um, ténu·is -is -e

narrow-minded angúst·us -a -um; **be narrow-minded** angústī ánimī esse

narrow-mindedness angústī·ae -ārum *fpl* (péctoris)

nasty (foul) foed·us -a -um; (*mean*) turpis -is -e

nation gēn·s -tis *f*

natural secūndum nātúrā; (*unaffected*) incompósit·us -a -um, simpl·ex -icis

naturally nātūrālīter; (*of course*) nempe, útpote; (*unaffectedly*) simpliciter

nature nātúr·a -ae *f*; (*physical world*) nātúra rerum; (*of a person*) ingēni·um -ī *n*

naughty ímprob·us -a -um; (*saucy*)
pétul·āns -āntis

naval nāvāl·is -is -e

navel umbilic·us -ī *m*

navigable nāvigābi·lis -is -e

navy cōpi·ae -ārum *fpl* nāvālēs; **have a powerful navy** nāvibus plūrimum posse

near *adj* (not distant in place or time)
propinqu·us -a -um; (*neighboring*)
vicīn·us -a -um (+ *dat*), prope (+ *acc*)

near *prep* prope (+ *acc*)

nearby in próximō

nearsighted my·ōps -ōpis

nearsightedness myōpi·a -ae *f*

neat (*clean; elegant*) mund·us -a -um;
neat! óptimē!

necessary necessāri·us -a -um; **if it is necessary for you to stay on** sī opus est tē commorārī; **if it is necessary for your health** sī opus est ad tuam valētūdinem; **it is necessary** necesse est

neck coll·um -ī *n*, cerv·īx -ícis *f* (*usually used in the plural*)

necklace tórqu·ēs -is *m*, moníl·e -is *n*;
(*of precious stones*) moníle
gemmátum

necktie fōcāl·e -is *n*

need desīderāre; ég·eō -ére -uī (+ *abl*,
more rarely + gen); **I (you, we) need money** opus est mihi (tibi, nobīs)
argéntō [*abl*]

needle ac·us -ūs *f*

needless to say quid quaeris?; quid multa?

needy in·ops -opis

negligence negligēti·a -ae *f*, incūri·a -ae *f*

negligent néglig·ēns -éntis

neigh *intr* hínn·iō -íre -iī; **neigh at**
adhinníre

neigh *s* hínnīt·us -ūs *m*

neighbor (*on the border*) finítim·us -ī *m*
(·a -ae *f*); (*nearby or next door*)
próxim·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); (*one in the neighborhood*) vicīn·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

neighborhood vicīni·a -ae *f*

neither neu·ter -tra -trum; **that's neither here nor there** (*a matter of indifference*) susque dēque est

nephew fīli·us -ī *m* sorōris; fīlius frātris

nerd inconcīnn·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

nerve nerv·us -ī *m*; **what nerve!** O
audāciam!

nervous intēt·us -a -um, trépīd·us -a -um

nervousness trepidāti·ō -ónis *f*, ánim·us -ī *m* trépīdus

nest nīd·us -ī *m*; **build a nest** nīdificāre

net (*also comput*) rēt·e -is *n*

neuter *adj* neu·ter -tra -trum, neutrál·is -is -e; **in the neuter** neutráliter

neutral nullíus partis (esse)

never numquam; **never yet** nōndum

nevertheless tamen, nihilōsétius

new nov·us -a -um

news (*esp. brought by a messenger*)
núnti·us -ī *m*; **I just got news that**
modo mihi nūntiātum est (+ *acc w.*
inf); **if you happen to have any news about ...** sī quid forte novī
habēs dē (+ *abl*); **if you have no news about ...** sī nihil novī habēs dē
(+ *abl*); **I'll tell you when I have any news** narrābō, cum áliquīd
habébō novī; **is there any news?**
numquid novī? **no other news** nihil
praeterea novī

news broadcast nūntiī -ōrum *mpl*
(radiophōnicī, tēlevīsificī)

newscast tēlediāri·um -ī *n*

newspaper āct·a -ōrum *npl* diūrna,
diāri·um -ī *n*; **morning (evening)**
newspaper diārium matutīnum
(vespertīnum); **newspaper article**
commentāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **weekly**
newspaper ācta hebdomadālia

newsstand diāriōrum tabērnul·a -ae *f*

next *adj* prōxim·us -a -um; **next to**
prōxim·us -a -um (+ *dat*), iuxtā (+
acc)

next *adv* prōximē; **next comes, then ...**
then ... after that unde ... dein ...
dein ... inde ...

nice (*courteous*) concīnn·us -a; (*in*
personality) lēpid·us -a; (*cute*)
bell·us -a -um; **nice weather** caelum
serēnum; **it was nice of you to invite**
me, but no, thank you bene vocās,
sed tam grātia est; **it wasn't nice of**
you to say that nōn bellē fecistī quī
id dīxeris; **say s.th. nice** aliquid bellī
dīcere

nick: in the nick of time in ipsō artīculō
tēmporis

nickname agnōm·en -inis *n*

niece fīli·a -ae *f* sorōris; fīli·a -ae *f*
frātris

night nox, noctis *f*; **at night** noctū, dē
nocte; **at this time of night** hōc
noctis; **by night** noctū, dē nocte; **day**
and night (*continually*) per diēs et
noctēs, diem noctēmque; **every night**
per sīngulās noctēs; **from morning**
till night ā māne ad noctem ūsque;
good night (*greeting*) bene vāleās et
quiēscās; **last night** prōximā nocte;
late at night multā dē nocte; **night**
after night per sīngulās noctēs; **night**
and day (*continually*) noctēs et diēs;
one night quādem nocte; **on the**

following night prōximā (*or*
īnsequēte nocte; **(on) the night**
before last superiōre nocte; **spend**
the night pernoctāre; **till late at**
night ad multam noctem

nightclub discothēc·a -ae *f*

nightfall: at nightfall sub noctem; **till**
nightfall ūsque ad noctem

nightgown camīsi·a -ae *f* noctūrna

nightmare sōmni·um -ī *n* turbulētum;
have a nightmare sōmniū
turbulētum pāt·ior -ī passus sum

night owl (*person*) noctis av·is -is *f*;
(*bird*) nōctu·a -ae *f*

night table mēnsul·a -ae *f* cubiculāris

nipple papīll·a -ae *f*

nitwit bārcal·a -ae *m*

no *adj* null·us -a -um; **no one** nēm·ō
-inis *m*; **no parking** cavē stātuās
vehīculum!; **no passing** cavē
praevehāris!; **no stopping** nē sistitō!;
no way! nullō modō! *or* nēquāquam!

no *adv* nōn, mínimē; **no longer** nōn iam,
nōn diūtius

noble (*sentiments*) grand·is -is -e

nominative *adj* nōminātv·us -a -um

nonsense nūg·ae -ārum *fpl*; **cut out the**
nonsense! omítte (*pl*: omítitte)
nūgās! **no nonsense!** nē nūgāre!
that's a lot of nonsense nūgae sunt
istae magnae; **you are talking**
nonsense nūgās garris; nūgāris

nonsense! nūgās! (*acc is frequent with*
exclamations)

noodle collýr·a -ae *f*

noodle soup iū·s -ris *n* collýricum

noon merídi·ēs -ēī *m*; **at noon** merídiē;
before noon ante merídiēm

north *adj* septentrionāl·is -is -e

north *adv* ad septentrionēs; **north of** *suprā* (+ *acc*)

north *s* septentrion·ēs -um *mpl*; **on the north** ā septentrionibus

northern septentrionāl·is -is -e

northward in septentrionēs versus [*versus is an adverb*]

north wind Áquil·ō -ōnis *m*

nose nās·us -ī *m*; **have a good nose for these things** haec fēstivē odōrārī; **under his very nose** ante oculōs

nosey cūriōs·us -a -um; **I don't want to be nosey but ...** nōn libet cūriōsus (-a) esse sed ...

nostrils nār·ēs -ium *fpl*

not nōn; *haud* (*more emphatic than nōn, and used chiefly before adjs and advs*); (*softened negative*) parum; **and not** nec, neque; **not at all** nōn omnīnō; **not bad** nōn male; **not even** nē ... quidem; **not only ... but also** nōn solum ... sed etiam; **not that** nōn quod (+ *subj*); **not yet** nōndum

note *s* not·a -ae *f*; (*short letter*) codicill·ī -ōrum *mpl*; **musical note** nota mūsica; **notes** annotatiōn·ēs -um *fpl*; **take notes** ēnotāre, annotāre

note *tr* notāre; **note down** ēnotāre

notebook libell·us -ī *m*, pugillār·ēs -ium *mpl*

note pad pugillār·ēs -ium *mpl*

nothing nihil

notice animad·vértō -vértēre -vértī -vérsus

notorious nōt·us -a -um, infām·is -is -e

noun *s* nōm·en -inis *n*; (*of an inanimate object*) vocābul·um -ī *n*

novel op·us -eris *n* fabulōsum

November mēns·is -is *m* Novēber; **in November** mēnse Novēmbri

now nunc; (*denoting emphasis and urgency*) iam; (*transitional, never in first place*) autem; **even now** etiam nunc; **just now** (*a moment ago*) modo; **now and then** subinde; **now at last** nunc tandem; **now here's the point** nunc cognósce rem; **now ... now** modo ... modo; **now that** posteaquam (+ *indic*); **now what?** quid nunc?; **right now** (*immediately*) iam iam; **ten years from now** ad decem annōs

nowadays hodiē, nunc

nowhere nusquam

nuclear nucleār·is -is -e; **nuclear power** vīs *f* nucleāris

nudge fodicāre

number *s* númer·us -ī *m*

numeral *s* nōm·en -inis *n* numerāle (ut “ūnus,” “duo,” “trēs” **one, two, three**)

nurse nosócom·a -ae *f*; (*male*) nosócom·us -ī *m*

nursery conclāv·e -is *n* infāntium

nursing home nosocómi·um -ī *n*

nut nux, nucis *f*; **be nuts about someone** (amóre) dēpér·eō -íre -iī aliquem; **he is a nut** nūga iste est; **he's nuts** aliēnātus est ā sē; **you're nuts** dēlírās

nutty (*coll*) bacēol·us -a -um

nymph nymph·a -ae *f* marína

O

oak *adj* rōbóre·us -a -um

oak rōb·ur -uris *n*, querc·us -ūs *f*

oats avēn·a -ae *f*

obedient (to) oboédiēns -éntis (*dat*)

object *s* (*gram*) expressed by the verb adiungī, for example, “**the man**” is

the object of the verb “hic homō”
verbō adiungitur [Note: *Roman*
grammarians never used the word
“obiectum” in connection with a
verb or preposition. Whereas we
would say, for example, “man is the
object of the verb” the Romans
would say “man is joined to the
verb.” See also the definition of
“modify” above.]

object (to) obsist·ō -ere obstiti (+ *dat*)

objection: I have no objection per mē
licet; **if you have no objection** sī per
tē licet

object lesson documēt·um -ī *n*

obliged: I'm much obliged to you for
sending me your book fēcistī mihi
pergrātum quod librum ad mē mīsistī

obliging cōmmod·us -a -um

obscurity ignōbilit·ās -ātis *f*

obviously manifēstō

occasion: for the occasion in tempus; **if**
occasion should arise sī fūerit
occāsio

occasionally per occāsionem, subinde

occupation (means of livelihood)
quaest·us -ūs *m*; **what is your**
occupation? quem quaestum facis?

occupy (take possession of) occupāre;
(*take by force*) cāp·iō -ere cēpī
captus; **be occupied with something**
in āliquā rē versārī

occur (take place) incid·ō -ere -ī; (*come*
up) obvén·iō -īre; **that had never**
occurred to me mihi istuc numquam
in mentem vēnerat.

ocean ōcéan·us -ī *m*; **the Atlantic**
Ocean ōcéanus Atlánticus *or* mare
Atlánticum

ochre silāce·us -a -um

o'clock: at two o'clock hōrā diēi
secūndā (*see p. 81*)

October mēns·is -is *m* Octóber; **in**
October mēnse Octóbri

odd (strange) insólit·us -a -um, mīr·us
-a -um; (*number*) impār, imparis;
how odd! rīdículum!

off (said of an island) ante (+ *acc*); **off**
(the coast of) Italy ante Itáliam ; **be**
far off procul esse; **be a long way**
off longē abesse; **be off to** hinc áb·eō
-īre -īvi *or* -īi ad (+ *acc*); **be well off**
lócuplēs esse; **I'm off to the forum**
ego hinc mē ad forum (agō); **where**
are you off to? quō tē agis?

offenses delíct·a -órum *npl*

offhand remark dict·um -ī *n*
incūriósum

offhand: ex témpore; **say offhand** dē
summō pēctore dícere

office hon·or -óris *m*, magistrát·us -ūs
m; (*work place*) officín·a -ae *f*;
(*teacher's*) studiól·um -ī *n*; **gain an**
office magistrátum (*or* honórem)
ádsequ·or -ī adsecútus sum

officer praeféct·us -ī *m*; **cavalry officer**
praeféctus équitum; (*police*) vig·il
-ilis *mf*

offside: be offside seórsum stō stāre
stetī

often saepe, nōnnúmquam

oh boy! eu!

oh my! vae mihi!

oho! eho!

O.K. fiat *or* licet; **if it's O.K. with you**
sī tibi vidétur; **we're O.K.** bene
habémus

old vet·us -eris (*single-ending adj*),
vétul·us -a -um; **be ... years old ...**
annōs nāt·us -a -um esse; **older**
māior nātū; **oldest** máxim·us -a nātū

old age senect·ūs -ūtis *f*; senect·a -ae *f*

old-age home gerontocómi·um -ī *n*

old lady an·us -ūs *f*; **little old lady**
anícul·a -ae *f*

old man sen·ex -is *m*

old woman an·us -ūs *f*

oldster sen·ex -is *m*

olive olí·v·a -ae *f*

olive oil óle·um -ī *n*

omelet lágan·um -ī *n* ex ōvīs

once (*on a certain occasion*) quōdam
diē; (*one time*) semel; **once I get**
started, I can't stop quandō incípiō,
dēsínere nōn queō; **at once**
(*immediately*) ílicō, statim;
(*simultaneously*) simul; **once and for**
all semel in perpétuum; **once or**
twice semel atque íterum; **once upon**
a time ōlim

one ūn·us -a -um; **at one time**
(*formerly*) ōlim; **one another** inter
sē; **they embraced one another** inter
sē ampléxī sunt; **one and the same**
ūnus et ídem; **one house** ūnae aed·ēs
-ium *fpl*; **one ... the other** alter ...
alter; **one would think** créderēs; **we**
can discuss that one on one dē eō
cōram disputāre pōssumus

one-way street vi·a -ae *f* ūnús cursūs

onion caep·a -ae *f*

only solum, tantúmmodo (*usu. after the*
word it emphasizes)

open *adj* (*not shut*) apért·us -a -um;
(*candid*) cándid·us -a -um; **in the**
open (air) sub dīvō

open *tr* apér·iō -íre apérui apértus

openly própolis

opera melodrá·m·a -atis *n*; **go to see an**
opera melodráma vīs·ō -ere -ī

opera house theátr·um -ī *n*
melodrá·má·ticum

operate on sec·ō -áre -uī -tus

operating system (*comput*) systēm·a
-atis *n* inté·rnum

operation operáti·ō -ónis *f*; (*surgical*)
sécti·ō -ónis *f* (*or* operátio) mé·dica;
conduct military operations rēs
ger·ō -ere gessi

operetta melodrá·má·ti·um -ī *n*

opinion senté·ti·a -ae *f*; **express an**
opinion senténtiam dí·cere; **in my**
opinion meā senténtiā, meō iudí·ciō;
what is your opinion about ... ?
quid opíná·ris dē (+ *abl*)?

opinion poll interrogáti·ō -ónis *f*
(política)

opponent adversári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*);
(*for office*) competí·tor -tōris *m* (·trix
-trícis *f*)

opposite *prep* versus (+ *acc*) (*often*
postpositive), advérsum (+ *acc*),
contrā (+ *acc*); **opposite of** ex advér·sō
or exadvér·sō (+ *gen*)

optician fa·ber -brī *m* ópticus

or aut, vel; (*in double questions*) an

orange *adj* (*color*) auránti·us -a -um,
lúte·us -a -um

orange māl·um -ī *n* aurántium; (*color*)
col·or -óris *m* lúteus

orangeade mālī aurántiī pótī·ō -ónis *f*

orange juice aurántiī succ·us -ī *m*

orbit órbit·a -ae *f*

orchard pōmári·um -ī *n*

orchestra symphóni·a -ae *f*,
symphō·niac·ī -órum *mpl*

ordinal *adj* ōrdinál·is -is -e (ut “prīmus”
first)

organ (*anat*) vīsc·us -eris *n*; (*musical*
instrument) órgan·um -ī *n* músicum

ostrich strūthiocamél·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)

other áli·us -a -ud

ouch! au!; ei!; oeei!

ought déb·eō -ére -uī -itus

ounce ūnci·a -ae *f*

our nost·er -ra -rum

out: out of doors forīs; **out of place: if it is not out of place** nisi aliénūm est; **out of fear** propter metum; **out of wood** dē lignō; **out with it!** (*tell me!*) cedo! (*pl: cette!*) [*an old imperative*]; **the book is not yet out** liber ē prēlō nōndum éxiit

outdo superāre

outdoors forīs

outfielder extérn·us cust·ōs -ōdis *mf*

outfit hábit·us -ūs *m*, sýnthēs·is -is *f*

outlet (*electrical*) ēléctrica cápsul·a -ae *f*
contáctūs

outline dēlineáti·ō -ōnis *f*

outline *tr* dēlineāre

output (*comput*) éxit·us -ūs *m*

outside (*direction*) forās; (*position*) forīs

outspoken libéri·or (*gen: -ōris*)

outstanding praest·āns -ántis

oven furn·us -ī *m*

over (*above*) (*with motion*) super (+ *acc*); (*in position*) suprā (+ *acc*); **it's all over!** āctum est!; **over sixty years old** māior (quam) annōs sexāgintā nāt·us -a; **when the battle was over** cōnféctō proéliō

overalls encombóm·a -atis *n*

overcast nūbilós·us -a -um, nūbil·us -a -um; **become overcast** nūbilāre

overcoat superindūmént·um -ī *n*

over-confident nimis cōnfíd·ēns -éntis

overhead projector prōiectóri·um -ī *n*
superācapitāle

overtime (*in a game*) additícium
temp·us -oris *n*

overture exórdi·um -ī *n* (*melodrámatís*)

overwhelmed: be overwhelmed with work óbru·or -ī óbrutus sum,
tamquam flūctū, sic ópere

owl búb·ō -ōnis *m*; **owls hoot** búbónēs
búbilant (*see bird*)

ox bōs, bovis *m*; **oxen bellow** bovēs
boant

oyster óstre·a -ae *f*

oyster bed ostreári·um -ī *n*

oyster shell óstreae test·a -ae *f*

P

pack (*e.g., a theater*) stipāre; **pack up the luggage** sárcinās (*or sarcínulās or vāsa*) cōllig·ō -ere collégī
colléctus

pack *s* (*of cigarettes*) capséll·a -ae *f*;
(*throng*) turb·a -ae *f*

package, packet fascícul·us -ī *m*

page págin·a -ae *f*; **at the bottom (top) of the page** in imā (summā) páginā

pain dol·or -ōris *m*; **be a big pain in the neck** molestíssim·us -a -um esse; **feel pain** dolóre affíc·ior -ī afféctus sum; **be in pain** dól·eō -ére -uī; **severe pain** ingēns *or* véhemēns dolor; **stop being a pain in the neck** moléstus (-a) nē sis; **take pains to** óperam dare ut (+ *subj*)

painstaking operós·us -a -um

paint *s* pigmént·um -ī *n*

paint *tr & intr* ping·ō -ere pīnxī pīctus

paint brush pēnicíll·us -ī *m*

painter pīct·or -ōris *m*, pīctr·īx -ícis *f*

painting (*the art; picture*) pīctūr·a -ae *f*;
(*painting on a board*) tābul·a -ae *f*
(pīcta) (*see Chapter V*)

pair pār paris *n*

pajamas sýnthes·is -is *f* dormitória

palate palāt·um -ī *n*

pale pállid·us -a -um

palm (*of the hand*) palm·a -ae *f*

pancake artolágan·um -ī *n*

panther panthér·a -ae *f*

pantry cell·a -ae *f* pēnária

pants brāc·ae -ārum *fpl*; **hot pants**
pérbrevēs brācae fēmíneae

pantyhose tibiál·ia -ium *npl* brācária

paper chart·a -ae *f*

paper *adj* chartáce·us -a -um

paperback lib·er -rī *m* chartā contéctus

paper clip fibícul·a -ae *f* chartárum

paperhanger tapētári·us -ī *m*

paprika cápsic·um -ī *n*

parachute dēcidícul·um -ī *n*

paragraph parágraph·us -ī *m*, cap·ut
-utis *n*

parakeet psittácul·us -ī *m*

parallel bars hast·ae -ārum *fpl*
parallélae

parcel fasc·is -is *m* (*or* fascícul·us -ī *m*)
cursuális

pardon *s* véni·a -ae *f*; **grant s.o. a**
pardon véniam álicui dare; **obtain**
pardon véniam impetráre

pardon *tr* ignósc·ō -ere ignóvī (+ *dat*);
pardon me for what I said ignósce
mihi, quod dīxerō

parent parēns -éntis *mf*

parentage gen·us -eris *n*

park *s* hort·ī -ōrum *mpl*, viridári·um -ī *n*

park *tr* (*the car*) autocīnétum státuō,
statúere, státuī

parking fee tax·a -ae *f* statíva

parking lot áre·a -ae *f* statíva

parking-lot attendant cust·ōs -ōdis *mf*
áreae statívae

parking meter statímetr·um -ī *n*; **put a**
coin into the parking meter
nummum in statímetrum immítt·ō
-ere immísī immíssus

parking; no parking! cavē státuās
vehículum

parliament parlāmént·um -ī *n*; **member**
of parliament parlāméntári·us -ī *m*
(·a -ae *f*)

parrot psíttac·us -ī *m*

parse *tr* proprietátēs (+ *gen*) dēscríb·ō
-ere dēscrípī

parsley petroselín·um -ī *n*

part *s* par·s -tis *f*; (*in the hair*)
discrí·m·en -inis *n*

part *tr* (*the hair*) discrīmínáre

part of speech par·s -tis *f* ōrātiónis

participle participi·um -ī *n*; **past or**
perfect participle praetérītī témporis
participium; **present participle**
praeséntis témporis participium

particle partícul·a -ae *f* (*namely, the*
four parts of speech that are
indeclinable: adverb, preposition,
conjunction, interjection)

particular particulár·is -is -e; **in**
particular potíssimum

partly partim; **it is partly cloudy**
(**sunny**) **today** (caelum) hódīe est
partim núbilōsum (aprícum)

partridge perd·īx -ícis *mf* (*see bird*)

party (*side*) par·s -tis *f*, fácti·ō -ónis *f*;
(*celebration*) convívī·um -ī *n*; **give a**
party convívium dare; **throw a**

party convívium agítāre; **join a party** partī sē adiún·gō -gere -xī

pass *s* (defile) salt·us -ūs *m*; (basketball) corbifóll·is -is *m* trānsmíssus; (football) pedifóll·is -is *m* trānsmíssus

pass *tr* (go by) praetér·eō -íre -iī -itus; (ride by) praetér·vehor -vehī -véctus sum; (the time, life) ter·ō -ere trīvī trītus; (basketball, football, lacrosse) trāns·míttō -míttēre -mísī -míssus;

pass a law (rogātiónem or lēgem) pérferō perférre pértulī perlátus; **pass around** circúm·ferō -férre -tulī -látus; **pass a test** probātiónem sustín·eō -éire -uī; **pass out** distríbu·ō -ere -uī -tus; **pass sentence** dēcérn·ō -ere dēcrévī dēcrētus; **pass the bread, please!** pórrige pānem quaesō

II intr (of time) trānsíre; **pass away** (die) dēcéd·ō -ere dēcēssī; **it came to pass** factum est; **pass by** (go or ride by) praeteríre, praetérvehī; **pass for** (appear to be) probāre prō (+ *abl*); **pass out** (faint) colláb·or -ī collápsus sum

passage (in a text) loc·us -ī *m*; (across water) trānsit·us -ūs *m*

passbook (bank book) argentárie libéll·us -ī *m*

passenger vect·or -óris *m*, vectr·īx -ícis *f*

passenger train trām·en -inis *n* commúne

passing; no passing! cavē praeveháris!

passion cupídīt·ās -átis *f*; (lust) libíd·ō -inis *f*

passionate ārd·ēns -éntis

passionately efflíctim

passive *adj* passív·us -a -um

Passover Pascha *n* [indecl], Pasch·a -atis *n*

passport commeátūs diplóm·a -atis *n*

password (also comput) tésser·a -ae *f*

past *prep* praeter (+ *acc*)

past *s* praetérīt·a -órum *npl*; (gram) praetérīt·um temp·us -oris *n*; **in the past** ántehāc

pasta collýr·a -ae *f*

pastries cuppédi·a -órum *npl*

pastry baker cuppēdinári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

pastry shop cuppēdinári·a -ae *f*

pasture páscu·um -ī *n*

pathetic ēlāmentábil·is -is -e

patience patiēti·a -ae *f*

patient *adj* páti·ēns -éntis

patient *s* ae·ger -grī *m*, ae·gra -grae *f*

patiently aequō ánimō

patrician patríci·us -a -um

patriot amá·tor -tóris *m* (·trīx -trícis) *f* pátriae

patriotic am·āns -ántis pátriae

patriotism am·or -óris *m* pátriae

pattern *s* régul·a -ae *f*; (of weaving) text·us -ūs *m*

pauper paup·er -eris *mf*

pave; pave the way to viam fácere ad (+ *acc*)

pavement pavímént·um -ī *n*

paw pēs, pedis *m*

pay *s* merc·ēs -édīs *f*; (in the military) stīpēdi·um -ī *n* (see wages)

pay *tr* solv·ō -ere -ī solútus; **pay off** persólvere, exsólvere; **pay off a debt** débitum persólvere; **pay on time** ad tempus or ad diem dictam sólvere; **pay out (money) to** dēnumerāre (nummōs) (+ *dat*); **pay s.o. \$20 for** dēnumerāre álicui vīgintī dóllarōs prō

(+ *abl*); **pay s.o. a visit** áliquem
invís·ō -ere -ī **|| intr it pays to listen**
prétium óperae est auscultáre

payment solúti·ō -ónis *f* (pecúniae)

pay phone tēlephón·um -ī *n* nummárium

pea pīs·um -ī *n*; **pea soup** iūs, iūris *n* ex
pīsīs

peace pāx, pācis *f*; **break the peace**
pācem frang·ō -ere frēgī fractus;
bring about peace pācem conciliáre;
have peace negotiations with s.o.
ágere cum áliquō dē pāce; **in peace**
and in war domī et milítiae (*or in*
milítiā); **peace was concluded on**
condition that ... pāx convénit in
eam condiciónem ut ... ; **make**
peace with pācem fácere cum (+ *abl*)

peach pérsic·um -ī *n*

peacock pāv·ō -ónis *m*, pāv·a -ae *f* (*see*
bird)

peanut aráchis, aráchidis *f* hypogéa

peanut butter bŭtŭr·um -ī *n* ex
arachídibus; **put peanut butter on**
bread bŭtŭrum ex arachídibus pānī
adhibére

pear pir·um -ī *n*

pearl margarít·a -ae *f*

pearl earrings margarítæ -árum *fpl*
dēpendéntēs

pearl necklace moníl·e -is *n* baccátum

peck (*little kiss*) basíol·um -ī *n*

pedal pedál·e -is *n*

pedestrian ped·es -itis *mf*

pedestrian crossing tránsit·us -ūs *m*
péditum

pee ming·ō -ere mīnxī mīctum; (*coll*)
fácere

peel *s* cut·is -is *f*; (*rind, thick skin*)
córi·um -ī *n*, cort·ex -icis *m*; **apple**

peel mālī cut·is -is *f*; **orange peel**
córiūm mālī aurántiī

peel *tr* resecáre cutem (+ *gen*)

pelican onocrótāl·us -ī *m* (*see* bird)

pen penn·a -ae *f*, cálam·us -ī *m*
scríptórius

penalty poen·a -ae *f*; **pay the penalty**
poenās persól·v·ō -ere -ī, poenās dare

penalty kick (*from 11 meters*) ict·us -ūs
m ūndecim metrórūm; (*from 7*
meters) ictus septem metrórūm

pencil gráphi·um -ī *n*, stil·us -ī *m*
plúmbeus

pencil sharpener īnstrūmént·um -ī *n*
cuspidárium

pendulum perpendícul·um -ī *n*

peninsula paenínsul·a -ae *f*

pentathlon pentáthl·um -ī *n*; **win the**
pentathlon pentáthlō vinc·ō -ere vícī

penult *s* paenúltima sýllab·a -ae *f*

people hómīn·ēs -um *mpl*; **people who**
speak Latin quī Latínē loquúntur

pep aclácrit·ās -átis *f*

pepper pip·er -eris *n*

pepper shaker piperín·um -ī *n*

pep rally convént·us -ūs *m* hortátórius

pep talk allóqui·um -ī *n* hortátóriūm;
give a pep talk to allóquium
hortátóriūm habére apud (+ *acc*)

percent centésim·a -ae *f*

perch (*fish*) perc·a -ae *f*; (*for birds*)
pértic·a -ae *f*

perch *intr* (**on**) īnsídō -ere īnsédī (+ *dat*)

perfect perféct·us -a -um

perfectly (*totally*) plānē

perfect tense *s* temp·us -oris *n*
praetéritum perféctum

perform (*duty*) praest·ō -āre praestiti,
fung·or -ī functus sum (+ *abl*)

perfume unguent·um -ī *n*

perfume shop tabern·a -ae *f* unguentāria

perhaps fortāsse

period (*punctuation mark*) pūct·um -ī
n; (*span of time, class period*)
spāti·um -ī *n*; **in the third period**
tértiō spātiō; **I'll not give in. period!**
nōn concēdam. dīxi!; **period of life**
aet·ās -ātis *f* vītae

periodical periōdic·um -ī *n*

peristyle peristýli·um -ī *n*

perjure oneself periūrāre

perjury periūri·um -ī *n*; **commit**
perjury periūrāre

persistence assiduit·ās -ātis *f*

persistent assidu·us -a -um

person hom·ō -inis *mf*

personal *adj* persōnāl·is -is -e; **personal**
computer computāt·um -ī *n*
domesticum; **personal finances** rēs,
reī *f* familiāris; **personal injury**
iniūri·a -ae *f*

personality índol·ēs -is *f*

personally *adv* *expressed by* ipse, per
mē, per tē, etc.

pessimistic infēl·ix -ícis

pester moléstias áf·ferō -fērrē áttulī (+
dat)

pet dēlici·ae -ārum *fpl*; **have as a pet** in
dēliciis habēre

pet *tr* (*stroke*) permúlc·eō -ēre permúlsī;
(*fondle*) subigitāre **II** *intr* inter sē
subigitāre

pharmacist (*see* **druggist**)

pheasant phāsiān·a -ae *f* (*see* **bird**)

phew *interj* (*gratified surprise or relief*)
ehem!; (*at a bad smell*) fu!; fī!;

phew! what's that stench? fī!
quidnam est iste fētor?

phlegm pītuít·a -ae *f*

phobia phóbi·a -ae *f*

phone (*see* **telephone**)

phony affectāt·us -a -um

photo (*see* **photograph**)

photocopier máchin·a -ae *f* phōtotýpica

photocopy *s* exēmpl·ar -āris *n*
phōtotýpicum

photocopy *tr* phōtotýpicē dēscríbere

photograph *s* imág·ō -inis *f*
phōtographica; **take photographs**
imáginēs lūce exprímere

photograph *tr* phōtographicē redd·ō
-ere réddidī rédditus

photographer phōtograph·us -ī *m* (·a
-ae *f*)

photographic film taeníol·a -ae *f*
phōtographica

photography phōtographi·a -ae *f*

photo shop officín·a -ae *f* phōtographica

phrase *s* locúti·ō -ōnis *f*

physical condition córporis hábit·us
-ūs *m*

physical therapist iātralípt·ēs -ae *m*

physical therapy iātralíptic·ē -ēs *f*

pianist clávic·en -inis *mf*

piano clávicórdi·um -ī *n*; **play the**
piano clávicórdiō cánere

pick (*pluck*) carp·ō -ere -sī -tus; (*gather*)
leg·ō -ere lēgī lēctus; **pick** (*out*)
(*select*) élig·ō -ere ēlēgī ēlēctus; **pick**
pockets manticulārī **II** *intr* **pick on**
(*someone*) cárpere; **pick up a**
language linguam pérbibō perbíbere
pérbibī

pickle sálgam·um -ī *n*; **be in a pickle** in
angústias vers·or -ārī -átus sum

pickpocket *sacculári·us -ī m (-a -ae f), levát·or -óris m*

picnic *cēnul·a -ae f subdiális; go on a picnic* *excursiōnem ad cēnulam subdiálem sūmēdam fácere*

picnic basket *pānári·um -ī n*

picture *píctúr·a -ae f, imág·ō -inis f*

picture tube *tub·us -ī m tēlevísíficus*

pie *crúst·um -ī n; cherry pie* *cérasa npl in crústō cocta*

piece *frúst·um -ī n; (often not expressed by any separate word, the substantive denoting the piece, e.g., pānis a piece of bread; cáseus a piece of cheese; charta, chártula a piece of paper); break in pieces* *cōnfríng·ō -ere cōnfrégī cōnfráctus*

pig *porc·us -ī m; pigs oink* *porcī grúnniunt*

pigeon *colúmb·a -ae f, colúmb·us -ī m; pigeons coo* *colúmbae gemunt (see bird)*

pigeon coop *columbári·um -ī n*

pigsty *suíl·e -is n*

pill *pílul·a -ae f*

pillow *cervíc·al -ális n*

pillow case *cervicális tégim·en -inis n*

pilot *s guberná·tor -tóris m (-trīx -trícis f)*

pilot *tr gubernáre*

pin *ac·us -ūs f*

pinch *s a pinch of salt* *mēnsúr·a -ae f salis duórum (or trium) digitórum; in a pinch (fig) in angústíis; (in a doubtful situation) in rē dúbiā*

pinch *tr vellicáre* **II intr if the shoe pinches** *sī cálceus ūrit*

pineapple *māl·um -ī n píneum*

Ping-Pong *mēnsális pilae lūs·us -ūs m; play Ping-Pong* *mēnsálī pilā lúdere*

pink *róse·us -a -um*

pipe *fístul·a -ae f aquária; (of an organ) órganī fístula*

pipe organ *órgan·um -ī n fístulīs ínstrúctum*

pitcher *úrce·us -ī m; (in baseball) coniec·tor -tóris m (-trīx -trícis f)*

pitcher's mound *coniectóris (coniectrícis) grūm·us -ī m*

pitiful *flébil·is -is -e; (contemptible) abiéct·us -a -um*

pity *s misericórdi·a -ae f; feel pity for commiserēsc·ō -ere (+ gen)*

pity *tr misér·eor -éři -itus sum (+ gen); I pity you* *miséreor tuī (pl: vestrī)*

pizza *pitt·a -ae f*

place *loc·us -ī m (pl loc·a -órum npl); at your place (at your home) apud tē; from that place* *illinc; in place of a parent* *in locum paréntis; in the first place* *primum; in the same place* *íbidem; out of place* *alién·us -a -um; take place (occur)* *fiō fieri factus sum; take s.o.'s place* *locum alicúius ūsurpāre; to that place* *eō; this is not the place to ... nōn est hic locus ut (+ subj); to the same place* *eódem*

place *tr pōnere, locáre*

plain *camp·us -ī m; open plains* *campī paténtes*

plaintiff *petít·or -óris m, petít·r·ix -ícis f*

plan *tr in ánimō habére, intén·dō -dere -dī -tus*

plan *s cōnsíli·um -ī n; form a plan* *cōnsílium ín·eō -íre -iī -tus; make plans for the trip* *cōnsílium cápere dē itínere*

plane *āeróplan·um -ī n; (carpenter's tool) runcín·a -ae f*

plane *tr* (e.g., a board) runcīnāre

plant *s* plant·a -ae *f*

plant *tr* ser·ō -ere sēvī sātus; **plant a field** agrum cōnsérere

plaster *s* tēctōri·um -ī *n*

plaster *tr* (a wall) tēctōrium (parietī) indūcere

plasterer tēct·or -ōris *m*

plate pátin·a -ae *f*, catīn·us -ī *m*;
(smaller size) patéll·a -ae *f*, catíll·us -ī *m*

platform suggést·us -ūs *m*; (in a train station) crepíd·ō -inis *f* (ferriviária)

play *s* (fun) lūd·us -ī *m*; (in a theater) fábul·a -ae *f*

play *tr* (radio, television, records, tapes, etc.) ūsurpāre

play *tr* & *intr* lúdere; (an instrument) can·ō -ere cécini cantus (+ *abl* of the instrument); (records, tapes) impell·ō -ere impulsi impulsus; **play a game** lūsum lúdere; **play a good game** bene lúdere; **play a trick on** lūdífic·or -ārī -átus sum (+ *acc*); **play ball** pilā lúdere; **play checkers** latrúnculis lúdere; **play hide and seek** per lūsum latitāre; **play sports** dispórtibus lúdere; **play the drum** týmpanum pulsāre; **play the flute** tǐbiā cánere; **play the guitar** cítherā Hispānicā cánere; **play the organ** órganō cánere; **play the lead role** prímās partēs agere; **play the piano** clāvicórdiō cánere; **play the role of a general** imperátórem ágere; **play the trumpet** tǔbā cánere; **stop playing games** dēsiste lūdōs fácere **|| intr** lúdere; **play up to s.o.** áliquem col·ō -ere cóluī; **play around with** (sexually) lúdere cum (+ *abl*)

player lūs·or -ōris *m*, lūs·rīx -ícis *f*

playground áre·a -ae *f* lūsória

playing card chártul·a -ae *f* lūsória

playing field camp·us -ī *m* lūsórius

playwright fābulárum scrīp·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

plead a case before the court causam prō tribūnālī ágere

pleasant amoén·us -a -um, iúcúnd·us -a -um

pleasantness iúcúndit·ās -átis *f*

please (in making an appeal) quaesō, sīs (= sī vīs); (informally) amábō tē; **whenever I please** quotiēscúmque (mihi) libet

pleased to meet you! mihi pergrátum est tē convenīre!

pleasing grát·us -a -um

pleasure volúpt·ās -átis *f*; **at their own pleasure** suō arbítriō; **derive great pleasure from** magnam voluptátem cápere ex (+ *abl*); **with pleasure** libénter

pleated undulát·us -a -um

plebeian plēbēi·us -a -um

plebs plēbs, plēbis *f*

pliers for·ceps -cipis *m*

plight: oh, what a sorry plight! O rem míseram!

plow *s* arátr·um -ī *n*

plow *tr* aráre

plug (electrical) spin·a -ae *f* contáctūs ēléctricī

plug in adnēct·ō -ere adnéxuī adnéxus

plum prūn·um -ī *n*

plumber fab·er -rī *m* plumbárius

plummet perpendícul·um -ī *n*

pluperfect tense *s* temp·us -oris *n* plūsqvamperféctum

plural *adj* plūrál·is -is -e; **in the plural** plūráliter

plural *s* multitud·ō -inis *f*; **signifying a plural** multitudinem significāns

plus sign crucicul·a -ae *f*

plus: consider it a plus id deputā esse in lucrō; **2 plus 2 are 4** duo et duo sunt (*or* fiunt) quattuor

pocket lócul·us -ī *m*

pocketbook (*purse*) crumén·a -ae *f*;
(*small book*) lib·er -rī *m* pugillāris

pocketknife cultéll·us -ī *m* plicābilis

podium pódi·um -ī *n*, púlpit·um -ī *n*

poem poém·a -atis *n*; **write a poem**
poéma fácere, con·dō -dere -didī
-ditus

poet poét·a -ae *m*

poetess poétrī·a -ae *f*

poetry poés·is -is *f*

poinsettia euphórbi·a -ae *f*

point (*sharp end*) acúm·en -inis *n*; (*of a spear*) cusp·is -idis *f*; (*gram, sports*) pūct·um -ī *n*; **at this point** hīc; hōc locō; **be on the point of ...** in eō esse ut (+ *subj*); **beside the point** nihil ad rem; **but to return to the point ...** sed ad prōpósitum ...; **get the point?** tenēsne (*pl*: tenētísne) rem?; **get to the point!** venī ad rem!; **good point** vírt·ūs -útis *f*; **it got to the point where** eō decúrsum est ut (+ *subj*); **main point** summ·a -ae *f*; **now here's the point** nunc cognósce rem; **on that point** hāc de rē; **score a point** pūctum ferō ferre tulī lātus; **that's the main point** id caput est; **the point is that I no longer care about such things** quod caput est, iam ista nōn cūrō; **up to this point** hāctenus; **what was the point of your writing to me?** quid rētulit tē mittere ad mē lītterās?; **what's the point of that?** quam ad rem istud rēfert?; **what's your point?** (*what*

are you driving at?) quō ēvādis?; **you miss the point** nihil ad rem pertainet

point-blank: turn down point-blank
omnīnō repudiāre

point out indicāre, mōnstrāre

pointer (*comput*) (mūris) ind·ex -icis *m*

pointless supervacu·us -a -um, inān·is -is -e

poke (*jab*) pung·ō -ere púpugī, fodicāre;
poke fun at s.o. áliquem ēlúdere

pole vaulting salt·us -ūs *m* perticārius
(*see Chapter V*)

police officer vig·il -ilis *mf*

policy ráti·ō -ónis *f*

polish *s* (*for shoes*) cērōm·a -atis *n*

polish shoes cálceōs pól·iō -íre -ívī -ítus

polite (to) cōm·is -is -e (+ *dat or ergā or in + acc*)

politeness cōmit·ās -átis *f*

political cīvīl·is -is -e; **for political reasons** reī públicae causā; **political affairs** (*or matters*) rēs, rērum *fpl* cīvīlēs; **political career** curs·us -ūs *m* honōrum; **political science** sciēti·a -ae *f* cīvīlis

politician vir -ī *m* cīvīlis, fēmina -ae *f* cīvīlis

politics rēs pública (*gen*: reī públicae) *f*, res cīvīlis (*also plural*); **enter politics** rem públicam íneō ínfre ínívī *or* ínīi; **take part in politics** in rē públicā vers·or -ārī -átus *sum*

polka saltáti·ō -ónis *f* Bohémica; **dance the polka** Bohémicē saltāre

polling booth saept·um -ī *n*

polls saept·a -órum *npl*

polo alsūlēgi·a -ae *f* equestris

polo shirt subúcul·a -ae *f* cum curtīs mánicīs

pomegranate māl·um -ī *n* grānātum

pompous glōriōs·us -a -um

pond stāgn·um -ī *n*

pony mann·us -ī *m*

pool stāgn·um -ī *n*; (*for swimming*)

piscīn·a -ae *f*; (*billiards*) lūd·us -ī *m*

tudiculāris; **shoot pool** glóbulōs

ebúrneōs clāvā tudiculārī super

mēnsam impéll·ō -ere ímpulī

poor (*pitiful*) mis·er -era -erum;

(*impoverished*) paup·er -eris [*single-ending adj*]; **poor guy** mis·er -erī *m*

pop tat·a -ae *m*

popcorn maízi·um -ī *n* ínflátum

pop music músic·a -ae *f* populāris

poppy papáv·er -eris *n*

popular grātiōs·us -a -um; **be popular**

with s.o. grātiōsus (-a) esse apud
áliquem

popularity gráti·a -ae *f*; **enjoy**

popularity among grátiam háb·eō
-ēre -uī -itus apud (+ *acc*)

population multítúd·ō -inis *f*; **the total
number of the population** númer·us
-ī *m* omnis multítúdinis

porch pérgul·a -ae *f*

porcupine hystr·ix -icis *f*

pork porcīn·a -ae *f*

pork chop off·a -ae *f* porcīna

port (*also comput*) port·us -ūs *m*

porter báiu·us -ī *m*

portico pórtic·us -ūs *f*

position loc·us -ī *m*; **what position do
you play?** quō locō lúdis?

positive *s* (*gram*) grad·us -ūs *m*
positívus

possessive *adj* (*gram*) possessív·us -a
-um

possible possíbil·is -is -e; **if (it is)**

possible sī fíerī potest; **is it really**

possible that ... ? numquid ... ?; **is**

it really possible that you are

telling the truth? numquid vēra
dīcis?

post *tr* (*e.g., on the bulletin board*)

prō·pōnō -pōnere -pōsuī -pōsitus

postage vectúr·a -ae *f* (litterárum); **pay**

the postage prō vectúrā epístulae
solv·ō -ere -ī

postage stamp pittáci·um -ī *n* cursuále

postal delivery perláti·ō -ōnis *f* cursuális

postcard chártul·a -ae *f* cursuális; (*with
a picture*) phōtochártul·a -ae *f*
cursuális

poster fóli·um -ī *n* mūrále

postman tabellári·us -ī *m*

post office diribitóri·um -ī *n* cursuále

post office window ostíol·um -ī *n*
cursuále

pot (*of clay*) oll·a -ae *f*; (*of metal*)

a(h)én·um -ī *n*; (*marijuana*)

cánnab·is -is *f*; **go to pot** pessum eō

íre ii; **pots and pans** vās·a -órum *npl*

coquínāria; **smoke pot** fūmum

cánnabis sūg·ō -ere sūxī

pot belly vent·er -ris *m* obésus; **have a**

potbelly ventre obésō (*or* prōiectō)
esse

potato pōm·um -ī *n* terréstre; **baked**

potato pōmum terréstre in furnō

coctum; **fried potatoes** pōma

terréstria frícta; **mashed potatoes**

pultícul·a -ae *f* ex pōmīs terréstribus

potato chips lámin·ae -árum *fpl*

pōmórum terréstrium

pottery fictíl·ia -ium *npl*

potty matéll·a -ae *f*

poultry av·ēs -ium *fpl* cohortálēs

pound libr·a -ae *f*; **per pound** in librās

power drill térebr·a -ae *f* māchinālis

power saw serr·a -ae *f* māchinālis

practically ferē

practice *s* exercitāti·ō -ōnis *f*

practice *tr* (*patience, medicine*) exerc·eō
-ēre -uī **||** *intr* sē exercēre

praetor praet·or -ōris *m*

praetorship praetūr·a -ae *f*

precise exāct·us -a -um

prefer mālō malle mālui; praē·ferō
-fēre -tulī -lātus

prefix *s* praeposīti·ō -ōnis *f* per
compositiōnem

prepare (*make ready*) parāre; (*make
ready beforehand*) praeparāre

preposition *s* praeposīti·ō -ōnis *f* (per
appositiōnem); **prepositions take**
(*lit: serve*) **either the accusative or
the ablative case** praepositiōnēs aut
accūsātivō aut ablātivō cāsui sērviant

prescription praecēpt·um -ī *n* mēdicum

present *adj* praes·ēns -ēntis; **at present,**
in praesentiā; **at the present time**
praesentiā tēmpore, in praesentī; **be
present (at)** adsum adēsse adfuī
adfutūrus (+ *dat*); **for the present
time** in praesens tempus; **present
tense** praesens temp·us
-oris *n*

preside (over) praesīd·eō -ēre praesēdī
(+ *dat*); **preside at a trial** iūdiciō
praesēsse, iūs dīcere

president praes·es -idis *mf*

presiding judge quaesīt·or -ōris *m*,
quaesīt·īx -īcis *f*

press *s* (*for printing*) prēl·um -ī *n*;
(*journalists*) diurnāri·ī -ōrum *mpl*;
(*printed matter*) scripta *npl* typīs
ēdita; **come off the press** prēlō ex·eō
-īre -iī; **send (a work) to the press**

(opus) prēlō subīc·iō -ere subiēcī
subiēctus

press *tr* prem·ō -ere pressī pressus;
(*clothes*) lēvigāre; (*a typewriter key*)
dēprimere **||** *intr* **press on** instāre;
press on and finish the job! instā,
pérfice!

press conference congrēss·us -ūs *m*
diurnāriīs docēndīs

prestige auctōrit·ās -ātis *f*

presumptuous cōnfīd·ēns -ēntis

pretend: I'll pretend I don't know him
dissimulābō mē eum nōvīsse; **I'll
pretend I'm leaving** assimulābō
quasi ābeam.

pretext praetēxt·um -ī *n*; **a pretext for
war** praetēxtum bellī; **he left under
the pretext that ...** hinc ābiit quasi
(+ *subj*)

pretty bell·us -a -um, bēllul·us -a -um

pretty well (*just about*) propémodum

pretzel pretiōl·a -ae *f*, līxul·a -ae *f*; **soft
pretzel** pretiōla mollis

previously āntēā, āntehāc, prius

prey praed·a -ae *f*

price prēti·um -ī *n*; **at a high (low, very
low, exorbitant) price** magnō
(parvō, mínimō, nímiō); **higher price**
prētium āmplius; **set a price** prētium
fācere; **the price for it is 10 denarii
per pound** prētium eī in librās est
decem dēnāriīs

pride glóri·a -ae *f*; **source of pride**
glóri·a -ae *f*; **take pride in** glóri·or
-ārī dē or in (+ *abl*)

priest sacērd·ōs -ōtis *mf*

priesthood sacerdoti·um -ī *n*

prime minister minís·ter -trī *m*
přimārius

principal (*fin*) cap·ut -itis *n*, sors, sortis *f*; **deduct the interest from the principal** dē cāpite ūsūrās dēdūcere

principal (lūdī *or* scholae) rēc·tor -tōris *m*, rēc·trīx -trīcis *f*; **assistant (or vice) principal** rēctor vicārius, rēctrix vicāria; **principal's office** rēctoris (*or* rēctricis) officīn·a -ae *f*

principal parts part·ēs -ium *fpl*
prīncipālēs

print *s* (*printed dress*) vest·is -is *f*
imāgīnibus imprēssa

print *tr* (*with type*) typīs imprimō
imprimere impressī impressus

printer (*person*) typógraph·us -ī *m*;
(*mechanical device*) máchin·a -ae *f*
typogrāphica, impressōri·um -ī *n*

printer's typographē·um -ī *n*

printing (*abstract*) typogrāphi·a -ae *f*

printing office officīn·a -ae *f*
typogrāphica

printing press prēl·um -ī *n*
typogrāhicum, typographē·um -ī *n*

print shop officīn·a -ae *f* typogrāphica

prison carc·er -eris *m*; **throw s.o. into prison** āliquem in cárcerem coníc·iō
-ere coniecī coniectus

prisoner of war captīv·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); **ransom prisoners** captívōs
rédim·ō -ere redēmī redēptus

private *adj* prīvāt·us -a -um; **in private**
in prīvātō

private *s* (*mil*) mīl·es -itis *mf*; gregārius
(·a)

privately clam, sēcrētō; **I want to speak with you privately** velim tēcum loquī sēcrētō

prize praēmi·um -ī *n*; **first prize**
prīmāri·um -ī *n*; **second prize**
secundāri·um -ī *n*; **win a prize**

praēmium aúferō, aúferre ábstulī
ablātus

problem quaēsti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*math*)
problēm·a -atis *n*; **have stomach (heart, back) problems** stómachō
(corde, tergō) dól·eō -ēre -uī; **the problem is ...** quaeritur ... ; **what's the problem?** quid est negōtī?

processor (*comput*) ēditōri·um -ī *n*

producer chorág·us -ī *m*

productivity (*of fields, mines, etc.*)
fertilit·ās -ātis *f*

profession (*learned occupation*)
professi·ō -ōnis *f*

professor profess·or -ōris *m*, profēstr·ix
-īcis *f*

profit lucr·um -ī *n*; **make profit** lucrū
fācere

program *s* (*also comput*) prográmm·a
-atis *n*

program *tr* (*comput*) programmāre

programmer (*comput*) programmā·tor
-tōris *m*, (·trīx -trīcis *f*)

progress prōfēct·us -ūs *m*; **make progress** prōfic·iō -ere prōfēcī
prōfēctum

projector prōiectōri·um -ī *n*; **overhead projector** prōiectōrium suprācapitāle

promise *s* prōmíss·um -ī *n*; **break promises** prōmissa frang·ō -ere frēgī
frāctus; **I am not making any definite promise** nihil certī pollíceor;
keep promises prōmissa servāre;
make many promises multa
prōmíttēre

promise *tr* prōmítt·ō -ere prōmísī
prōmíssus

promote prōmóv·eō -ēre prōmóvī
prōmótus; (*the arts, etc.*) fōv·eō -ēre
fōvī fōtus; (*in school*) ad superiōrem
classem prōmovēre; **promote to**

higher rank ad (*or in*) ampliōrem gradum prōmovēre
promotion prōmōti·ō -ōnis *f*
prompt (*comput*) mōnit·us -ūs *m*
pronoun prōnōm·en -inis *n*
pronounce *tr* prōnūntiāre; **pronounce a vowel short or long** vocālem corrēptē aut prōdūctē prōnūntiāre
proof documēt·um -ī *n*; (*esp. of guilt*) indīci·um -ī *n*
proofread légere et ēmendāre
proper dec·ēns -ēntis, decōr·us -a -um
proper noun *s* prōpriūm nōm·en -inis *n* (ut “Hector” **Hector**) (*opp*: appellatīvum nōmen (ut “homō” man))
property bon·a -ōrum *npl*
propose (a law) (lēgem) ferō ferre tulī lātus
prose prōs·a -ae *f*
prosecute iūdiciō pērsequ·or -ī persecūtus sum
prosecutor accūsā·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trīcis *f*)
prostitute méretr·īx -īcis *f*, prōstitūt·a -ae *f*; **be a prostitute** prōst·ō -āre prōstiū
proud glōriōs·us -a -um; (*haughty*) supérb·us -a -um; **be proud of** glōri·or -ārī (+ *acc or dē or in + abl*)
prove (*by evidence, argument*) probāre; **this proves that ...** documētō est (+ *acc & inf*)
province prōvīnci·a -ae *f*
prune prūn·um -ī *n* condītum
psychiatric psýchiātric·us -a -um
psychiatrist psýchiāt·er -rī *m* (·ria -riae *f*)
psychiatry psýchiātrí·a -ae *f*

psychic psýchic·us -a -um
psychoanalysis psýchoanálysis -is *f*
psychoanalyst psýchoanályst·a -ae *m* (·ria -riae *f*)
psychologist psýchológ·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
psychopath *s* psychopáthic·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
public públic·us -a -um; **in public** in públicō; (*opp. domī*) forīs; **appear in public** prōd·eō -īre -īī in públicum
publish ēd·ō -ere ēdidī ēditus, publicāre
publisher ēdit·or -ōris *m*; (*publishing house*) dom·us -ūs *f* ēditória
pudding érne·um -ī *n*
pull *s* **have pull with** grātiam habēre apud (+ *acc*)
pull *tr* trah·ō -ere traxī tractus; **pull a fast one on s.o.** ōs álicui súb·linō -línere -lévī; **pull oneself together** sē cóllig·ō -ere collégī; **pull the wool over s.o.’s eyes** súbdol·us (-a) esse advērsus áliquem
pullman car curr·us -ūs *m* dormitórius
pulse vērārum puls·us -ūs *m*; (**fast** vegétior; **weak** languídior); **feel s.o.’s pulse** vērās *or* pulsum vērārum álicúius tentāre
pumpkin cucúrbit·a -ae *f*, pep·ō -ōnis *m*
punch *s* pugn·us -ī *m*; **give s.o. a punch** (*or land a punch on s.o.*) pugnum álicui dūcere
punch *tr* pugnō *or* pugnīs caed·ō -ere cecídī
punching bag córyc·us -ī *m*, foll·is -is *m* pugilātórius
punctual dílig·ēns -ēntis, prompt·us -a -um
punctually témporī, ad tempus
punctuate inter·púngō -púngere -púnxi -púnctus

punctuation *s* interpuncti·ō -ōnis *f*

punctuation mark *s* interpunct·um -ī *n*,
punct·um -ī *n*

punish pūn·iō -īre -īvī *or* -īī -ītus; poenā
affic·iō -ere affēcī affēctus

punishment for crimes poen·a -ae *f*
facinorum

puny pusill·us -a -um

pup cātul·us -ī *m*; **pups whimper** cātulī
gānniunt

pupil discipul·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); (*of the*
eye) pūpill·a -ae *f*

puppet neuropást·um -ī *n*

puppy cātul·us -ī *m*; catéll·us -ī *m*,
catéll·a -ae *f*

purchase *s* ēempt·um -ī *n*

purchase *tr* em·ō -ere ēmī ēemptus;
merc·or -ārī -ātus sum; comparāre

purchasing ēempti·ō -ōnis *f*

purr *intr* (*of a cat*) murmurāre

purr *s* (*of a cat*) murm·ur -uris *n*

purse crumén·a -ae *f*; marsūpi·um -ī *n*

put pōn·ō -ere pōsuī pōsitus; **put an end**
to finem impōnere (+ *dat*); **put away**
sēpōnere; **put down** dēpōnere; **put**
off: let's put this off to another
time hanc rem in āliud tempus
differāmus; **put on (clothes)** indu·ō
-ere -ī -ūtus (*opp*: exúere); **put s.o. in**
prison āliquem in custōdiam trā·dō
-dere -didī -ditus; **put up for sale**
vēnum dare; **put up with with s.o.**
āliquem perpét·ior -ī perpéssus sum;
put words into s.o.'s mouth verba in
ore alicúius pōnere; **put yourself in**
my place fac quī ego sum, esse tē;
you're putting it on a little thick es
pūtidiúculus (-a)

puzzle aeníg·m·a -atis *n*

pyjamas sýnthes·is -is *f* dormitória

Q

quaestor quaest·or -ōris *m*

quaestorship quaestúr·a -ae *f*

quail cotúr·n·īx -ícis *f* (*see bird*)

quarrel *intr* (**with s.o. about**) altercārī
or rīxārī (cum + *abl*, dē + *abl*)

quarrel rīx·a -ae *f*

question rogāt·um -ī *n*, interrogāt·um -ī
n; **ask a question** interrogāre; **ask a**
loaded question captiósē interrogāre;
ask many questions multa
interrogāre; **answer the question** ad
rogātum (*or* interrogātum)
respōnd·eō -ēre -ī; **call into question**
in dúbium vocāre; **I ask you this**
question tē hoc rogō; **many**
questions are raised multa
quaerúntur; **no question, he's at**
fault nempe in culpā est; **that's a**
loaded question captiósūm
interrogātum est; **why do you ask**
such questions? cūr ista quaeris?;
without question sine dúbio

question mark sign·um -ī *n* interrogāti

quick cel·er -eris -ere; (*mentally*)
astút·us -a -um

quickly cito

quiet quiét·us -a -um; (*silent*) tácit·us -a
-um; (*taciturn*) tacitúr·us -a -um;
quiet! fac (*pl*: fácite) siléntium!;
tacē! (*pl*: tacéte)!; **why don't you**
keep quiet? quīn tū tacēs?

quite ádmodum; **not quite** parum

quiz probātiúncul·a -ae *f* (*see exam*)

quote pōn·ō -ere pōsuī pōsitus, áffero
afférre áttulī allátus

R

rabbi rabbín·us -ī *m*

rabbit cunícul·us -ī *m*

race (*lineage*) gen·us -eris *n*; (*foot race*) certām·en -inis *n* cursūs; (*horse race*) cursus -ūs *m* equōrum, equīri·a -ōrum *npl*; (*of chariots*) currīcul·um -ī *n*; (*of cars*) certām·en -inis *n* autocīnētōrum

race car, racing car autocīnēt·um -ī *n* curīfle

race track currīcul·um -ī *n*, stádi·um -ī *n*; (*for horses*) hippódrom·us -ī *m*

racket (*noise*) strépīt·us -ūs *m*; (*shouting*) clām·or -ōris *m*; (*tennis*) rētīcul·um -ī *n*; **raise a racket** clāmōrem toll·ō -ere sústulī sublātus

radiator calōris radiātr·um -ī *n*

radio radiophōn·um -ī *n*; **turn on (turn off) the radio** radiophōnum excitāre *or* accēnd·ō -ere -ī (expéd·iō -īre -īvī -ītus); **turn down (turn up) the radio** vim radiophōnī remitt·ō -ere remīsī (amplificāre)

radio broadcast ēmissi·ō -ōnis *f* radiophōnica

radio station stāti·ō -ōnis *f* radiophōnica

radish rādīcul·a -ae *f*, ráphan·us -ī *m*

raft rat·is -is *f*

rage fur·or -ōris *m*; **fly into a rage** irā éfferor éfferrī ēlātus sum

raid excūrsi·ō -ōnis *f*

railroad ferrīvi·a -ae *f*

railroad car curr·us -ūs *m* ferriviárius

railroad station stāti·ō -ōnis *f* ferriviária

rain *impers v* pluit plúere pluit; **rain buckets** urceátim plúere; **rain cats and dogs** cattīs canibúsque plúere; **rain hard** vehemēter (*or* multum) plúere

rain *s* plúvi·a -ae *f*; (*heavy and stormy*) im·ber -bris *m*; **heavy, steady rain** magnī et adsíduī imbrēs; **the rain is letting up or is tapering off** imber détūméscit

rain basin (*in the atrium*) implúvi·um -ī *n*

rainbow plúvius arc·us -ūs *m*

rain cloud nimb·us -ī *m*

raincoat scórte·a -ae *f*; (*hooded*) paénul·a -ae *f*

rainy plúvi·us -a -um

raise (*children, crops, animals*) ēducāre; (*lift up*) toll·ō -ere sústulī sublātus; (*prices*) aúg·eō -ēre auxī auctus

raisin (ūva) pass·a -ae *f*

rake *s* rastéll·us -ī *m*

rake *tr* rastéllō ērá·dō -dere -sī -sum

RAM (*comput*) memóri·a -ae *f* volātīlis

ram ari·ēs -etis *m*; **rams bleat** arīetēs bālant

rank grad·us -ūs *m*

rape stupr·um -ī *n* per vim

rape *tr* per vim stupráre, stuprō violáre

rapids vad·um -ī *n* cándicāns

rapist stuprát·or -ōris *m*

rare sēmicóct·us -a -um (*opp*: percóctus)

rarely rārō

raspberry mōr·um -ī *n* Īdaéum

rat mū·s -ris *m*, ratt·us -ī *m*; (*pej*) hom·ō -inis *m* nequam [*indecl*]; **I smell a rat** áliquīd mihi súbolet; **like drowned rats** tamquam mūrēs ūdī; **rats squeak** rattī míntriunt

rat on s.o. áliquem dēferō dēfērre détuli

rate: at any rate útique

rather pótius; (*somewhat*) aliquántō, paulō; **do you know this fellow?** huncne nōvísti? **rather!** fácie!

ratify a bill lēgem iúb·eō -ēre iussī iussus

rattle off cito volv·ō -ere -ī

- raven** corv·us -ī *m*; **ravens croak** corvī crócitant (*see* **bird**)
- raze to the ground** solō aequāre
- razor** novācul·a -ae *f*; **electric razor** rāsōri·um -ī *n* ēléctricum
- reach** *s* out of **reach** extrā ictum; **within my reach** sub meō ictū
- reach** *tr* (*arrive at*) pervén·iō -īre *ad or* in (+ *acc*); **reach out the hand** manum pórrig·ō -ēre porréxī
- read** legō légere lēgī lēctus
- readily** (*willingly*) libénter
- reading** lēcti·ō -ōnis *f*
- reading lamp** lamp·as -adis *f* lēctória
- reading room** oec·us -ī *m* lēctórius
- ready** parát·us -a -um, prompt·us -a -um
- real estate** rēs *fpl* solī; **piece of real estate** praédi·um -ī *n*
- real estate broker** praediá·tor -tōris *m*, (-trīx -trícis *f*)
- really** quidem, vērō
- reap** met·ō -ere méssuī messus
- reaper** mess·or -ōris *m*
- rear (end)** (*coll*) postíc·um -ī *n*
- reason** (*faculty, reasonable ground*) ráti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*cause*) caus·a -ae *f*; **for that reason** hāc dē causā; **for various reasons** multīs dē causīs; **what's the reason why ...** quid est enim, cūr ...
- reboot** (*comput*) redinitiāre
- rebut** dissólv·ō -ere -ī dissolútus
- rebuttal** dissolúti·ō -ōnis *f*
- recall** revocāre; (*to memory*) memóriā répet·ō -ere -īvī -ītus; **as I recall** ut mea memória est
- receipt** ápoch·a -ae *f*
- receiver** (*of a telephone*) auscultábul·um -ī *n*
- recent** rec·ēns -éntis
- recently** nūper, recēter
- reception** salūtāti·ō -ōnis *f* pública; **hold a reception** salūtātiōnem públicam fácere
- recess** paus·a -ae *f*; **during (after, before)** recess inter (*post, ante*) pausam
- recitation** recitāti·ō -ōnis *f*
- recite** recitāre
- record** orb·is -is *m* phōnogrāphicus; phōnodísc·us -ī *m*; **play (listen to)** **records** orbēs phōnogrāphicōs exhíb·eō -ēre -uī (aúd·iō -īre -īvī)
- record player** mächínul·a -ae *f* phōnogrāphica; discophōn·um -ī *n*
- recording secretary** (*in the Roman senate*) librári·us -ī *m*
- recover** *tr* recuperāre **||** *intr* (*recoverate*) revalésc·ō -ere, suam valētúdinem recípere; **recover from a serious illness** ē gravī morbō recreārī
- recruit** *s* tīr·ō -ōnis *m*; **raw recruit** tīrō rudis
- recruit** *tr* **recruit troops** diléctum ágere
- recruitment** diléct·us -ūs *m*
- rectum** ān·us -ī *m*
- red** ru·ber -bra -brum; **be red** rúb·eō -ēre
- red cent: I don't owe anyone a red cent** assem aerárium nēminī débeō; **I haven't a red cent** assem aerárium hábeō nullum
- redhead** rŭf·us -ī *m*, rŭtil·us -ī *m*; rŭf·a -ae *f*, rŭtil·a -ae *f*
- referee** árbi·ter -trī *m* (-tra -trae *f*)
- refined** hŭmán·us -a -um

reform ēmendāre

refrigerator frīgidār·ium -ī *n*

regards: give him (her) my best

regards dīcītō eī plūrimam meīs
verbīs salūtem

regiment lēgi·ō -ōnis *f*

regimental commander legiōnis

legāt·us -ī *m*

region régi·ō -ōnis *f*

register (*at a hotel*) nōmen in tábulās

réferō reférre réttulī

regret *s* paenitēti·a -ae *f*

regret *tr* **I regret** mē paénitet (+ *gen*)

regularly assiduē

reindeer tarándr·us -ī *m*

reject a bill lēgem (*or* rogātiōnem)

antīquāre

relative *adj* relātv·us -a -um

relative *s* cognāt·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

relax sē remittō -ere remīsi

relentless dīr·us -a -um

relief: be a relief levāméntō esse

relieve levāre; **relieve oneself** (*have a
bowel movement*) ventrem exonerāre

rely on cōnfīd·ō -ere cōnfīsus sum (+
dat); **relying on** frēt·us -a -um (+ *dat*
or abl)

remain mán·eō -ēre mānsī mānsúrus; **it
remains to** restat ut (+ *subj*)

remedy remédi·um -ī *n*; **apply a**

remedy remédium adhibēre

remember commemorāre; mémin·ī -ísse
(+ *gen or acc*); **memóriā** tén·eō -ēre
-uī; **if I remember right** sī bene
méminī

reminder: as a reminder memóriae
causā

remote control moderātr·um -ī *n*
remótum

renown fām·a -ae *f*

rent *s* merc·ēs -ēdis *f*; **pay the rent for
this room** mercēdem huic cellae dare

rent *tr* condúcere; **rent out** locāre

repair shop officín·a -ae *f* reparātória

repeat répet·ō -ere -ívī -ítus, iterāre;

repeat after me eīsdem verbīs mihi
redde (*pl*: réddite)

repeatedly idéntidem

repetition repetítī·ō -ōnis *f*

reporter diurnári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

representative vicári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

repress (*emotions*) cohíb·eō -ēre -uī
-itus

repression continéti·a -ae *f*

republican rēpúblic·us -a -um

republicans optimát·ēs -ium *mpl*

reputation fām·a -ae *f*; **bad reputation**
infāmi·a -ae *f*; **good reputation**
honést·ās -átis *f*

rescue ēríp·iō -ere -uī ēréptus

research *s* investigāti·ō -ōnis *f*,
indāgāti·ō -ōnis *f*

research *tr* investigāre, indāgāre

resentful irācúnd·us -a -um

resentment irācúndi·a -ae *f*

reservation reservāti·ō -ōnis *f*

reserve reservāre

resolute cōnfirmāt·us -a -um

respect *s* observánti·a -ae *f*; **show
respect to** observāre

respect *tr* observāre

respectability honést·ās -átis *f*

respectable honést·us -a -um

respected honōrāt·us -a -um

respectful observ·āns -āntis

respectfully honōrificē, reverēter

responsibility for cūr·a -ae *f* (+ *gen*); **it is my responsibility to ...** est mihi cūrae (+ *inf*)

rest: the rest of the cēter·ī -ae -a

restaurant caupōn·a -ae *f*

restless inquiēt·us -a -um

restroom loc·us -ī *m* sēcŕētus; (*public*) fōrica -ae *f*, aumāti·um -ī *n*

retailer propōl·a -ae *m*

retake (*e.g., a town*) recīp·iō -ere recēpī recēptus

retire (*from a job*) in ōtium venīre

retirement ōti·um -ī *n*; **go into retirement** in ōtium venīre

return *tr* (*give back*) redd·ō -ere -idī -itus **II** *intr* (*go back*) rēd·eō -īre -iī or -īvī -itum

review *s* (*e.g., of a lesson*) retractāti·ō -ōnis *f*

review *tr* (*e.g., a lesson*) retractāre;
review the army exērcitum recēns·eō -ēre -uī, lūstrāre

rhinoceros rhīnócer·ōs -ōtis *m*

rib cost·a -ae *f*

rib *tr* (*taunt*) taxāre

ribbon taēni·a -ae *f*

rice orýz·a -ae *f*

rich dīv·es -itis

rich buck (*slang*) sacc·ō -ōnis *m*

riches dīvíti·ae -ārum *fp*

rid: get rid of (*worries*) dílu·ō -ere -ī; (*persons*) āmól·ior -īrī āmólītus sum

ride *s* vécti·ō -ōnis *f*; **go for a ride** gestātiōnem autocīnētō fácere

ride *tr* (*a bike, a horse, etc.*) (bírotā, equō) veh·or -ī vectus sum

rider vect·or -ōris *m*, vectr·īx -ícis *f*

ridge iug·um -ī *n*

ridiculous rīdícul·us -a -um

rifle sclopēt·um -ī *n*; **automatic rifle** sclopētum automátum; **fire a rifle** sclopētāre

rifleman sclopētāt·or -ōris *m*

right *adj* (*opp. of left*) dext·er -(e)ra -(e)rum; (*correct, proper*) rēct·us -a -um; **do the right thing** frūgem fácere; **on the right** ab dextrā, ā dēxterā; **(to the) right** dextrōrsum; **that's right** sīc est; **you're right** probē dīcis [*literally, you say correctly*], bene dīxístī or vēra dīcis.

right *adv* (*correctly*) rēctē; **right away** statim, contínuō; **right from the start** in prīncípīō ílicō; **right now** nunciam; **turn right** dextrōrsum sē vētere

right *s* iūs, iūris *n*; **civil rights** iūs cīvīle; **you have every right to ...** omne fās tibi est (+ *inf*); **waive one's rights** dēcēd·ō -ere dēcēssī iūre suō

rim (*of a wheel*) vit·us -ūs *f*

rind (*thick skin of fruit*) cōri·um -ī *n*

ring ānul·us -ī *m*; (*for boxing*) suggést·us -ūs *m* pugilātōrius; **take off a ring** ānulum dētrah·ō -ere dētrāxī; **wear a ring** ānulum gestāre

rise (*of a person, mountain*) surg·ō -ere surrēxī; (*of several persons, mountains*) cōnsúrgere; (*out of respect*) adsúrgere; (*of heavenly bodies*) ór·ior -īrī ortus sum; (*of a river, have its source*) (ex)órīor (ex)órīrī; **the Tiber rising in the Apennines** Tíberis monte Apennínō (ex)óriēns

risk: at your own risk tuō perículō; **run the risk** perículum fácere; **take a risk** perículum ád·eō -īre -īvī

risky anceps, ancípitis

river flūm·en -inis *n*, amn·is -is *m* (with
no distinction as to size)

river bed álve·us -ī *m*

roar (of a lion) rŭg·iō -īre -īi

roast *s* ass·um -ī *n*

roast *tr* assāre

roast beef búbul·a -ae *f* assa

roast pork porcīn·a -ae *f* assa

roast veal vitulīn·a -ae *f* assa

rob ráp·iō -ere -uī -tus; **rob s.o. of**
áliquem spoliāre (+ *abl*)

robber latr·ō -ōnis *m*; (home invader)
perfóss·or -ōris *m*

robbery latrōcīni·um -ī *n*

robe vest·is -is *f*

robin rubécul·a -ae *f*; **robins chirp**
rubéculae pīpant (*see* **bird**)

rocket roché·t·a -ae *f*

rocking chair sell·a -ae *f* ōscilláris

role model exémpl·ar -áris *n*

roll pānícul·us -ī *m*, pānicéll·us -ī *m*;
call roll nómīna recitāre

roll call nómīnum recitāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **take**
roll call nómīna recitāre

rollerblade, rollerskate *intr* pedírotīs
lābor lābī lāpsus sum (*see* **Chapter V**)

rollerblades pedírot·ae -árum *fpl*

rollerskate *intr* rótulīs patināre

rollerskate *s* cálce·us -ī *m* subrotátus,
pátin·us -ī *m* rotális

rollerskating patināti·ō -ōnis *f* rotális
(*see* **Chapter V**)

rolling pin fístul·a -ae *f*

ROM (comput) memóri·a -ae *f* fixa

Roman Rōmān·us -a -um

Rome Rōm·a -ae *f* (often referred to
simply as urbs)

roof tēct·um -ī *n*

roof tile tēgul·a -ae *f*

room concláv·e -is *n*, cubícul·um -ī *n*;
(small room) cell·a -ae *f*; **room with**
bath cubícul·um -ī *n* bálneō or
lavácrō (pluviō) ínstrúctum

room key clāv·is -is *f* cubiculáris

roommate sóci·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)
cubiculáris

rooster gall·us -ī *m*; **roosters crow** galli
cūcūriunt, canunt (*see* **bird**)

rose ros·a -ae *f*

rouge purpuríss·um -ī *n*, fūc·us -ī *m*

rough asp·er -era -erum; (weather)
túrbid·us -a -um; **rough guess**
ínformāta cogitāti·ō -ōnis *f*

round (in boxing) congréss·us -ūs *m*

round up cōg·ō -ere coégī coactus

route certus curs·us -ūs *m*

row ōrd·ō -inis *m*; **three in a row** trēs
ex ōrdīne

row *tr* rēmīgáre (*see* **Chapter V**)

rowboat scaph·a -ae *f* rēmígēra

row home aed·ēs -ium *fpl* seriálēs

rowing rēmīgāti·ō -ōnis *f*

rubbish! quisquíliae!

ruckus: why are you raising such a
ruckus? quid istum clāmōrem tollis
(*pl*: tóllitis)?

rude (character) asp·er -era -erum

rug tapét·e -is *n*

rugby harpást·um -ī *n*; **play rugby**
harpástō lúdere

rugged asp·er -era -erum

rule *s* régul·a -ae *f*; **break the rule**
régulam frang·ō -ere frēgī fractus;

follow (observe) the rule régulam servāre; **lay down rules** régulās īnstītu·ō -ere -ī

rule *tr* reg·ō -ére rēxī rēctus

ruler (instrument) régul·a -ae *f*
(*sovereign*) rēct·or -ōris *m*

rum vīn·um -ī *n* Índicum

rumor rūm·or -ōris *m*; **there's a rumor going around** rūmor pervagātur

rumpus: raise a rumpus turbās dare

run *tr* (*a business, shop*) (negótiūm, tabérnam) exérc·eō -ēre -uī -itus;
(*comput*) **run a program** prográmma administrāre; **run up bills** aes aliénūm cōnflāre || *intr* curr·ō -ere cucurrī cursum; **run around** cursāre; **run into s.o. on the street** áliquem offénd·ō -ere -ī in platēā; **run for (an office)** pet·ō -ere petīvī petītus; **run low** dēfíc·iō -ere dēfēcī; **run out (of time)** exīre; **run up and down** modo hūc modo illūc cursāre; (*comput*) **the program is running** prográmma operātur

running cursūr·a -ae *f*

runny nose distillātiōn·ēs -um *fpl*

runway aëródrom·us -ī *m*

S

Sabbath sábbat·a -ōrum *npl*

saber ēns·is -is *m* falcātus

sad trist·is -is -e; (*showing grief one one's face*) maest·us -a -um

saddle ephípp·ium -(i) ī *n*

sadness tristíti·a -ae *f*, maestíti·a -ae *f*

safe (from) tūt·us -a -um (*ab + abl*); **safe and sound** salv·us -a -um et sãn·us -a -um; **safe from danger** tūtus ā perículō

safe-deposit box dēpositóri·um -ī *n*
syngraphárum

safety pin fībul·a -ae *f*

sail *intr* nāvīgāre, nāve vehor vehī vectus sum

sail *s* vėl·um -ī *n*

sail boat scaph·a -ae *f* vėlífera

sailing vėlificāti·ō -ōnis *f* (*see Chapter V*)

sailor naut·a -ae *m*, naútri·a -ae *f*

sake: for heaven's sake obsécro (*lit: I pray*); **for the sake of** causā (+ *gen*) (*following the dependent genitive*); **for your sake** tuā (*pl: vestrā*) causā

salad acētári·a -ōrum *npl*

salad dressing *see* dressing

salary merc·ēs -édis *f*; **pay s.o. a fair salary** aequam mercēdem álicui solv·ō -ere -ī solūtus

sale vëndíti·ō -ōnis *f*; **for sale, on sale** vēnālící·us -a -um, vēnāl·is -is -e; **put up for sale** vēnum dare; **this house is for sale** hae aedēs sunt vēnālēs

saleslady (in a shop) tabernári·a -ae *f*;
(*in a clothing store*) vestiári·a -ae *f*

salesman (in a shop) tabernári·us -ī *m*;
traveling salesman ínstīt·or -ōris *m*

saliva salí·v·a -ae *f*

salmon salm·ō -ōnis *m*

saloon tabérn·a -ae *f* pōtória

salt sāl, salis *n*

salt shaker salín·um -ī *n*

same ídem éadem ídem (*gen: eiúsdem for all genders*); **it's all the same to me** meā nihil ínterest; **the same thing** ídem

sandal (w. covered toes) sandáli·um -ī *n*;
(*simplest form of sandal, with the*

sole fastened to feet with thongs
 sóle·a -ae f; (*with thick leather sole,
 tied with straps, characteristically
 worn by Greeks*) crépid·a -ae f

sand trap (golf) harēnāri·a -ae f

sandwich pastíll·um -ī n fartum; **ham**

sandwich pastíllum pernā fartum

sarcasm dicācit·ās -ātis f

sarcastic dicācul·us -a -um, dic·āx -ācis

sardine sard·a -ae f

sash zōn·a -ae f

satisfaction: to your satisfaction ex tuā
 sententiā

satisfied contént·us -a -um

satisfy satis fácere (+ dat); (*hunger,
 thirst*) expl·eō -ēre -ēvī -ētus; **you
 can't satisfy everyone** nōn potes
 ómnibus satis fácere

Saturday di·ēs -ēī m Sātúrnī

sauce iūs, iūris n; (*a dressing, esp. one
 made with vinegar*) embámm·a
 -atis n

saucer páter·a -ae f

sauna sūdātóri·um -ī n

sausage farcím·en -inis n

save (also comput) servāre

savings account cōmput·us -ī m
 conditórius

savings bank argentári·a -ae f pecúliis
 asservándis

saw s serr·a -ae f

saw tr serrā sec·ō -āre -uī -tus || *intr*
 serram dūcere

saxophone saxophón·um -ī n

say dīc·ō -ere dīxī dictus; **say hello to**
Rose iubē (pl iubēte) Rosam salvēre;
so they say ita aiunt

scale s (of a fish) squām·a -ae f; (for
 weighing) trútín·a -ae f

scale tr (a fish) dēsquāmāre

scaly squāmós·us -a -um

scam fraus, fraudis f

scammer fraudā·tor -tōris m (·trīx -trícis
 f)

scan (poetry, also comput) tr scand·ō
 -ere -ī scānsus; (*read over quickly*)
 cito perlégere

scandalous flāgitiós·us -a -um

scanner (comput) scānsóri·um -ī n

scare térr·eō -ēre -uī -itus

scared térrit·us -a -um; **I am scared to**
death exanimátus (-a) metū sum

scarf amictóri·um -ī n (collāre)

scenery aspéct·us -ūs m regiōnis; (*theat*)
 apparát·us -ūs m scaénicus

schedule hōrári·um -ī n; **bus schedule**
 hōrārium autoraedārum longārum;
flight schedule hōrārium
 aëroplanórum; **train schedule**
 hōrārium tráminum

scholar ērudīt·us -ī m (·a -ae f)

scholarly ērudīt·us -a -um

school adj (of or at a school) scholár·is
 -is -e

school lūd·us -ī m; (*advanced*) schol·a
 -ae f; **attend school** scholam
 frequentāre; **go to school** scholam
 óbeō obīre óbīi or obīvī; **skip school**
 ínsciīs paréntibus ā scholā abesse

school book lib·er -rī m scholáris

schoolboy discípul·us -ī m

school building aedifici·um -ī n
 scholāre

schoolgirl discípul·a -ae f

schoolmate condiscípul·us -ī m (·a -ae f)

school supplies instrúment·um -ī n
 scholāre

scissors forf·ex -icis f

scold obiurgāre

scolding obiurgāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **get a scolding** obiurgārī

scooter bírot·a -ae *f* pede pulsa

scorching sun flagrantíssimus sōl *m*

score *s* stat·us -ūs *m*, summ·a -ae *f* pūctōrum; (*in golf*) summa íctuum; **final score** status finális; **he doesn't know what the score is** (*fig*) nescit quid agátur; **keep score** ratiōnem notāre; **the score is tied** summae pūctōrum sunt parēs

score a goal (*soccer*) follem pede pulsāre; (*lacrosse*) pilam per portam iāci·ō -ere iēcī iactus; **score a point** pūctum ferō ferre tulī lātus; **score a touchdown** calcem (*or* crētam) attíng·ō -ere áttigī attáctus

scorn contēpti·ō -ōnis *f*

scorpion scórpi·ō -ōnis *m*; **scorpions sting** scropiōnēs ícunt

scot-free: get off scot-free impunít·us (-a) dímítt·or -ī dímíss·us (-a) sum

scram! ápage!

scrape: scrape together the money argéntum con·rádō -rādere -rásī -rásus

screen (*on television or computer*) quadr·um -ī *n* vísíficum; (*movie screen*) línte·um -ī *n* cínēmato-gráphicum

screenplay scrípt·um -ī *n* scaenárium

screw cóchle·a -ae *f*

screw (*cheat*) dēfraudāre; (*sexually*) dēbattūere

screwdriver cochleatórstr·um -ī *n*

scribble cōnscrībillāre

scroll down (*comput*) dēvólv·ō -ere -ī

scrub térg·eō -ēre tersī tersus

sculptor sculpt·or -ōris *m*

sculptress sculpt·r·īx -ícis *f*

sculpture sculptúr·a -ae *f*

sea mar·e -is *n*

seacoast ōr·a -ae *f* marítima

sea gull gávi·a -ae *f*

seahorse hippocámp·us -ī *m*

seal (*an envelope*) conglūtínāre

seal sign·um -ī *n*; (*of the sea*) phōc·a -ae *f*

seam sūtúr·a -ae *f*

seamstress (*making clothes*) vestífic·a -ae *f*; (*altering clothes*) sarcinātr·īx -ícis *f*

searchlight lūminár·e -is *n*

seashore act·a -ae *f*

season *s* temp·us -oris *n* annī; **in season** tempestív·us -a -um

season *tr* cónd·iō -íre -ívī *or* -iī -ítus

seasoning condímént·um -ī *n*

seat sēd·ēs -is *f*; (*on a fixed bench or chair*) sedíl·e -is *n*; (*in school*) subsélli·um -ī *n* (scholáre); **back seat** sēdēs postérior; **front seat** sēdēs antérior; **reserved seat** sēdēs reservāta

seatbelt cinctúr·a -ae *f* sēcūritátis; **fasten** (*or put on*) **one's seatbelt** cinctúram accín·gō -gere -xī -ctus; **unfasten one's seatbelt** cinctúram sēcūritátis laxāre

second *adj* secúnd·us -a -um

second *s* (*of time*) secúnd·a -ae *f*

secretary sēcŕētári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); **corresponding secretary** ab epístulis

secretary of agriculture adminíst·er -rī *m* agricultúrae prōvehendae

secretary of education adminíst·er -rī *m* ēruditiōnis

secretary of state adminíst·er -rī *m*
rērum externārum

secretary of the interior adminíst·er -rī
m rērum internārum

secretary of the treasury adminíst·er -rī
m fiscālis

section (*of a city*) régi·ō -ónis

seductive illecebrōs·us -a -um

see vídeō vidēre vidī vīsus; (*look at*)
aspíc·iō -ere aspéxī aspéctus; **I see** (*I*
understand) iam téneō; **see again**
revidēre; **see to it that** cūrā (*pl*:
cūrāte) ut (+ *subj*); **you see**
[*parenthetical*] enim

seem víd·eor -éři vīsus sum

self: he was not his usual self nōn fuit
cūius modī solet

self-confidence fidúci·a -ae *f*

self-confident cōnfíd·ēns -éntis; **be self-**
confident sibi cōnfíd·ō -ere cōnfísus
sum

self-control abstinénti·a -ae *f*

self-controlled comp·os -otis suī

self-respect dígnit·ās -átis *f*

sell vënd·ō -ere vëndidī vënditus; (*of a*
merchant) vënditāre

seller vëndit·or -óris *m*, vënditr·īx -ícis *f*

semester seméstr·e -is *n*

seminar sēminári·um -ī *n* acadēmicum

senate senát·us -ūs *m*

senate building cúri·a -ae *f*

senate session senát·us -ūs *m*; **call**
(hold) a senate session senátum
vocāre (*habēre*)

senator senát·or -óris *mf*

senatorial senātóri·us -a -um

senior séni·or -óris *mf*

sense of duty, of responsibility píet·ās
-átis *f*

sensible prúd·ēns -éntis; **be sensible**
sáp·iō -ere

sentence *s* (*gram*) senténti·a -ae *f*,
ōráti·ō -ónis *f*; (*leg*) iúdici·um -ī *n*;
pass sentence on iúdícium fácere *dē*
(+ *abl*)

separate sēparāre

September mēns·is -is *m* Septēber; **in**
September mēnsē Septēbrī

sergeant ópti·ō -ónis *mf*

serious grav·is -is -e; **are you serious?**
sēriōne dīcis tū?

seriousness grávit·ās -átis *f*

sermon homíli·a -ae *f*; **give a sermon**
homíliam habēre

serpent serp·ēns -éntis *m*; **serpents bite**
(*crawl, hiss*) serpéntēs ícunt (*serpent,*
síbilant)

serve *s* (*tennis*) dēiécť·us -ūs *m*

serve *tr* (*a person*) sérv·iō -íre -iī (+
dat); (*food*) appón·ō -ere appósui
appósitus; (*mil*) stīpéndia fácere,
(*stīpéndium*) mér·eō -ére -ui; **serve a**
summons on diem dare (+ *dat*);
serve one's country *dē* *rē* públicā
merére **II** *intr* (*tennis*) dēíc·iō -ere
dēiécť; **serve as a soldier or sailor**
(*ut*) mīles aut nauta merére

service: be at s.o.'s service álicui
praestō esse; **be of service to s.o.**
álicui prōsum prōdesse prōfuī

serviceman militár·is -is *m*

service station státi·ō -ónis *f* benzínária

set *s* (*e.g., of tools*) ínstrúmēt·um -ī *n*

set *tr* (*to put*) pōn·ō -ere posui pósitus;
set a price prétium fácere *or* státu·ō
-ere -ī statútus; **set aside** pōnere; **set**
on fire incénd·ō -ere -ī incēnsus; **set**
the table mēnsam pōnere **II** *intr* (*of*

- the sun*) occid·it -ere -it; **set out** proficisc·or -ī profectus sum
- seventh heaven: be in seventh heaven** in caelō esse
- sew** su·ō -ere -ī sūtus
- sewing machine** mächin·a -ae f sūtōria
- sex** (*gender*) sex·us -ūs m; (*act*) stupr·um -ī n; **have sex with** stuprum facere cum (+ abl)
- sh-h-h-h!** st, st!
- shabby** sordid·us -a -um
- shake:** quat·iō -ere (*no perf*) quassus; (*get rid of*) amōl·ior -īrī -ītus sum; **shake the head** nūtāre; (*to dissent*) ābnūtāre; **shake hands** dextrae iungere dextram *or* dextram iungere (cum āliquō); (*when campaigning*) manūs prēnsāre; **shake up** commov·eō -ēre commovī commōtus, perturbāre
- shallow** tenu·is -is -e
- shame** ignōmīni·a -ae f; **shame on you!** prō pudor!; **that's a darn shame** ēdepol facinus improbum; **what a shame!** facinus indignum!; O rem indignam!
- shameful** ignōminiōs·us -a -um
- shameless** improb·us -a -um
- shampoo** lōmēt·um -ī n capillāre
- shape** fōrm·a -ae f; **be in bad (good)** **shape** malī (bonī) hābitūs esse, in malō (bonō) hābitū esse
- share** (*stock*) ācti·a -ae f
- shark** pistr·is -is m; **a shark's dorsal fin** pistris pinn·a -ae f dorsālis
- shave** s rāsūr·a -ae f
- shave** tr rād·ō -ere rāsī rāsus; **shave every day** faciē cōtīdiē rāsītāre
- shed tears** lācrimās effūd·dō -ere effūdi
- sheep** ov·is -is f
- sheer** (*fabrics*) rall·us -a -um
- sheet** (*of paper*) sched·a -ae f, fōli·um -ī n chartāceum; (*for the bed*) strāgul·um -ī n līnteum
- shell** (*of clam, oyster*) test·a -ae f; (*of turtle*) testūd·ō -inis f; (*of peanut, egg*) putām·en -inis n
- shepherd** pāst·or -ōris m
- sheriff** geraéf·a -ae m (·ria -riae f)
- shifting** (*wind, weather*) vāri·us -a -um
- shifty** mōbil·is -is -e; **shifty like the wind** ventōs·us -a -um
- shinbone** tībi·a -ae f
- shine** lūc·eō -ēre lūxī; **shine on** illūcēre (+ dat)
- ship** s nāv·is -is f
- ship** tr déveh·ō -ere dēvēxī dēvēctus
- shipyard** nāvāl·ia -ium npl
- shirt** indūsi·um -ī n, camfsi·a -ae f
- shiver** intr trem·ō -ere -uī
- shiver** s trem·or -ōris m; (*severe*) membrōrum quassāti·ō -ōnis f
- shock** ēlētricus īct·us -ūs m
- shock** (*emotionally*) ātton·ō -āre -uī -itus
- shoe** (*worn with toga*) cālce·us -ī m; (*oxfords*) cālceus subtālāris; (*fancy low shoe, of different colors, gold, yellow, decorated with pearls, etc.*) socc·us -ī m, sóccul·us -ī m; (*red shoes of senator*) cālceus mūlleus
- shoelace** corrīgi·a -ae f
- shoemaker** sūt·or -ōris m
- shoemaker's shop** sūttrīn·a -ae f
- shoe polish** cērōm·a -atis n sūtōrium
- shoe store** tabérn·a -ae f sūttrīna
- shook: all shook up** vehemēnter perturbāt·us -a -um

shoot (*a person*) sclopētō trānsfīg·ō -ere trānsfīxī trānsfīxus; **I shot myself in the foot** mihi āsciam in crūs impégī

shop *s* tabérn·a -ae *f*; (*workshop*) officín·a -ae *f*

shop *intr* (*at a grocery store*) obsōnāre; **go shopping** ēmptum eō īre īvī; **I shopped for clothes** per tabérnās lustrāvī ut vestēs émerem

shopkeeper tabernári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

shopper ēmpt·or -ōris *m*, ēmpt·īx -īcis *f*; (*for groceries*) obsōnāt·or -ōris *m*, obsōnāt·īx -īcis *f*

shopping ēmpti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*for groceries*) obsōnāt·us -ūs *m*

shop window fenéstr·a -ae *f* mercātória

shore ōr·a -ae *f* marítima

short *adj* brev·is -is -e; (*vowel*) corrépt·us -a -um

short *s* in **short** in summā, ad summam

shortcut compendári·a -ae *f*; **take a shortcut** compendáriā eō īre īī

shorts subligācul·um -ī *n*; (*street wear*) decurtātae brāc·ae -ārum *fpl*

shortstop intermédius basiári·us -ī *m*, intermédia basiári·a -ae *f*

shorty brevīcul·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*), pūmīli·ō -ōnis *mf*

shotgun focíl·e -is *n* (bifistulātum)

shoulder (h)úmer·us -ī *m*; **shrug the shoulders** úmerōs allevāre

shoulder bag pēr·a -ae *f*

shoulder blade scápul·a -ae *f*

shovel pāl·a -ae *f*

show mōnstrāre, ostén·dō -dere -dī -sus or -tus; **show off** sē iactāre; **show up** appār·eō -ēre -uī; **this shows that ...** indicīo est (+ *acc* & *inf*)

shower balnéol·um -ī *n* plúvium; (*rain*) im·ber -bris *m*; **take a shower** balnéolō plúviō ūtor ūtī ūsus sum

shrewd astút·us -a -um, cállid·us -a -um

shrimp squill·a -ae *f*; (*a little guy*) pūmīli·ō -ōnis *mf*

shrine sacrári·um -ī *n*

shrub frūt·ex -icis *m*

shuffle (*cards*) mísc·eō -ēre -uī mīxtus

shun publicity forum ac lūcem fúg·iō -ere fūgī

shut claud·ō -ere clausī clausus; **shut down** (*comput*) claudere; **shut up!** óbserā ōs tuum!; **why don't you just shut up?** quīn tū tacēs modo?

shutter forícul·a -ae *f*

shy tímīd·us -a -um

sick (*of body or mind*) ae·ger -gra -grum; (*of body*) aegrót·us -a -um; **get sick** in morbum íncid·ō -ere -ī; **I am sick and tired of hearing the same thing over and over** (mē) valdē pertaédet iam audīre éadem idéntidem; **I am sick and tired of the business** mē negótī valdē pertaédet

sickly male válid·us -a -um

sickness morb·us -ī *m*

side *intr* **side with** stāre ab (+ *abl*), partēs (+ *gen*) sequ·or -ī secútus sum

side *s* (*of a body, hill, camp, ship, etc.*) lat·us -eris *n*; (*quarter, direction*) par·s -tis *f*; (*faction*) part·ēs -ium *fpl*; (*party*) par·s -tis *f* (*mostly plural*); **be on the side of** stāre ab (+ *abl*), sént·iō -īre sēnsī cum (+ *abl*); **from** (*or on*) **all sides** úndique; **on both sides** utrímque; **on his mother's side** mātérnō gēnere; **on the other side of** ultrā (+ *acc*); **on the right side of** ā

látère dextrō (+ *gen*); **on this side of**
cis or citrā (+ *acc*)

sideline (*sports*) líne·a -ae *f* laterális

side street dēvertícul·um -ī *n*, vi·a -ae *f*
laterális, via secundária

sidewalk crepíd·ō -inis *f* viária

sieve cribr·um -ī *n*

sigh *s* gémit·us -ūs *m*

sigh *intr* gem·ō -ere -uī -itum; **sigh over**
gémere

sight (*sense*) vīs·us -ūs *m*; **at first sight**
(*on the first appearance of a person*
or thing) prīmā spēcīē; (*view*
subjectively) prīmō aspéctū; **catch**
sight of cōspíc·iō -ere cōspéxī;
lose sight of ē cōspéctū āmítt·ō -ere
āmísi

sign (*a document*) subscrīb·ō -ere
subscrípsī subscríptus

silence silénti·um -ī *n*; **call for silence**
siléntium fácere

silent táci·us -a -um; **become** (*or fall*)
silent conticēsc·ō -ere; **be silent**
tác·eō -ēre -uī; **keep s.th. silent**
álíquid tacēre

silk *adj* séric·us -a -um; **silk clothes**
séric·a -órum *npl*

silk *s* séric·um -ī *n*

silliness inépti·a -ae *f*

silly dēsípi·ēns -éntis; **be silly** dēsíp·iō
-ere, inépt·iō -īre; **don't be silly** nōlī
ineptíre

silverware argénte·a -órum *npl*

simple simpl·ex -icis [*single-ending adj*]

simply (*in a simple manner; merely*)
simplíciter; (*only*) tantúmmodo; **I**
simply don't know what he is
thinking of iam plānē quid cōgitet
nésciō; **simply not** nōn omnínō

since *conj* (*because*) quia, quóniam,
cum; **since** (*temporal*) ut (+ *indic*),
postquam (+ *indic*), ex quō témpore
(+ *indic*)

since *prep* ex (+ *abl*), ab (+ *abl*); **ever**
since ūsque ab (+ *abl*), ex quō
témpore

sincere sincér·us -a -um

sing canō cánere cécinī cantus, cantāre

singer cantāt·or -óris *m*, cantátr·īx -ícis *f*

single sōl·us -a -um; (*unmarried male*)
caeleb·s -is; (*unmarried female*)
innúpta

single room cubícul·um -ī *n* ūnūs lectī

singular *adj* singulár·is -is -e (*opp*:
plurál·is -is -e); **in the singular**
singuláriter

sink (*in a bathroom*) labéll·um -ī *n*; (*in*
a kitchen) fusóri·um -ī *n*

sip sorbillāre

sir! bone vir!; (*to a superior*) dómīne!

sister sor·or -óris *f*; **little sister**
sorórcul·a -ae *f*

sister-in-law glos, glōris *f*; (*sister of*
husband) soror -óris *f* marítī; (*wife of*
brother) ux·or -óris *f* frātris

sit séd·eō -ēre sēdī sessúrus; **sit down**
cōnsíd·ō -ere cōnsēdī; **sit up!** rēctē
sedē (*pl*: sedēte)!

site sit·us -ūs *m*, loc·us -ī *m* (*pl*: loc·a
-órum *npl*)

sitting room exédr·a -ae *f*, sessóri·um
-ī *n*

situated sit·us -a -um; **situated on, near**
appósit·us -a -um (+ *dat*)

situation: that's the situation here in
Rome hīc Rōmae rēs sē sīc habent;
you see what the situation is vidēs
quō in locō haec rēs sit

- situps; do situps** idéntidem resíd·eō -ére reséđi
- size** magnítúd·ō -inis *f*, amplitúd·ō -inis *f*
- skate** *intr* (rótulīs) patináre
- skate** *s* cáłce·us -ī *m* subrotátus (*see Chapter V*)
- skateboard** tábul·a -ae *f* subrotáta
- skater** patináť·or -óris *m*, patináťr·īx -ícis *f*
- skating** *s* patináťi·ō -ónis *f*
- ski** *intr* nartáre
- ski** *s* nart·a -ae *f*; **put on skis** nartās pédibus aptáre, nartās adstrín·gō -gere -xī; **take off the skis** nartās dēstrín·gere; **wax the skis** nartās inceráre (*see Chapter V*)
- ski boot** cálig·a -ae *f* nartātória
- ski instructor** nartándī magís·ter -trī *m* (·tra -trae *f*)
- ski jump** suggést·us -ūs *m* dēsultórius
- ski jumping** dēsultúr·a -ae *f* nartātória
- ski lift** anabáťr·um -ī *n* nartātórium
- ski lodge** cas·a -ae *f* nartátórum
- ski pole** bácul·um -ī *n* nartātórium
- ski run** currícul·um -ī *n* nartātórium
- ski slope** clīv·us -ī *m* nartátórius, nartātória dēcúrsi·ō -ónis *f*
- skier** nartát·or -óris *m*, nartáťr·īx -ícis *f*
- skiing** *s* nartáťi·ō -ónis *f*
- skill** artífici·um -ī *n*
- skilled** cállid·us -a -um
- skillful** artifićióś·us -a -um; **skillful in** scīt·us -a -um (+ *gen*)
- skillfulness** callídít·ās -átis *f*
- skin** cut·is -is *f* (pale pállida; dry árida; soft móllis; tough dūra; wrinkled rŭgósā)
- skirt** gunn·a -ae *f*, cástul·a -ae *f*
- skull** calvári·a -ae *f*; **I'll break your skull** dimínuam ego tibi caput
- skunk** vivérr·a -ae *f* pútida; (*slang*) hom·ō -inis *mf* pútíd·us (-a)
- sky** cael·um -ī *n*
- skycap** (*at airport*) bául·us -ī *m*
- skylight** complúvi·um -ī *n*
- skyscraper** multizōni·um -ī *n*
- slalom** dēcúrsi·ō -ónis *f* flexuósa
- slam dunk** tuxtax immíssi·ō -ónis *f*
- slap** *s* álap·a -ae *f*
- slap** *tr* álapam dare (+ *dat*)
- sled** tráhe·a -ae *f*, sclódi·a -ae *f* (lūsória)
- sledgehammer** marc·us -ī *m*
- sleep** *intr* dórm·iō -íre -ívī or -iī -ítum; **go to sleep** dormítum eō íre iī or ívī; (*doze off*) obdormísc·ō -ere, obdormívī; **put to sleep** in sumnum collocáre
- sleep** *s* somn·us -ī *m*; **deep sleep** sop·or -óris *m*
- sleeping bag** sacc·us -ī *m* dormitórius
- sleeping car** curr·us -ūs *m* dormitórius
- sleepwalk** dórmíēns ambuláre
- sleepy** somniculós·us -a -um
- sleet** im·ber -bris *m* grándine mīxtus
- sleeve** (*reaching to the hand*) mánic·a -ae *f*; **with long sleeves** manicát·us -a -um
- sleeveless** sine mánicīs
- sleigh** tráhe·a -ae *f*; **go sleigh riding** tráheā veh·or -ī vectus sum
- slice** segmént·um -ī *n*
- slide** *intr* lāb·or -ī lāpsus sum
- slide** *s* imág·ō -inis *f* tráńslúcida; **show slides** imáginēs tráńslúcídās exhíb·eō -ére -uī -itus

slide projector prōiectōri·um -ī *n*
imāginum trānslucidārum

slim grācil·is -is -e (*opp*: obēsus)

slip *s* (clothing) indūcul·a -ae *f* infērior,
hypoŏni·um -ī *n*; (*of paper*)
schēdul·a -ae *f*; (*error*) peccāt·um -ī
n; **a slip of the tongue** laps·us -ūs *m*
linguae

slip *tr* (*give furtively*) fūrtim dare; **it**
slipped my mind ē memoriā ēxcidit;
it slipped my mind to ... fūgit mē
(+ *inf*) **|| intr** lāb·or -ī lāpsus sum;
(*leave furtively*) **slip out** sē subdūcere

slipper socc·us ī *m*; (*of felt*) ūd·ō -ōnis
m

slippery lūbric·us -a -um

slope *intr* verg·ō -ere; **sloping toward**
the sea vergēns ad mare

slope *s* clīv·us -ī *m*; **steep (gentle) slope**
ārduus (lēnis) clīvus

sloppy (*weather*) spurc·us -a -um;
(*person*) nēglig·ēns -ēntis; (*road*)
lutulēt·us -a -um

slow *adj* (*physically, mentally*) lent·us -a
-um; **slow to learn** segn·is -is -e

slow down cursum réprimō reprímere
représsī

sluggish heb·es -etis; **be sluggish**
héb·eō -ére

sly astūt·us -a -um; **on the sly** clam

small parv·us -a -um; párvul·us -a -um

smaller min·or -or -us

small-mindedness humílit·ās -átis *f*

smallpox variol·ae -ārum *fpl*; **have**
smallpox variolis labōrāre; **smallpox**
vaccination variolārum vaccināti·ō
-ōnis *f*

smart (*clever*) cállid·us -a -um;
(*talented*) ingeniōs·us -a -um;
(*impertinent*) ínsol·ēns -ēntis; **don't**

talk smart to me nōlī male mihi
dícere; **she is smart** ingeniōsa est

smell (*sense*) odōrāt·us -ūs *m*; (*odor*)
od·or -ōris *m*

smell *tr* olfác·iō -ere olfēcī **|| intr** (*good*,
bad) (bene, male) ól·eō -ére -uī;
(*stink*) obolére

smile subríd·eō -ére subrísi

smoke fumāre; (*a cigarette, cigar*,
marijuana) fūmum (sigaréllī, sígarī,
cánnabis) sūg·ō -ere sūxī

smoker fūmā·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -ícis *f*)

smooth-talking blandíloqu·us -a -um

smug cōnfíd·ēns -éntis

smugness cōnfídenti·a -ae *f*

snack merénd·a -ae *f*; **have a snack**
meréndam cápere

snack bar vorātrín·a -ae *f*

snail cóchle·a -ae *f*

snake angu·is -is *m**f*

snarl (*of an animal*) gánn·iō -íre

sneakers cálcē·ī -ōrum *mpl* gýmnici

sneak off clānculum áb·eō -íre ábiī

sneeze *intr* stérnu·ō -ere -ī

sneeze *s* sternūmént·um -ī *n*

sniff *s* get a sniff of olfácere

sniff *tr* sniff out (*e.g., trouble*) odór·or
-árī -átus sum

snobbish fastídiós·us -a -um

snore stert·o -ere

snow *impers* v ningit níngere nīnxit

snow *s* nix, nivis *f*

snowball pil·a -ae *f* nívea

snowdrift agg·er -eris *m* níveus

snowed: I am snowed under with
óbru·or -ī óbrutus, tamquam fluctū,
sic ego (+ *abl*)

snowfall nivis cās·us -ūs *m*

snowstorm ning·or -ōris *m*

snowy nivōs·us -a -um, nivāl·is -is -e

so (*with adj or adv*) tam, ita; (*with verb*) ádeō, sic; **and so** itaque; **how so?** quid ita?; **is it really so?** itane vērō?; **is that so?** itane?; **so far so good** bellē adhūc; **so many** tot; **so much** tant·us -a -um; **so much for that** eātenus; **so so** (*tolerably well*) ita tenūiter; **so to speak** ut ita dīcam; **that's not so!** haud ita est!

soak made·fāciō -fācere -fēcī -fāctus

soaking rain largus im·ber -bris *m*

soap sap·ō -ōnis *m*; **bar of soap** sapōnis quādrul·a -ae *f*; **liquid soap** sapō líquidus

sober (*not drunk*) sōbri·us -a -um (*opp:* ébrius)

soccer pedifólli·um -ī *n*, pedilūdi·um -ī *n*; **play soccer** pedifólle lūdere (*see Chapter V*)

soccer ball pedifóll·is -is *m*

soccer field camp·us -ī *m* pedifólīi, campus lūsōrius

soccer player lūs·or -ōris *m* pedifólīi

soccer shoes calceāmēt·a -ōrum *npl* pedifólīi

soccer stadium stádi·um -ī *n* pedifólīi

sociable sociābil·is -is -e

social security assēcūrāti·ō -ōnis *f* sociālis

socket contāct·um -ī *n* (ēléctricum)

socks impīli·a -ōrum *npl*

soda aqu·a -ae *f* Selterána

sofa tor·us -ī *m* tōmētō fartus

soft moll·is -is -e

softly (*in a low voice*) summíssā voce

software (*comput*) part·ēs -ium *fpl* programmatiōnis

soldier mīl·es -itis *mf* (*see chapter on War and Peace*)

sole (*of shoe or foot*) sol·um -ī *n*, plant·a -ae *f*

solution solúti·ō -ōnis *f*

some *adj* áliqui áliqua áliquot (*pl:* áliqui áliquae áliqua); **some** (*a number of*) áliquot (*indecl*); **some** (*amount of*) áliquit (+ *gen*); **some meat** áliquit carnis; **some ... or other** nesciō quī, nesciō quae, nesciō quod; **some senator or other** nesciō quī senátor

someday (*in indef fut*) aliquándō

someone áliquis, alicúius

sometime (or other) aliquándō; **sometime ago** dūdum, prīdem

sometimes nōnnúmquam; intērdum; **sometimes ... sometimes** modo ... modo, intērdum ... intērdum

somewhat *adv* aliquántō; **feel somewhat better** (*of a patient*) meliúscul·us -a -um esse

son fīli·us -ī *m*

song cant·us -ūs *m*, cántic·um -ī *n*

son-in-law gen·er -erī *m*

soon mox; (*in a minute*) iam; (*at any moment*) iam iam; **as soon as** cum prīmum; **as soon as possible** quam prīmum; **how soon?** quam mox?; **soon thereafter** mox deinde; **too soon** nímium cito; **very soon** pérbrevī témpore

sooner: no sooner said than done dictō cītius *or* dictum factum; **sooner or later** sērius ócius

sophomore sophomór·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

soprano supraníst·a -ae *f*

sore throat exasperátae fauc·ēs -ium *fpl*

sorority sodálit·ās -átis *f* alumnárum

sorry: I feel sorry for the others mē
miseret aliórum; **I'm (you're) sorry**
mē (tē) paénitet

sound *adj* ínte·ger -gra -grum

sound *s* son·us -ī *m*

soundly (*to sleep*) artē; (*to defeat*)
ēgrégiē

soup iúscul·um -ī *n*, sorbíti·ō -ónis *f*

soup bowl mágid·a -ae *f*

soup spoon cóchle·ar -áris *m* capácius

source fōn·s -tis *m*, cap·ut -itis *n*

south *adj* ínfēr·ior -ior -ius, merídián·us
-a -um; **on the south side** látere
merídiánō; **south of** infrā (+ *acc*)

south *adv* ad merídiem

south *s* merídi·ēs -éī *m*, merídián·um -ī
n; **in the south** ā merídiē

southern merídiōnāl·is -is -e,
merídián·us -a -um, ínfēr·ior -ior -ius

southward in merídiem versus [*versus is
an adverb*]

south wind Aus·ter -trī *m*

sow porc·a -ae *f*, sū·s -is *f*; **sows oink**
sūēs grúnniunt

spacious ampl·us -a -um

spaghetti spacéll·ī -órum *mpl*

Spain Hispáni·a -ae *f*

spam (*comput*) sagināti·ō -ónis *f*

spare time temp·us -oris *n* subsicívm

spark plug candél·a -ae *f* accēnsíva

sparrow pass·er -eris *m* (*see bird*)

spasm spasm·us -ī *m*; **have a muscle**
spasm ā mūsculī spasmō labōráre

speak *tr* & *intr* loqu·or -ī locútus sum;
díc·ō -ere dīxī dictus; **speak Latin,**
speak correct Latin Latīnē loquī; **so**
to speak ut ita dicam; **speak! I'm**

listening lóquere! áudiō; **speak of**
the devil lupus in fábulā; **well, speak**
up! quín tū ēlóquere!

speaker megaphón(i)·um -ī *n*

special delivery letter epístul·a -ae *f*
acceleráta

speech ōráti·ō -ónis *f*; **make a speech**
ōrātiónem habére

speed limit vélōcitatís mod·us -ī *m*

spell *tr* scrīb·ō -ere scrípsī scríptus; **spell**
correctly rēctē scríbere; **spell with**
scríbere per (+ *acc*); **some spell**
“cum” with a “q” if it signifies time
quídā scríbunt “cum” per “q”
litteram, sī tempus significat

spelling *s* orthográphi·a -ae *f*

spend (*time*) agō ágere ēgī áctus,
cōnsúm·ō -ere -psī -ptus; **spend the**
night pernoctáre; **spend the summer**
aestívāre; **spend the winter** hiemāre;
spend time (effort, money) on
tempus (óperam, pecúniam)
impénd·ō -ere -ī impēnsus (*in* + *acc*)

spicy ācer ācris ācre

spider aráne·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

spider web aráne·a -ae *f*

spill *tr* effúnd·ō -ere effúdi effúsus II
intr effúndor effúndī effúsus sum

spinach spináci·a -ae *f*

spine (*anat*) spīn·a -ae *f* dorsī

spirit: spirit of the law volúnt·ās -átis *f*
lēgis; **that's the right spirit now**
nunc tū frūgī bonae es

spit *s* spūt·um -ī *n*

spit *tr* & *intr* spu·ō -ere -ī spūtus;
(*frequentative*) sputāre

splendid: absolutely splendid! nimis
factum bene!; **splendid!** euge!

split one's sides laughing ília sua rīsū
dissólv·ō -ere -ī

sponge *s* spóngi·a -ae *f*; **sponge stick**
(used by Romans for the same
purpose as modern toilet paper)
xilospóngi·um -ī *n*

sponge *tr* **sponge a meal** cēnam captāre

spoon cóchle·ar -āris *n*

sport āthlētic·a -ae *f*, dispórt·us -ūs *m*

sport shirt camísi·a -ae *f* campéstris

sportswear vest·is -is *f* campéstris

spouse con·iūnx -iugis *mf*

sprain *tr* luxāre

sprain *s* luxātūr·a -ae *f*

spread sheet (*comput*) chart·a -ae *f*
computātfva

spring fōn·s -tis *m*; (*season*) vēr, vēris *n*

spring break fēri·ae -ārum *fpl* vernae;

spend the spring break fēriās vernās
agō ágere ēgī āctus

sprint curs·us -ūs *m* brevis

spunk alácrit·ās -ātis *f*

spunky ála·cer -cris -cre

squabble *intr* rīx·or -ārī -ātus *sum*

squabble *s* rīx·a -ae *f*

squad turm·a -ae *f*

square *intr* **this simply doesn't square**
nōn sãnē quadrat

square *s* quadrāt·um -ī *n*; (*rectangular*
space surrounded by buildings or
streets) āre·a -ae *f*; (*carpenter's tool*)
norm·a -ae *f*

squeak (*of mice, rats*) míntr·iō -īre

squeeze the flesh (*when campaigning*)
prēnsāre

squirrel sciūr·us -ī *m*

stability firmit·ās -ātis *f*

stable *adj* firm·us -a -um

stable *s* stábul·um -ī *n*; (*for horses*)
equíl·e -is *n*; (*for cows*) bovíl·e -is *n*;

(*for sheep*) ovíl·e -is *n*; (*for pigs*)
suíl·e -is *n*

stadium stádi·um -ī *n*

staff member, staff officer
contubernál·is -is *mf*

stag cerv·us -ī *m*

stage scēn·a -ae *f*, proscēni·um -ī *n*;
(*step in progress*) grad·us -ūs *m*; **go**
on the stage in scēnam pród·eō -īre
-īī; **stage of life** aetātis grad·us -ūs *m*

staircase scāl·ae -ārum *fpl*

stairs scāl·ae -ārum *fpl*; **climb the stairs**
per scālās ascénd·ō -ere -ī

stair well scālári·um -ī *n*

stamp pittáci·um -ī *n* cursuále

stand *tr* **I can't stand him** istum ferre
nōn queō; **I can't stand the cold**
frígoris impátiēns *sum* **II** *intr* stō stāre
stetī; **I'd like to know how matters**
stand velim scīre quō modō rēs sē
hábeant

standing ovation: give s.o. a standing
ovation álicui stantēs plau·dō -dere
-sī

stands (*bleachers*) for·ī -órum *mpl*

staple *s* uncínul·us -ī *m* (metállicus)

staple *tr* cōns·uō -súere -suī -sútus

stapler uncinātóri·um -ī *n*, cōnsūtóri·um
-ī *n* (chartárum)

starling sturn·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)

start iníti·um -ī *n*; **at the start of the**
year annō ineúnte; **you've made a**
good start bene hábent tibi princípia

starter (*on a car*) incitátr·um -ī *n*; **for**
starters princípīō

starvation fam·ēs -is *f*

starve *tr* fāme cōn·ficiō -ficere -fēcī
-fēctus **II** *intr* fāme cōnfici; **I'm**
starved fame ēnēctus *sum*

- state** (*the state as a community*) cívīt·ās
-átis *f*; **state of mind** affēcti·ō -ōnis *f*
ánimī
- statesman** vir, virī *m* cīvīlis
- stationery** chart·a *f* epistuláris
- stationery store** tabérn·a -ae *f* chartária
- statue** stātu·a -ae *f*, sign·um -ī *n*
- status** stat·us -ūs *m*
- statute** lēx, lēgis *f*
- stay** mán·eō -ēre -sī -sūrus;
(*temporarily*) mor·or -ārī -átus *sum*
- steak** frūst·um -ī *n* búbulae
- steal** fūr·or -ārī -átus *sum*; clep·ō -ere -sī
-tus; toll·ō -ere sústulī sublátus
- steeple** turr·is -is *f* campānária
- steer** *s* iuvēnc·us -ī *m*
- steer** *tr* gubernáre
- steering wheel** rot·a -ae *f* moderátrīx
- step** *s* grad·us -ūs *m*; **step by step**
gradátim; **steps** (*of stairs*) grad·ūs
-uum *mpl*; **take steps** (*take*
measures) ratióne*m* infre
- step** grádi·or -ī gressus *sum*; **step on it!**
mátūrā! (*pl*: mātūráte!)
- stepbrother** (*on father's side*) vītricī
fīli·us -ī *m*; (*on mother's side*)
novércae fīlius
- stepdaughter** prīvīgn·a -ae *f*
- stepfather** vītric·us -ī *m*
- stepmother** novérc·a -ae *f*
- stepsister** (*on father's side*) vītricī fīli·a
-āe *f*; (*on mother's side*) novércae
fīlia
- stepson** prīvīgn·us -ī *m*
- stereo** stereophóni·um -ī *n*
- stern** asp·er -era -erum
- stew** *s* iūrulént·um -ī *n*; **be in a stew**
over aestuáre (*w causal abl*)
- stew** *tr* lentō igne coqu·ō -ere coxī
coctus **II** *intr* aestuáre; **I stewed over**
it for a long time in eō aestuávī diū
- steward** hosp·es -itis *m* aérius
- stewardess** hós pit·a -ae *f* aéria
- stewed** iūrulént·us -a -um; (*drunk*)
ēlīx·us -a -um
- stick to one's guns** in sententiā stō stāre
stetī; **stick to the truth** in vēritāte
mán·eō -ēre mānsī
- still** (*till now*) adhūc
- sting** *s* (*on a bee*) acúle·us -ī *m*; (*bite*)
ict·us -ūs *m*
- sting** *tr* īc·ō -ere īcī ictus
- stingy** sórdid·us -a -um
- stink** foét·eō -ēre
- stinky** foétid·us -a -um
- stock** ácti·a -ae *f*
- stock broker** chrēmatíst·a -ae *m* (-ria
-riae *f*)
- stock exchange** burs·a -ae *f*
- stocking** tūbiál·e -is *n*; (*of felt and*
covering part of the legs) impfīli·um
-ī *n*
- stock market** chrēmatistéri·um -ī *n*,
burs·a -ae *f*
- stomach** stómach·us -ī *m*, ven·ter -tris *m*
- stomach ache** dol·or -óris *m* stómachī
- stone: I will leave no stone unturned**
nihil praetermíttam
- stoned** (*drunk*) ēlīx·us -a -um
- stool** scabéll·um -ī *n*; (*for sitting or*
mounting) scamn·um -ī *n*
- stool pigeon** ind·ex -icis *mf*
- stop** (*come to a stop*) sist·ō -ere stitī;
(*desist from*) désin·ō -ere désívi or
désīi (+ *inf*); **does the bus (train)**
stop in ... subsístitne autoraéda
longa (trāmen) in (+ *abl*)?; **stop!**

astā!; **stop off at** dēversārī apud (+ *acc*); **stop off at s.o.'s house** apud aliquem dēversārī (*or* dēvērt·ō -ere -ī); **stop right there!** stā fīlīcō!; **stop talking!** dēsine (*pl:* dēsínite) loquī! **they finally stopped talking** finem loquēndī dēmum fēcērunt

stop-over commorāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **make a stop-over** commór·or -ārī -átus sum

stop sign sign·um -ī *n* subsistēndī

stop watch chronoscōpi·um -ī *n*

store tabérn·a -ae *f*; (*supply*) cōpi·a -ae *f*

storeroom cell·a -ae *f*

stork cicóni·a -ae *f* (*see bird*)

storm tempést·ās -átis *f*; procéll·a -ae *f*; **a storm arose** tempéstās coórta est

stormy procellós·us -a -um, turbulént·us -a -um

story (*tale*) fábul·a -ae *f*; (*rumor*) fām·a -ae *f*; (*floor*) tabulát·um -ī *n*, contignáti·ō -ōnis *f*; **to make a long story short** nē longus sim *or* nē longam fáciam

stove foc·us -ī *m*, fócul·us -ī *m*; **electric (gas) stove** focus éléctricus (gáseus)

straight diréct·us -a -um; **go straight home!** ī (*pl:* īte) rēctā domum!

straighten out a matter rem explicáre

strait frēt·um -ī *n*; **Strait of Messina** frētum Sículum

strange mīr·us -a -um; **strange to say** mīrábile dictū

strap lōr·um -ī *n*; (*for shoe or sandal, sometimes decorated with gems*) obstrágul·um -ī *n*

straw strāmént·um -ī *n*; (*for drinking*) sīph·ō -ōnis *m*

strawberry frāg·um -ī *n*

stray (*dog, cat, etc.*) extrāri·us -a -um

stream rīv·us -ī *m*

street vi·a -ae *f*; (*with houses*) platē·a -ae *f*; (*paved*) strāt·a -ae *f*; **across the street from** exadvérsum (+ *acc*)

streetcar curr·us -ūs *m* éléctricus

street clothes foréns·ia -ium *npl*

street map tábul·a -ae *f* viária

stretch *see extend*

stretch spāti·um -ī *n*

strict sevēr·us -a -um; (*person in authority*) acérb·us -a -um

strictly speaking prōpriē

strike (*work stoppage*) operistíti·um -ī *n*; **be or go on strike** opus inter·míttō -míttēre -mísi; **make a strike** (*in bowling*) omnēs cōnōs simul prōstérn·ō -ere prōstrávī

string chord·a -ae *f*, fīl·um -ī *n*; (*comput*) seri·ēs -ēi *f*

strip (*e.g., of bacon*) segmént·um -ī *n*

stroke of luck lūs·us -ūs *m* fortūnae

stroll *intr* spāti·or -ārī -átus sum, dēambulāre

stroll *s* **would you like to take a stroll?** velísne spatiári?

strong válid·us -a -um (*opp:* imbēcill·us -a -um)

stubborn obstinát·us -a -um

stuck: he is stuck on some girl or other in amóre haeret apud nésciō quam vírginem; **be stuck on** haér·eō -ére haesi in (+ *abl*); **I'm stuck** (*out of ideas*) haéreō

stuck-up vultuós·us -a -um; fastidiós·us -a -um; **be stuck-up** fastíd·iō -íre

student discípul·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*), stud·ēns -éntis *m*, studentíss·a -ae *f*

studies stúdi·a -órum *npl*

study (*a room*) studíol·um -ī *n*

study stúd·eō -ēre -uī (+ *dat*) || *intr*
studēre

study period spāti·um -ī *n* studiōsum

stuff (*junk*) nūg·ae -ārum *fpl*

stumble over new words nova verba
offénd·ō -ere -ī

sturgeon accipēns·er -eris *m*

style mod·us -ī *m*; **go out of style**
exolēsc·ō -ere exolévī

subdirectory (*comput*) plicārum
subínd·ex -icis *m*

subject (*e.g., history, math, etc.*)
disciplín·a -ae *f*; (*topic*)
argúment·um -ī *n*; (*gram*) subiéct·um
-ī *n*; (*topic studied*) gen·us -eris *n*
studiórum, doctrín·a -ae *f*

subject matter mātéri·a -ae *f*

subjunctive *adj* subiūnctív·us -a -um;
subjunctive mood subiūnctívus
mod·us -ī *m*

subjunctive *s* subiūnctív·us -ī *m*

submarine nāv·is -is *f* submarína

subordinate conjunction *s* subiūnctíva
coniūcti·ō -ōnis *f*

subscribe subscríb·ō -ere subscripsī

substitute *adj* vicári·us -a [*not neuter*]

substitute *s* succēdāne·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

substitute *tr* (**for**) substítu·ō -ere -ī -tus
(prō + *abl*)

subtract dētrah·ō -ere dētrāxī dētráctus

suburb subúrbi·um -ī *n*

subway ferrívi·a -ae *f* subterránea

success rēs, reī *f* fēliciter gesta, rēs bene
gesta, succēss·us -ūs *m*

such a tāl·is -is -e; **such a big** tant·us -a
-um; **such is the case** rēs sē ita habet

sucker (*fool*) bárcal·a -ae *mf*; **take s.o.**
for a sucker álicui ōs súblinō
sublínere sublévī

suddenly statim, súbitō, repēnte

sue s.o. litem álicui ínferō ínferre íntulī
illátus

suffer *tr* ferō ferre tulī lātus; **suffer**
punishment poenam dare || *intr*
pát·ior -ī passus sum; **suffer from**
dól·eō -ēre -uī (+ *abl of ailment or*
affected part), labōrāre (+ *abl*);
suffering from opprēss·us -a -um (+
abl)

sugar sácchar·um -ī *n*; **cube of sugar**
cub·us -ī *m* sáccharī

sugar bowl vāscul·um -ī *n* sáccharī

suggest sub·íciō -ícere -iēcī -iéctus; **as**
you suggest quemádmōdum suādēs

suggestion: at your suggestion tē
auctóre

suit sýnthes·is -is *f*; (*leg*) ácti·ō -ōnis *f*;
bring a suit against s.o. áctiōnem
álicui intén·dō -dere -dī

suitcase risc·us -ī *m*; (*small suitcase*)
ríscul·us -ī *m*

suite (*of rooms*) diaét·a -ae *f*

sultry aestuós·us -a -um

sum: to sum up ad summam *or* in
summam *or* in summā

summary summári·um -ī *n*, breviári·um
-ī *n*

summer *adj* aestív·us -a -um

summer *s* aest·ās -átis *f*

summer vacation fēriae aestívae; **spend**
the summer vacation fēriās aestívās
ágere

summit cacúm·en -inis *n*

sun sōl, sōlis *m*; **full sun** plúrimus sōl

sunbathe apríc·or -árī

sunbathing aprícāti·ō -ōnis *f*

Sunday di·ēs -ēī *m* Sōlis; (*eccles*)
Domínica *f*

sun glasses perspicill·a -ōrum *n* sōlária
(*or* īnfuscāta)

sunny aprīc·us -a -um

sunrise ort·us -ūs *m* sōlis; **at sunrise**
sōle ortō

sunset occās·us -ūs *m* sōlis

sunshine sōl, sōlis *m*

suntan adustus col·or -ōris *m*; **get a**
suntan colorāre

superintendent (*of a school district*)
superintēnd·ēns -entis *mf*; (*of a*
building) prōcūrāt·or -ōris *m*

superlative *adj* superlātīv·us -a -um

superlative *s* grad·us -ūs *m* superlātīvus;
in the superlative superlātīvē; **give**
me “laetus” in the superlative dīc
“laetus” superlātīvē

supermarket superīnstitūri·um -ī *n*

supine *s* supīn·um -ī *n*

supper cēn·a -ae *f*; **for supper** in cēnam

supplies commeāt·us -ūs *m* (*used both*
as collective singular and in the
plural); **cut off the enemy’s supplies**
inter·clūdō -clūdere -clūsī hostēs
commeātibus

supply: supply s.o. with men and arms
ālicui virōs et arma ministrāre

suppose opīn·or -ārī -ātus sum; **I**
suppose [*parenthetical*] ut opīnor

sure *adj* cert·us -a -um; **be sure to come**
fācitō (*or* fac) modo ut vēniās; **for**
sure prō certō; **I am sure that** certus
(-a) sum (+ *acc & inf*); **know for**
sure certum (*or* prō certō) sciō scīre
scīvī scītus; **I think but don’t know**
for sure opīnor sed certō nēsciō; **to**
be sure nempe

surely certē, quidem, sānē

surf *intr* tábula flūctīvagā per summās
undās prōlāb·or -ī prōlāpsus sum

surfboard tábula -ae *f* flūctīvaga

surgeon chīrūrg·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*); **the**
surgeon operated on her chīrūrgus
eam sécuit

surgery (*the art*) chīrūrgi·a -ae *f*;
(*practice*) man·us -ūs *f*; **use surgery**
manum adhibēre

surly morōs·us -a -um et diffīcil·is -is -e

surprise mīr·um -ī *n*

surprised: be surprised that mīr·or -ārī
-ātus sum (*w acc + inf*)

surrender *intr* sē dē·dō -dere -didī;
force an enemy to surrender
hostem in dēditiōnem venīre cōg·ō
-ere cōēgī coactus

surrender *s* dēditi·ō -ōnis *f*

suspect *s* suspēct·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

suspect *tr* suspīc·iō -ere suspēxī
suspēctus

suspense: be in suspense in suspēnsō
esse; **not to keep you any longer in**
suspense nē diūtius in suspēnsō
pēndeās

suspicion suspīci·ō -ōnis *f*; **come under**
suspicion in suspiciōnem venīre

suspicious sūspic·āx -ācis; (*suspected*)
suspēct·us -a -um

swallow hirūnd·ō -inis *f* (*see bird*)

swamp pal·ūs -ūdis *f*

swan cycin·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)

swap permūtāre; **swap places** loca inter
sē permūtāre

swarm (*of bees, wasps, locusts*)
exām·en -inis *n*

swear in the soldiers mīlitēs sacrāmētō
ādig·ō -ere adēgī adactus

sweat *intr* sūdāre

sweat *s* sūd·or -ōris *m*; **break a sweat**
īnsūdāre; **no sweat!** nōn labōrō!

sweat suit vest·is -is *f* gýmnica
sweater thōr·āx -ācis *m* lánius
sweep the floor pavíméntum verr·ō -ere
 -ī versus
sweeper (*soccer*) lūs·or -ōris *m* liber,
 lūs·īx -īcis *f* líbera
sweet dulc·is -is -e
sweetheart: my sweetheart volúptās
 mea; óculus meus, océllus meus; (*in*
address) mea volúptās, mī ócule, mī
 océlle
swell (up) (*of limbs*) túrg·eō -ēre tursī,
 sē attóll·ō -ere (*opp*: sē summíttere)
sweltering aestuós·us -a -um
swim natáre
swimming *s* natáti·ō -ōnis *f* (*see*
Chapter V)
swimming instructor natándi magís·ter
 -trī *m* (·tra -trae *f*)
swimming meet certám·en -inis *n*
 natátórium
swimming pool piscín·a -ae *f*
swimsuit vest·is -is *f* balneáris
swim trunks subligácul·um -ī *n*
 balneáre
swindle fraudáre; **swindle s.o. out of**
 áliquem fraudáre (+ *abl*)
swindler plān·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*),
 fraudá·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)
swing *intr* oscilláre
swing *s* oscíll·um -ī *n*
swipe (*steal*) surr·ípiō -rípere -rípuī
 -réptus
Swiss Helvétī·us -a -um
switch (*electrical*) mūtátr·um -ī *n*
Switzerland Helvétī·a -ae *f*
swivel chair sell·a -ae *f* versátilis
swollen túmid·us -a -um

swordfish xíphi·ās -ae *m*
syllable *s* sýllab·a -ae *f*; **syllables form**
words sýllabae faciunt dictiōnēs
sympathy: show sympathy for
 commiser·or -ārī -ātus sum (+ *acc*)
symphony symphóni·a -ae *f*
symptom not·a -ae *f*, indíci·um -ī *n*
synagogue synagóg·a -ae *f*
syntax *s* sýntax·is -is *f*

T

T-shirt tunícūl·a -ae *f*
table mēns·a -ae *f*; **set the table**
 mēnsam pōn·ō -ere pōsuī; **sit down**
at the table mēnsae ad·sídō -sídere
 -sédī; **wipe off the table** mēnsam
 pertérg·ō -ere pertérsī
tablecloth mantél·e -is *n*
table of contents ind·ex -icis *m* cápitum
tablet (*for writing*) tábul·a -ae *f*; (*of*
medication) pastíll·us -ī *m*
table tennis (*see* Ping-Pong)
tableware ínstrūmént·a -órum *npl*
 escária
tactics: change one's tactics ratiónem
 bellī geréndī mūtáre
tail caud·a -ae *f*
taillight lūmin·áre -āris *n* postícum
tailor (*making clothes*) vestífic·us -ī *m*
 (·a -ae *f*); (*altering clothes*)
 sarcinát·or -ōris *m*
tailor shop vestíficín·a -ae *f*
take *tr* (*accept*) accíp·iō -ere accépī
 accéptus; (*to a person or place*)
 áfferō afférre áttulī allátus; (*to escort,*
lead) dūc·ō -ere dūxī ductus; **here,**
take it em, áccipe; **I can't take it**
anymore patī néqueō ámplius; **I take**
it (*parenthetical*) ut opínor; **take**

away (*hope, freedom, sleep, life*) ádim·ō -ere adēmī adēmp̄tus; **take down** (*notes, lecture*) excípere; (*unfasten*) refīg·ō -ere refīxī; **take for** (*regard as*) habére; **take** (*a dog*) **for a walk** dúcere; **take in s.o.** (*con s.o.*) álicui verba dare; **take into consideration** respíc·iō -ere respéxī; **take it easy!** parce! (*pl: párcite!*); **take it hard that** gráviter ferō ferre tulī (+ *acc & inf*); **take off** (*clothes*) éxuō exúere exuī exútus; (*clothes, shoes, ring*) détrahō détráhere détráxī; **take pains to** in magnō negótio habére (+ *inf*); **take place** fiō fierī factus sum; **take pleasure in** cápere laetítiam ex (+ *abl*); **take upon oneself (to)** in sē conférre (+ *inf*); **the preposition “ad” takes the accusative case** “ad” praepositio cásuī accūsátivō servit; **they know that they were taken in** sciunt sibi data esse verba; **this verb takes the accusative case** hoc verbum coniúngitur (*or* adiúngitur) cásuī accūsátivō **|| intr take after** símilis esse (+ *gen*); **take off** (*lit: go away*) áb·eō -íre -ívi *or* -ii; (*coll*) apoculáre; (*of a plane*) avoláre

take-off (*of a plane*) ávoláti·ō -ónis *f*

talent ingéni·um -ī *n*

talented ingenió·us -a -um

talk *s* serm·ō -ónis *m*; (**childish, silly, everyday**) **talk** (puerílis, stultus, quotidiánus) sermō; **give a talk** sermónem habére; **have a talk with s.o.** cum áliquo díligenter cólloqu·or -ī collocútus sum; **small talk** sermúncul·us -ī *m*; **that’s mere talk** verba istaec sunt

talk *tr & intr* loqu·or -ī locútus sum; **talk back (to)** insolénter respónd·eō -ére -ī (+ *dat*); **talk s.th. over with s.o.** áliquid cum áliquo comunicáre

talkative loqu·āx -ácis

talk show spectácul·um -ī *n*
disputátivum; (*on radio*) disputáti·ō -ónis *f* radiophónica

tall prócér·us -a -um; **be a head taller than** tótō vértice esse suprā (+ *acc*); **he is tall** statūra prócérā est, prócérus est

tank lac·us -ūs *m*; (*mil*) autocúr·us -ūs *m* armátus

tape *s* (*adhesive*) taéni·a -ae *f* adhaesíva; (*audiotape*) phōnotaeníol·a -ae *f*; (*audiocassette*) phōnocasét·a -ae *f*; **make a tape** phōnotaeníolam cōnfícere

tape *tr* in phōnotaeníolā imprim·ō imprímere impréssi impréssus

tape recorder magnētophón·um -ī *n*,
casētophón·um -ī *n*

target scōp·us -ī *m*

tariff portóri·um -ī *n*

task op·us -eris *n*, pēns·um -ī *n*

taste *s* (*sense*) gustát·us -ūs *m*; (*flavor*) sap·or -óris *m*; (*foretaste, sample*) gust·us -ūs *m*; **lack of good taste** defórmit·ās -átis *f*; **this is not to my taste** hoc nōn meī stómachī est

taste *tr & intr* sáp·iō -ere -ívi *or* -ii; **taste like** sápere (+ *acc*)

tax vectíg·al -ális *n*; **collect taxes** vectigália éxig·ō -ere éxégī exáctus; **impose a tax on** vectígal impón·ō -ere impósuī impósitus (+ *dat*); **pay taxes** vectigália pēnsitáre

tax collector exáct·or -óris *m*,
públicán·us -ī *m*

taxi raéd·a -ae *f* meritória

tea the·a -ae *f*

teach (*w. double acc*) dóc·eō -ére -uī -tus; **teach Latin** Latínē docére

teacher magís·ter -trī *m* (·tra -trae *f*)

teachers' room oec·us -ī *n* magistrōrum
(or magistrārum)

teaching assistant magístae (or
magístri) adiū·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx
-trícis *f*)

teaching method docēndī rāti·ō -ōnis *f*

teacup pocíll·um -ī *n* theánum

team turm·a -ae *f*

teapot hírni·a -ae (or hírníol·a -ae) *f*
theána

tear *s* lácrim·a -ae *f*; **shed tears**
lácrimās profúnd·ō -ere profúdi
profúsus

tear *tr* scind·ō -ere scidī scissus; **I can't
tear myself away from my books** in
librīs haér·eō -ére haesī; **tear down**
(*building*) díru·ō -ere -ī dirútus; **tear
to bits or pieces** laniáre, dílaceráre;
tear up (*paper*) discíndere **II** *intr* (*to
rush*) ru·ō -ere -ī; (*of clothes, etc.*)
scind·or -ī scissus sum; **tear along
the road** viam voráre

tease taxáre

teaspoon parvum cóchle·ār -áris *n*

telephone *adj* tēlephónic·us -a -um

telephone *s* tēlephón·um -ī *n*; **by
telephone** tēlephónicē; **call s.o. on
the telephone** áliquem per
tēlephónum vocáre; **dial a number**
númerum (tēlephónicum) sélíg·ō -ere
sélégī sēléctus; **dial the area code**
númerum praesēlēctórium sélígere;
speak with s.o. on the telephone
cum áliquō tēlephónicē cólloquor
cólloquī collocútus sum; **the
telephone is ringing** tēlephónum
tinnit; **use a pay phone** tēlephónō
monētálī ūtor ūtī ūsus sum

telephone *tr* per tēlephónum vocáre,
tēlephónō compelláre

telephone book tēlephónicus ind·ex
-icis *m*; **look in the telephone book**
tēlephónicum índicem ínspic·iō -ere
ínspéxī

telephone booth cell·a -ae *f* tēlephónica

telephone call (local, long-distance)
tēlephónēm·a -atis *n* (locále,
longínquum)

telephone conversation tēlephónēm·a
-atis *n*

telephone line cōnéxi·ō -ōnis *f*
tēlephónica

telephone number númer·us -ī *m*
tēlephónicus

telephone receiver auscultábul·um -ī *n*;
pick up the receiver auscultábulum
toll·ō -ere sústulī

telephone ring tinnít·us -ūs *m*
tēlephónicus

telescope tēlescópi·um -ī *n*

television tēlevísí·ō -ōnis *f*; (*set*)
tēlevísóri·um -ī *n*; **turn on (turn off)**
the television tēlevísórium excitáre
(exstíngu·ō -ere exstínxī exstíntus);
turn down (up) the television vim
tēlevísóriī remít·ō -ere remísī
(aúg·eō -ére auxī); **watch television**
tēlevisiónem spectáre

television audience tēlevísór·ēs -um *mpl*

television broadcast ēmissi·ō -ōnis *f*
tēlevísífica

television channel tēlevísórius canál·is
-is *m*

television news tēlediúr·a -órum *npl*

television program prográmm·a -atis *n*
tēlevísíficum

television screen quadr·um -ī *n*
tēlevísíficum

television series séri·ēs -éī *f* tēlevísífica

television set tēlevísóri·um -ī *n*

television viewer tēlevís·or -ōris *m*
(·trīx -trícis *f*)

tell nārrāre; **tell about** nārrāre dē (+
abl); **tell a lie** mendācium dīcere; **tell**
a secret sēcrētum ēloqu·or -ī
ēlocūtus sum; **tell the truth** vērū
dīcere

temper irācūndi·a -ae *f*; **have a bad**
temper summā irācūndiā esse; **keep**
one's temper irācūndiam cohīb·eō
-ēre -uī; **lose one's temper** irācūndā
ēfferor efferrī ēlātus sum

temperature temperātūr·a -ae *f*; **the**
temperature fell below thirty-two
degrees temperātūra lāpsa est subter
duōs et trīgintā gradūs; **the**
temperature is two degrees above
freezing temperātūra est ad duōs
gradūs suprā pūctum glaciāle; **what**
is the temperature? quō gradū stat
temperātūra?

temple templ·um -ī *n*, aed·ēs -is *f*;
(*anat*) temp·us -oris *n*

ten decem [*indecl*]; **ten times** déciēs

tendon nerv·us -ī *m*

tennis tenilūdi·um -ī *n*, tenísi·a -ae *f*;
play tennis tenísiā lūdere (*see*
Chapter V)

tennis ball pil·a -ae *f* tenísiae

tennis court camp·us -ī *m* tenilūdī

tennis doubles lūd·us -ī *m* bis bīnórum

tennis match certām·en -inis *n* tenilūdī

tennis net rēt·e -is *n* tenísiae

tennis player tenilūdi·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

tennis racket rētīcul·um -ī *n*
(manubriātum)

tenor cant·or -ōris *m* vōcis médiāe

tense *adj* intént·us -a -um; (*mentally*)
ānxi·us -a -um

tense *s* (*gram*) temp·us -oris *n*

tension conténti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*anxiety*)
ānxiet·ās -átis *f*

tent tentóri·um -ī *n*

tenterhooks: be on tenterhooks ánimī
pénd·eō -ēre pepéndī

term (*expression*) verb·um -ī *n*;
(*semester*) studiórum spāti·um -ī *n*,
sēmēstr·e -is *n*; **term of office**
spāti·um -ī *n* (tēporis) magistrátus

terminal stāti·ō -ōnis *f* terminális;
(*comput*) terminál·e -is *n*

terms condiciōn·ēs -um *fpl*; **be on**
friendly terms with a country in
amīcitiā pópulī esse; **I'm on good**
terms with in grātiā sum cum (+
abl); mihi cum (+ *abl*) magna
necessitūdō est; **on these terms** hīs
condiciōnibus, hīs légibus; **stick by**
the terms in condiciōnibus mán·eō
-ēre mānsī

terms of peace pācis condiciōn·ēs -um
fpl; **accept terms of peace** pācis
condiciōnēs accēpere (*opp*:
repudiāre); **dictate terms of peace to**
pācis condiciōnēs dīcere (+ *dat*);
propose terms of peace pācis
condiciōnēs ferō ferre tulī lātus

terrace xyst·us -ī *m*

terrain nātūr·a -ae *f* locī

terrible terríbil·is -is -e

terrific exími·us -a -um; **terrific!** euge!

terrify terrificāre, térr·eō -ēre -uī -itus

terror terr·or -ōris *m*

test probāti·ō -ōnis *f*; **flunk a test** cad·ō
-ere cécidi in probatiōne; **pass a test**
probatiōnem sustín·eō -ēre -uī

testicle testícul·us -ī *m*

testy irācūnd·us -a -um

text (*comput*) text·us -ūs *m*

textbook li·ber -brī *m* scholāris, ars,
artis *f*

than (*in comparisons*) quam

thank grātiās āgere (+ *dat*); **no, thank you** benígnē; **no, thank you just the same** tam grátia est; **thank heaven!** sit dīs grátia!; **thank you** (*familiar form*) (*for a future favor*) amábō tē; (*for a favor done*) amō tē; **thank you for** tibi grātiās āgere quod (+ *indic*); **thank you for helping me** grātiās tibi agō quod mē iūvistī

thankful: I am thankful to you grátiam tibi hábeō; **you ought to be thankful to me** grátiam hábeās mihi

thanks grātiās!; **thanks, but no, thanks** sed grátia est; **thanks a lot!** multās grātiās!; **no, thanks** benígnē; **thanks a lot for** tē multum amō quod (+ *indic*); **thanks a million!** sescéntās grātiās!; **thanks for your gifts** grātiās tibi dē dōnis tuis; **thanks to me (you, etc.)** meā (tuā, etc.) óperā

Thanksgiving Day di·ēs -ēī *m*
Grātulātiónis; **Happy Thanksgiving!**
Fēlcem Diem Grātulātiónis (optō)!

that ill·e -a -ud; (*sometimes pej*) ist·e -a -ud; **is that so?** ítane est?; **that'll do** sat est; **that's it!** (*enough!*) tantum est!; **that's right** (*in response to a question*) sīc est; **that's so** ita est

thaw *tr* dissólv·ō -ere -ī *ll intr* tabésc·ō -ere tábuī

theater theátr·um -ī *n*; **theater of war** bellī sēd·ēs -is *f*

theft fūrt·um -ī *n*

theme (*topic*) mātéri·a -ae *f*,
argūmént·um -ī *n*; (*essay*) tractát·us -ūs *m*; **write a theme** tractátum cōnscríbere

then (*and so*) ítaque; (*at that time*) tum; (*in that case*) ígitur; (*next*) deínde, deínceps; (*therefore*) ergō; **just then**

tunc máximē; **then and there** ílicō,
ibi contínuō

therapist therapeút·a -ae *m* (·ria -riae *f*)

therapy therapí·a -ae *f*; **therapy treatment** cūrāti·ō -ónis *f*
therapeútica

there (*position*) ibi; (*direction*) illūc

therefore ergō, ígitur

thermometer thermómetr·um -ī *n*

thick dēns·us -a -um

thief fūr, fūris *mf*

thigh fem·ur -oris *n*

thimble digitál·e -īs *n*

think putāre, cēns·eō -ēre -uī, aestimāre;
I don't think so ego nōn putō; **I think so** id opínor; **think s.th. over** áliquid sēcum reputāre; **think up** excogitāre; **that is exactly what I think** ita prōsus exístimō; **what do you think?** quid cēnsēs?

thirty trīgíntā

this hic haec hoc

thought: on second thought cum ego recógitō

thread fil·um -ī *n*; (*comput*) sér·iēs -ēī *f*
epistulárum ēlectronicárum; **hang by a thread** (*fig*) filō pénd·eō -ēre pepéndī

thrifty frūgál·is -is -e, frūgī [*indecl*]

throat fauc·ēs -ium *fpl*

throw coníc·iō -ere coníecī coníectus;
throw out of the game ā campō relegāre; **throw the book at s.o.** (*fig*) summō iūre cum áliquō āgere

throw-in (*soccer*) iniéct·us -ūs *m*
(laterális)

thrush turd·us -ī *m* (*see bird*)

thumb poll·ex -icis *m*

thumb tack cuspidiōl·a -ae *f* póllice
infīxa

thunder *impers v* tonat tonáre tónuit

thunder *s* tónitr·us -ūs *m*

thunderbolt fulm·en -inis *n*

Thursday di·ēs -ēī *m* Iovis

Tiber Tíber·is -is (*acc.*: Tíberim) *m*

ticket tésser·a -ae *f* (itinerária); **first-class (second-class) ticket** téssera
prīmae (secúndae) classis; **one-way
ticket** téssera ūnfus cursūs; **return
ticket** téssera réditūs; **round-trip
ticket** téssera itūs reditūsque

ticket agent tesserári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

ticket window ōstíol·um -ī *n*
tesserárium

tide aest·us -ūs *m*; **high tide** aestūs
accéss·us -ūs *m*; **low tide** aestūs
recéss·us -ūs *m*

tidy *adj* mund·us -a -um

tidy up ōrdināre

tie (necktie) fōcāl·e -is *n*

tie *adj* (in a game) **be tie** parēs esse

tie *tr* ligāre, alligāre; (in a knot) nodāre;
be tied down (e.g., with business)
impéd·ior -īrī -ītus sum; **my money
is tied up** argéntum occupátum est;
tie back revínc·iō -īre revínxī,
revínctus; **tie up** (in work, etc.)
impéd·iō -īre -īvī -ītus

tie-up (on the highway) affluénti·a -ae *f*
vehiculária

tiger tigr·is -is or -idis *m*; **tigers growl**
tigrēs fremunt

tight (knot, clothes) stríct·us -a -um;
(shoe) restríct·us -a -um; (stingy)
sórdid·us -a -um

tight-fisted adstríct·us -a -um

tight spot: be in a tight spot in
angústis esse

tile lámin·a -ae *f* fíctilis

till *prep* ūsque ad (+ *acc.*), in (+ *acc.*); **till
late at night** ad multam noctem; **till
late in the day** ad multum diem; **till
the month of July** in mēsem Iúlium

till *tr* (the soil) col·ō -ere -uī cultus

time temp·us -oris *n*; (leisure) óti·um -ī
n; (age, period) aet·ās -átis *f*; (of
day) hōr·a -ae *f*; **ahead of time** ante
tempus; **a long time already** (+
present tense) iam dūdum, e.g., **I've
been here a long time already** iam
dūdum adsum; **around the time of**
sub tempus (+ *gen.*); **ask the time**
quaérere hōrās; **ask what time it is**
hōrās inquirere; **at about the same
time** sub idem tempus; **at another
time** áliās; **at one time ... at
another** áliās ... áliās; **at that time**
ad id témporis, tum; **at the right
time** tempestívē; **at the time when**
quā tempestāte; **at the wrong time**
intempestívē; **at times** intérdum; **a
very short time ago** modo; **before
time** (prematurely) ante tempus; **for
a long time** iam diū; **for a short
time** brevī témpore; **for some time**
aliquámdīū; **for the first time**
prīmum; **for the last time** extrémum;
for the time being in tempus, prō
témpore; **from that time on** ex eō;
from time to time subínde; **he's
having a good time by himself** eī
bene est sōlī; **I always have time for**
semper vacō (+ *dat.*); **I haven't the
time** haud mihi ótium est; **I'm
having a good (lousy) time** mihi
bene (male) est; **in my spare time**
cum tempus subsicívum mihi est; **in
Roman times** aetāte Rōmánā; **I have
no time** tempus nōn est mihi; **in a
short time** in brevī spātiō; **in good
time, in plenty of time** mātūrē; **in
(the course of) time** témpore,
prōcédente témpore; **it is high time**

for you to tempus máximē est ut tū (+ *subj*); **make up for lost time** cessāta témpora córrig-ō -ere corréxī; **not to have the time to** ótium nōn habére (*w. dat ger*); **once upon a time** ólim; **one time** (*once*) semel; **on time** témporī; **postpone to another time** différre in áliud tempus; **see what time it is** hōrās ínspícere; **spend time** tempus sūmere (*or ágere or agitáre*); **some time ago** dūdum, prīdem; **there is no time to study** nōn vacat studére; **there is no time to waste** matūrātō opus est; **there was a time when** (tempus) fuit cum; **waste time** tempus per-dō -dere -didī; **what time is it?** quota hōra est? *or* quot hōrae sunt? **while away the time** tempus fall-ō -ere feféllī

times (*use numeral adverbs*) e.g., **ten times** déciēs; **no more than three times** ter nec ámplius

timetable hōrári-um -ī *n*

tin plumb-um -ī *n* album, stann-um -ī *n*

tip ap-ex -icis *m*; (*money*) stip-s -is *f*; **it was on the tip of the tongue** erat in labrīs prīmóribus

tipsy ēbríol-us -a -um

tire cúmmeus canth-us -ī *m*; **put air in the tire** cúmmeum canthum ínfláre

tired fess-us -a -um

tireless assídu-us -a -um

tissue mūcínni-um -ī *n* chartáceum

title (*of a book*) ínscrípti-ō -ónis *f*; (*of a person*) appelláti-ō -ónis *f*

toad bŭf-ō -ónis *m*

toast *s* pān-is -is *m* tostus; (*in drinking*) propīnāti-ō -ónis *f*; **drink a toast to** propīnāre (+ *dat*); **here's to you!** (*as a toast*) bene tē! (*pl*: bene vōs)!

toast *tr* (*bread*) tórr-eō -ére -uī tostus; (*drink to*) propīnāre (+ *dat*)

toaster tostr-um -ī *n*

toboggan sclódi-a -ae *f*

toboggan run dēcúrs-us -ūs *m* sclódiae

today hódíē; **before today** ante hunc diem; **starting today** ex hōc diē

toe dígit-us -ī *m* pedis; **big toe** poll-ex -icis *m*

toenail ungu-is -is *m* pedis

toga tog-a -ae *f*; (*bright-white toga, worn by candidates*) toga cándida; (*worn by men and boys after the age of about fifteen*) toga virílís *or* pūra; (*toga with purple border, worn by curule magistrates, by boys up to the age of manhood, and by girls until marriage*) toga praetéxta; (*toga embroidered with silver stars*) toga pīcta; (*toga of smooth cloth*) toga rāsa; **receive the toga of manhood** togam virílem sūm-ō -ere -psī -tus

toilet látrín-a -ae *f*; (*public*) fóric-a -ae *f*; **flush the toilet** látrínam próluō prólúere prólui; **I must go to the toilet** mihi eúndum est in látrínam; **may I go to the toilet?** licetne íre in látrínam?; **sit on the toilet** (*hopper*) in sellā familiáricā sedére

toilet bowl lābéll-um -ī *n* íntimum

toilet paper chártul-a -ae *f* hygiénica

toilet seat sell-a -ae *f* familiárica

toll (*highway fee*) vectīg-al -ális *n* rotáre

toll booth tabérn-a -ae *f* vectīgális rotáris; rotári-um -ī *n*

toll call tēlēphóném-a -atis *n* longínquum

toll road vi-a -ae *f* vectīgális rotáris

tomato lycopérsic-um -ī *n*

tomorrow crās, di-ēs -éī *m* crástinus; **day after tomorrow** peréndiē; **tomorrow morning** crās mǎne;

tomorrow night crās nocte; **until tomorrow** in crāstinum

tongue lingu·a -ae *f*

tonight hāc nocte

tonsils tonsill·ae -ārum *fpl*

too (*excessively*) nimis; (*also*) quoque (*comes after the word it emphasizes*); **too bad about** male (mehércule) dē (+ *abl*); **too bad about Marcus!** male dē Mārcō!

tool instrūment·um -ī *n*; **tools** (*comput*) instrūment·a -ōrum *npl*

toolbar instrūmentōrum tabell·a -ae *f*

tooth dēns, dentis *m*; **tooth and nail** (*fig*) tōtō corpore et omnibus ūngulis

toothache dol·or -ōris *m* dēntium

toothbrush pēnicul·us -ī *m* dentārius

toothpaste past·a -ae *f* dentāria

toothpick dentiscālpī·um -ī *n*

top *adj* summ·us -a -um

top *tr* superāre; **to top it off** in summō

top *s* ap·ex -icis *m*; (*of house*) fastīgi·um -ī *n*; (*of tree*) cacūm·en -inis *n*; **at the top of one's voice** summā vōce; **at the top of the page** ab summā pāginā; **on (the) top** suprā; **on top of that** quīn et, īnsuper; **top of the mountain** summus mōn·s -tis *m*

topaz topāzi·us -a -um

topcoat superindūment·um -ī *n*

topic mātēri·a -ae *f*, rēs, reī *f*

topography locōrum dēscrīpti·ō -ōnis *f*

topsy-turvy: everything was topsy-turvy ōmnia erant sūrsum deōrsum; **turn everything topsy-turvy** ōmnia sūrsum deōrsum versāre

tornado turb·ō -inis *m*

touch *tr* tang·ō -ere tētigī tāctus; (*to stir*) mōv·eō -ēre mōvī mōtus; **touch deeply** commovēre

touch (*sense*) tāct·us -ūs *m*; **put the final touches to** ūltimam (*or* summam) manum impōn·ō -ere impōsuī impōsitus (+ *dat*)

touch-and-go anceps, ancīpitis

touchdown: make a touchdown calcem (*or* crētam) atting·ō -ere āttigī attāctus

touchy (*irritable*) stomachōs·us -a -um; (*matter*) lūbric·us -a -um

tough dūr·us -a -um

toupee galericul·um -ī *n*; **wear a toupee** gelericulō ūtor, ūtī ūsus sum

tour *s* (*in a foreign country*) peregrīnāti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*e.g., of a factory*) iter, itīneris *n*; **complete a three-year tour of duty** triennium milītiaē expl·eō -ēre -ēvī -ētus; **tour of duty** milīti·a -ae *f*

tour bus coenautocīnēt·um -ī *n* perigēticum

tour guide mystagōg·us -ī *m*, dux, ducis *mf* itinerāri·us (-a)

tourist peregrīnā·tor -tōris *m* (-trīx -trīcis *f*)

tourist class class·is -is *f* tūrīstica

tow truck carr·us -ī *m* remulcāndī

towel gausapīn·um -ī *n*; **bath towel** gausapīnum balneārium; **hand towel** manutērgi·um -ī *n*

tower turr·is -is *f*

town oppid·um -ī *n*; (*in Italy, subject to Rome, but self-governed*) mūnicīpi·um -ī *n*; **small town** oppīdul·um -ī *n*

town hall cūri·a -ae *f* mūnicipālis

toy lūdīfri·um -ī *n*

trace *s* vestígi·um -ī *n*

trace *tr* indāgāre; (*outline*) dēlineāre;

trace back répet·ō -ere -īvī -ītus

track indāgāre; **track down s.th.** áliquíd indāgāre

track vestígi·um -ī *n*; (*wheel-track, rut*) órbit·a -ae *f*; (*path*) sémit·a -ae *f*; (*the sport*) cursúr·a -ae *f*; (*course laid out for runners*) currícul·um -ī *n* (*see Chapter V*), (*of a railroad*) órbit·a -ae *f* ferriviária

tractor tractr·um -ī *n*

trade mercātūr·a -ae *f*; (*profession*) artificí·um -ī *n*

trade union syndicat·us -ūs *m*

traffic commeát·us -ūs *m* vehiculórum; **heavy traffic** celébrit·ās -ātis *f* viae (*or* viárūm); frequénti·a -ae *f* vehiculórum

traffic cop vigil -is *mf* viātóri·us (-a)

traffic jam affluénti·a -ae *f* vehiculária

traffic light sēmáphor·um -ī *n* (**red** rubrum; **yellow** flāvum; **green** víride)

trailer home habitácul·um, -ī *n* remulcátum

train *s* trām·en -inis *n* (ferriviárium); **a through train** trāmen dīrēctum

train *tr* (*for physical proficiency*) exercitāre **II** *intr* sē exercitāre

trainer (*of athletes*) exércit·or -ōris *m*, exércitr·ix -ícis *f*

train schedule hōrári·um -ī *n* tráminum

train station stāti·ō -ōnis *f* ferriviária

train ticket tésser·a -ae *f* ferriviária

tramp larífug·a -ae *m*

trampoline dēsultóri·um -ī *n*

transfer to (*another train, etc.*) trāscénd·ō -ere -ī *in* (+ *acc*)

transitive trānsitív·us -a -um

translate *tr* (con)vért·ō -ere -ī (con)vérsum, trānsferō trānsfērre trānstulī trānslátus; **translate from Latin to English** ex Latínō *in* Ánglicum (con)vértere

translation *s* trānslát·a -ōrum *npl*; (*act of translating*) trānslāti·ō -ōnis *f*

transparency págin·a -ae *f* pellúcida

transportation vectúr·a -ae *f*

travel iter fácere; **travel by car (train, plane, ship)** autocinētō (trámīne, aērōplanō, návī) vehor vehī vectus sum

travel agency sēd·ēs -is *f* periēgética

travel agent itínerum prōcūrā·tor -tōris *m* (·trīx -trícis *f*)

traveler viāt·or -ōris *m*, viātr·ix -ícis *f*; (*abroad*) peregrínāt·or -ōris *m*, peregrínātr·ix -ícis *f*

tray fércul·um -ī *n*

treason prōdíti·ō -ōnis *f*

treat (*person, subject*) tractāre; (*medically*) cūrāre

treatment tractāti·ō -ōnis *f*; (**for**) cūrāti·ō -ōnis *f* (+ *gen of illness*)

treaty foed·us -eris *n*; **according to the terms of the treaty** ex pactō, ex foédere; **break a treaty** foedus frang·ō -ere frēgī fractus; **conclude a treaty with** foedus icō ícere íci ictus *or* fēr·iō -ire cum (+ *abl*); **violate a treaty** foedus violāre

tree arb·or -oris *f*

treetop cacúm·en -inis *n*

tremble trem·ō -ere -uī; **tremble all over** cóntrem·ō -ere -uī

trend inclināti·ō -ōnis *f*

trial quaesti·ō -ōnis *f*, iūdící·um -ī *n*; **be on trial for** iūdícium dē (+ *abl*) súb·eō -íre -ívi *or* -īi; **be on trial for**

one's life iūdicium dē cāpite subīre;
conduct a trial quaestiōnem
 exērc·eō -ēre -uī -itus; **go on trial** in
 iūs eō īre īī *or* īvī

trial lawyer causīdic·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

tribune of the people tribūn·us -ī *m*
 plēbis

tribunician power tribūnīcia potēst·ās
 -ātis *f*

tributary flūvi·us -ī *m*; **the Allia is a
 tributary of the Tiber** Állia Tīberim
 ínfluit

trick dol·us -ī *m*; **be up to some tricks**
 lascīv·us -a -um *esse*; **is this a trick?**
 num hoc est cáptiō?; **play tricks on**
 lūdōs fácere (+ *dat*)

tricky dolōs·us -a -um

tricycle trírot·a -ae *f*

trip iter, ítīneris *n*; **take a trip** iter
 fácere

tripod trip·ēs -edis *m* phōtográphicus

trolley curr·us -ūs *m* ēlēcricus

trombone tub·a -ae *f* dúctilis

trouble sollicitāre; **I don't want to
 trouble you** nōlō tibi moléstus (-a)
esse

trouble *s* (annoyance) molésti·a -ae *f*,
 mal·um -ī *n*; (when the idea of
 difficulty predominates) lab·or -ōris
m; (effort, pains) óper·a -ae *f*; **be in
 trouble** labōráre; **cause s.o. big
 trouble** moléstiam gravem álicui
 adhīb·eō -ēre -uī *or* exhíbeō; **have
 stomach trouble** stómachō labōráre;
get s.o. into trouble áliquem in
 aerúmnam óbser·ō -ere obsēvī; **if it is
 no trouble** sī grave nōn erit; **I'm
 expecting some big trouble** nesciō
 quod magnum malum expéctō; **it's
 not worth the trouble** nōn est
 prētium óperae; **make big trouble
 for s.o.** dare magnum malum álicui;

more trouble ámplius negótī; **what's
 the trouble?** quid illuc malī est? *or*
 quid est negótī?

troubled exercitāt·us -a -um

trousers brāc·ae -ārum *fpl*

trout truct·us -ī *m*, truct·a -ae *f*

trowel trull·a -ae *f*

truce indūti·ae -ārum *fpl*; **a six-years'**
truce indūtiāe annōrum sex; **break a
 truce** indūtiās violāre; **make a truce**
 indūtiās fácere

truck autocínēt·um -ī *n* onerárium,
 autocárr·um -ī *n*

truck driver, trucker autocínētī oneráriī
 gubernát·or -ōris *m*

true vēr·us -a -um; **that's true** rēs ita
 est *or* ita proféctō est

trumpet (musical instrument) tub·a -ae
f; (of an elephant) barrīt·us -ūs *m*

trumpet intr (of an elephant) bárr·iō -íre

trunk (of a tree) trunc·us -ī *m*; (of a
 car) receptácul·um -ī *n* sarcinārum;
 (for clothes) cist·a -ae *f*; (of an
 elephant) man·us -ūs *f*

trust *s* fid·ēs -ēī *f*, bona fid·ēs -ēī *f*; **put
 one's trust in** (cōn)fidere (+ *dat*)

trust *tr* fid·ō -ere fīsus sum (semi-
 deponent) (+ *dat or abl*)

trusting cōnfīd·ēns -éntis

trustworthiness fidūci·a -ae *f*

trustworthy lócupl·ēs -étis

trusty fīd·us -a -um, fīrm·us -a -um

truth vēr·um -ī *n*; **to tell the truth** ut
 vēra (or vērūm) dīcam (or loquar)

truthful vērīdic·us -a -um

try temptāre, con·or -ārī -átus sum; **try
 a case** (of) causam cognōsc·ō -ere
 cognōvī cōgnitus (dē + *abl*); **try on**
 (clothes) induéndō probāre; **try one's**

best to (not to) óperam dō dare dedī
ut (nē) (+ *subj*); **try one's patience**
patiētiā abūt·or -ī abūsus sum

trying (*tough*) exercitāt·us -a -um;
(*annoying*) molést·us -a -um

tuberculosis phíthis·is -is *f*

tuck up succíng·ō -ere succínxī
succíntus

Tuesday di·ēs -ēī *m* Mārtis

tuna thunn·us -ī *m*

tunnel (*for trains, cars*) spec·us -ūs *m*
(*ferriviárius, autocínēticus*)

turkey gallopáv·ō -ónis *m*; **talk turkey**
with Latínē loqu·or -ī locútus sum
cum (+ *abl*)

turn *s* (*in the road*) flex·us -ūs *m* viae; **a**
good turn benefíci·um -ī *n*; **in turn**
ínvicem; **it's your turn now** nunc tē
órdō vocat; **out of turn** extrā
órdinem; **take a turn for the worse**
in dētérius inclínārī; **take turns**
driving ínvicem (*or per vicēs, in*
vicēs) gubernāre

turn *tr* (con)vért·ō -ere -ī; **turn down**
(*reject*) repudiāre; **turn in weapons**
arma trád·ō -ere trádidi tráditus; **turn**
off (*a light, computer*) exstíngu·ō
-ere exstínxī exstíntus; **turn on** (*a*
light) accénd·ō -ere -ī; (*a computer*)
excitāre; **turn upside down**
subvértēre || *intr* vert·or -ī versus
sum; **turn around** convertī; **turn**
into mūtārī in (+ *acc*); **turn out fine**
bellē cadō -ere cécidi cāsúrus;
something will turn up, I hope fiet
áliquid, spērō

turn-off dēvertícul·um -ī *n*

turnpike autocínētica vi·a -ae *f*
quadriperítta

turn signal ind·ex -icis *m* dīrēctiōnis

turquoise túrcic·us -a -um

turtle testúd·ō -inis *f*

tutor *s* domésticus praecépt·or -ōris *m*,
doméstica praecéptr·ix -ícis *f*

tutor *tr* prívátim ínstitu·ō -ere -ī -tus

TV (*see television*)

TV room concláv·e -is *n* tēlevísóriō
ínstrúctum

tweezers volséll·a -ae *f*

twilight crepúscul·um -ī *n*

two duo, duae, duo; **two each** bīn·ī
-ae -a

two-faced dupl·ex -icis, bílíngu·is -is -e

two-time fraudāre

two-timer ínfidél·is -is *mf*

type *s* gen·us -eris *n*; (*print*) typ·us -ī *m*;
that type of person istíus géneris
homō

type *tr* dactylographāre

typesetter typóthet·a -ae *m*

typewriter dactylográphi·um -ī *n*

typewriter key malléol·us -ī *m*; **press a**
key malléolum déprim·ō -ere
dépressī (*or* pulsāre)

typing dactylográphica ar·s -tis *f*

typist dactylógraph·us -ī *m* (•a -ae *f*)

U

udder ūb·er -eris *n*

ugh! vah!; heu!

ugliness dēfórmít·ās -átis *f*

ugly dēfórm·is -is -e, turp·is -is -e

uh-oh! (*when taken by surprise*) attat!;
áttatae!

umbrella umbéll·a -ae *f*

umpire árbit·er -rī *m* (•ra -rae *f*)

unanimous ūnánim·is -is -e

unanimously ūnā vōce, ómnibus
senténtiīs

unattractive invenúst·us -a -um

uncle (*father's brother*) pátru·us -ī *m*;
(*mother's brother*) avúncul·us -ī *m*

uncontrolled effrēnát·us -a -um

uncouth hórrid·us -a -um

underbrush dūmēt·a -órum *npl*

underpants brāc·ae -árum *fpl* interiōrēs

underpass viaedúct·us -ūs *m*

undershirt (*worn by both sexes*)
subúcul·a -ae *f*

understand intélleg·ō -ere intellēxī
intellēctus; **do you understand now?**
iam tenēs?; **I don't quite**

understand nōn satis intéllegō;

"ego" is understood if I should say,
"sum philosophus" subaudītur **"ego"**
sī dīcam **"sum philosophus"**

undertaker pollíñct·or -óris *m* (·rīx
-rícis *f*)

underwear subúcul·a -ae *f*

undress éxuō exúere éxuī exútus; **get**
undressed sē exúere, vestiménta
exúere

uneducated inērudīt·us -a -um,
indóct·us -a -um

unfair iníqu·us -a -um

unfairly iníquē

unfaithful infidél·is -is -e

unfriendly inimíc·us -a -um

ungrateful ingrát·us -a -um

unhappiness infēlícit·ās -átis *f*

unhappy infél·īx -ícis [*single-ending*
adj]

uniform ōrnát·us -ūs *m*; **in uniform**
subōrnát·us -a -um; **military**
uniform ōrnát·us -ūs *m* militáris

United States (of America) Ūnítī Statūs
(Américae) (*gen*: Ūnítórum Státuum)
mpl; Cīvítát·ēs -um *fpl* Foederátæ
Américae

universe ūnivér·um -ī *n*, ūnivérsit·ās
-átis *f*

university (studiōrum) ūnivérsit·ās
-átis *f*

unpleasant iniūcúnd·us -a -um

unprovoked ultrō

unrestrained effrēnát·us -a -um,
effús·us -a -um

unstable īnstábil·is -is -e

unsteady (*tottering*) cadúc·us -a -um

unsubscribe (*comput*) cessāre

until *conj* dōnec

until *prep* ūsque ad (+ *acc*)

untrustworthy infīd·us -a -um

up sūrsum; **up in the air** (*in*
uncertainty) in médiō relíct·us -a
-um; **be up in the air** (*to be*
undecided) pēndeō pendēre pepēndī;
up till now ántehāc

upbringing ēducāti·ō -ónis *f*

uphill *adj* acclív·is -is -e; **have an**

uphill struggle clīvō labōrāre

uphill *adv* advérsus clīvum, in collem

upholstery tōmēt·um -ī *n*

uproar tumúlt·us -ūs *m*; **be in an**
uproar tumultuári

ups and downs: he has his ups and
downs eī modo bene, modo male est;
there are ups and downs est modo
síc, modo síc

upset *adj* commót·us -a -um; **don't be**
upset nōlī (*pl*: nōlíte) perturbári

upset *s* (*at the polls*) offēnsi·ō -ónis *f*;
suffer an upset offēnsiōnem ferō
ferre tulī lātus

upset *tr* commóv·eō -ēre commóvī
commótus, perturbáre

upsetting: that was more upsetting to me than to you illud mihi mǎiōrī
stómachō erat quam tibi

upside down: everything was upside down ómnia erant sūrsūm deórsum;
turn upside down sūrsūm deórsum
versáre

upstairs (*direction*) sūrsūm; (*position*)
in superiōre tabulátō; **go upstairs**
scālis (*or* per scālās) ascénd·ō -ere -ī;
the upstairs dom·us -ūs *f* supérior

upstairs bedroom cubícul·um -ī *n*
supérius

urge *s* ánimī ímpet·us -ūs *m*

urge *tr* úrg·eō -ēre ursī

URL Ūniversále Rērum Locátr·um -ī *n*,
ínscrípti·ō -ónis *f* interrētiális

use *s* it's no use ílicet; **make the best use of** óptimē ūtor ūtī ūsus sum (+
abl); **what's the use?** quid opus est?

use *tr* ūtor ūtī ūsus sum (+ *abl*); (*e.g. a word in a sentence*) pōnō pōnere
pósuī pósitus; **use "legō" in a sentence** pōne "legō" in sentétiā.

usual *adj* sólit·us -a -um; **you were wrong as usual** errábās ut solébās
(*or* ex cōnsuetúdine tuā)

usually plērúmque

utter *adj* tōt·us -a -um

utter *tr* ēmitt·ō -ere ēmísī ēmissus,
próferō próferre prótulī prólátus; **she never uttered a word** nullum
verbum ēmísit.

V

vacation vacáti·ō -ónis *f*, féri·ae -árum
fpl; **at the end of vacation** fériis
peráctis; **be on vacation** fēriát·us -a
-um esse; **spend the vacation** fériās

ágere; **summer vacation** fēriae
aestívae, vacátiō aestíva

vaccinate vaccínāre

vaccination vaccínāti·ō -ónis *f*

vaccine vaccín·um -ī *n*

vacuum cleaner púlveris haurītōri·um
-ī *n*

valley vall·ēs (*or* vall·is) -is *f*

valuable pretiós·us -a -um; **be valuable**
prétium habére

vampire sanguisúg·a -ae *m*

various vári·us -a -um

vary variāre

VCR magnētoscópi·um -ī *n*

veal vitulín·a -ae *f*

vegetable hol·us -eris *n* [*also collective for vegetables*]

vegetable garden hort·us -ī *m* holitórius

vegetarian holerárius -a -um

Veii Vēi·ī -órum *mpl*

veil vėl·um -ī *n*

vein vēn·a -ae *f*; **in a similar vein** ad
símilem senténtiam

Venetian blinds trānsénn·a -ae *f*
volúbilis; **open** (*close, let down, raise* aperi·re, cláudere, dēmíttre,
subvólvere)

venison vēnāti·ō -ónis *f*

verb *s* verb·um -ī *n*

verbal verbál·is -is -e

verdict senténti·a -ae *f*; **give a guilty verdict** condemnátóriam senténtiam
ferō ferre tulī látus; **give a verdict of acquittal** absolútóriam senténtiam
ferre

vertebra vétebr·a -ae *f*

very ádmodum, valdē; **very good**
óptim·us -a -um; **very good!**

óptimē!; **very well!** (*in agreement*)
fiat!

vestibule vēstíbul·um -ī *n*

veteran veterān·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*),
ēmérit·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

veterinarian veterinári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

veto *s* intercēssi·ō -ōnis *f*; **interpose a**
veto intercēd·ō -ere intercēssī

veto *tr* intercēd·ō -ere intercēssī (+ *dat*)

vice víti·um -ī *n*, právit·ās -átis *f*; (*tool*)
retinācul·um -ī *n*

vice principal *see* **principal**

victorious vict·or -ōris *m*, victr·īx -ícis
f; **be victorious** vinc·ō -ere vīcī

victory victóri·a -ae *f*; **gain (or win) a**
victory victóriam adipísc·or -ī
adéptus sum; **gain (or win) a victory**
over the enemy victóriam reportāre
ab hoste

video cassette casét·a -ae *f*
magnētoscópicā; **listen to (play) a**
video cassette aúd·iō -íre -ívi *or* -īi
-ítus (ēvól·v·ō -ere -ī) casétam
magnētoscópiam

video cassette recorder (VCR)
magnētoscópi·um -ī *n*

video game lūs·us -ūs *m*
magnētoscópicus; **play video games**
lūsūs magnētocópicōs lúdere

videotape taeníol·a -ae *f*
magnētoscópicā

vigorous álac·er -ris -re

villa vill·a -ae *f*

village vīc·us -ī *m*

vinegar acét·um -ī *n*

vinegar bottle acētábul·um -ī *n*

violence violénti·a -ae *f*

violent violént·us -a -um

violin fidícul·a -ae *f*, violín·a -ae *f*; **play**
the violin violínā canō cánere cécini

violinist violíníst·a -ae *m* (·ria -riae *f*)

virtual vēr·us -a -um

virtually propémodum

visit vīs·ō -ere -ī -us, vīsítāre; **go to**
visit, pay a visit to vīsere

visitor hosp·es -itis *mf*

vitamin vitamín·um -ī *n*

vocabulary vocábul·a -ōrum *npl*, cópi·a
-ae *f* verbórum

vocative *s* vocatīvus -ī *m*, cās·us -ūs *m*
vocatīvus

voice *s* vōx, vōcis *f*; (*of a verb*) gen·us
-eris *n*; **what voice is “audímur”?**
passive cūius géneris est “audímur”?
passívi [NOTE—“genus,” *in*
connection with nouns and adjectives
means “gender,” and in connection
with verbs means “voice”]

volleyball foll·is -is *m* volátilis; (*game*)
lūs·us -ūs *m* follis volátilis; **play**
volleyball folle volátilī lúdere (*see*
Chapter V)

volt vólti·um -ī *n*

volunteer *intr* (*mil*) sponte nōmen dare;
volunteer to do s.th. áliquíd ultrō
fácere

volunteer *s* voluntári·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*);
(*mil*) mīl·ēs -itis *mf* voluntári·us (-a)

vomit vom·ō -ere -uī vómitum

vote *intr* suffrágium ferō ferre tulī látus;
(*of a senator*) cēns·eō -ére -uī; **vote**
for suffrágári (+ *dat*); **vote for s.o.’s**
motion (*of an individual senator*) *in*
alicúius senténtiam eō íre íi *or* ívi

vote *s* suffrági·um -ī *n*; **a vote was**
taken on his motion (*in the senate*
by moving to one side of the
chamber) discēssiō facta est *in* eius
senténtiam; **call for a vote** (*in the*

senate) discessiōnem fācere; **cast a vote** suffrāgium ferō ferre tulī lātus; **give s.o. a vote of confidence** ālicui cāculum album ferō ferre tulī lātus

voter suffrāgā•tor -tōris *m* (•trīx -trīcis *f*)

voting booth saept•um -ī *n*

vowel vocāl•is -is *f*

vulture vult•ur -uris *m* (*see* **bird**)

W

waffle vāfl•um -ī *n*

wages merc•ēs -ēdis *f*; **receive (fair, good, low, poor, unfair) wages** (aequam, magnam, parvam, infīquam) mercēdem accīpere; **pay wages** mercēdem trību•ō -ere -ī

wagon carr•us -ī *m*; (*for agricultural purposes*) plaustr•um -ī *n*

wait exspectāre; **wait a minute, please!** manē; manē dum, quaesō!; **wait for** exspectāre (+ *acc*); **wait on** ministrāre (+ *dat*); **wait on tables** ministrāre

waiter miníst•er -rī *m*

waiting room oec•us -ī *m*
praestōlātōrius

waitress ministr•a -ae *f*

wake up *tr* (ē somnō) excitāre **II** *intr*
expergīsc•or -ī experrēctus sum;
ēvigilāre

walk *intr* ambulāre; **walk up and down** dēambulāre

walk *s* (*act*) dēambulāti•ō -ōnis *f*;
(*place*) ambulācr•um -ī *n*; **go for a walk** dēambulāre, dēambulātum eō
īre īvī

wall mūr•us -ī *m*; (*inner or outer wall of a house*) páriēs, parietis *m*; **walls** (*of a town*) moén•ia -ium *npl*

wall clock hōrológi•um -ī *n* parietárium

wallet pēr•a -ae *f*

wallop (*coll*) percolopāre; **get walloped** vapulāre

wallow volūt•or -ārī -ātus sum

walnut iūgl•āns -āndis *f*

waltz *intr* saltāre in gyrum

waltz *s* saltāti•ō -ōnis *f* in gyrum

want cúp•iō -ere cupívī cupītus; volō
velle vólui; **now what do you want?**
quid nunc tibi vīs?

war (against or with) bell•um -ī *n*
(*contrā or advērsus* (+ *acc*) *or* cum (+ *abl*); **be involved in a war** bellō implicāri; **bring a war to a successful conclusion** bellum cōnfíc•iō -ere cōnfēcī cōnfēctus; **carry on war with** bellum ger•ō -ere gessī gestus cum (+ *abl*); **cause a war** bellum mōv•eō -ēre mōvī mōtus; **civil war** bellum cīvīle *or* domésticum; **conduct a war** (*of a general*) bellum administrāre; **declare war on** bellum indíc•ō -ere indíxī indíctus (+ *dat*); **drag out a war** bellum trah•ō -ere traxī tractus; **end a war** bellum perfíc•iō -ere perfēcī perfēctus; **fight a war with** bellum ger•ō -ere gessī gestus cum (+ *abl*); **fight a war of aggression with** bellum *or* arma ultrō ínfērō ínférre íntulī illātus (+ *dat*); **foreign war** bellum extérnum; **go off to war** profícisc•or -ī profēctus sum ad bellum; **go to war with** bellum ínfērō ínférre íntulī illātus (+ *dat*); **guerilla war** bellum clandestínium; **in war** bellō, bellī témpore; **in war and in peace** pāce bellóque; **offensive war** (*of war yet to be begun*) bellum ultrō ínférndum; (*of war already begun*) bellum ultrō illātum; **prepare for war** bellum (com)parāre; **start a war with** bellum ín•eō -íre -ívī *or* -iī cum (+ *abl*); **stir up a war** bellum

incitāre; **take part in a war** bellum capēss·ō -ere; **terminate a war by diplomacy** bellum compōn·ō -ere compōsuī compōsitus; **wage war with** bellum ger·ō -ere gessī gestus cum (+ *abl*); **war against pirates** bellum pirāticum; **war against slaves** bellum servīle; **war is imminent** bellum imminet *or* impēdet *or* īnstāt; **war of extermination** bellum internecīnum; **war breaks out** bellum exārdēscit

wardrobe (place to keep clothes) vestiāri·um -ī *n*; (clothes) vestimēt·a -ōrum *npl*

warehouse apothēc·a -ae *f*

wares merc·ēs -ium *fpl*

warfare bell·um -ī *n*, milīti·a -ae *f*

warm *adj* (quite warm) cālid·us -a -um; (*lukewarm*) tépid·us -a -um; (*fig*) férvid·us -a -um; **it is getting warm** tepēscit

warm *tr* calefācere, tepefācere

warm-hearted am·āns -āntis

warmly dressed spissīs vēstibus involūt·us -a -um

warm-up exercitāti·ō -ōnis *f*

warship nāv·is -is *f* bēllica

wash *s* lavandāri·a -ōrum *npl*

wash *tr* lav·ō -āre lāvī lautus **II** *intr* lavārī, sē lavāre

washcloth drapp·us -ī *m* lavātōrius

washer, washmachine mächin·a -ae *f* lavātōria

wasp vesp·a -ae *f*

waste *s* (of time, money) iactūr·a -ae *f*

waste *tr* (time, effort) perd·ō -ere pēdidī pēditus; **I'm wasting my time** frustrā tempus cōnterō; **waste one's breath** (*fig*) ōperam pēdere; **waste**

time and effort labōrem ac tēmpora pēdere

waste basket scirpīcul·us -ī *m* chartārius

watch *s* hōrolōgi·um -ī *n*

watch *tr* (*guard*) custōd·iō -īre -īvī -ītus; (*observe*) spectāre, observāre; **hey you, watch out!** heus tū, cavē!

water *s* aqu·a -ae *f*

water pipe fistul·a -ae *f* aquāria

water-ski *intr* per summās undās nartāre

water-ski *s* nart·a -ae *f* aquática (*see Chapter V*)

water *tr* (flowers, etc.) adaquāre

waterfall catarāct·a -ae *f*

watering can nassitēr·a -ae *f*

watermelon mēlōpep·ō -ōnis *m*

watt vātti·um -ī *n*

wave a flag vexīllum quassāre

wax cēr·a -ae *f*

wax *tr* incerāre

wax paper chart·a -ae *f* cērāta

way (*road*) vi·a -ae *f*; (*route*) iter, itīneris *n*; (*manner*) mod·us -ī *m*; **all the way from** ūsque ab (+ *abl*); **all the way to** ūsque ad (+ *acc*); **be a long way off** longē distāre; **be in the way** óbvi·us -a -um esse; (*to hinder*) ob·stō -stāre -stetī; **be on the way to** iter habēre ad (+ *acc*); **by the way** óbiter; **by way of** viā (+ *gen*); **get out of the way!** Ápage!; **have it your way!** estō ut lubet!; **have one's own way** rēs prō arbītriō ger·ō -ere gessī; **he must always have his own way** semper faciēndum est quod vult; **if it's not too much out of the way for you** sī tibi nōn sānē dēvium erit; **I'm in a bad way** mihi male est; **in the same way** eōdem modō; **is that the way you help me?** istōcine pactō mē ádiuvās?; **no way!** nullō modō;

on one's way inter viās; **what is the quickest (best) way to ... ?** quae est via brevissima (optima) ad (+ acc)?

weak infirm·us -a -um, imbēcill·us -a -um, invālid·us -a -um; **weak constitution** tēnuis valetūd·ō -inis *f*;
weak voice exīlis vōx, vōcis *f*

wealth divíti·ae -ārum *fpl*

wealthy div·es -itis

weapons (*offensive*) tēl·a -ōrum *npl*;
(*defensive*) arm·a -ōrum *npl*

wear ger·ō -ere gessī gestus, gestāre;
(*wear regularly*) ūtor ūtī ūsus sum (+ *abl*); **wearing a belt** zōnā incinct·us -a -um; **wear out** (*clothes, a person*) cōnter·ō -ere contrīvī contritus

weasel mustēl·a -ae *f*

weather *s* (*good or bad*) tempēst·ās -ātis *f*, cael·um -ī *n*; **kinds of weather** tempestātes; **owing to changes in the weather** propter caelī varietātēs; **beautiful (clear, cloudless, cloudy, fine, foul, lousy, rainy) weather** egrēgia (clāra, sūda, nebulōsa serēna, foeda, spurca, pluviōsa) tempēstās

weather *tr* **weather the storm** procēllam dūrāre; (*fig*) rēs advērsās superāre

weather conditions tempestāt·ēs -um *fpl*

weather forecast praenūntiāti·ō -ōnis *f*
tempestātis, praesāgi·um -ī *n*
tempestātis

weather report renūntiāti·ō -ōnis *f*
tempestātis

web rēt·e -is *n*

website sit·us -ūs *m* interrētiālis

wedding *adj* nūptiāl·is -is -e; **wedding day** di·ēs -ēī *m* nūptiārum; **wedding gown** vest·is -is *m* nūptiālis;
wedding present nūptiāle dōn·um -ī

n; **wedding reception** convīvi·um -ī
n nūptiāle

wedding *s* nūpti·ae -ārum *fpl*

Wednesday di·ēs -ēī *m* Mercūrii

week hebdom·as, hebdomadis *f*,
septimān·a -ae *f*

weekday di·ēs -ēī *m* prōfēstus

weekend fin·is -is *m* hebdomadis; **on the weekend** exeunte hebdomade

weekly *adv* (*every week*) sīngulīs hebdomādibus

weekly hebdomadāl·is -s -e; **weekly newspaper** diāri·um -ī *n*
hebdomadāle; **weekly wages** mer·cēs -cēdis *f* per sīngulās hebdomadēs solūta

weight lifting sublāti·ō -ōnis *f* pōnderis

welcome *adj* grāt·us -a -um; **welcome!**
advēntus tuus grātīssimus est! *or*
salvē!; **you're welcome** libēnter

welcome *tr* benīgnē ex·cīpiō -cīpere
-cēpī -cēptus

well *adj* salv·us -a -um; **get well again**
convalesc·ō -ere convālūī

well *adv* bene, rēctē; **I am doing well**
mihi bene est; **well done!** factum
optimē!; **well said!** facētē dictum!

well *interj* em, immō, quīn; (*be it so*)
estō; **well, well** enim vērō

well-born honēst·us -a -um

well-heeled bene aerāt·us -a -um

well-mannered bene mōrāt·us -a -um

well-off bene aerātus -a -um

west occid·ēns -éntis *m*; **in the west** ab
occidente; **to the west** in occidentem
versus [*versus is an adverb*]

western occidentāl·is -is -e

westward in occidentem versus [*versus is an adverb*]

west wind Zéphyr·us -ī *m*

whack (*coll*) percolopāre

whale balaén·a -ae *f*

what quid, cūius; **what about me?** quid dē mē?; **what about the dough (money)?** quid dē argéntō?; **what a mess!** eu édepol rēs turbuléntās!; **what do you take me for? for a fool?** prō quō mē habēs? prō stultō?; **what else** quid ámplius; quid áliud; **what else can I do for you?** quid est quod tibi effícere possum ámplius?; **what for?** quam ob rem? *or* quā causā? **what is it?** (*what's the problem?*) quid est negótī?; **what is it? out with it!** quid id est? cedo!; **what (is the trouble) now?** quid iam?; **what kind of** quál·is -is -e; **what next?** quid deínde? **what sort of** quál·is -is -e; **what's it to me how you ...** quid istuc ad mē áttinet, quómodo tū (+ *subj*)?; **what's that?** (*what did you say?*) quid id est?; **what's that to you?** quid ad tē áttinet?; **what's the matter?** quid est?; **what's the reason why ...** quid est quod (+ *indic*); **what's up?** quid reī est?; **what's wrong?** quid est?

whatever quidquid; **whatever!** quidvīs!

wheat trític·um -ī *n*

wheel rot·a -ae *f*

wheelbarrow pab·ō -ónis *m*

wheelchair sell·a -ae *f* rotális

when *conj* cum, quandō, ubi, ut; (*interrog*) quandō?

whenever quandōcúmque, utcúmque, quótiēns, quótiēscúmque

where (*direction*) quō; (*position*) ubi; **from where** unde; **where are you from?** unde es?; **where on earth** ubi terrárum; úbinam géntium

whiff *s* (*slight smell*) od·or -óris *m*; **get a wiff of** suból·eō -ére -uī

while *conj* dum (*with pres indic to indicate an action going on in the past*)

while *s* **after a little while** paulō post; **a little while before** paulō ante; **a short while ago** paulō ante

while *tr* **while away the time** fall·ō -ere fefélli tempus

whimper (*of pups*) gánn·iō -íre

whine plorāre

whip *s* flagéll·um -ī *n*

whip *tr* flagellāre; **whip out** ēríp·iō -ere -uī ēréptus

whipped cream crēm·um -ī *n* battútum

whipping: get a whipping vapulāre

whiskers vibríss·ae -árum *fpl*

whisky víschi·um -ī *n*

whisper *s* susúrr·us -ī *m*

whisper *tr* & *intr* susurrāre

whistle *s* (*sound*) síbil·us -ī *m*; (*pipe*) fístul·a -ae *f*; **blow the whistle** fístulā sibilāre; **final (starting)** **whistle** finális (*inicialis*) síbilus (*see Chapter V*)

whistle *tr* **whistle a tune** fistulátō ōre can·ō -ere cécini || *intr* sibilāre; (*of the wind*) stríd·eō -ére -ī

white alb·us -a -um; (*shiny white*) cándid·us -a -um; **white bread** pān·is -is *m* cándidus

who quis, cūius; **who are you?** quis tū homō es?; **who is he (she)?** quis homō est?; **who is it? it's I.** quis homō est? ego sum; **who says so?** quis hoc dicit factum?; **who the devil** quis malum

whoa! eho!

whole tōt·us -a -um, cūnct·us -a -um;
taken as a whole in summam

wholesale magnāri·us -a -um

wholesaler magnāri·us -ī m (·a -ae f)

whole-wheat bread autopýr·us -ī m

why (*interj*) quīn; **why, this very day**
 quīn hódīē

why (*interrog*) cūr, quam ob rem, quā
 causā, quārē; **why is it that ...** quid
 est quod (+ *indic*); **why not?**
 (*challenging what has been said*)
 quid ita nōn? (*as an expression of*
assent: of course) quíppinī? or
 quidnī?; **why say more?** quid plūra?;
why so? because ... quid ita? quia
 ...; **why the devil** cūr malum

wicked ímprob·us -a -um

wickedness impróbit·ās -átis f

wide lāt·us -a -um

widen tr dilatāre || *intr* (*of a country*) sē
 pand·ō -ere

width lātítúd·ō -inis f; **in width** in
 lātítúdinem

wife ux·or -óris f

wig capillāmént·um -ī n

wild (*animal*) fer·us -a -um; (*growing in*
the wild) agrést·is -is -e;
 (*uncontrolled*) efferát·us -a -um

willing; be willing vol·ō velle volūī

willy-nilly nōlēns volēns

wily dolós·us -a -um, súbdol·us -a -um,
 va·fer -fra -frum

win s victóri·a -ae f; **a win on points**
 praevalénti·a -ae f pūnctórum

win tr vinc·ō -ere vicī victus; (*office*)
 ádsequ·or -ī adsecútus sum,
 adipísc·or -ī adéptus sum; **win a**
battle proéliō vīncere; **win a bet**
 sponsiōne vīncere; **win a case in**
court iudiciō vīncere; **win over** (sibi)

conciliāre || *intr* vīncere; **win out**
 (*prevail*) paevál·eō -éire -uī

wind (*a clock, watch*) intén·dō -dere -dī
 -tus or -sus

wind vent·us -ī m; **head wind** ventus
 advérsus; **tail wind** ventus secúndus;
wind storm procéll·a -ae f; **I got**
wind of it long ago iam prīdem id
 mihi subolēbat

winding flexuós·us -a -um; **winding**
route ámbit·us -ūs m

window (*an opening for light and air,*
closed by shutters) fenéstr·a -ae f;
 (*glass window*) fenestra vítea;
 (*comput*) fenestéll·a -ae f

window pane vitr·um -ī n fenestrae,
 quadr·um -ī n vítreum

window seat sēd·ēs -is f fenestrális

windpipe artéri·a -ae f áspera

windshield vitr·um -ī n antiáerium

windshield wiper vitritérgi·um -ī n

windy ventós·us -a -um

wine vín·um -ī n (**dry** austérum; **sweet**
 dulce; **red** sanguíneum; **light** ténue;
white album)

wine cellar cellári·um -ī n vīnáríum

wine glass hýal·us -ī m vīnáríus

wing (*of a bird, of an army*) ál·a -ae f;
 (*of a building*) lat·us -eris n

wink nictāre; **wink at** nictāre (+ *dat*)

winter adj hībérn·us -a -um

winter s hiem·s -is f; **at the beginning**
of winter híeme ineúnte; **at the end**
of winter híeme exeúnte; **because of**
the severity of the winter propter
 híemis magnitúdinem; **spend the**
winter hiemāre; **winter time**
 temp·us -oris n hiemále

wire fil·um -ī n

wise guy! *ímpudēns!* **don't be a wise guy!** *nē sīs ímpudēns!*

wish *cúp·iō -ere -ívi -ítus, optáre; wish earnestly exoptáre*

wish *s (act of wishing) optáti·ō -ónis f; (object wished) optát·um -ī n; according to your wishes secúndum voluntátem tuam; I give you three wishes trēs optatióñēs tibi dō*

witch *ságan·a -ae f, strig·a -ae f; the witches are howling strigae strident*

witchcraft *ar·s -tis f mágica*

without *sine (+ abl)*

witness *test·is -is mf (for prō + abl; against in + acc); be called as a witness contést·or -ári -átus sum; trustworthy witness testis lócuplēs (gen: testis locuplétis) m*

wolf *lup·us -ī m, lup·a -ae f; wolves howl lupī úlulant*

wolf cub *lupae cátul·us -ī m*

woman *múli·er -eris f; old woman an·us -ūs f; young woman muliércul·a -ae f*

womb *úter·us -ī m; (belly) ven·ter -tris m*

wonder *s and no wonder nec mīrum; seven wonders of the world septem mīrácula mundi*

wonder *tr mīr·or -ári -átus sum; I wonder what's up mīror, quid hoc sit negótī; I wonder where he is ubi sit dēmíror*

wonderful *(ad)mīrábil·is -is -e*

wooden spoon *cócle·ar -áris n coquinárium*

woodpecker *pīc·us -ī m (see bird)*

woods *silv·a -ae f*

wool *lān·a -ae f*

woollen *láne·us -a -um*

word processor *(comput) prográmm·a -atis n ēditórium*

word *s verb·um -ī n; (gram) dícti·ō -ónis f; [Note—In Roman grammars, “verbum” is used only for “verb”]; break one's word fidem frang·ō -ere, frēgī; give one's word fidem dare; in a word breviter, ad summam; I want a word with you paucīs tē volō; keep one's word fidem serváre; syllables form words sýllabae faciunt dictiúnēs; why should I take your word for it? cūr tibi crēdam?; word for word verbum prō verbō; word of honor fid·ēs -eī f; words fail me mihi verba dēsunt; you took the words right out of my mouth tū quidem ex ore ōratióñem mihi ēripuísti*

wordy *verbós·us -a -um*

work *lab·or -óris m, óper·a -ae f; (piece of work, literary work) op·us -eris n*

work *tr (to exercise) exérc·eō -ére -uī -itus; (the soil) col·ō -ere -uī cultus; (a machine) administráre || intr labōráre, operári; (to function) fung·or -ī fūnctus sum*

worker *operári·us m (-a -ae f)*

workshop *officín·a -ae f*

world *mund·us -ī m; (earth) orb·is -is m terrárum; where in the world? ubi terrárum?; where in the world are we? úbinam géntium sumus?; worst poet in the world péssimus poéta ómnium*

world war *bell·um -ī n mundánum*

World Wide Web (WWW) *Tēl·a -ae f Tōtíus Terrae (TTT)*

worm *verm·is -is m; (earth worm) lumbríc·us -ī m*

worn out *(person) fatigát·us -a -um; (clothes) trīt·us -a -um*

worry cūr·a -ae *f*, sollicitūd·ō -inis *f*

worry *tr* sollicitāre || *intr* sollicitārī;
don't worry! nōlī (*pl*: nōlīte)
sollicitārī!

worse pēi·or -or -us; dētēri·or -or -us;
(*more severe*) grāvī·or -or -ius; **get**
worse ingravēsc·ō -ere; **make**
matters worse rēs exasperāre; **turn**
out for the worse in pēiōrem partem
vertor vertī versus sum

worth: he's worth a lot of money
divitiās máximās habet; **he's worth**
nothing nihil est; **it isn't worth it**
nōn est óperae prētium; **it's not**
worth all that tantī nōn est

worthless inútil·is -is -e; (*containing*
nothing of value) inán·is -is -e;
(*person*) nequam [*indecl*]; **worthless**
fellow nequissimus hom·ō -inis *m*

worthlessness inānit·ās -ātis *f*

worthwhile: it is worthwhile óperae
prētium est

worthy (of) dign·us -a -um (+ *abl*)

wow! (*in shocked surprise*) vāh!; hui!;
(*in astonishment*) papae!; babae!;
vah!

wrap *s* amict·us -ūs *m*

wrap *tr* invól·ō -ere -ī involūtus; **wrap**
up obvólvere

wrapper involúcr·um -ī *n*

wreath corón·a -ae *f*

wrestle luct·or -árī -ātus sum (*see*
Chapter V)

wrestler luctát·or -ōris *m*

wrestling luctāti·ō -ōnis *f*

wrestling match certám·en -inis *n*
luctatiōnis

wrinkle rūg·a -ae *f*

wrinkled rūgós·us -a -um

wrist prīmōris man·us -ūs *f*; **sleeves**
reaching all the way to the wrists
mánicae prōlíaē ūsque in primōrēs
manūs

wrist bone carp·us -ī *m*

wrist watch hōrológi·um -ī *n* armillāre

write *tr* scrībō scrībere scrīpsī scrīptus;
write a book librum cōn·scrībō
-scrībere -scrīpsī; **write a program**
(*comput*) prográmma compōn·ō -ere
compōsuī compōsitus; **write Latin**
Latīnē scrībere

writer scrīpt·or -ōris *m*, scrīptr·īx -ícis *f*

writing (act) scrīpti·ō -ōnis *f*; (*result*)
scrīpt·um -ī *n*, scrīptūr·a -ae *f*;
writings scrīpt·a -ōrum *npl*

writing paper chart·a -ae *f* epistulāris

wrong *adj* (*incorrect, mistaken*) fals·us
-a -um; (*faulty*) vitiós·us -a -um;
(*unfair*) iníqu·us -a -um; (*morally*)
nefas [*indecl*]; **be wrong** errāre; **if I**
have done anything wrong, I'm
sorry sī quid pérperam fēcī, mē
paénitet; **what's wrong with you?**
quid est tibi? *or* quid est tēcum?

wrong *adv* pérperam

Y

yard áre·a -ae *f* domūs; (*measure*) uln·a
-ae *f*; **back yard** área postíca

yawn ōscitāre, hiāre

year: annus -ī *m*; **a hundred years**
from now ad centum annōs; **at the**
beginning of the year ineúnte annō,
prīncipiō annī; **at the end of the**
year exeúnte annō; **a year from now**
ad annum; **every year** quotánnis; **for**
a year in annum; **in my twenty-first**
year annum prīmum et vicésimum
ag·ēns -éntis ego ... ; **I wish you a**
happy New Year Novum Annum
laetum tibi exóptō; **last year** annō

superiōre; **the following year**
 prōximus annus; **the previous year**
 supērior annus; **twice a year** bis (in)
 annō; **up in years** aetāte prōvēct·us
 -a -um

yearn for dēsiderāre

yell *intr* ululāre; (*in pain*) ēiulāre

yell *s* ululāt·us -ūs *m*; (*in pain*) ēiulāti·ō
 -ōnis *f*

yellow flāv·us -a -um; **deep yellow**
 fulv·us -a -um; **pale yellow** lūrid·us
 -a -um, gilv·us -a -um

yellowish subflāv·us -a -um

yes étiam, sãnē, ita, immō; **I say yes;**
you say no ego aiō; tū negās (*see*
Appendix I)

yesterday herī; **the day before**
yesterday núdius tértius [*adv, also*
written as one word]

yipes! (*to express surprise, fear, dismay*)
 eheu!

yippee! (*to express joy, elation*) ehem!

yokel rústic·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

you tū; (*pl*: vōs)

you see (*parenthetical*) enim

young parv·us -a -um (nātū), párvul·us
 -a -um (nātū); **younger** iūni·or -or
 -us; min·or -or -us (nātū); **youngest**
 mínim·us -a -um (nātū)

young boy puércul·us -ī *m*

young daughter filíol·a -ae *f*

young lady muliércul·a -ae *f*

young man adulēsc·ēns -éntis *m*;
 (*between approximately the ages of*
20 and 40) iúven·is -is *m*

young son filíol·us -ī *m*

youngster adulēscéntul·us -ī *m* (·a -ae *f*)

your tu·us -a -um, vest·er -ra -rum

youth (*age*) adulēscénti·a -ae *f* (*between*
puer and iúvenis, between 15 and 30
years and even beyond); (*young men*
collectively) iuvént·ūs -útis *f*; (*young*
person) iúven·is -is *mf*

youthful iuveníl·is -is -e; iúven·is -is -e

Z

zeal stúdi·um -ī *n*

zealous studiós·us -a -um

zero zer·um -ī *n*

zig-zag tortuós·us -a -um; **zig-zag**
streets anfráct·ūs -uum *mpl* viárūm

zip code númer·us -ī *m* cursuális (*or*
 dirēctórius)

zipper clausúr·a -ae *f* tráctilis

zoo vīvári·um -ī *n*

Selected Bibliography

- Albert, Sigrid. *Imaginum Vocabularium Latinum*. Saarbrücken: Verlag der Societas Latina, 1998.
- Bacci, A. *Lexicon Vocabulorum quae difficiliter Latine redduntur*. 4th edition. Rome, 1963.
- Beech, Goodwin B., and Ford L. Battles. *Locutionum Cotidianarum Glossarium*. 3rd edition. Hartford Seminary Press, 1967.
- Diamond, Wilfred J. *Dictionary of Liturgical Latin*. Milwaukee: Bruce Pub. Co., 1961.
- Du Cange, Charles D. *Glossarium ad Scriptores Mediae et Infimae Latinitatis*. Graz, 1954.
- Egger, Carolus. *Lexicon Recentis Latinitatis*. Vatican, Rome, 1992–1997.
- Eichenseer, C. *Vox Latina: Commentarii Periodici Latini*. Saarbrücken, 1976–present.
- Helfer, Christian. *Lexicon Auxiliare: Ein Deutsch-Lateinisches Wörterbuch*. 3rd edition. Saarbrücken: Verlag der Societas Latina, 1991.
- Mir, J. M. *Nova Verba Latina*. Vatican: Rome, 1969.
- Mariucci, Tommaso. *Latinitatis Nova et Vetera*. Vatican: Rome, 1986.
- Meissner, C. *Latin Phrase Book*. London: MacMillan and Co. Ltd., 1929. Reprinted by Longwood Academic Press.
- Niemeyer, Mediae. *Latinitatis Lexicon Minus*. Leiden 1960–64.
- Schwieder, Georg. *Latine Loquor*. Editio Altera. Rome: Herder, 1962.
- Shelton, John. *A Dictionary of Ecclesiastical Terms*. Detroit: Gale Research Co., 1969.
- Smith, William. *A Smaller English-Latin Dictionary*. London: John Murray, 1870.
- Smith, William, and Theophilus D. Hall. *A Copious and Critical English-Latin Dictionary*. London, 1870. Reprinted by Bolchazy-Carducci Publishers, 2000.
- Souter, A. *A Glossary of Latin to 600 AD*. Oxford, 1949.
- Tondini-Mariucci, H. *Lexicon Novorum Vocabulorum*. Rome, 1964.
- Wilby, S. W. *Guide to Latin Conversation*. Baltimore and New York: John Murphy Co., 1892.